SERENISSIMO ac POTENTISSIMO
REGI
SUECORUM GOTORUM et VANDALORUM
etc. etc. etc.
FRIDERICO PRIMO
Domino suo Clementissimo
Mappam hanc Geographicam
quae Divina sic dispensante Providentia
Originem suam Occasione Captivitatis SIBERICAE traxit
devotissimo Corde et Obsequiosissima Mente
offert, dicat dedicatq;
humillimus ac obedientissimus
Servus et Subditus
P.I.v. Strahlenberg.

OCEANUS

MARE ALBUM

NOVA SEML

PALUS MEOTIS

PONTUS EUXINUS

MARE CASPIUM

Terminus inter Europam et Asiam

38 48 58 68 78 88

55 50 45

68 78 88 98 108 118 128 138 148 158 168 178

E A N U S S E P T E N T R I O N A L I S

I. de l'Admiraute

C. de Consolation

Iles d'Oranges

Zemes Bay

NOVA SEMLA

Montes Glaciales

Montes Paternoster

De Cubnine Montium prope Ostium Fluvij Kolim et Swetoi Nos comperta Insula inhabitata cuius Situs atq; Proprietas hactenus cognita non potuit.

Hic Ruthemi ab initio per Moles glaciales quæ flante Borea ad Littora Australia Mare vertens Mare itirum pulsantib; magno Labore et Vita Discrimine transvecti sunt ad Regionem Kamtzatkan.

Samojedæ Montani

Samojedæ

Jakuti

Tungusi

Oleni Tungusi

Oleni-Tungusi

Sabatzie Tungusi

Lamuti

Ufs Jansfei

Jukairi

Jukuti

Hatzirka Simowia

Indigirka Ostrog

Alasandra Sim.

Kolima

Sabatzie Nos

Mons Uda

Penschinskoi Ostrog

Konni Tungusi

Ochotzkoi Ostrog

Hic Ruthemi jam Navigant tutant maritima Kamtzhatkæ penitiori

Sabatzie Tungusi

Ostiaki Surgutski

Ostiaki Narimski

Ostiaki-Narimski

Ostiaki Sugutski

Ostiaki Obdorski

Ostiaki Tymskoi

Ostiaki Tymskoi Tributum

Samojedæ Tributum annuum pendunt

Gorodek Obdorskoi

Gorodek Na:

Gorodek Pelimskoi

Gorodek Tymskoi

Gorodek Tobolskoi

Gorodek Berezowskoi

Gorodek Surgutskoi

Gorodek Narimskoi

Gorodek Tomskoi

Gorodek Kusnetzkoi

Gorodek Kuznetzkoi

Gorodek Kamenskoi

Gorodek Irtiskoi

Gorodek Ischimskoi

Gorodek Tarskoi

Gorodek Tumenskoi

Gorodek Werchoturskoi

Gorodek Werchoturie

Gorodek Solikamskoi

Gorodek Permskoi

Gorodek Jarenskoi

Gorodek Ustiugskoi

Gorodek Wiatskoi

Gorodek Kargopolskoi

Gorodek Wologdskoi

Gorodek Jaroslawskoi

Gorodek Kostromskoi

Gorodek Nischegorodskoi

Gorodek Kasanskoi

Gorodek Kasimowskoi

Gorodek Tambowskoi

Gorodek Pensenskoi

Gorodek Tulskoi

Gorodek Rasanskoi

Gorodek Kolomenskoi

Gorodek Moskowskoi

Gorodek Twerskoi

Gorodek Smolenskoi

Gorodek Nowogrodskoi

Gorodek Pleskowskoi

Gorodek Ingermanlandiæ

Gorodek Ladogi

Gorodek Korelæ

Gorodek Kexholmi

Gorodek Wiburgi

Gorodek Abo

Gorodek Kalmarnæ

Gorodek Stockholmi

Gorodek Upsalæ

Gorodek Calix

Gorodek Uleoburgi

Gorodek Kemi

Gorodek Tornei

Gorodek Kittis

Gorodek Kola

Gorodek Kandalax

Gorodek Mezenskoi

Gorodek Pustozerskoi

Gorodek Mangaseiskoi

Gorodek Turuchanskoi

Gorodek Jenisseiskoi

Gorodek Ilimskoi

Gorodek Kirenskoi

Gorodek Jakutskoi

Gorodek Olekminskoi

Gorodek Witimskoi

Gorodek Nertzinskoi

Gorodek Selenginskoi

Gorodek Udinskoi

Gorodek Nertzinskoi

Gorodek Argunskoi

Gorodek Nertzinskoi

Gorodek Nertzinskoi

Gorodek Nertzin

148 158 168 178 188

N T R I O N A L I S

De Culmine Montium prope Ostium Fluvij Kolim et Svetoi Noss conspicuo
Insula inhabitata cujus Situs atq; Propinquitas hactenus cognosci non potuit

Hic Rutheni ab initio per Moles glaciales quæ stante Borea ad Lustrum
Mundi, Mostro versus Mare usq; itinum patuisse, magno Labore et Vitæ
Discrimine transvecti sunt ad Regionem Kamtzeatkam.

Noss Tszalatskoi

Tzuckzi

Homines in hac Insula

Pschochotzkoi

Tzuckzi

TERRA TZUCKZA

Tschuktschi

Anadirskoi Ostrog

Anadirskoi Guba

Anadirskoi Noss

Tschuktschi

ANADIRSKOI MORE

Noss Kamtschatskoi

Nowo Parfinskoi Ostrog

KOREI KORUN

TERRA OLUTORSKAJA

Olutorski Ostrog

Penschinskaia Guba

Stari Pirenskoi Ostrog

Kariatzkoi Ostrog

Tigil R.

Ochotzkoi Ostrog

Ochotzkoi Noss

PENSCHINSKOI et LAMSKOI

TERRA KAMTSCHATKA

Kamtschatskoi Ostrog

Kamtschatka

Kamtschadali

Fretum Uriez

Picco

Jakuti

Jakutskoi

Sabatzie Tunguси

Oleni Tunguси

Konni Tunguси

Lena R.

Aldan R.

Maja R.

Mons Uia

Sabatzie Noss

Ochotzkoi Ostrog

Hic Ruthenis jam Naves
struunt maritimas Vias
Kamtschatkam
petituri

Ostrog

Udskoi Ost.

Tolowka

Kirgan

Uriliam

Ulkia R.

Ostrownoi

Ud R.

Udskoi Ost.

Tuja

Nerchinsk

55

50

45

NOVA DESCRIPTIO GEOGRAPHICA TATTARIÆ MAGNÆ

tam orientalis quam occidentalis
in particularibus et generalibus
Territoriis
una cum Delineatione
totius IMPERII RUSSICI imprimis
SIBERIÆ
accurate ostensa.

PONTUS EUXINUS
MARE CASPIUM
MARE CHOROSMIUM
MARE ARALENSE
MARE MAGNUM
GEORGIA
IMERETIA
MINGRELII
CIRCASSIA
CUBANI TARTARI
GORI CIRCASSI
ARASSIA
CAMPUS MAMAI
CAMPUS ASTRAKAN
ASTRACAN
JAIKI COSACI
Guri Gorod
Caftrum Tribus Chaderfab.
Tribus Alzin
Tribus Vischun
Mons Ural Tau
Mons Irjik
LACUS TSCHAMISCHNI
Step YSCHIMSKA
Step: vel Desertum IRTISCHNA
Step Ablai
Tribus Tzetzekli
Tribus Jusi
Tribus Kungrat
Tribus Carderi
Kara Kum
Ara Kum
Tribus Naiman
Tribus Minga-lagan
Tribus Zamakaij
Tribus Argun
Tribus Katagan
TURKOUSTAN
EULŒTH KALMAKI
Dsongar Kalmaki
Doerbet Kalmaki
BRUTT TATTARI
KERGESE alias
Iesperа Tau
Arbtasch Tau
Arkaula
Andischan
Marglan alias Margunia
Namangan
Kaschkar
REGNUM KASCHKAR
REGNUM MUMU
PROF. KARIA
Hiarchan
JERKEN
Mus Tag alias ARSCHIMAKI
Planities PAMER alias Pomorum
M. Belur
M. Musart
M. Arbinn.
M. Ketmar
Mons Sanctasch
Mons Karu Nyssin
Mons Imaus
CASCHEMIR
Cascemir
MAGNI MOGOLI
IMPERII PAR
SAMARCAND
BUCHARA
Tribus Tokare
TOKARESTAN
CHILAN MAGNA
CATLAN
Termed
Balk
Andekud
Chaburga
Badakschan
Kunduz
Kabul
Candahar
ANDAHAR
ZABLESTAN
Maimana
Bost
Gaur Regio Alojoud Montes
Hirtar
Oruschna
Karschi alias Noteb
Amu
Oxus fl.
Thus alias Maschet
Tribus Argun
Nadesnd Junde
Nurr
Chiwa
Durun alias Durungan
Hasaravsep
Urgentz Major
Urgentz Minor
Ogurtschinskoi Insul.
Sultania
Nowrui
Amadan
Casurud
Deleim olim Susa
Majedacht
Tauris
ADIRBEITZANA
Ardebil
Schilki I.
Alexander Baij
Peter Baij
Kulalarski Insul.
Lebiaschei Ins.
Guri Gorod
Tiflis
Ziarad
Azow
Zurque
Semse
Zuzra
Bersak
Amadia
Tarakima
Gusmanczek
Kasi
Sultania
Enfil Ins.
Serabat
Asfrek
Amol
Saru
Tabarin
Firusuch
Seman
Abfiram
Simsin
Langerot
Astrabat
Jorjanrud
Asterabatia
Dehistan
Chaiuk
Bauvert
Zaweh
ZAWEH
JORIANIA alias OGURTZA
HERAKANIA
MAZANDERANIA
TABARISTANIA
KAUS
AGEMIA
Nyshiar
Eruschabat
Saru
Sava
Siaposchabo
Chan
Garusmabe
Conagui
Kreki
Komdagu
Tenesis
Achirbabo
Casium
Casium
Nowrui
Badius
Kasbin
Kaschabo
Kaschan
Kaschan
Kaschan

TARTARIA

Step vel Desertum IRTISCHNA

Bugri al Mogilli

POPULI KANKARAGAI

KALMAKI

Dsongar Kalmaki

Brut al Kergese Tattari

M. Musart

REGNUM KASCHKAR

Kaschkar

Belur M.

Mus Tag dicta Purpurarius

Plinius PAMER alias ARSCHIMAKI

BUCHAROA

REGNUM MUCHOTENUM

Karakaisch

Karia

PROVINCIA KARIA

Mus Tag alias Imaus Mons

CASCHEMIR

Caschemir

MOGOLISTAN

INDIÆ PARS

LAHOR

Step alias TAGAN TALA h.e. Campus albus

Step vel: Desertum KARANTALA

PROVINCIA CHAMIL

Turpan

Lukuin

Karahuia al. Aramuth

Chialisch al. Ulug Juldus

Karaschai

Tarim

Desertum SULTUS

DESERTUM ARENOSUM GOBY alias XAMO dictum

Mungales Tumet

Mungales ORDUS

PARCHAT

Karakoschun

TIBET ALMAKI

Mansio Dalay Chami obiens Fiduciarius Dalay Lamæ.

TANGHUTIÆ PARS

Mansio Zinigis Chamidis obiens Fiduciarius Dalay Lamæ

alias

LASA REGNUM

Desertum Tola

Desertum Mungalicum

Desertum TZOKURIN

Distrietus Selinginsk

MARE BAIKAL

TERRA GILIAKORUM

NIUCHI CHORTZIN

NIUCHI CHARTZIN YURI

CANG SINUS

PECHILI

XANSI

XENSI

XANTUNG

HONAN

NANKING

HUQUANG

SUCHUEN

LEAOTUNG

CORE A

Kaschkar

Turpan

Karaschai

Tarim

Karakoschun

Mungales ORDUS

Peking

Nanking

Hoangcheu

Queitcheu

Tien Cuento

Lasa

Ganges R.

Indus R.

Kiang R.

Hoang Ho

Amur Fl.

Lacus Baikal

Lacus Barkol

Lacus Koke Nor

Lacus Selenga

Lacus Hingan

Lacus trium Montium

Mons Altaj M.

M. Arbim.

M. Changai

M. Ula Gola

Mons Kara Noton

Mons Sanctasch

Mons Gantsch

Mons Adencuria

Mons Suttul

Mons Imaus

Mons Hingan

Mons Pe-Ling

Mons Nan-Ling

Mons Kuen-Lun

Mons Tsin-Ling

Mons Yuen-Ling

Mons Kiu-Lin

Mons Ta-Yu

Mons Ta-Mei

Mons Ta-Hoa

Mons Ta-Hio

Mons Ta-Ho

Mons Ta-Ye

Mons Ta-Pe

Mons Ta-Tong

Mons Ta-Tsin

Mons Ta-Tsing

Mons Ta-Tsiang

Mons Ta-Tsiu

Mons Ta-Tsiuen

Mons Ta-Tsiuen

Mons Ta-Tsiuen

MARE
Distrietus Selinginsk
Desertum Tola
Desertum Mungalicum
Desertum Tzokürin
Mungales Tumet
Mungales Darchat
Mungales Ordus
Xamo dictum alias
Sabataie Tungusi
TERRA GILIAKORUM
Insula vasta Zobolis et aliis Feris abundans
et LAMSKOI MORE
Amur Fl.
NIUCHI CHORTZIN
NIUCHI CHARTZIN YURI Tattaros
Lacus Hungen
Lacus trium Mendum
CANG SINUS
LEAOTON
CORE A
XANSI
XANTUNG
XENSI
HONAN
NANKING
SUCHUEN
HUQUANG
Nanking
Peking
Kirin
Ula
Gola
Sigan
Hanchong
Chingtu
Tien Cuento
Queitcheu
Hoangcheu
Hanyan
Vuchang
Ningyven
Lumpin
Fonhoa
Kiantin
Chanfsien
Pitchee
Cintcheu
Kintcheu
Chinuen
Fonyang
Yantcheu
Ninque
Ngankin
Yuntcheu
Hoeutcheu
Kiangfi
Picco
Sacata
Deua
Nivata
Tondoxiro
Jeddo
Miaco
Osaca
Bingo
Fingo
Mimasaka
Bitchu
Tamba
Tango
Tosa
Iwami
Yamaxiro
Tenxiro
Cocura
Cocuro
Ubansa
Finda
Mino
Tayma
Argenti fodina
Tome
Inaba
Tetteri
Yetsipue
Vacala
Canesawa
Cyama
Tenxiro
Sura
Sangama
Celauna
Tenxiro
Jeki
Tenxiro
Sunto
Suruga
Xiro
Conxiro
Oconxiro
Xirone
Kuriles
TERRA KURILENSIS alias JEDSO
Kamtschadali
Kamtschatka
Aquata
Voxu
Nivata
Ezitchi
Jeki
Tenxiro
Suruga
Sangama
Celauna

149 b 14

AN HISTORI-GEOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION OF THE *NORTH* and *EASTERN* Part OF *EUROPE* and *ASIA*;

But more particularly of

RUSSIA, SIBERIA, AND *GREAT TARTARY*;

Both in their ANCIENT and MODERN State:

TOGETHER WITH

An entire New POLYGLOT-TABLE of the Dialects of 32 *TARTARIAN* Nations: And a VOCABULARY of the *KALMUCK-MUNGALIAN* Tongue.

AS ALSO,

A Large and Accurate MAP of thoſe COUNTRIES; and Variety of Cuts, repreſenting *Aſiatick-Scythian* ANTIQUITIES.

Written Originally in HIGH GERMAN

By Mr. PHILIP JOHN von STRAHLENBERG,

a *Swediſh* Officer, thirteen Years Captive in thoſe Parts.

Now faithfully tranſlated into ENGLISH.

LONDON:

Printed for W. INNYS and R. MANBY, at the Weſt End of St. *Paul*'s; and L. GILLIVER, at *Homer*'s Head againſt St. *Dunſtan*'s Church in *Fleetſtreet*. M DCC XXXVI.



ADVERTISEMENT.

THE Author of theſe Sheets has been ſo very particular, in his Preface, and the long Introduction which follows it, on the Subject he has treated, the Manner in which he has treated it, and the Materials he has had to build upon; That there is little or nothing left for the Tranſlater to obſerve; but that, he hopes, he has kept cloſe to the Meaning of the Original, and has no where deviated from what he believes the Author of it would have ſaid, had he writ in *Engliſh:* And as to the Language and Stile, his principal Endeavour has been, to expreſs himſelf in ſuch a Manner, as to render the Subject moſt intelligible to an *Engliſh* Reader, and as the Nature of it has ſeem'd moſt naturally to require. For the reſt, he has not the leaſt Reaſon to doubt, but the Curioſity and great Variety of Matter, the Plainneſs and Sincerity of the Author, who relates very little, but what he avers upon his perſonal Knowledge, and, where that is not the Caſe, always gives an Account from whence he had his Intelligence; and the Accuracy of the Map, with the Deſcription thereof, muſt infallibly recommend this Work to the Approbation of the Publick. To render it, however, more acceptable, the Tranſlater has thought fit

ADVERTISEMENT.

to illuſtrate ſome difficult Paſſages with Notes of his own; which, in the four firſt Sections of the Introduction, are diſtinguiſh'd from the Author's Notes, by the Marks (* and †). In the Vth Section by the Letters (*a* and *b*). And, in the VIth Section, as well as throughout the whole Work itſelf, again with the Mark (*). After the Appendix to the Introduction, the Author has put what he calls *Additamenta to the Introduction*, referring to certain Pages and §. where they properly belong; Theſe the Tranſlater has inſerted in thoſe reſpective Places: But otherwiſe he has kept ſtrictly, every where, to the Method and Order of the Original.



THE AUTHOR's PREFACE.

PURSUANT *to my Promiſe, I here preſent the Publick with a ſmall, and, at the ſame Time, a large Work, under the Title of* A Deſcription of the NORTH and EASTERN Part of EUROPE and ASIA. (1.) *I call it large, becauſe it treats of ſo great a Part of the World; but ſmall, as this vaſt Extent of Country is not near ſo fully treated on, as it might have been: And, if compared with that bulky Performance, lately printed in* Holland, *in* Folio, *with this very ſame Title, and with beautiful Copper-Plates; the Uſe of which is, however, kept from the Publick; this may,* (2.) *very well deſerve the Name of ſmall, as it conſiſts only of a few Sheets in* Quarto; *Yet great, as it contains a more faithful and authentick Account of Things, than that does.*

IT *is,* (3.) *inconſiderable, as it is not writ with that Art and Eloquence which the Rules of the Learned require; much leſs is it accompanied with regular Notes and Remarks; Yet ſo far it is worthy of Regard, as the Reader will find few Pages in it, which*

do not contain, either Accounts entirely new, or, at leaſt, thoſe of other Authors improved.

FOURTHLY, *It may appear trivial, as its Copper-Cuts are, by no Means, equal in Beauty to thoſe of the* Folio; *However, it is far from being contemptible, ſince nothing like this has been offer'd the Curious by any Author, and it cannot but be acceptable to all Lovers of Antiquity; The* Polyglot *Table, which I have annexed, will, beſides, furniſh ſuch with an Account of thirty-two Languages, very little known: Not to mention the Map, which I ſhall have Occaſion to ſpeak more particularly of, in the Introduction.*

SHOULD *any one accuſe me of having been too dilatory in the Publiſhing this Work, I muſt beg Leave to inform him, and ſubmit it to his Conſideration: Firſt, That my Health, after thirteen Years Captivity, and ſo many long Journies, not being a little impaired, I could not immediately, after obtaining my Freedom, apply myſelf to this Work with that Expedition and Aſſiduity, which I had propoſed; Eſpecially, having twice loſt the Maps I had made, I was obliged to make a new one, and then copy it fair; a tireſome Work to one who was unwilling to let them go out of his Hand leſs exact, but rather more ſo, if poſſible.*

SECONDLY, *That deſigning always to publiſh a Book with my Map, and having, to that End, made large Collections, I was, a few Years ſince, prevented in my Deſign, by an anonymous Writer, who gave a* French *Tranſlation of them, when my Work was near compleat; This conſtrained me, that I might not burden the Publick with the ſame Story, though in another Language, to change my whole Purpoſe, and place thoſe Collections, partly in the Text of this Work, and partly in its Remarks; Which new Diſpoſition, as I was willing to employ thoſe Materials I had collected, and they were not all equally applicable, I found troubleſome enough, unpractiſed as I was in Writing of Books, and indeed in all other Parts of Literature.*

THIS, *and the low Subſcription Price, for which I had, in the Beginning, propoſed my Work, made me, at firſt, unwilling to beſtow many Copper-Cuts upon it, eſpecially ſince, from Time to Time, I expected the Return of a worthy Friend, from thoſe diſtant Parts, where his Stay had been longer than mine, and who, as a Man of*

Letters, might probably have been fitter for this Work than myſelf.

BUT *when, after my Return from Captivity, I could neither hear of him, nor of any Thing concerning him, in ſuch Works as were publiſh'd; And, in the mean while, I underſtood, that not only the learned made great Enquiry about the modern and ancient State of theſe* North-eaſtern *Parts of* Europe *and* Aſia; *But others, likewiſe, prompted by that natural Curioſity we all have, to be informed of what is foreign, and very remote, for which we uſually have a greater Regard, tho' often without a Cauſe, than for any Thing near, or before us. And when I conſider'd, farther, that, in Caſe of Death, Relations of this Nature, are ordinarily neglected or deſtroyed, I reſolved to ſet an Engraver to Work on the Plates, and then to do the beſt I could, to bring theſe Materials, into the Form and Method they are now in. My Taſk was finiſhed about the ſame Time with the Engraver's, who, indeed, at firſt, undertook to compleat his within the Compaſs of a Year, but did not foreſee what extraordinary Pains ſo large a Map, engraved in ſo ſmall a Character, would coſt him.*

THE *Reader will find nothing here tranſcribed from other Authors, much leſs invented by myſelf: Whatſoever he here meets with, is, I can aſſure him, faithfully related: Some few Particulars indeed, where I could not be an Eye-Witneſs myſelf, but was forced to depend on ſuch as I, at leaſt, thought credible Perſons, may perhaps appear not ſo very exact, in every minute Circumſtance.*

ON *the other Hand, what I found iuſtly related in other Deſcriptions of theſe Countries, I have not meddled with, that the ſame Thing might not be twice obtruded on the Publick: And though I have cited many Authors, who in ſeveral Particulars agree with me, and whoſe Names, had I prefixed them to this Work, would have made a pompous Appearance, and added ſome Sheets to the Bulk of it; Yet it was with no other View, than partly to give a Sanction to my own Obſervations (which otherwiſe might not gain Credit,) and partly to ſhew the Miſtakes into which they have been led, by careleſs Foreigners and Travellers; which laſt was particularly recommended to me by one of the moſt learned Men in* Sweden.

WOULD *I have taken Notice of all that has been either obſcurely or falſly related, by many Authors, on this Subject; And, on the other Hand, had I traced all the Foot-ſteps I myſelf had diſcovered,*

in

in the Eaſtern *Languages, of the* Hungarian, Gothick, Celtick, *ancient* Britiſh, *and other Tongues, I might have filled a large* Folio; *which I rather choſe to leave to others who may come after me.*

TO *give a ſingle Inſtance; when I once mention'd to Mr.* John Leonhard Friſch, *the Learned Rector of the Academy at* Berlin, *that the* Tartars *call a Lake* Koll, Goll *and* Kull *, and a Brook* Gulga, *he immediately anſwered, that this was the very ſame with* Golfa *in* Italian, Gulph *in* Engliſh, *and* Golpen *in* Dutch, *and that the* Kolken *of the laſt, and* Gurges, quaſi Gulges *of the* Latin, *are likewiſe of the ſame common Derivation. So likewiſe* Paludes *and* Lacus *are, in* German, *call'd* Gölcke *and* Kölcke; *For the latter, ſee* Lev. xi. 36. *and for the former,* Mattheſius, " The People had their *Gölcke* and *Tauchen* near running Wa-" ters to waſh therein as often as they were defiled; *So the Tranſlator of* Ray in Trifol. *ſpeaks of uncommon deep Holes and* Kölcke, *in the Whirlpools that are found in the Sea; and in* Beſold. Contin. *we have from* Stypman de jure marit. Cap. 6. p. 186. *that* Göllin *is* collectio aquæ promiſcuæ in loco uliginoſo. *From hence appears what Affinity there is, between the Languages of the* North-Eaſtern *Parts of* Europe *and* Aſia, *eſpecially in natural and original Things, before ſo many Arts, and ſuch different Faſhions aroſe; and what Concluſions a Collection of this Kind may enable Men of Learning to make, notwithſtanding the little Uſe it may ſeem to be of to the Vulgar.*

THE *Reader muſt not wonder, if he find ſome few critical Remarks in this Work; And if any Objections be made to, or Uncertainty charged upon them, I dare venture to ſay, that there will, ſoon or late, be thoſe who will confirm, and ſet many Things in a true Light, which I have not been able ſo fully to explain, or ſkilfully to apply. Eſpecially if they, for Inſtance, conſider, that the ancient Geographers and Writers, in their Accounts of theſe Countries, have ſometimes been miſtaken above One Hundred Miles in their Reckonings: The Conſequence of which muſt neceſſarily be the leading aſtray thoſe who made Notes upon them.*

WITH

* Some Nations, particularly the *Mungals* and *Jakuhti*, pronounce this Word *Kall*, as the Lake of *Bai-Kall*, in my Map. Whether the *Greek* Word, *Kolpos*, which ſignifies *Sinus maris & hominis*, have not an Affinity with theſe Words, I leave to others to determine?

WITH *Reſpect to the Etymology of ſeveral ancient Names, I have, in my Remarks, not without weighty Reaſons, had an Eye upon the Tranſmigrations of Nations; For if we conſult the ancient Writers, who from Time to Time have wrote the Hiſtory of theſe Parts, and not confine our ſelves to the* Roman *only; but for Inſtance, read* Marcus Paulus, Rubiquis, Vincentius Beluacenſis, Goes, *and others, we cannot poſſibly have any Idea of them, without ſome Explication (from Perſons who have been in thoſe Parts,) of the ſeveral odd Names, which theſe Authors give, in their Writings, to the Nations, Countries, Cities, Rivers and Mountains of this Part of the World, all which are now quite otherwiſe pronounced, or differently called. I, therefore, believe my Time, Pains and Paper not ill employ'd, if I have endeavour'd to clear up ſome Particulars; Eſpecially as I have proceeded upon ſuch Grounds, as not lightly to receive any Name or Word, 'till I found it have not only very near the ſame Idiom in two or three Languages; But, at the ſame Time, one and the ſame Meaning.*

THE *Tranſmigration of Nations is, indeed, a nice and tickliſh Point to touch upon; But certain it is, that many Difficulties would be removed, were the Advice of* Leibnitz *followed, and a competent Knowledge obtained of the Languages of* North-Aſia; *This great Philoſopher being fully convinced, that by the Help of theſe, many Things concerning the Tranſmigration of Nations might be clear'd up.*

TO *give an Inſtance or two, the ſaid* Leibnitz *remarks, that according to the Chorographer* Ravenante, *all the Tract of Land beyond the* Elbe, *as far as* Bohemia, *was anciently call'd* Mauringa, *which Name others, however, confine to* Pomerania. *To clear up this Point, we, in* Europe, *can only conſult the Writings of the Dead; But in* Aſia, *they may be aſſiſted by the Inſtructions of the Living.*

FOR *when I aſk'd the* Uſbeck Tartars, *in the City of* Tobolſky, *why they call'd that Tract of Land, which is adjoining to the* Eaſt *Side of the* Caſpian-*Sea,* Maure Nahar? *They anſwered me, because it lies towards and near the Sea;* Maure *ſignifying the Sea, and* Nahar *towards* *. *When, therefore, with this I conſider the*

* They have, however, borrowed this Word from the *Perſians*, who likewiſe ſometimes pronounce it *Maure-Nahar*.

preſent Name Pomerania, *which in the* Vandal *and* Sclavonian *Language, is* Po-more, *that is to ſay,* lying by the Sea, *it is evident that* Pomerania *rather than* Moravia *is meant, ſince that lies towards and near the Sea, as the* Maure-Nahar *of the* Uſbeck-Tartars *does; Eſpecially as the Cuſtom of giving Surnames to Countries and Nations has equally prevail'd among the* Europeans *and* Aſiaticks, *and as the Word* Pomerania *is but an Interpretation of the Name* Mauringa, *which may have been given to this Country, by others, as well as by the* Vandals.

And *this the poor innocent* Oſtiacks *near the River* Oby *may confirm, who told me that they call'd this River towards its Mouth* Umar, *becauſe it was there large and broad like a Sea; And, likewiſe, the* Ruſſians, *who, to this Day, call thoſe that inhabit near the Sea,* Maure-mans.

Farther, *We find in* Pliny, *that anciently the* Scythians, *or a Part of them, were call'd* Aramæi, *and at firſt* Nomæi; *theſe are the* Noi, *oor* Naimanni *of the* Tartars *and* Mungals; *For theſe are ſuppoſed to have been the moſt numerous, ancient and wealthy People and Tribe among them. See, on this Head,* l'Hiſtoire Genealogique des Tartars, Pag. 116. *And theſe* Naimanni *the ancient Writers call'd alſo* Iſedonian Scythians, *as we ſee in the Hiſtory of* Genghizcan, *by Mr.* Petis de la Croix, Pag. 82. *In* Hiſtoria Byzantina, *Tom.* III. Menandri, *Cap.* 7. *we find likewiſe, that there were two Sorts of* Avari, *one properly ſo call'd, who were alſo nam'd* Bulgarians; *The other who gave themſelves that Name, and came from the* Northern *Parts of* Aſia: *But* Jornandes, *in* Rebus Geticis, p. M. 597. *calls thoſe* Aviri, *and* Herbelot, *in his* Dict. Orient. p. 148. Avairat, *which the* Greeks *call* Avari; *And others, as* Nicephorus, Evagrius *and* Caliſto, Abari, *a* Northern *People of* Aſia, (Abari Aſiæ populos boreales,) *and with this Circumſtance, that they inhabit the Country beyond* Caucaſus; (qui campos ultra Caucaſum exiſtentes depaſcunt.) *See* Car. Steph. Dict. p. 6. *Whence ſome call* Siberia, *according to* Pliny, Abarimon.

Since *then the* Kalmuck *Nation, which conſiſts of four principal Tribes *, calls itſelf to this Hour, as the above-mentioned* Jornan-

* They are called, (1.) *Torgaoth*; (2.) *Koſchioth*; (3.) *Kojoht*; and, (4.) *Dſongar* and *Dorböth*, the laſt of which are one Tribe. There are, likewiſe *Mungalian* Vaſſals, who are

Jornandes *and* Herbelot *asserts*; Avirat *and* Virat, *or* Dörbön-Avirat, *i. e. the four* Avirat *Tribes*, v. l'Histoire de Timur-Beck, Tom. II. p. 244. *and the already cited* Histoire des Tartars, p. 112. *from which also the* Torgaoth *or* Torgautian Tartars, *on the* Wolga *descend*; (*see the last quoted Author*, p. 113.) *it is sufficiently evident, that the* Avari, *formerly call'd* Var *and* Huni, *or* Chuni, *but who gave themselves, as has been already observed, the Name of* Avari, *and coming from this Country, are the very People here meant. Consult* Mezeray's French *History*, Cap. 6. p. 70. Paris, 1685.

IF *these and the like Accounts from the* Tartarian *History, abovemention'd, and from these Countries, which have such a manifest Conformity with the Transmigration of these People, do not give full Satisfaction to all Enquirers into these Matters, there can be no such Thing as Proof, unless brought from Things of Yesterday; and more of this Kind, the Reader will meet with, in this Work; especially in the Introduction and Appendix: Which if any one disrelishes, he need read no more of, than what is cited thence in the History itself, where I could not avoid making some References to them, and where many Things are not only cleared up, but others observ'd, which may be of Use to those who do not make Learning their Profession, and to Merchants, particularly such as trade to* Russia: *I would farther advise all Lovers of these Things, to read a* French *Tract, call'd*, l'Histoire Genealogique des Tartars, traduit du Manuscript Tartare d'Aboulgasi Bagadur Chan, à Leyde 1726, *which I had some Thoughts of publishing in* German, *and have often cited; as also* Das Veränderte Rußland.

AS *for the Histori-Geographical Description, I could, at this Time, only go through the* Northern *Part of the Map*, viz. Russia *and* Siberia; *and must defer to another Time the* Southern *Part, or* Tartary, *though, in general, Notice is taken of it in the Introduction.*

TO *this I have yet several Pieces, to add; As first, a Treatise of the* Tartarian-Mungal, Ogus-Chan, *or the* Scythian *King*

are called *Soyohti*: The Terminations of which Names agree with those of certain mighty *Western* Nations or Tribes, as *Swithioth, Gauthioth, Vinoviloth, Vagoht, Ostrogoht, &c.* On which Occasion we may observe, that *oth, ath*, and *auth*, are the same, and that these and the like Names are by some Authors, written *ät* and *öth*: And so the *Mungals* call the four *Kalmuckian* Tribes, mention'd above, taken together, not only *Avirät*, but, likewise, *Uiföth*, and *Aviloth*.

Madyes. Secondly, *A Deſcription of* Little Buchary, *or the Kingdom of* Caſchgar. Thirdly, *A Relation of a Voyage to the* Kalmuckian *Regions, towards the* Torgautian Kalmucks, *on the* Wolga. Fourthly, *A Journal of the* Ruſſian *Expedition along the River* Irtiſch, *in the* Kalmuckian *Regions, belonging to the* Great Chontaiſch. *To which may be added,* Fifthly, *A Guide through* Ruſſia, Siberia *and* Tartary, *to the bordering Countries; and all theſe together will make a ſecond Part of this Work.*

HAD *they been ſubjoined to this, it would not only have obliged me, to expect a higher Subſcription-Price; But, likewiſe, have diſguſted the Subſcribers by the long Delay it muſt have occaſioned, which already has been greater than I at firſt apprehended.*

SOME *are apt to think the Map too large; Becauſe being of ſo thick a Royal Paper, it cannot be bound up with the Book; For my Part, I rather think it too ſmall; Becauſe I could not bring the tenth Part of my Materials, into ſo narrow a Compaſs. But if any one deſires to inſert it in his Book, he may have it upon four ſmall Sheets of fine Writing Paper, which make juſt one of Royal, and then it may be folded in the Book.*

OTHERS *may rather like a Map with more Ornaments, which are indeed agreable to the Eye: But it is the Accuracy of a Map, which muſt make it valuable; as the Buſineſs of Geography is exactly to ſettle the Diſtance of Places, in ſuch Manner, as to be perfectly underſtood: And I aſſure the Reader, that, in this Point, I have done ſuch Service to Travellers and Merchants, who either viſit theſe Parts, or trade thither, as has not been done by any who have been in theſe Parts before me.*

FOR *Inſtance, I ſhall only mention Monſieur* Witſen's *large Map; which on Account of its Size, and pompous Appearance, and high Price, occaſions many to conclude it muſt contain a Treaſure of Geographical Accuracy: But this I will venture to ſay, after an Examination of it, upon the Spot, that I obſerved it to be of little or no Service to Travellers: Since neither the Longitude nor Latitude of the Places in* Ruſſia *are duly mark'd in it; nor is the Situation of the whole Extent of this large Part of the World truly given: Few Places are properly named, and many are wholly omitted; There even occur Names utterly unknown, and unintelligible to* Ruſſians, Tartars, Kalmucks, *and* Pagans. *Again, there are Maps of the four*

four Parts of the World, each of which is twice as big as mine; and round them are Draughts of ſeveral Cities. Thoſe in the Map of Aſia, *are deſign'd to repreſent ſome of the Cities of* Aſia. *And a Friend of mine underſtanding that I was employed, in* Tobolſky, *about making a Map of* Siberia, *he ſent me this Map of* Aſia, *as a great Curioſity: I muſt, likewiſe, own, that when I ſaw ſo large a Map, I was not a little pleaſed, ſince it was both well engraved, and finely illuminated: But upon examining it, I found in that large Map, ſcarce ten Places right.*

AND *ſo it is, likewiſe, with other Maps; I except, however, that engraved at* Leyden, *in* 1726, *which is, indeed, ſomething more accurate; but would not have been ſo, if its Author had not plowed with my Heifer;* i. e. *made Uſe of my firſt Maps of this Part of the World, deſigned in* 1715, *and* 1718, *which I was obliged to leave behind me, in* Ruſſia.

I HAVE, *indeed, in my Introduction, given an Explanation of the Compartments or Eſcutcheons; But could not be ſo very exact in every Circumſtance, in the Execution of them; want of Room on the Copper-Plate, obliging me to contract ſome Things. The Eſcutcheon with the Title, will, however, ſufficiently ſhew, how, in Conformity with this Hiſtori-Geographical Deſcription, they repreſent, as well the ancient as modern Times.*

AND *becauſe I was deſirous to reduce within the Compaſs of one ſmall Volume, as great a Variety of Matter as poſſible, I have avoided that ſuperfluous Geographical deſcriptive Manner, which properly belongs to the Map, and have not juſt obſerved that this or that River runs from* Weſt *to* Eaſt, *has its Riſe in this Place, and diſembogues itſelf in that: For to what End would this be, ſince the Deſcription is accompanied with the Map, where theſe Things are plainly laid down. The Caſe would be otherwiſe, were the Map wanting, for then ſuch Particulars could not be omitted.*

THE

THE CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

SECT. I.

THE Design of this Work, the Disposition of the Map and a Description of the Escutcheons and Devices belonging to it, Page 1

SECT. II.

Of the Division of the Northern *Part of this Map*; viz. *of the* Empire *of* Russia, *and its principal Boundaries*; *and of some Authors who have treated of this Subject,* 22

SECT. III.

The Division of the Southern *Part of this Map, comprehending the* Lesser *and* Greater Tartary; *Their chief Boundaries*; *And an Account of the six Principal Classes of those Nations, which are called* Tartars, 29

SECT. IV.

Of the Polyglot Table, *and its Use, in Enquiring into* Ancient History, 56

SECT. V.

Of the Division of this Work, which has almost always happened to be by the Number SIX: *Upon which several Occasional Remarks are made on the Customs of several Nations,* JEWS, PAGANS, *and* TARTARS; *to adjust and divide all their Occupations and Concerns, according to some certain Number,* 81

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

SECT. VI.

Of the Boundaries between Europe *and* Asia, Page 105

APPENDIX.

Some Observations on Abulgasi Bagadur-Chan's Tartarian *History, and how far it agrees with those of* European *Writers,* 127

VOCABULARIUM CALMUCKO-MUNGALICUM, 142

CHAP. I.

Of the different Names and Denominations of Russia, *and their Derivations,* 165

CHAP. II.

Of the Boundaries, Situation and Climat of the Russian Empire, *in general,* 178

CHAP. III.

Of the Ancient and Modern Division of the Russian Empire, *into its several Districts and Provinces,* 186

CHAP. IV.

Of the Ancient and Modern Rulers of Russia, *and the Places of their Residence,* 196

CHAP. V.

The Beginning and Progress of the Reigns of the Family and Lineage of Romanow, 215

CHAP. VI.

The Reign of Emperour Peter I. 231

CHAP. VII.

Of the Difference between the Titles CZAR *and* GRAND PRINCE, *and of the* RUSSIAN *Seal,* 276

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Religions in Ruſſia, Page 279

CHAP. IX.

Of the Eccleſiaſtical Government in Ruſſia. 290

CHAP. X.

Of the Revenues in Ruſſia, 302

CHAP. XI.

Of the Forces of the Ruſſian Empire, *by Land, and by Sea,* 304

CHAP. XII.

Of the Chief Families in the RUSSIAN EMPIRE, 312

CHAP. XIII.

Of the moſt noted Mercantile and Fair-Towns, as alſo of the Mines, Minerals, Vegetables, Foſſils, Curioſities, Antiquities, Manufactures, Fabricks, &c. *in the* RUSSIAN EMPIRE, *digeſted into Alphabetical Order,* 320

APPENDIX, 455

INTRODUCTION.

SECT. I.

The Design of this Work, the Disposition of the Map, and a Description of the Escutcheons and Devices belonging to it.

SUMMARY.

§. I. THE *Difficulty of this Work; but the Possibility of it. The Utility of Geography.* II. *There are many Places in* North-Asia *yet unknown.* Nicholas Wittsen's *Work lost to the Publick.* III. *The Subject of this Work; what gave Occasion to it. Divine Providence admir'd.* IV. *Some remarkable Reflections of the Author's, on Occasion of his undertaking this Work.* V. *Several Impediments in collecting these Intelligences.* VI. *A Comparison between the ignorant Inhabitants of those Parts, and the more civiliz'd People of* Europe. VII. *The Necessity of giving a Description of the Map.* VIII. *The Extension of this Map, and the Reason why it could not be more diffused, with Regard to Antiquity.* IX. *What there is in this Map, that is not to be found in others.* X, XI. *Remarks on the Errors of some Geographers, with Regard to Maps.* XII. *There are many Names in ancient Maps, which are not intelligible.* XIII. *Some may be discovered by the Circumstances of History, as the River* Jaxartes, *the City* Orthura, *&c.* XIV. *Who the* Seres, *whom we find mentioned by* Pliny, *were?* XV. *An Observation made by Monsieur* de la Croix, *concerning the City of* Hyarcan, *examin'd. The Difficulty of coming at the Etymology of Ancient and Modern Names.* XVI. *The Maps publish'd at* Leyden, *and afterwards by* Homan, *are Copies of those the Author was obliged to leave*

behind him in Ruſſia. XVII. *The Author, at his Return from* Tartary *to* Muſcow, *made ſeveral Remarks on theſe Maps; by which Means the new Map, which accompanies this Work, is more accurate and extenſive.* XVIII. *The Diviſion of the* Ruſſian Empire *in* Europe, *into Six Parts.* XIX. *The Diviſion of* Siberia *into Six principal Governments or Lordſhips.* XX. *A more diſtinct Account of this Matter to be found in the Deſcription.* XXI. *Some Examples taken from* Porphyregeneta. XXII. *The Diviſion of* Tartary, *into the* Greater *and the* Leſs, *was formerly diſtinguiſh'd into Four, but now, by the Author, into Six principal Parts: A brief Account of them.* XXIII. *The* Tartars *have not been very exact in fixing the Boundaries among themſelves.* XXIV. *The Author has taken the Plan for his Map, from Globes made by the* French *Geographers, and particularly thoſe of Monſieur* de Liſle. *He has, nevertheleſs, given the City of* Tobolſky *a different Degree of Longitude.* XXV. *A* Meridian *fix'd in the* Weſt, *through* Muſcow. XXVI. *A Meridian in the* Eaſt, *through the* Chineſe *Reſidence of* Peking. XXVII. *The Reaſons why Monſieur* de Liſle *has not been exact in his Degrees of Latitude of theſe Places.* XXVIII. *Directions concerning the Meaſuring Rod and Scale of Miles.* XXIX. *The Exactneſs of the Calculation.* XXX. *The Nature and State of the Countries and Cities in* North Aſia. XXXI. *Overſights of ancient Geographers in their Obſervations.* XXXII. *An Account of a diſtinct Boundary between* Europe *and* Aſia. XXXIII. *The Method made Uſe of by the Author, to get an exact Account of the* Caſpian *Sea.* XXXIV, XXXV. *The ſame Method made Uſe of, to get an Account and Draught of the Country of* Kamtſchatki, *and other remote Places. An Account of the* Streight *of* Weygatz. XXXVI. *Reaſon of the Author's dedicating his Map to the King of* Sweden. XXXVII *to* XLII. *Explications of the Eſcutcheons alluding to the preſent State of thoſe Countries.* XLII. *The inward Ornaments allude to Fables taken from the Mythology of the Ancients.* XLIII. *Monſieur* Leibnitz's *Opinion of theſe Fables.* XLIV, XLV. *The Eſcutcheon for the Scales, with its Ornaments, allude partly to the Occupation of the Author, during his Captivity, and partly to the laſt Treaty of Peace in the* North.

SECT.

§. I.

THE Obſcurity of ancient Times, and a Want of authentick Accounts, are the Reaſons why it has hitherto been eſteem'd very difficult, and almoſt impoſſible, to diſcover, with any Certainty, the Migration of Nations and the Origin of People; and many learned Men, of the deepeſt Inſight into Antiquity, have thought it as difficult as it would be to fix the firſt Meridian mechanically: However, ſince ſo many curious Diſcoveries have of late been made, it is to be hoped, that the Origin and Migration of Nations may in time be ſet in a truer Light, and a Path trac'd out, which may, ſooner or later, lead the Learned to ſurer Grounds for their Conjectures; even as judicious Mathematicians do yet entertain ſome Hopes of finding out the true prime Meridian, and have made more Advances towards it than in former Times. And as, beyond all Doubt, Geography is one of the greateſt Helps towards clearing up the Migration of Nations, ſo likewiſe exact Maps, eſpecially of Countries far remote, if accompany'd with Hiſtori-Geographical Deſcriptions, may be of great Service thereunto.

II. IT is nevertheleſs eaſy to conceive, that the *Northern* Part of *Aſia*, in particular, contains many Places which are ſtill unknown to us, and where there are Monuments, which the hiſtorical Accounts, ſo long wiſh'd for, might diſcover to us with greater Certainty; notwithſtanding the raw and unpoliſh'd People who now

chiefly inhabit thoſe Countries, have no Knowledge of their Signification, and are much leſs in a Condition to publiſh any thing concerning them (1). Hence is it, that theſe unknown Things are chiefly treated of by experienc'd and learned *European* Writers and Travellers, who have gotten Knowledge thereof, either by Correſpondence, or from a perſonal View of the Countries mention'd in my Title; and for this Reaſon, the Curious of our Times have flatter'd themſelves with the Hopes of ſeing a Treatiſe written by the late Mr. *Nicholas Wittſen*, *Burgo-maſter* of *Amſterdam*, entitled, *Het Noord-en Ooſtergedeelte van Aſia en Europa*; but the Copy of this Work being bought by a great Prince, and taken away from the Preſs, thoſe Hopes were fruſtrated, and all Proſpect of its being publiſh'd ceas'd. As I was about to treat of the ſame Part of the World, this Incident prov'd an Inducement to me, to endeavour to ſupply, from my own Experience, what the Curious in *Europe* have thereby loſt; tho' I muſt own that my Work is neither ſo ſumptuous, nor ſo extenſive, as that of (2) Mr. *Wittſen*'s, which the Publick is now depriv'd of.

III. And tho' I do not account myſelf among the Number of the Learned, yet having ſpent a long Time in this *North* and *Eaſtern* Part of

(1) In the Year 1720, when ſome *Ruſſian* Regiments went from the City of *Tobolsky*, up the River *Irtiſch*, they found there many Antiquities, and Temples of Idols; and I have alſo been told, by the *Tobolskian Tartars* and *Ruſſians*, that, from this River, farther towards the *Weſt*, *South*, and *South-weſt* from the City of *Tobolsky*, between the Sources of the Rivers *Toboll* and *Iſchim*, whither very few People frequented, there were to be found great Numbers of Images, cut in Stone, of Men and Beaſts; and that the Ruins of ſeveral Cities were diſcernible in thoſe Deſarts. And as the Mountains of *Ulu-tau* and *Kitzic-tau*, which are alſo call'd *Arr-tag* and *Karr-tagg*, ly between the ſaid Rivers; on the firſt of which the Great *Tamerlan*, or *Timur-Beck*, when he paſs'd by there with his Army, erected *Obelisks*; and near which Place the Great *Ogus-Chan* had his Reſidence: (See *l'Hiſtoire de Tim. Beck. Tom.* 11. *p.* 36 *and* 81.) So this Relation is indeed very probable; but I very much regret, that, during my Stay in *Siberia*, I had no Opportunity of going that Way to viſit them in Perſon.

(2) It is very well known, how much Time Mr. *Wittſen* ſpent, and what Expences he was at, in his Enquiries into the State of the *Northern* and *Eaſtern* Parts of *Europe* and *Aſia*; of which we may have ſome Idea, among other Inſtances, by the Correſpondence he held with Baron *Leibnitz*, on this Account; but whether the Intelligences he procur'd of the State of theſe remote Countries and Nations are always to be depended upon, I will not pretend to determine; at leaſt, what the ſaid *Leibnitz* ſays of the *Usbeckian* and *Perſian* Languages, that they are the ſame, is liable to Contradiction; for tho' the Inhabitants of the Cities of *Usbeck-Tartary* (who are *Bucharians*) ſpeak *Perſian*, yet the *Usbeckian* Language, which is pure *Tartarian*, is a Language by itſelf; becauſe theſe Nations are not *Aborigines* there, but Strangers and *Aſcititii*, who have ſettled in this Country. (See *Leibnitz Collect. Etymolog. Pars* 11. *p.* 361 & 364.)

of *Europe* and *Aſia*; and it ſo happening, that, by the third Year of my thirteen Years Captivity, I was far advanc'd into the Country, I there made all diligent Enquiry into the ancient as well as modern State thereof, and did not neglect, at the ſame Time, to make my own Obſervations, according to the ſmall Knowledge I had, at that Time, in the Mathematicks. In theſe Enquiries, I have now made ſo large a Progreſs, that, notwithſtanding the great Trouble of it, and the many Hindrances I met with, I am in a Capacity to preſent the Publick with a Map of Great *Tartary* (3), and of the whole *Ruſſian* Empire, *Siberia* included; together with an Hiſtori-Geographical Deſcription thereof. And here I cannot but admire the wonderful Ways of Providence, that tho' moſt Arts are generally brought to Decay by the Fate of War, yet the Science of Geography is often encreas'd and improv'd thereby; of which the ancient *Romans*, who, by Means of their Wars, often gain'd Intelligence of Countries and Nations, which before were quite unknown to them, are ſufficient Evidences.

IV. HERE likewiſe, amidſt my Reflections on the *Divine Providence*, and on my Attempt and Progreſs in this Work, the Reader will eaſily conceive, I could not but make ſome Application to myſelf; ſince 'tis not to be ſuppoſed, but that among my Fellow-Captives, there were many, who had not only better natural Parts, and more Learning, but were provided with more Means for carrrying on this Undertaking, than myſelf: It fell, however, to my Lot, among ſo many, to engage inſenſibly in this Affair, and Providence (if I durſt ſay ſo) mark'd me out for the publiſhing of ſo conſiderable a Work.

V. I MUST own, that when I firſt was carried Captive into theſe Countries, I knew juſt as much of the State of them, as an (4) *Oſtiac* knows of *Germany*: And though I was, from the Begin-

(3) It is to be obſerv'd, that in *Poland*, *Ruſſia*, *Turky*, *Perſia*, *India*, *China*, and even in *Great Tartary* itſelf, the Name *Tartar* is not pronounc'd with an *r* in the Middle, and therefore I ſhall ſpell it ſo throughout this whole Work. So *Jacob Golius in Notis ad Alferganum* has every where wrote this Name. (*See there* p. 106) And *Andr. Miller Grieffenh* (in his *Comment. Alphab.* p. 53.) mentions the ſame; I therefore wonder that this ſhould yet be unknown with us, ſince even in the Bible (*i. e.* the *German*) *2 Maccab. cap.* 4. *ver.* 47. this Name is wrote without an *r* in the Middle. [*In this Tranſlation I have however choſen to leave this* (r) *which our Author has expung'd, ſince we always find it ſpelt in that manner in* Engliſh *Writers*]

(4) *Oſtiacki*, one of the moſt ſtupid Nations in *Siberia*, dwelling on the Rivers *Oby* and *Irtiſch*. (See an exact Deſcription of them in *Das Veränderte Ruſſland*, p. 175. *ſeqq*

Beginning, very desirous to have some Information of them; yet, for want of the necessary Languages, I could not satisfy my Curiosity. Indeed, 'till that Time, I had so little applied myself to Reading, that I but then began my Study of ancient History; and what Helps my Captivity could afford me, to cultivate this Study, may easily be supposed. Besides, my Circumstances were, at that Time, such, that I might have said, with the Philosopher, *Omnia mea mecum porto*; out of which, it is easy to conclude, I had but a small Sum to purchase Knowledge with. To gather my Intelligences from a strange and unknown People, who are not often ready to do the least Service without a Reward, could not but be chargeable; and to neglect the Business by which I got my Livelihood, or to bestow what I could otherwise raise, for my Support, upon this Work, I could not do, without exposing myself to Penury; it is therefore natural to believe, I had many Difficulties to struggle with.

VI. EVERY Reader may not, perhaps, be equally diverted with this my Description of these cold, and in part desolate Regions, where unpolish'd Manners and Ignorance, as well in Religious as Worldly Affairs ride triumphant, and deprive the Natives of the true Use of those Blessings which Nature has, in so liberal and extraordinary a Manner, bestowed on some of these Countries. When we, therefore, compare the brutish and wretched Condition of these People, with the civiliz'd State of *Europe*, where better and more prudent Manners are cultivated; where Arts and Sciences flourish; where we have abundant Means to come to a true Knowledge of GOD, and his Worship, we have the greatest Reason to praise the Divine Goodness, to rejoice at our own happy State, and to deplore the Misery and Blindness of these People.

VII. AS for the Map itself, I thought it necessary in this Place, for the better Information and Satisfaction of the Curious, as well to give an Account of the Nature and Adjustment of it, as to assign my Reasons for some Things contain'd in it, and for several others which I have altered or omitted. And first, I think it proper to observe, that though the Dimensions of this Map are not so large as I could have wish'd, yet, as it is on two Sheets of the largest Royal Paper, it is double the Size of a common Map.

VIII. IT

VIII. It begins, in the *Weſt*, with the 50th Degree of Longitude, where the Borders of *Poland*, *Finnland* and *Courland* are ſituate, and ends in the *Eaſt*, at the *Streight* between *Jedſo* and *Terra de la Compagnie*, now call'd the *Streight* of *Uriets*; and for the Latitude, it is from 75 Degrees *North* above *Nova Zembla* and the *Mare Glaciale*, and reaches to 32 Degrees *South*, where the Empires of *China*, *India*, *Perſia* and *Turky*, together with the *Crim-Tartary* and *Poland* are the Confines. And here we are to obſerve, that if this very large Part of the habitable World, in its preſent State, with its Antiquities, and what has happen'd remarkable at every Place, were to have been brought within the Compaſs of one general Map, (as was deſir'd by many) it muſt have been of a Dimenſion four times as large as the preſent. And this might very well have been executed, ſince neither Materials nor Invention would have been wanting; but it was the exceſſive Charge of ſo great a Work, which alone hinder'd me from purſuing it. However, I ſhall, for that Reaſon, be the more exact and circumſtantial in the Hiſtori-Geographical Deſcription which accompanies it, and in another yet larger Work, which, by the Help of God, ſhall ſoon follow.

IX. In this Map, the Reader will find as ample a View of modern and ancient Particulars, as the Dimenſions would poſſibly allow; and, by Means of the compact and ſmall, yet legible Character, and Drawing, it comprehends almoſt twice as many remarkable Places, Rivers, Mountains, and different Nations, as the former and much larger Maps of this Kind; not excepting that of Mr. *Nicholas Wittſen.*

X. I have not only altered thoſe Names of Cities, Mountains, Rivers and Nations, that are either wrong ſpelt, or ill tranſcribed, in other Maps; but have alſo thrown out ſuch Names, as, in the former Maps of this Part of the World, have ſerved to fill up Chaſms, but, in Reality, never were in Uſe with the Inhabitants of theſe Countries. For Inſtance: *Lucamoria*, a Province no where known, either in *Ruſſia* or *Siberia*. So likewiſe in *Iſbrand Ides*'s Remarks, annex'd to his Map, we find *Urbs Rudack reſidentia Kutuchtæ Lamæ*, which ſhould be *Dolong Kuduck*, i. e. the ſeven Springs, where the *Kutuchta Lama* ſometimes pitches his Camp. Here *Isbrand* has made a City of a moveable Camp:

For theſe *Mungals*, whoſe Patriarch is *Lama*, have no Cities, but rove from one Place to another.

XI. So, in *Wittſen*'s Map, we have *Step* or *Deſertum Kuzukow:* But this is no proper Name, and ſignifies only a Deſart or Wilderneſs, in which theſe People wander from Place to Place: For *Kutzewai*, in the *Ruſſian* Language, denotes to move, or go from one Place to another (5). Farther, the Sea between *Archangel* and *Nova Zembla* is call'd *Mouremanskoimore.* But this Word, in the *Sclavonian* Language, ſignifies no more than the *Sea of the Sea-People*, (that is, of thoſe People who inhabit near it) which can be no Proper Name. The Occaſion of all this has been, that the Names of Nations, Countries, *&c.* have not been juſtly interpreted to Geographers and Travellers.

XII. In the ancient Maps, are ſeveral odd Names to be found, ſuch as, *Locate*, *Serga*, *Kynros*, *Canduana*, *Doviſival*, *montes Aladidi*, *Gibar*, and many Hundred other *inania nomina ſine memoria Hiſtoriarum* (as *Cellarius* calls them); theſe are ſo obſcure, that I cannot ſo much as gueſs at their Meaning; for the *Tartars* never heard of any ſuch, nor are there any Traces of them to be found in the Remains of Antiquity; I ſhall therefore paſs them over in Silence.

XIII. Nevertheless, we find ſome Names in the ancient Geographers and their Maps, which bear a tolerable Reſemblance to thoſe of our Times; but they are handed down with ſo corrupt a Pronunciation, that they are no otherways intelligible but by the Connexion, and ſome Circumſtances of Hiſtory, which fall in with the *Tartarian* and other Relations, of which I ſhall in the Sequel give ſome Inſtances: Let it here ſuffice, that I only mention what I have obſerv'd in ancient Authors, as *Curtius*, *Pliny*, &c. who, for inſtance, call Mount-*Pamer*, which Name it retains to this Day, *Paropamiſus.* So they uſe *Jaxartes*, or the falſe *Tanais*, upon

(5) *Hintzelman*, in his Preface to the *Alcoran* (in the ſecond Leaf, Lit. *k*) makes the ſame Complaint, citing the Words *Mons-Gebell* and *Deſertum Barka*, which ſtand in the Maps for Proper Names, and yet are only Appellatives; for tho' *Barka* ſignify nothing but a *Deſart* or *Wilderneſs*, and *Gebell*, in general, a *Mountain*; many Geographers, who were unskill'd in the *Arabick* Tongue, have been miſtaken, in underſtanding, by theſe Words, certain Countries and Regions, which they ſuppoſe to have been call'd *Barka* and *Gebell:* And *Hubner*, when he is about to give a Deſcription of this Part of the World, and of *Tartary*, begins with theſe Words: *There is ſuch a Confuſion in the Maps of theſe Countries, that one can hardly know in what manner to make a Deſcription of them*; which Complaints I now hope, in a great Meaſure, to remove.

upon which *Alexander the Great* built the latter *Alexandria*, inſtead of *Ikſertes*; for, in the ancient *Scytho-Mungalian* Language, *yk* ſignifies *great*, according to which, this Word denotes the great River of *Sært*, eſpecially ſince it is call'd to this Hour *Sært*, or *Ykſært*; and the *Miſſionaries*, as *Plan*, *Carp*, and *Rubriquis*, are guilty of the ſame Miſtake, when inſtead of *Yk-Mungal* they write *Jek.-Mungal*. I even believe it to be very difficult to underſtand the ancient *Scythian* Geography and Hiſtory rightly, if we do not carefully ſtudy the modern, and compare them diligently together. For inſtance, when *Ptolemy* (*Lib.* 8.) mentions the City of *Orthura*, or *Ottoracarra*, which *Pliny* calls *Attacoras*, he places it, in his Tables, quite wrong, near the *Weſtern* Confines of *China*; for it is evident, that the City of *Othurar*, a Place famous in former Times, and well known to this Day, where the Great *Tamerlan* dy'd (tho' he was bury'd in the City of *Caſchi*, not far from the Capital *Samarcand*) lies 120 Miles *Eaſtward* from the *Caſpian* Sea, in the *Eaſtern Turkeſtan*. Through this Miſtake, *Ptolemy* has miſled thoſe Writers who have follow'd his *Tables*; as *Cellarius*, in his *Notitia orbis antiqui*, where he joins the Mountains *Otthuras*, or *Ottoracorras*, to the *Chineſe* or *Serian* Mountains; ſo likewiſe, *George Hornius*, who, in his *Arca Noæ*, will have it that the City of *Turphan* is to be underſtood thereby, which however is above 150 Miles diſtant from *Othurar*. *The Reader will pleaſe to obſerve, as well here as elſewhere, when the Author mentions Miles, he means* German *Miles, which being reckon'd* 15 *to a Degree, one of them is equal to four* Engliſh Miles.

XIV. THUS alſo, when *Pliny* ſays, *Quid Thraces, quid Seres faciunt?* we are to underſtand, by the latter, a People very different from the *Chineſe*, (6) tho' they are now every where taken for the ſame; for how could *Pliny* miſunderſtand theſe for the *Chineſe*, ſince not only *Thrace* and *China* are at above 600 *German* Miles diſtance, but alſo there are ſituate, between them, in a direct

(6) The *Greeks* were the occaſion of the *Chineſe* being call'd *Seres* by the *Latins*, as the Jeſuit *Nicolaus Trigantius* informs us. It is, however, probable that they, like other People of *North Aſia*, got alſo the Name *Ser* and *Seres* in the Time of *Alexander M.* And becauſe, formerly, Silk and ſilken Commodities came chiefly from *China*, and the *Seres* likewiſe dealt in this Commodity, they deriv'd theſe Names from *Serica*; tho' the Name *Seres* has quite another Origin, it being but an Appellative. *Cellarius* therefore (in his *Geographia antiqua, lib.* 3. *cap.* 24.) ſays very right, *Alii ut in Scythis, ita etiam in Seribus locandis mire variarunt.*

Line, the fineſt Countries that ever were inhabited, *viz.* the *Usbeck-Tartary*, the Empire of *Caſchkar*, the great Country of *Choteen*, *Thibet*, &c. How is it then poſſible, I ſay, he ſhould have join'd the *Thracians* with the *Chineſe* (or, as they were call'd, *Seres*) and paſs'd by theſe fine Countries? Beſides, it is very well known, that the *Chineſe* ſeldom or never quit their own happy Regions, to go into other Countries, for the ſake of Traffick; on the contrary, whoever is deſirous of their Commodities muſt fetch them. I have hinted at, and corrected, many of the like Miſtakes, not only in *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, *Rubriquis*, *Goes*, and other ancient Writers, but in the Moderns alſo.

XV. FOR Inſtance, *Monſ. Petis de la Croix* (in his *Genghiz-Chan*, p. 146.) ſays, that *Hyarcan* is the City of *Caſchgar:* And yet the latter is the ancient, and the former the preſent Capital of the Empire of *Caſchgar*, they being diſtant five Days Journey from each other; and the former now call'd *Jærkan*. So, likewiſe, *in his Hiſt. de Timur-Beck (Tom.* II. p. 17. *Not. d.)* he places the Mountain *Altai* in 60 Degrees of Latitude, which is but in between 52 and 53. What Difficulties muſt not therefore the Learned encounter, who ſhould pretend to ſeek the Etymology of ſuch Names, with any Certainty, in *Latin* and *Greek* Authors? On theſe and the like Accounts, many Writers in Geography have Reaſon to complain; Read, for Inſtance, *Remark* 29. *p.* 35. on *Profeſſ.* Polycarp Leyſer's *Thoughts of the Uſefulneſs and Neceſſity of Geography*, and *Profeſſor* Eberhard David Hauber's III. *Diſcourſe*, p. 147. *on the preſent State of Geography.*

XVI. AND tho' ſome Things have indeed been ſince corrected, eſpecially in the Map printed at *Leyden*, in 1726, which the ſaid *Hauber* quotes (in his XII. *Diſcourſe*, p. 89.) and gives great Commendation of, yet not only this, but alſo the laſt, which was publiſh'db y *Homan*, of this Part of the World, are for the moſt Part, Copies of thoſe Maps which I made in 1715. and 1718. at *Tobolsky*, (the Fate of which, and what happen'd to me concerning them, I mention'd in my *Prodrome.)* Both Maps were drawn upon two Sheets of Royal Paper, but the Perſons into whoſe Hands they fell, and by whom they were publiſh'd, made ſome few Alterations (as of the *Caſpian Sea*, for Inſtance) and drew them into a narrower Compaſs.

XVII. ON

XVII. On this Occaſion, I muſt take Notice, that after my Return out of *Tartary*, I my ſelf obſerved many Faults in theſe Maps of mine, which had been occaſion'd through the falſe Accounts given me by Travellers in *Tobolſky*, where I drew them, from their Relations: For finding one of them in *Muſcow*, at my Return from *Siberia*, in 1723, the ſame which I had ſent thither in 1718; though, at that Time, it was no more mine, but belonged to another Perſon; all the Advantage I could make of it was, only to collate it with the new Obſervations I had made, upon my Journy to *Muſcow*. A great Difference, therefore, will be found, between this Map and the former; becauſe (as I ſaid above) I afterwards, on my Return, obſerved Things better, and with greater Accuracy; and not only corrected many Things in this preſent Map, but alſo augmented it with ſeveral new Remarks.

XVIII. As for the Diviſion of this Map into Empires, Provinces, and different Nations, the *Ruſſian Empire*, which is diſtinguiſhed, by its principal Boundaries, from thoſe Countries that do not belong to it, is not, indeed, divided into ten Governments, among which *Siberia* is one, according to the modern Method: But *Ruſſia Proper* is divided, as formerly, into *Great*, *Leſſer* and *White Ruſſia*; and thoſe Countries which afterwards were added to it, are left ſeparate. Thus the whole Empire of *Ruſſia*, as well that Part which lies on the Side of *Europe*, as that which is contain'd in *North Aſia*, is divided into ſix Parts, *viz.* in *Europe* are, (1.) *Ruſſia*, properly ſo called; (2.) The Kingdom of *Aſtracan*; and (3.) That of *Caſan*; (4.) *Great Permia*; (5.) *Samogædia*; and (6.) Thoſe Countries which have been added to it ſince the Peace of *Neuſtadt*; which no Geographer had before deſcribed with ſo much Exactneſs. Beſides, if I had deſcribed the new Titles of the ten Governments, and mark'd their inward Bounds upon the Map, upon the Side of *Europe*, it would only have cauſed an Obſcurity in the Draught, as well with Regard to the Character as the Colouring, for want of Room, and on Account of the Smallneſs of the Paper.

XIX. Nevertheless, in *Siberia*, where I was not ſo ſtreighten'd for Room, I have obſerved the Diviſion of the Provinces, according to the modern Method, and have given the

Names of the *Pagan* Inhabitants belonging to each Government, or Lordſhip. Among others, I have likewiſe deſcribed the Country of *Kamtſchatki*, otherwiſe called *Terra de Jedſo*, which was diſcover'd by the *Ruſſians*, about 40 or 50 Years ago: For as there were no certain and particular Bounds, among the *Tartars* and *Heathens*, before the *Ruſſians* came into *Siberia*, no Diviſion could be made according to their ancient State; but I was obliged to follow that Diviſion, which was regulated in the latter Years of my reſiding there. The many Diſtricts and Lordſhips, of which it conſiſted, were then divided into ſix principal Governments; each of which has its ſeperate Magiſtrate; but, all together, are under the Juriſdiction of the Governour of *Siberia*. Theſe are, (1.) *Solikamſkoi*; (2.) *Toboll*; (3.) *Bereſowa*; (4.) *Jeniſæi*; (5.) *Jakuhtſkoi*; and, (6.) *Irkuhtſkoi*; over all which the Governour of *Siberia* is Ruler; and to him, as Chief, even their Magiſtrates are reſponſible.

XX. On the other Hand, as for *Ruſſia*, properly ſo called, and other *European* Countries belonging to it, I ſhall not only clearly deſcribe the Boundaries of the ten Governments therein contained, according to the modern Diviſion, with the greater Exactneſs, in my Hiſtori-Geographical Deſcription; but ſhall treat, with the utmoſt Perſpicuity, of thoſe Cities, Countries, Nations, Mountains and Rivers, on which Antiquity furniſhes any Thing to be compared with, or explained by, what now actually remains.

XXI. For Inſtance; Conſult *Conſtantin Porphyrogeneta de Adminiſtr. Imper. Cap.* ix. *p.* 15. where he calls the City of *Kiow*, *Cioba*; the City of *Novogrod*, *Nemogardia*; *Swetoſlaw* or *Swentoſlaw*, *Rurik*'s Nephew, he calls *Spendoſlabus*, and his Father *Igar*, *Ingor*. He afterwards gives the Name of *Cribetæeni* to thoſe Nations of the *Sclavi*, who are called *Crewiſti* or *Crivitzer*, from whom the *Lithuanians*, to this Day, call *Ruſſia*, *Creven Sembla*; and thoſe which the *Ruſſians* diſtinguiſh by the Name of *Petſchenejians*, he calls *Patzinnaci*: If any one, therefore, will be at the Trouble to purſue this Sketch, and make a Map, according to the ancient State of thoſe Countries, or one of *Ruſſia* only, according to the preſent State thereof; this Map, and the Hiſtori-Geographical Deſcription which accompanies it, will,

will, in every Reſpect, be a ſure Guide for him, and furniſh him with all the Materials he can deſire.

XXII. I COME next to *Tartary*, as it is repreſented entire in this Map; it is now divided into *Great* and *Leſſer Tartary*; tho', in former Times, they both were ſubject to one Chief or Great *Tartar-Chan*. The firſt of theſe was *Zingis Chan* (7), who laid the Foundation of this *Tartarian Monarchy*, which, ſoon after his Death, was not only divided into four principal Parts; *viz.* (1.) *Kaptſchak*; (2.) *Zagarai*; (3.) *Carakitay*; and, (4.) *Moguliſtan:* But afterwards was ſubdivided, and fell under the Government of ſeveral Chiefs, or Princes: But, to avoid Confuſion, I have divided all *Tartary* into ſix Parts. Firſt, The *Leſſer Tartary*, moſt of which is in *Europe*, and but a ſmall Part of it in *Aſia*; and the Princes or Chiefs whereof, are Vaſſals to the *Turkiſh* and *Ruſſian* Emperors, and the Kings of *Perſia*. The ſecond Diviſion is that on the Side of *Aſia*, which may be comprehended under the Name of *Uſbeck*, including the *Turcomanni*, who live on the *Eaſt* Side of the *Caſpian* Sea; the *Uſbecks*, properly ſo called, and the *Coſaci Horda*, together with the *Carakacalpaki*, who are *Confederates* of the latter. The third Part contains the independent Great *Kalmuck-Tartary*, under Government of their *Contaiſch*, together with the Countries conquer'd by him and his Predeceſſors; *viz.* the Kingdom of *Caſchgar*, or *Little Buchary*. The fourth is the *Mungalian Empire*, whoſe Inhabitants are diſtinguiſh'd, by our Authors, with the Name of *Weſt* or *Tanuan Tartars*. The fifth is the *Eaſtern*, or *Chineſe Tartary*, which contains the *Nyuchean* and *Jupian Tartars*. For the ſixth Part, I have taken the Kingdoms of *Thibet* and *Tanguth*, where *Dalai Lama*, or *Preſter John*, has his Reſidence, the Civil Government of which is entruſted to two Viceroys or *Chans*; but the Soldiers are a Sort of *Kalmucks*, call'd *Coſchuith*, or *Coſchioth*.

XXIII. THO' theſe Nations have not, indeed, every where their certain Boundaries, yet I have been ſo far inform'd, that certain Limits may be aſſign'd, how far they change their Camps, and make Excurſions, in order to protect them. The *Chontaiſch Kalmucks* pretend to a much larger Extent of Dominions, towards the *North*,

(7) *Zingis*, or *Cinghiz-Chan*, was born in the Twelfth Century, *Anno* 1164.

North, than they now poſſeſs; for ſince the *Ruſſians* have made themſelves Maſters of almoſt the whole River *Irtiſh*, and built ſeveral ſmall Fortreſſes upon it, they have loſt a good Part of their former Poſſeſſions.

XXIV. I AM farther to acquaint the Reader, that I have taken the Grounds or Plan for this Map, from the Globes of the *French* Geographers (who place the firſt Meridian at the Iſland of *Ferro*) and chiefly from thoſe of Mr. *de l'Iſle*, who ſuppoſes the City of *Tobolsky* to be exactly in the 90th Degree of Longitude; but as it is certain, from Experience, that this Reckoning places it too far towards the *Eaſt*, I have put the City of *Tobolsky*, in my Map, in the Longitude of 88 Degrees.

XXV. As I paſs'd moſt of the Time of my Captivity in this Place, where, likewiſe, I made my firſt Map (which fell into other Hands, as I have mention'd in my *Prodrome*) I have taken the ſaid Longitude of the City of *Tobolsky* for my firſt Meridian, and from this, both *Weſt* and *Eaſt*, have ſettled two other principal *Meridians*, *viz.* that of *Muſcow* Weſtward, to which the neareſt Way from *Tobolsky* has not only been meaſur'd, and frequently travell'd by the *Swedes*, but the Diſtances alſo between the Cities of *Hamburg*, *Muſcow* and *Tobolsky* have been obſerv'd, by Eclipſes, which happen'd during our Captivity, and compar'd with the aforeſaid Menſuration; according to which the City of *Muſcow*, in my Map, is plac'd juſt under the 60th Degree of Longitude.

XXVI. As for the other principal *Meridian*, which I ſettled *Eaſtwards*, I was enabled to do it, by exact Information from ſome Miſſionaries in *China*, who aſſured me, that the laſt *Ruſſian* Frontier-Town, towards the *Chineſe*, or *Eaſt Tartary*, the Capital City of *Dauria*, call'd *Nerſchinſkoi*, lies, within a few Minutes, under the ſame *Meridian*, or Degree of Longitude, with the City of *Peking*, the Capital of *China*. And, as the Way from *Tobolſky*, which goes directly through the *Barabinzian Tartary*, the City of *Tomſkoi*, the Plain of *Bargu* (8), and ſo on to *Nerſchinſkoi*, has not only been meaſured, and often travelled by my Countrymen; but the Longitude alſo, between the City of *Tobolſky* and *Tomſkoi*, has been obſerved by us, by Means of Eclipſes, to be one hour and ten Minutes; I have, with theſe Helps,

(8) The Name *Bargu* is to be found in the old Map of *Great Tartary*, tho' in a very wrong Place, *viz.* towards the *Mare Glaciale*.

Helps, compar'd the whole Diſtance between *Tobolſky* and *Nerſchinſkoi*, which, as I have ſaid above, lies under the ſame *Meridian* with *Peking*, and ſo found the Longitude thither to be upon pretty ſure Grounds; but though this Longitude agrees tolerably well with what *de l'Iſle* has made it; I could not follow him in the Latitude in many Places, having, by Experience, detected his Errors; among which, one is his making the City of *Tobolſky* to be ſomething above the 60th Degree, in which he, perhaps, followed *de Witt*'s Map.

XXVII. THESE Miſtakes have, in a great Meaſure, ariſen from too great Dependance upon the Relations of Travellers, and their Computations of the *Ruſſian* Miles, which formerly have not been rightly proportioned to a Degree of fifteen *German* Miles. A flagrant Proof of this, we have in the Road between *Muſcow* and *Peterſburg*, which formerly was computed to be 700 *Werſts*, each *Werſt* of 1500 *Ruſſian* Ells, or *Arſchins:* But ſince a new and more direct Way has been cut, between theſe two Cities, it is found to be no more than 555 *Werſts*, each of 1500 *Arſchins*. By which Difference, in ſo ſmall a Diſtance, it plainly appears what may be expected in that of ſix or 8000 *Werſts*, when the Way bends, ſometimes towards the *North*, and then again as much *Southward*.

XXVIII. FOR theſe Reaſons, I was obliged, beſides the ordinary Meaſuring Rod, to uſe a Scale, on which a Degree was divided into 120 *Werſts*; though the *Ruſſian Mathematicians* have found, upon Trial made, in Winter Time, on the Lake of *Ladoga*, that no more than 104 *Werſts*, and 86 *Arſchins*, or Ells, in a direct Line, go to a Degree of fifteen *German* Miles: Which Meaſure may do in very ſmall particular Maps, but not in large general ones, and great Diſtances; as I, and my Aſſiſtant *Captain Materni* found, while we were employ'd in making this Map; for taking the *Elevations of the Pole*, a Degree reckon'd at 104 *Werſts*, never agreed with fifteen *German* Miles, though it tallied very exactly with 120; which is occaſion'd, as I have already mention'd, only by the winding of the Roads.

XXIX. AND as we both took Obſervations, in moſt Places of *Ruſſia* and *Siberia*, between the 61 and 55 Degrees of Latitude, and ſaw thoſe of the *Ruſſian* Navigators, as far as the 48 Degree,

(9) it is eaſy to conceive, by what has been ſaid, that our Computation may be pretty well depended upon, ſince we have gone upon ſuch ſure Foundations ourſelves, and have follow'd the beſt Accounts which could be got of the Places we had not an Opportunity of viſiting in Perſon.

XXX. BUT as, in the Countries and Cities in this *North* Part of *Aſia*, the Nature of Things is very different from thoſe in *Europe*, becauſe moſt of the *Tartarian* Nations roving about, and the Reſidences of their *Chams* being never fix'd long in one Place, their Cities and Towns being alſo compos'd of Houſes or Huts, built either of Wood or Bricks, ſlightly dry'd in the Sun, it is, therefore, no Wonder that, by Reaſon of the Wars which theſe Nations have ſometimes had, for ſeveral Centuries together, with one another, their Cities and Towns have been ſo deſtroy'd, that even the Ruins of them are no more to be ſeen.

XXXI. AND this is the Reaſon, why the preſent Inhabitants know nothing of the ancient Names, which *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, *Rubriquis*, *Goes*, and others, have nevertheleſs mention'd; it is, therefore, my Opinion, that, withRegard to the ancient Geography, it would have been a happyThing, eſpecially in thoſe Countries, if the ancient Mathematicians, when they took the Height of the Pole, in different Cities and Villages, had alſo obſerv'd the Mouths of the chief Rivers, and where they emptied themſelves, as alſo the Height of the moſt remarkable Mountains, which remain for ever, and had tranſmitted them to Poſterity. This I recommend to the curious Travellers of the preſent Time, who go thro' theſe Countries, and eſpecially to thoſe who are ſkill'd in Mathematicks; as has been here and there obſerv'd by me, as far as my Travels would allow of it.

XXXII. HAVING thus taken Care to make this Map as circumſtantial and exact as poſſible, I muſt mention thus much concerning the Boundaries between *Europe* and *Aſia*; that whereas, in ſeveral new Maps, from an Uncertainty where to place them, they have

(9) In the Year 1720. a *Ruſſian* Major-General, nam'd *Lycharow*, was ſent with ſome new rais'd Regiments into *Siberia*, up the River *Irtiſh*, to endeavour to get a true Information of the Gold Sand which had made ſo much Noiſe, and of which the Governour, *Knees Gagarin*, had ſent ſome Pounds to Court; there were with him two Perſons skill'd in Navigation, who made Obſervations of theElevation of the Pole, at every Place they came to, on the River *Irtiſh*. Of this Expedition, I ſhall give a full Deſcription in another Place.

have been wholly left out, I have ſhew'd them ſo plain in mine, that they will remain determin'd for ever; of which I ſhall have Occaſion to ſay more below.

XXXIII. I MUST not forget to mention, with Reſpect to the *Caſpian Sea*, that I have not only diligently conſulted all the new Maps of it, and carefully perus'd the Relations communicated to me by Mr. *Fabricius*, who had been, with the Character of a publick Miniſter, ſeveral Times in *Perſia*, and had procur'd very exact Intelligences of this Sea; but I have alſo got Informations myſelf, from thoſe Perſons, who were ſome Years ago, in Perſon, in the unfortunate Expedition of *Alexander Beckewitz*, on the *Eaſt* Side of the *Caſpian* Sea, and afterwards return'd out of their Captivity, from *Turcomannia*, and the *Uſbeck-Tartary*, to *Ruſſia*; among whom were ſome *Swedes* and *Germans*, who gave me the beſt Account of it; and according to all theſe Relations, after having compar'd them together, I have plac'd the *Caſpian* Sea, in this Map, and deſign'd it with all the Particularities they have remark'd.

XXXIV. THE ſame Method, I have obſerv'd, with all other remote Places, where I could not go myſelf; as in thoſe fartheſt *Eaſt*, towards the Country of *Kamtſchatki*, or the Iſland of *Jedſo*; whither, however, ſome others of our *Swediſh* Officers were ſent, by the Governour, *Knees Gagarin*, who brought a very good Account of them (10). So likewiſe, in the *Northern* Parts, towards *Nova Zembla*; of which I can ſay thus much on the beſt Authority, that the *Eaſt* Side thereof, at the Mouths of the great Rivers *Oby* and *Jeniſei*, is join'd to *Siberia*, partly by immoveable Mountains of Ice, and partly by an *Iſthmus*. I have ſpoken with Perſons, who have gone ſome Days Journey on this ſmall Neck of Land, which reaches from the *Terra Firma*, or *Tartarian* Side, as it is call'd, to *Nova Zembla*, and who have ſeen the *Mare Glaciale*, and Mountains of Ice, on both Sides of that *Iſthmus*. And this I can aſſert farther, that diſcourſing once, about this Matter, with a Man of

(10) About the Year 1713. the then Governour, *Knees Gagarin*, ſent a *Swediſh* Corporal, who formerly had been a Ship-Carpenter, up to *Kamtſchatki*, who built a ſmall Veſſel there only of *Aſpen* and *Birch*, there being no other Wood to be found thereabouts, and actually went with it, from the Continent, over the Gulf *Kamtſchatki*, and back again; on which Return he ſpent only Six Days. And in the Year 1716. the ſame Governour ſent a *Swediſh* Lieutenant thither, named *Mullyn*, on the ſame Deſign; who, at his Return, brought the ſame Report, that there was no other Wood but the aforemention'd to be found thereabouts, unleſs brought thither from remote Places.

80 Years of Age, who formerly liv'd in *Nova Mangazeia*, or *Turochanski* (11), but was afterwards in *Tobolsky*, where I was quarter'd with him; he told me, that, during his Stay in *Turochanski*, it happen'd, that a *Ruſſian* Servant, running away from his Maſter, and being apprehenſive that he might purſue him, went along this *Iſthmus*, on Foot, towards the *North*, and came to *Nova Zembla*, from whence he paſs'd, on the *North* ſide of the Sea of *Taſowskoi*, and ſo came out again by the *Streight* of *Weygatz*, the Ice being firm, at the Mouth of the River *Oby* (12).

XXXV. THIS ancient Man told me, at the ſame Time, that the Inhabitants of the City of *Turochanski* had ſtill ſeveral Things to produce, belonging to ſome *Dutch* Ships formerly caſt away in the *More*, or *Guba Taſoſſkoi*, *viz.* Arms, Swords, Halberds, *&c.* which Account agrees very well with what we have in ſeveral Northern Voyages; For Inſtance, with the Treatiſe entitled, *Nouveau Voyage vers la Septentrion*, *Amſterdam*, *Anno* 1708, and *Capellus's Vorſtellung des Norden*, &c. where we find, that many Ships, which have formerly attempted a Paſſage, by the *Streight* of *Weygatz*, have been loſt in thoſe Parts. And as ſome Maps have been already made, in the Manner I have before deſcrib'd, joining *Nova Zembla* by an *Iſthmus*, I ſhall plainly ſhew (as well from *Zordragers alten und neuen Groenlaendiſchen Geſchichte*, *Anno* 1723. as from the Information I have procur'd myſelf) when I come to that Part of the Work, where I give a Deſcription of the Iſland of *Nova Zembla*, how far there may be any reaſonable Hopes of finding the Paſſage, ſo often attempted, by the *Streight* of *Weygatz*. Thus much I thought neceſſary to acquaint the Reader concerning the Map itſelf.

XXXVI. I SHALL now, to conclude, mention ſomething of the Eſcutcheons, with which this Map is embelliſh'd. The Dedication of it is to his Majeſty the King of *Sweden*, my moſt gracious Sovereign, who has hitherto vouchſaf'd me his Royal Protection and particular Favour; for, as a Vaſſal of this Kingdom, I think I have the greateſt Reaſon to offer myſelf, and all my poor Services, with an humble Submiſſion, to his Majeſty and that Crown;

(11) The City of *Turochanski* lies upon the River *Jencſei*, near the Mouth of it, where it falls into the Sea.

(12) Compare with this *C. G. Zorydrager's alte und neue Groenlaendiſche Geſchichte*, p. 174.

Crown; and to this Dedication I have added the Arms of that Kingdom.

XXXVII. As to the Title of the Map, the Eſcutcheons in which it is contain'd repreſent as follows: The Title of the Hiſtori-Geographical Deſcription, which accompanies this Map, having Regard to the *North* and *Eaſtern* Part of *Europe* and *Aſia*, and this being ſeparated by the Boundaries of *Europe* and *Aſia*, the *Riphæan* Mountains, and conſequently the *European* Part lying *Weſtward*, and the *Aſiatick Eaſtward*, oppoſite to each other, I have denoted them by two Eſcutcheons, which ſtand upon two different Mountains, *viz.* the *Caucaſus*, lying *Weſt*, towards *Europe*, and the *Taurus*, that ſtretches *Eaſt*, to *India*. The Mountains which are ſituate at a Diſtance, on the Right of the *Taurus*, towards the *North*, denote the *Imaus*, which divides the *Aſiatick Scythia*, one Part lying within, and the other without that Mountain.

XXXVIII. The Mountains on the Left of the *Caucaſus*, which run Eaſtward, repreſent the *Rhymnician* and *Riphæan* Mountains (or as the *Sclavonians* and *Ruſſians* call them, the *Pojas Semnoi*, that is, *the Girdle of the World)* which, at the ſame Time (as I have obſerv'd above) ſeparate *Europe* and *Aſia*; but of this more in its proper Place.

XXXIX. At the Bottom of this Eſcutcheon is repreſented *Cerberus* coming out of *Tartarus* (or Hell); by which Term the *Romans* probably alluded to the ancient People of *Tartary*, who are reported to have been extremely rude and barbarous; and as thoſe of the preſent Times are not much better, but, in their Manners and Cuſtoms, are very like their Anceſtors, this *Tartarus* is ſuppos'd to include the preſent Inhabitants of the *Leſſer* and *Greater Tartary*, which have one Origin, and were formerly one Nation.

XL. The Ornament about the Eſcutcheon, towards the *North*, repreſents two Whales, ſpouting out the *Mare Glaciale*, in which Sea they are caught, upon the Tails of which certain Animals are repreſented, *viz.* on one ſide a Bear, and on the other a Morſe, which Animals live upon and near the *Mare Glaciale*, and feed on dead Whales, and are there ſhot, or knock'd on the Head, by the *Samojedes*.

XLI. FARTHER towards the *North*-Pole, the cold and impetuous *North* Winds are repreſented, in the Air, and above theſe appear two flying Angels, holding, with one Hand, the Ribbon by which the Eſcutcheons are faſten'd together, and ſupporting the whole Eſcutcheon, and having, in the other Hand, a Trumpet, thro' which they blow, and give Intelligence to *Weſt* and *Eaſt*.

XLII. THE Mountains I have mention'd, and the outward Ornaments of the Eſcutcheons, being an Alluſion to the preſent exteriour State of thoſe Countries, the Pictures on the Inſide are the ſame, with Regard to certain fabulous Stories of Antiquity; *viz.* upon the *Weſt* Eſcutcheon is *Prometheus*, who, as the Story feigns, was, by *Jupiter*'s Command, chain'd down to Mount *Caucaſus*, where a Vulture was continually devouring his Liver, which grew again as faſt as it was conſumed, 'till *Vulcan* or *Hercules* came, and deliver'd him from his Torture (13).

XLIII. SEVERAL learned Men have given us their Opinions concerning the Mythology of the Ancients: And, among others, the late Baron *Leibnitz*, (in his *Miſcell. p.* 133.) has expreſs'd his Thoughts about it, to Mr. *Spanheim*, in theſe Words; *Nous apprennons par vôtre Calimachus, ce qu' on doit juger de l'Origine de la Mythologie ancienne; Il y a de l'Apparence, que des Hiſtoires y ſont cachées*, &c. And as well *Eckart*, *Bochart*, and that great Philoſopher, *Leibnitz* himſelf, have judged this Fable to be an ancient Alluſion to a real Hiſtory; ſee his *Miſcell. p.* 122. where he ſays; *Semper credidi, bello* Titanum *aut* Gigantum *cum Diis, indicari vel* Scytharum *vel* Celtarum *irruptiones in* Aſiam & Græciam *iis ſubjectam regibus, qui inter Deos ſunt relati*; Promethea, *qui inter* Titanes *habetur*, Scytham *fuiſſe, indicat alligatio ad* Caucaſum *juſſu* Jovis, *quod nihil aliud deſignare putem, quam excluſionem* Scythicorum *Populorum excubiis ad* Caſpias *collatis*, &c. I, for my Part, ſhall prove, in its proper Place, that this has a farther Alluſion than that of Mr. *Leibnitz*; and has Relation to an Incident which really happen'd, on Mount *Caucaſus*, of which not only a Deſcription is to be found, in ſeveral *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* Writers, but, likewiſe, all the Inhabitants of theſe *North-Eaſtern*

(13) Here the Reader may conſult *Anonymus allerneueſten Staat von Caſan, Aſtracan*, &c. p. 238. who has collected all that has been ſaid of this Alluſion from other Authors, and has given a very good Deſcription of it; likewiſe the *Swediſh* Library, Part I. in 4*to*. *Stockholm*, 1728. *p.* 21. *not.* 3.

Eaſtern Regions, to this Day, believe it to be a true Story, and what really happen'd; and the *Mungals* commemorate it by a Feſtival: Nay, it is ſo expreſs to the Purpoſe, that an Application may eaſily be made of it to all the Circumſtances feign'd by the *Greeks*.

XLIV. As the Deliverance of *Prometheus*, from his Torture, was effected by *Vulcan* or *Hercules*, who kill'd the Vulture with his Bow and Arrows, *Hercules*, and his Son *Scythas*, are repreſented on the oppoſite Eſcutcheon; the latter being, according to *Herodotus*, the Progenitor of all the *Scythians*, and the Inventor of Bows and Arrows: Which Repreſentation has likewiſe its Grounds, in the Hiſtory I have juſt mentioned, and ſhall be explain'd in its proper Place.

XLV. THE third Eſcutcheon, in which the Scales of Miles are contain'd, repreſents Captivity, by a large Mouth open, in which are ſeen two Captives, who, with Compaſſes in their Hands, ſet off the Meaſure in the Scale, to denote this Geographical Work in general. But the tedious Space of Time, in which it was privately carrying on, the many Hardſhips we went through in the Progreſs of it, and our Captivity giving Riſe to it, are denoted by the Words *per vincula*, upon a Label, at the Bottom. And farther, becauſe the Work was not made Publick in *Europe*, 'till our Releaſe happen'd by the Peace, that Incident is repreſented by the two Angels deſcending, and carrying, in one Hand, Branches of Palm, and with the other undrawing the Curtains, and, as it were, opening the Scene. The Branches of Palm, and the Labels tied round them, upon one of which is written, *Gloria in excelſis Deo*; and upon the other, *Pax in Terra*, repreſent the laſt Peace made in the *North* of *Europe*, which has produced a perfect Harmony among the Princes of thoſe Parts, and put an End to a War, which began with this Century. The Opening of the Scene ſignifies, that all Hindrances, which the Authors of this Work were encumber'd with, during their Captivity, are removed, and that they now are in a Capacity of communicating theſe Intelligences, which have been ſo long deſired by the curious Part of *Europe*.

SECT.

SECT. II.

Of the Diviſion of the Northern *Part of this Map*; viz. *of the* Empire *of* Ruſſia, *and its principal Boundaries*; *and of ſome Authors who have treated of this Subject.*

SUMMARY.

§. I. *THE* Northern *and* Eaſtern *Parts of* Europe *and* Aſia *diſtinguiſh'd into two principal Parts.* II. *The Boundaries of the* Northern *Part, or* Ruſſian Empire, *determined.* III. *The Longitude and Latitude of them.* IV. *A Character of the Writers who have written any Thing concerning* Ruſſia. V. *The Author's Motives for making a Deſcription of* Ruſſia *a Part of his Work; his firſt Deſign having been to give an Account of* Siberia *and* Tartary *only.* VI. *Remarks on ſome Articles in* Hubner's Staat's *and* Zeitung's Lexicon, *of which the Names are not to be found at all, or elſe are very corruptly written.* VII. *Why ſuch Errors may reaſonably be excuſed.* VIII. *Impediments the Author met with in writing his Deſcription of* Ruſſia. IX. *Some Circumſtances relating to the Reign of* Peter I. Emperor *of* Ruſſia. X. *What thoſe Manuſcripts were which this Monarch ſent to the* Royal Academy *of* Sciences *at* Paris. XI. *His Conference with Monſieur* de l'Iſle, *concerning the Whirlpool in the* Caſpian *Sea.* XII. *The Truth of that Relation confirm'd by thoſe of others. Whether the River* Wolga *gave Name to the* Bolgares? XIII. *The Author's Apology for his being brief, in his Account of the Cuſtoms and Manners of the* Ruſſians, *becauſe ſo many other Writers have treated of that Matter before him.*

§. I. IN the foregoing Section, I have treated of the general Diſtribution of this Map, and of its principal Diviſions; by which it appears, that this *Northern* and *Eaſtern* Part of *Europe* and *Aſia* is divided, with Reſpect to the Civil and Political Partition

tition thereof, into two principal Parts; *viz.* towards the *North*, into the *Empire* of *Ruſſia*; and towards the *South*, into the *Leſſer* and *Greater Tartary*. I think it, therefore, neceſſary, before I proceed farther, to make mention of certain Matters in general, which will not only give the Reader a more comprehenſive Idea of each Part, according to the Hiſtori-Geographical Deſcription; but alſo help him to form a clearer Conception of ſeveral material Things, which occur in that Deſcription; and, likewiſe, of the Names of Nations, and other *Tartarian* Terms, which have hitherto been foreign to us in *Europe*.

II. As for the *Northern* Part, or the *Empire* of *Ruſſia*, it borders upon the following Countries and Nations: That is, to the *Weſt*, on *Daniſh Lapland*, and *Swediſh Finnland*, together with Part of the *Gulph* of *Finnland*, and the *Baltick* or *Eaſt* Sea, as likewiſe on *Courland*, *Lithuania* and *Poland*. To the *South*, on the *European* Side, it borders upon the *Crim-Cuban-Circaſſian* and *Dageſtian Tartary*; and, in *Aſia*, on the *Northern* Banks of the *Caſpian* Sea; and farther, on thoſe *Tartarian* Nations, who are diſtinguiſh'd by the Names of *Kara-Kalpacki* (14), the *Coſaci Horda*, and the *Kontaian Kalmucks*. On the *South-Eaſt*, and Part of the *South*, it is ſurrounded by one Part of the *Mungalian Empire*, and by *Eaſt Tartary*: On the *Eaſt* and *North-Eaſt*, it is bounded by the *Eaſtern Ocean*, or the Sea of *Japan*, and the *Streights* of *Urietz* and *Anian*. And, finally, on the *North*, it is encompaſs'd by the *Mare Glaciale*, the *Pytziorian* Sea, and Part of that call'd the *Moure-Manſkoi*.

III. This large Extent of Land makes, in the Map, towards the *North*, according to its Political Diviſion, the whole *Empire* of *Ruſſia*: And if we conſider it in its preſent State, it comprehends in Length, from *Weſt* to *Eaſt*, (reaching from the Point of the Iſland *Oeſel*, to the *Streight* between the Iſle of *Jedſo* and *Terra de la Compagnie*, that is, from the 41ſt to the 172d Degree of Longitude;) an Extent of above 1200 *German* Miles, and conſequently is almoſt twice as long as all *Europe*. The Breadth, from *North* to *South*, (being not every where alike) from the *Pytziorian* Sea, and *Mare Glaciale*, in ſome Parts to 50, and

(14) That is, *black Cap*, in *Turkiſh*, becauſe they wear black Caps.

and in others to 41 Degrees of Latitude, is, in ſome Places, 300, and, in others, 400 *German* Miles.

IV. BEFORE I enter upon this large *Empire*, or *Northern* Part, a Word or two previouſly, or by Way of Inſtruction, will be neceſſary: For though, ſince the Beginning of this Century, and of late Years, ſeveral Deſcriptions of the *Ruſſian* Monarchy have been publiſhed, of which I have read the moſt; yet I have found, that not only the major Part of them ſolely regard the Preſent or Modern State thereof, and are in many Places very erroneous: But likewiſe, where ſome Writers have ſlightly touch'd on the Antiquity of this *Empire*, they have not ſufficiently diſtinguiſh'd between the Ancient and Modern Inhabitants thereof, and much leſs have they made any well-grounded Remarks on their Original Denominations (15). Beſides, they have miſtaken the Names of ſeveral Things, which differ very widely from one another, and ſuppos'd them to be ſynonimous: As *Ruſſia* and *Muſcovy*; *Czar* and *Great Duke*; *Ivan Waſilewitz Weliki* and *Ivan Waſilewitz Groſnoi*; which they have vainly imagin'd to be the ſame: And again, they have given, to ſeveral Things and Perſons, Names which they never had. For Inſtance, they have put *Iconomaſia* inſtead of *Anaſtaſia*; *Gabriel* for *Baſilius*, *Otokeſia* for *Eudocia*,; and have given *Demetrius* the Surname of *Monomachus*, which belongs to *Wladimir* the Second.

V. AND though, when I firſt undertook this Work, I did not intend to give a Deſcription of *Ruſſia* proper, but only of *Siberia* and *Tartary*; And to leave the former to others, who might have

(15) The ancient Inhabitants of *Ruſſia* were *Scythians*, *Sarmatians*, *Waragi*, *Pazinnaci*, *Neuri*, *Budini*, *Geloni*, *Avari*, &c. I ſhall here, as a Specimen, mention only whence ſome of them aſſum'd their Names. It is evident, that the *Avari* were deſcended from the *Hunns*, and intermix'd among the *Turkiſh* Nation; therefore they derive their Name from the latter. (And they had beſides ſeveral other Names); for *Avar*, or *Aware*, ſignifies, in the *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* Languages, not only *idle*, *ſlothful*, *lazy*, *vagabond*, and *wandering*, but alſo, *unjuſt*, *unrighteous*, and a *Tyrant*; and that the *Hunns* had all theſe fine Properties, and were, therefore, juſtly ſo call'd, cannot be deny'd. The *Geloni* were a *Grecian* Colony among the *Scythians*, who differ'd in their Manner of Living from the true *Scythians*, and till'd the Fields in *Sarmatia* and *Ruſſia*; they were, therefore, named according to their Profeſſion, for *Galahn* ſignifies, in the *Sclavonian* and *Ruſſian* Language, *arable Land which lies fallow*; and *Gale* in *Gothick* denotes the ſame. The *Budini*, who liv'd near theſe, got their Livelihood by breeding of Cattel; for the ſake of Paſture they remov'd from one Place to another, and were of *Bulgarian-Scythian* Extraction. Now, in the *Bulgarian* and *Hungarian* Languages, *Budoſas* ſignifies *wandering* or *ſtrolling about*. I deſign to explain theſe Things more at large when I come to the Deſcription of *Ruſſia*, in the Work itſelf.

have as good a Knowledge of it as my ſelf. Yet, out of a Love for Truth, and having hitherto ſeen nothing better publiſhed, I reſolved to make ſome Additions, founded on a greater Certainty, to thoſe Deſcriptions already extant, and thereby to amend them as much as was in my Power. And,

VI. More eſpecially, as I obſerv'd, that, in Dictionaries, many things which concern *Ruſſia*, *Siberia*, and *Tartary*, ſtood in great need of ſuch a Correction (16). In *Hubner*'s, *Staat*'s, and *Zeitung*'s *Lexicon* *, for Inſtance, the Reader will find the Names of many Countries, Places and Nations, which are either not at all in this Part of the World, or elſe corruptly written, or falſly deſcrib'd. To prove this, I will here quote ſome few Inſtances out of the ſaid *Hubner*'s *Lexicon*, viz.

Names	Pag.	Names	Pag.	Names	Pag.
Adima	27	*Jetſch* — —	894	*Tanzinskoy*	1863
Ajada	42	*Katmunde* ——	938	*Tarlinskoy*	1865
Allatur	67	*Kilske* — —	949	*Tumen* —	1947
Ali	65	*Kummotny Kluzion*	975	*Vitzora* ——	1998
Anagarskaye	95	*Linn* — —	1037	*Weliki Poyaſſa*	2091
Aponzoy	116	*Lucomoria* —	1061	*Wergloinomos*	2095
Aſchau	143	*Nicolska* ——	1260	*Weſina* —	2098
Boutan	284	*Papinowgorod*	1347	*Welikavitova*	2091
Chlopigorod	431	*Pole* — —	1414	*Romane* ——	1596
Czircaſſy	524	*Sooska* ——	1789	*Probaroy* —	1453
Giliaki	755	*Slohoda* ——	1822	*Tancinski* —	1861

VII. Now tho' all theſe are falſe, yet neither he nor others are to be blam'd, ſince they have follow'd thoſe Authors who have formerly treated on the ſame Subject, and who may have frequently been expos'd to the ſame Fate as I was; for in our Captivity (after the unfortunate Battel of *Pultawa*, whence we were carry'd into *Ruſſia* by Troops) ſeveral of my Comrades communicating to me the Obſervations they had made of the Roads, I found not one Journal in ten, that agreed with any other in the

(16) See Eleventh Edition, *Leipſick*, 1724.

* This Dictionary, which has borrow'd Part of its Title from our *Gazetteer*, is ſomething in the Nature of it, but is more general, and contains many other Articles, which are not *geographical*.

ſpelling of the Names of Places, or in Exactneſs, as to Diſtance of Miles. If then this happens, in theſe modern Times, can we wonder if we find the ſame in the Times of Antiquity, with Regard to Countries ſo remote from the *Greeks* and *Romans*, as I have obſerv'd above? Wherefore *Paulus Venetus*, becauſe he quotes many obſcure and unknown Names of Countries and Nations, which, at this Time, are difficult to be found (17), has been look'd upon by many to have given Relations, the Veracity of which are greatly to be queſtion'd; and yet in many Places he may be explain'd, if we do but underſtand his Language. And this Teſtimony *Martinus Martini* gives of him (in his *Atlantica*, p. 116.) when he ſays, *Et non pauci falſi Venetum, licet immerito, arguere ſunt conati: (And not a few have endeavour'd to convict* Venetus *of Falſities, tho' undeſervedly.)*

VIII. THIS, likewiſe, was one of the greateſt Difficulties, I met with, in writing my Deſcription of *Ruſſia*; There being ſo great a Number of Cities, and ſo many Roads thro' this *Empire*, to all the bordering Countries: But when I came to the Life and Reign of the *Emperour*, *Peter* the firſt, of glorious Memory, thoſe Difficulties encreas'd. It is no Secret, what great Alterations this Monarch made, in his Empire, from the very Beginning of his Reign; and it could not be otherwiſe, but that his Conduct muſt be grateful to ſome of the Inhabitants, and diſpleaſing to others; whence it happen'd, that Foreigners, who had not been Eye-Witneſſes of all theſe Things, from the Beginning, have been led away by very different Relations, from whence as various Concluſions have been drawn. For which Reaſons, when I was in *Ruſſia* my ſelf, after I had made what Enquiry I could, on every Side, I thought I could not do better, than to mention the Relations of both Parties, and leave the Deciſion to the Judgment of thoſe who are better acquainted with the Circumſtances of theſe Things, than I was: And I hope no Perſon will blame me, for uſing the utmoſt Impartiality, in treating of ſuch Things, as, in Part, have been unknown to Authors, and partly, for certain Reaſons, they have not thought fit to mention at all.

IX. FOR

(17) *Marci Pauli Veneti de Regionibus Orientalibus*, Lib. III. *edit. Andr. Müllerí Greifſenhagii. Colon. Brand.* 1671. 4*to.*

IX. For Inſtance, it is known to all the World, that Navigation was one of the Darling Delights of this Monarch, and Water was, as it were, His Element. But, in His Infancy, it was quite the Reverſe of this; For, from the ſixth to the fourteenth Year of His Age, He was ſo fearful of this Element, that He could not bear to look upon ſtanding, much leſs upon running, Water, eſpecially if attended with any Noiſe: For this Reaſon, He never walk'd in the Garden of His Palace, which is water'd by the River *Moſca*; Nor would He croſs over the ſmalleſt Brook, though on a Bridge, unleſs the Windows of His Coach were ſhut cloſe. I ſhall have Occaſion to ſpeak farther of this Matter, in the Sequel, and ſhall ſhew from what Cauſe this Dread of Water aroſe, and by what Means He was afterwards broke of it.

X. It is farther worthy our Remembrance, that this Monarch, when he was in *France*, was pleaſed to accept of being choſen a Member of the *Royal Academy* of *Sciences*; and being naturally very curious, He ſent, about the Year 1720, ſeveral ancient Writings, in the *Tangut*, *Kalmuck* and *Mungalian* Languages, from *Ruſſia* to *Paris*, in order to have them Interpreted; (of which, and the like Sort of Writings, I have alſo ſome Pieces in my Poſſeſſion, a Specimen whereof, I have inſerted in this Work:) It has been ſaid, as well in the *Gazets* of that Time, as in other later Relations, that theſe Writings were diſcover'd near the *Caſpian Sea*, not far from the River *Dauria* (18): Whereas they were found above 120 Miles farther to the *Eaſtward*, near the River *Irtiſch*, by the Troops who march'd from the City of *Tobolſky*, into the *Kalmuck-Tartary*. The like Miſtake prevails, in Reſpect to the River *Dauria*, and the Gold-Sand, which is reported to have been found therein.

XI. And when, in the Relations of ſome Authors, I have met with Particulars, which, tho' actually true, have been contradicted, or, at leaſt, call'd in Queſtion by others, I have confirmed them by my own Experience, when the Circumſtances have been known to me; *e.g.* *Mr. de l'Iſle*, (in his *Determ. Geograph.* inſerted in the *Memoires de l'Acad. Roy, des Scienc.*

(18) Vid. Eberhard. Dav. Haub. *nutzlicher Diſcurs vom gegenwaertigen Zuſtand der. Geograph.* p. 70.

ſpelling of the Names of Places, or in Exactneſs, as to Diſtance of Miles. If then this happens, in theſe modern Times, can we wonder if we find the ſame in the Times of Antiquity, with Regard to Countries ſo remote from the *Greeks* and *Romans*, as I have obſerv'd above? Whereſore *Paulus Venetus*, becauſe he quotes many obſcure and unknown Names of Countries and Nations, which, at this Time, are difficult to be found (17), has been look'd upon by many to have given Relations, the Veracity of which are greatly to be queſtion'd; and yet in many Places he may be explain'd, if we do but underſtand his Language. And this Teſtimony *Martinus Martini* gives of him (in his *Atlantica*, p. 116.) when he ſays, *Et non pauci falſi Venetum, licet immerito, arguere ſunt conati: (And not a few have endeavour'd to convict* Venetus *of Falſities, tho' undeſervedly.)*

VIII. THIS, likewiſe, was one of the greateſt Difficulties, I met with, in writing my Deſcription of *Ruſſia*; There being ſo great a Number of Cities, and ſo many Roads thro' this *Empire*, to all the bordering Countries: But when I came to the Life and Reign of the *Emperour*, *Peter* the firſt, of glorious Memory, thoſe Difficulties encreas'd. It is no Secret, what great Alterations this Monarch made, in his Empire, from the very Beginning of his Reign; and it could not be otherwiſe, but that his Conduct muſt be grateful to ſome of the Inhabitants, and diſpleaſing to others; whence it happen'd, that Foreigners, who had not been Eye-Witneſſes of all theſe Things, from the Beginning, have been led away by very different Relations, from whence as various Concluſions have been drawn. For which Reaſons, when I was in *Ruſſia* my ſelf, after I had made what Enquiry I could, on every Side, I thought I could not do better, than to mention the Relations of both Parties, and leave the Deciſion to the Judgment of thoſe who are better acquainted with the Circumſtances of theſe Things, than I was: And I hope no Perſon will blame me, for uſing the utmoſt Impartiality, in treating of ſuch Things, as, in Part, have been unknown to Authors, and partly, for certain Reaſons, they have not thought fit to mention at all.

IX. FOR

(17) *Marci Pauli Veneti de Regionibus Orientalibus*, Lib. III. *edit. Andr. Mülleri Greifſenhagii. Colon. Brand.* 1671. 4*to.*

IX. For Inſtance, it is known to all the World, that Navigation was one of the Darling Delights of this Monarch, and Water was, as it were, His Element. But, in His Infancy, it was quite the Reverſe of this; For, from the ſixth to the fourteenth Year of His Age, He was ſo fearful of this Element, that He could not bear to look upon ſtanding, much leſs upon running, Water, eſpecially if attended with any Noiſe: For this Reaſon, He never walk'd in the Garden of His Palace, which is water'd by the River *Moſca*; Nor would He croſs over the ſmalleſt Brook, though on a Bridge, unleſs the Windows of His Coach were ſhut cloſe. I ſhall have Occaſion to ſpeak farther of this Matter, in the Sequel, and ſhall ſhew from what Cauſe this Dread of Water aroſe, and by what Means He was afterwards broke of it.

X. It is farther worthy our Remembrance, that this Monarch, when he was in *France*, was pleaſed to accept of being choſen a Member of the *Royal Academy* of *Sciences*; and being naturally very curious, He ſent, about the Year 1720, ſeveral ancient Writings, in the *Tangut*, *Kalmuck* and *Mungalian* Languages, from *Ruſſia* to *Paris*, in order to have them Interpreted; (of which, and the like Sort of Writings, I have alſo ſome Pieces in my Poſſeſſion, a Specimen whereof, I have inſerted in this Work:) It has been ſaid, as well in the *Gazets* of that Time, as in other later Relations, that theſe Writings were diſcover'd near the *Caſpian Sea*, not far from the River *Dauria* (18): Whereas they were found above 120 Miles farther to the *Eaſtward*, near the River *Irtiſch*, by the Troops who march'd from the City of *Tobolſky*, into the *Kalmuck-Tartary*. The like Miſtake prevails, in Reſpect to the River *Dauria*, and the Gold-Sand, which is reported to have been found therein.

XI. And when, in the Relations of ſome Authors, I have met with Particulars, which, tho' actually true, have been contradicted, or, at leaſt, call'd in Queſtion by others, I have confirmed them by my own Experience, when the Circumſtances have been known to me; *e. g. Mr. de l'Iſle*, (in his *Determ. Geograph.* inſerted in the *Memoires de l'Acad. Roy, des Scienc.*

(18) Vid. Eberhard. Dav. Haub. *nutzlicher Diſcurs vom gegenwaertigen Zuſtand der Geograph.* p. 70.

1720. *p.* 495.) mentions the Diſcourſe, which His *Imperial* Majeſty, *Peter the firſt*, of glorious Memory, had held with him, concerning the Whirl-Pool in the *Caſpian Sea*, of which Ancient Authors, as *Curtius*, *Pliny*, and others have written; Now I can aver for Truth, that not only I have ſpoken with ſeveral *Swediſh* and *German* Officers, that were preſent at the Expedition of *Alexander Beckewitz*, along the *Eaſtern* Banks of the *Caſpian* Sea, who have aſſured me, that there is ſuch a Whirl-Pool, on the *Eaſtern* Side of this Sea; But alſo, it has been confirmed to me, by ſeveral *Tartars*, in *Tobolſky*, who have travelled into that Country, with this Addition, that, in the *Tartarian* and *Turkiſh* Languages, this Whirlpool is call'd *Carabugas*, *i. e.* (though *improperly*) the *terrible and ſmoaking Mouth*; Which perfectly agrees with what this Monarch ſaid of it to *Mr. de l'Iſle*.

XII. SEVERAL Authors have been of Opinion, that the *Bolgares*, or *Bulgares*, had their Name from the River *Wolga* (19); (the *Greeks* having changed *W.* into *B.*) Ancient Geographers have, therefore, placed a City, call'd *Bulgar*, on the *Eaſt* Side of the *Wolga*, and fix'd its Longitude and Latitude; But I have ſhewn, that this City is not call'd *Bulgar*, but *Bulgahn*, which, with the *Tartars*, ſignifies a Camp, of their Chan's, ſurrounded with a Rampart of Earth, and is, by the *Greeks*, call'd *Byliros* or *Boleros:* For which Reaſon, though, at firſt, I could not comprehend it, *Vincent. Belluacenſis* calls the *Eaſtern Bulgares*, *Biliri*.

XIII. As ſeveral more Things, of this Nature, will appear in the Work it ſelf, I hope it will be no ſmall Satisfaction to the curious Reader, if I every where relate the Circumſtances with which they were attended: But as for the Manner of Living, and the Cuſtoms of the *Ruſſians*, I thought it not ſo very neceſſary to give a circumſtantial Account of them; unleſs occaſionally: Since we have had, of late, enough written on that Subject; And the Reader may find the beſt Accounts, in a Book, intitled, *Das Verænderte Ruſsland*, and in the *Remarks on the French Tranſlation of the Hiſtory of Abulgaſus Bagadur Chan*, as likewiſe in *Alcarius*.

§. III.

(19) See *Herbelot, in his Bibliotheque Orientale*, p. 214.

§. III.

The Diviſion of the Southern *Part of this Map, comprehending the* Leſſer *and* Greater Tartary; *Their chief Boundaries; And an Account of the ſix Principal Claſſes of thoſe Nations, which are called* Tartars.

SUMMARY.

§. I. *THE Length and Breadth of all* Tartary, *with an Account of its Boundaries.* II. North Aſia, *under which* Siberia *is comprehended, has been hitherto, by Miſtake, taken for the* Greater Tartary. *The Occaſion of this Miſtake.* III. *The* Dutch *have frequented one Part of the Coaſt of* Jedſo, *by Sea: However, their Accounts of it are as obſcure, as thoſe of the* Japoneſe, *and what we had formerly.* IV. *The Inhabitants of* Tartary *are not all* Tartars. North Aſia *is inhabited by different Nations, and, among others, by* Ruſſians. V. *There are ſix different Nations, in this* North *and* Eaſtern *Part of* Europe *and* Aſia, *which may be call'd principal, and were formerly all comprehended under the Name of* Tartars. *The firſt are the* Morduini, Scheremiſſi, *&c. The Origin of the* Hunns. VI. *The Name of* Hunn *is Appellative. They are a Part of the Primitive* Sarmatians. VII. Jornandes, *perhaps, alludes to them, by the Name of* Ovim *or* Oyum. *The Migrations of the* Hunns. VIII. *The Name of the* Oigurs, *and their Diviſions. The* Poles, Slavi *and latter* Vandals *, *were probably not the true* Sar-

* What I have here, and throughout this whole Work, tranſlated *Vandals*, is, in the Original, *Wenden*: But the *Wenden* or *Wends* (a Remainder of whom yet inhabit a Part of *Germany*, and have retained their ancient Language) were deſcended from the *Venedi*, *Heneti* or *Winithi*, and not from the Ancient *Vandali*, of *Scythian* Extraction, whom our Author, I preſume means: And he may probably have been led into this Miſtake (being a *Swede* by Birth) by the *German* Title of the Kings of *Sweden* and *Denmark*, which, I know not for what Reaſon, is *Der Gothen und Wenden König*, tho', in *Latin*, they ſay *Gotho-*

Sarmatians. IX. *The ſecond of theſe principal Nations are the* Budziack *and* Crim, *&c. and likewiſe the* Nagaian Tartars, *&c. Their Religion and Languages.* X. *They are not the true* Tartars. *How they came by that Name.* XI. *Whether theſe are the* Cimmerii *mention'd by* Herodotus? XII. *The third Nation are the* Samojedes. *The Names of ſeveral Tribes who ſeparated from this People. The* Samojedes *and* Hunns *are perhaps one and the ſame People.* XIII. *The fourth Nation are the* Calcha-Mungals *and* Kalmucks, *who likewiſe are called* Tartars. XIV. *Theſe* Tartars *have made three different and conſiderable Inroads into* Aſia the Leſs *and* Europe. XV. *When and where theſe Invaſions were made.* XVI. *The Anceſtors of theſe* Tartars *were the* Nomadian *and* Maſſagetan Scythians, *mention'd by* Herodotus, Curtius, *&c.* Ptolemy's *Diſtinction of* Scythia, *into* Scythia intra & extra Imaum, *gives Occaſion to ſpeak of* Gog *and* Magog. XVII. *The Etymological Signification of* Magog, XVIII. *Confirm'd by ſeveral Examples.* XIX. Ma Tſudi *is the ſame as* Scythæ intra; *And the ſame Signification have the Words* Magog, Ma-Gojim, *and* Maſſagetæ. XX. *Why Ancient Authors omitted the Particle* Ma, *in the Names* Maſſagetæ, Ma-Tſudi, *&c.* XXI. *The Name* Scyth *and* Magog *extended perhaps to ſeveral Nations, who had their Proper Names beſides.* XXII. *More Inſtances of Appellatives becoming Proper Names.* XXIII. Gog *and* Magog, *in the Prophet* Ezekiel, *has the ſame Signification with* Ma-Scythians *and* Ma-ſgetæ. XXIV. *The Particle* Ma *ſignifies, with theſe Nations, the ſame as* Cis, intra, *likewiſe* fix'd *or* faſten'd to, annex'd *and* comprehended under. *Whether* Gog *and* Magog *may be ſaid to denote any peculiar People? It is probable that* Gog *was the* Ogus-Chan *of the* Tartars. XXV. *Nations are frequently call'd by the Names of their Chiefs; And ſo were the* Gojim *or* Gogites *from* Gog. XXVI. *Some of the Tribes of theſe* Gojim *particulariz'd. The Diſtinction between* Gog *and* Magog *proceeds*

Gothorum Vandalorumque Rex: Nevertheleſs, as our Author ſays here, and in one or two more Places, in the Sequel, *latter Wenden*, I ſubmit it to the Reader whether he, by that means *Wends* or *Vandals*. That our Author cannot however in general mean *Wends*, I believe is pretty evident, becauſe they are, by ſome Authors call'd *Slavi*, and he often mentions the *Wends* and *Slavi*, in the ſame Place, as different Nations. The Confounding of theſe two Names, and making one People of them, is an ancient Error of *Cranzius*, which has been follow'd by many more modern Writers.

ceeds from the Mountains and Hills which ly between them. XXVII. *The ancient* German *Word* Thiud, *which ſignifies* Militia, *is derived from* Tziudi. XXVIII. *The* Etymology *of the Words* Gog *and* Goyim. XXIX. *What the* Montes Samanthini *of* Ptolemy *were?* XXX, XXXI. *The* Mungalians *are otherwiſe call'd* Weſtern Tartars. *The Reaſon why they are yet call'd* Tartars. XXXII. *The fifth Nation are the* Tingiſian Tartars. *Whence they have their Name? Formerly they were, likewiſe, call'd* Mungals. XXXIII. *Theſe were the Primitive* Tartars. XXXIV. *They were call'd by Ancient Writers* Abii. *Where they were ſuppoſed to inhabit.* XXXV. *Proofs that they are the true* Abi-Scythians. XXXVI. *A Character of theſe* Abii. XXXVII. *The ſixth Nation are thoſe People who inhabit the utmoſt Parts of the* North-Eaſt, *towards the Promontory of* Tabyn, *many of whom are yet unknown.* XXXVIII. *Thus the greater Part of theſe People are wrongly call'd* Tartars; *Juſt as in* North-Aſia, *all* Europeans, *without Diſtinction, are called* Franks. XXXIX. *Whence theſe falſe Denominations aroſe.*

§. I. HAVING, in the foregoing Section, treated, in general, of the *Northern Side* of that Part of the World, which is laid down in my Map, and given a Deſcription previouſly of ſome Things; I ſhall here divide and deſcribe the *Southern Side, viz.* the *Leſſer* and *Greater Tartary*, in the ſame Manner as the Particulars are divided in the Work itſelf. *Tartary*, as I have already mention'd, in my Diviſion of the Map, is diſtinguiſh'd, in general, including the *European* and *Aſiatick* Sides, into Six Parts: And is, in Length, from the Mouths of the Rivers *Dnieſter*, *Bugg* and *Dnieper* *, on the *Weſt* Side, quite to the *Empire* of *China*, on the *Eaſt*; That is, from the 50th to the 155th Degree of Longitude, about 900 *German* Miles; But if we continue to go on beyond *China*, farther towards the *Eaſt*, through the *Eaſtern Tartary*, to the Sea of *Japan*, all *Tartary* muſt be computed to be, in Length, near 1100 *German* Miles. The Breadth, from the 50th, and ſometimes 52d Degree of Latitude, to the *Black* and *Caſpian Sea*, and likewiſe to *Perſia*

* The *Nieſter* or *Dnieſter* is the *Turla*, and the *Nieper* or *Dnieper* the *Boryſthenes* of the Ancients.

Perſia and *India*, is, in ſome Places, no more than 100, 200, or 300 of the ſaid Miles. All the *Northern* Side of *Tartary* is bounded by the *Empire* of *Ruſſia*; The *Weſtern* Side, by *Podolia* and the *Ukraine*; the *Southern* by the *Black Sea*, Part of *Turky*, *Perſia* and the *Eaſt Indies*; And the *Eaſtern* Side by the *Empire* of *China*, and the Sea of *Japan*.

II. As, in the Diviſion of my Map, I have entirely ſeparated the whole Compaſs of *Great Tartary*, from *Siberia*; ſo am I obliged, in the Deſcription of this *Southern* Part, to endeavour, before all Things, to remove an Error, that, hitherto, has almoſt univerſally taken Place; *viz.* the giving the whole of this Part of the World (which I here call *North Aſia*, and the Ancients call'd *Aſia intra Taurum*,) (20) the Name of the *Greater Tartary*: For, not only now, it is under a quite different State; But even Ancient Writers have placed ſome of the Inhabitants and Countries contained in it, of which I am here treating, much too far, even to the utmoſt Point of the Promontory of *Tabyn*, or the *Anian Streight*, and have deſcribed and comprehended them under the Name of *Ancient Scythia* and *Tartary*. Now the *Peninſula Jedſo*, or the Country call'd *Kamtſchatki*, is upon the ſame Continent with *Siberia*, of which neither the *Japoneſe* and *Chineſe*, nor we *Europeans*, have heretofore had any true Information, or were able to make any ſufficient Enquiry into (21): But was firſt perfectly made known, by Means of the *Ruſſians*, about fifty Years ago. As therefore the Ancients could not know, whether it were inhabited by a *Scythian* or *Tartarian* Nation, they conſequently could not place *Scythians* there.

III. The *Hollanders*, indeed, went thither, by Shipping, from the *Eaſt* Side, in the Year 1643, yet they diſcovered only the moſt outward Coaſts of *Jedſo*, and but to the 49th Degree of Latitude, as we may ſee by their Maps (22). This *Peninſula* has alſo been viewed, by Order of the Emperour of *Japan*, if we may

(20) They divided all *Aſia* by the *Taurus*, or the *Indian* Mountains, into two Principal Parts; viz. into the *Northern* and *Southern* Parts, and call'd the former *Aſia intra Taurum*, and the latter, from the ſaid Mountain to the Ocean, *Aſia extra Taurum*.

(21) Vid. *Biblioth. Angloiſe par Arm. de la Chapelle, Tom. V. Prem. Part. Amſt.* 1727. *p.* 33.

(22) Vid. *Mem. de l'Acad. Roy. des Scienc.* 1720. *p.* 495.

may believe the Report of *Caron*, the *Dutch* Ambaſſadour: But the Accounts, which came of it to *Europe*, are no better than thoſe, which *Martinus Martini* gives us, (in his *Atlas*, *p.* 21.) who calls this Country a Part of *Uninhabited Tartary*. Whereby he, indeed, bears Teſtimony, that it is one Continent with *Siberia*; But, at the ſame Time, makes it appear, that the *Chineſe* never knew the true State of this Country, or its Inhabitants.

IV. We might, therefore, form almoſt the ſame Judgment of the Name *Tartar*, given to the Nations in this *Northern Aſia*, as *Caſſidorus* does of the *Hunns: viz.* That though they took their Name from the *Scythians*, after they had conquer'd them; yet they were actually different Nations. Since then all this *North-Aſia* is inhabited by different Nations, and that one of them is now the *Ruſſian*, who firſt took Poſſeſſion of theſe Regions about 150 Years ago; I have no Occaſion to make mention of theſe latter, in this Place; Becauſe the Diſtinction of them from all the Reſt is already ſo very well known.

V. But in premiſing ſome Account of the *Tartars* in general, I muſt acquaint the Readers, that, in the above mentioned *Northern* and *Eaſtern* Part of *Europe* and *Aſia*, Six principal Nations or Claſſes, are to be found, which, in *Europe*, are all together compriz'd under the Name of *Tartars* (23). *Viz.* within the Bounds of *Europe*, are the *Marduini*, *Scheremiſſi*, *Permecki*, and likewiſe, the *Wotyacki*. And, in *Aſia*, the *Wogulitzi*, *Oſtiacks*, and *Barabintzian* Nations, which, together with the *Finnlanders*, *Lapplanders*, *Eſthonians*, *Hungarian Secklers*, and a ſmall Remainder of the *Lievi* or *Liſi* in *Courland*, formerly were one Nation, belonging to the *Hunns* or *Unns*, who are no *Tartars*.

VI. The Name *Hunn* is no Proper Name, but an Appellative, which this Nation, (formerly call'd *Oigur*,) obtain'd, when, in the moſt ancient Times, they ſeparated themſelves, on the other Side of the *Wolga*, into two Nations, *viz.* into *Unn-Oigurs* and *Nokos-Oigurs*. Of whoſe Invaſion, which happen'd in After-Times, under *Attila*, King of the *Hunns*, the Hiſtory of *Europe* will give us a ſufficient Account. But theſe are no Ways related to the True, Original *Tartars*, call'd *Scythæ extra Imaum*; But are

(23) Vid. *Andr. Mül. Greiff. comment. Alphab. p.* 61. where he reckons many *Tartarian* Nations, that are not ſo.

a Part of thoſe primitive *Sarmatians*, which the *Tartars* or *Mungals* named *Oigur*, as I have already obſerv'd (24).

VII. It is very probable, that *Jornandes* means theſe, when he writes; the *European Scythians* were call'd *Ojum*, inſtead of which, in another Place, he puts *Ovim*; For here I muſt obſerve, that, in the *North* of *Ruſſia*, or *Great Permia*, there is, to this Day, not only a great River call'd *Uvim*, but another River which joins it, call'd *Nimm*; And *Conradus a Lichtenau*, reads, in *Jornandes*, not *Ovim*, but *Ouim nim*, (vid. *Dict. Car. Steph. p.* 1802.) So that this latter may denote either the joining of the *Uvim* with the River *Nimm*, or the River *Uvim* only, and the *Ovimm Scythians*, whom *Jornandes* mentions, and calls alſo *Ojum* (25); For, according to the Opinion of the *Tartars*, Part of this Nation, after the aforeſaid Separation, march'd towards the *Northern Ruſſia*, and was afterwards driven, (as it is very probable) by other *Scythian* Nations, who came from the *South* and *Eaſt*, from thence, farther towards the *North* (26).

VIII.

(24) *Oigur* does not denote the *Sclavonian* Name *Ugoria*, which ſignifies *under*, *on the ſide of*, or *about the* Mountain; But the former is an old *Tartarian Mungalian* Word, which ſignifies *Allies*, *Confederates*, *united as Brothers*, and is pronounc'd ſometimes *Oigur*, and ſometimes *Vigur*.

(25) The Rivers *Ovim* and *Nimm* have both their Sources in *Great Permia*, and after they are join'd fall into the *Witziogda*, and this into the *Dwina*.

(26) It is very well known, and has been obſerved by many learned Men, and, among others, by *Leibnitz*; That, originally, the Name *Scyth* was given to no particular Nation, as a proper Name; But that the Nations who bore this Name, were call'd ſo, by the *Greeks*, on Account of their Art and Skill in Hunting and Shooting, and, at Length, this Name remain'd fix'd to certain People. *Jornandes* confirms the ſame of the Names *Ovim* and *Oyum*, which the *Scythians* had before. And as, in the *Hebrew* and *Arabick* Tongues, *Zaijadh* and *Saijath* ſignify *Hunting*, *Chaſing*, *Courſing*, the *Greeks*, as well as other Nations, who live more towards the *North*, among whom the Word *Scyth* differs very little in Pronounciation, may perhaps, inſtead of that, have uſed the *Synonimous* Word *Syth*, which denotes an *Archer*; (A good Hunter and an Archer being all one.) There are, to this Day, certain People in *Siberia*, inhabiting near the Source of the River *Jeneſei*, who have ſuch an *Arabick* and *Hebrew* Name, ſignifying Hunting, which the *Tartars* call *Soyoth*, or *Sayabt*, and the *Ruſſians*, *Sayantzi*, (See my Map;) But as for the Origin and Derivation of the Name *Scyth*; *Conf. John George Wachters Gloſſ. Germ. Præfat.* § XI. where thoſe Words are cited, which are ſynonimous with the *Scythian* Names, and have been in Uſe, as well in the *Northern* as *Weſtern* Parts of *Europe*; viz. *Sckiotan*, *Sciozanto*, *Schiota*, *Sckot*, *Schieten*, *Jetter*, and *Schieſſen*; To which this may be added, that the *Finnlanders* and *Livonians* call an Archer, *Skytta*, *Kytta*, *or Kyt*; and a Bow is, in the *Lithuanian* Language, *Szauti*, in the *Finnlandian*, *Joutzi*; and among the Nations towards the *Japonean* Sea, *Schybt* and *Sghyt*; and the *Kalmucks* call an Arrow *Schumu*; And as the very firſt Denomination of Things was, without Doubt, in Part natural, and in Part arbitrary; So the Name and Word *Scyth* is certainly one of the moſt natural; For in ſhooting with a Bow,

VIII. But that theſe *Oigurs*, who afterwards, as I have ſaid above, were divided into two Denominations, *viz. Unn* and *Dokos*, or *Nokos-Oigurs*, were known to many *European* Writers (tho' with a Corruption of their Name) will be better ſhewn, in its proper Place of the Work itſelf; Where I have prov'd, that

a Bow, we may hear, as it were, the very Name, by the Sound it gives with the Arrow. Therefore, the *Hebrews* call an Arrow *Schætz*, the *Kalmucks*, *Schumu*; and many Nations call it *Scyth*. In like manner, the *Kalmucks* call a Gun *Bû*, a Cat *My*, an Owl *Uhu*, an old Man, becauſe he is continually coughing and ſpitting, *Karhſch*, a Cock *Taka*, which latter, is named, in almoſt all the Languages in the World, according to its Nature and Propriety, either of crowing or clucking. *viz.* in *German*, *Hahn*; in *Hungarian*, *Tuck*; in *Tartarian*, *Tauck*; in the *Kalmuck*, *Taka*; in *Swediſh*, *Tûpp*; in *French*, *Coq*; in the *Ruſſian*, *Bituch*, &c. It is, therefore, beyond all Doubt, the *Scyths* had, in like Manner, that Name originally from Hunting and Shooting. But to ſay a Word or two of their firſt and true Name, *Ovim*, *Uvim*, or *Oyum*, and that the Nations call'd by that Name, did, in the moſt Ancient Times, inhabit the *Northern* Parts of *Ruſſia*; The Name, doubtleſs, at firſt aroſe from the Situation of the Country, where the Rivers now call'd *Wimm* and *Nimm* run; For (1.) This Country is full of *Moraſſes*, *Woods*, and *Rivers*, where Game is not wanting, either by Land or Water; and, in the *Norician* and *Rhætian* Language, *Winn* and *Winde* ſignify a *Mooriſh* and *Fenny* Country; (See *Læſcher. lit. Celtic.* p. 36.) Alſo *Fene*, in the ancient *Gothick* and *German* Languages, denotes the ſame, as *Thom. Hierne* bears Teſtimony, in his Manuſcript of the Hiſtory of *Eſthonia*, *Livonia*, and *Lithlandia*.* Now this is the ſame with *Ovin* and *Ovim*; For, in the *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* Languages, *Ova* and *Uva* ſignify as well a *mooriſh*, *fenny* Country, eſpecially between Mountains, as alſo a Country where Hunting and Game is not wanting; So likewiſe, in this Language, Hunting is call'd *Aw*, and *Auw*: Since then the preſent *Finnlandian* Nation is to be reckon'd among the *Oigurian Hunns*, of whom I am here ſpeaking, and they call their preſent Country, in their own Language, *Souima*, and themſelves *Souimalain*, which likewiſe denote a Country full of *Moraſs*, *Rivers*, and *Fiſh*, and a People who live in ſuch a Country; Which is again conformable to the *Tartarian* and *Kalmuck* Language, in which *Su*, *Sui*, *U*, or *Ou*; and, in the *Oſtiack*, *üht*, ſignify *Rivers* or *Springs*. From all which it appears plainly, not only that the above-mention'd Words *Ova* and *Uva*, as alſo *Aw*, and *Auw*, have the ſame Signification as *Ovim*, *Uvim*, *Uvinde* and *Fene*; But alſo, by taking the *S* from *Souim*, it is *Ouvim*, or *Ovim*; But the laſt Syllable *ma* ſignifies only *Country*, whereas *Ovim* or *Ouvim*, is *fenny*, *woody*, *mooriſh*. So theſe Nations are by Foreigners only call'd *Fenny* or *Venni*, and *Windi*; But they call themſelves *Souimalain*, from the *mooriſh* Quality of their Country. All farther Enquiries about this Matter, are therefore unneceſſary. From hence, we may finally draw the Concluſion; That, as the Name of the *Finnlanders* was known, as well in ancient Times, in *North Ruſſia*, as in *Poland*, as far as the River *Viſtula*: And *Jornandes* writes, that the firſt *Scyths* were call'd *Ovim*; That the true, Original Name of *Scythians* belongs to this Nation, and to all who are under this Claſs, rather than any other; Which is, likewiſe, the Opinion of *Theophil. Siegfr. Beyer* (*in Comment. Imp. Petropol. p.* 391 & 460.) who alſo reckons, with the *Finnlanders*, the *Lithuanians*, *Livonians*, *Eſthonians*, and ancient *Pruſſians*.

* *Here, as well as in many other Places,* Eſthonia *and* Livonia *are mention'd as if they were different Provinces or Countries, whereas one is but a Part of the other.* Livonia (*or* Liefland) *is divided into three Parts:* (1.) Eſthonia, *or* Eaſtland. (2.) Oedepoa, *and* (3.) Letten, Letitia, *or* Lettenland; *which, I ſuppoſe, is what our Author here means by* Lithlandia; *Unleſs he means* Lithuania, *in* Poland, *which, indeed, borders upon one Part of* Livonia.

they were, ſometimes, call'd *Uth-Urguri* and *Kuth-Urguri*; ſometimes *Onagari* and *Unigari*; And ſometimes *Iguræi* and *Inugri*, &c. I, therefore, doubt whether the *Sclavonians*, * *Polanders* and latter *Vandals* were the Original *Sarmatians* or *Oigurs*; For, as the latter took Poſſeſſion of the Countries belonging to the former, They, doubtleſs, at the ſame Time, took this *Sarmatian* Name from them; Which I have plainly prov'd in its proper Place.

IX. SECONDLY, we find, in *Europe*, the *Budziack*, and *Crimm-Kubann* (or *Sgiban*) *Caſan*-and *Caſſinowan Tartars*, and, in little *Nagai*, *Nagaian Tartars*: And in *Aſia* and *Great Nagai*, the *Aſtracan*, *Ovinian* and *Baskinian Tartars*. Likewiſe, towards the *Weſt*, on the *Caſpian Sea*, the *Dageſtan* and *Comuckian Tartars*, together with thoſe dwelling in *Siberia*, near the Cities of *Tumen*, *Tubolskoi*, *Tara* and *Tomskoi*. Beſides theſe, there are, of this Sort, roving in the *Greater Tartary*, properly ſo called, the *Usbeck-Turcomann-Ugan-Bulut*-and *Kargeſian* (not *Kirgyſian*) or *Brutt-Tartars*, together with the *Karackalpacki* and *Coſaci Hordæ*. All theſe are *Mahometans*: But thoſe *Tartars*, who are likewiſe of this Kind, and dwell in *Siberia*, *viz.* the *Jakut-Kirgyſian-Bratskoian-Sayanzian* or *Soyottian Tartars*, are ſtill *Pagans*. However, they, like the former, have, as it were, one Dialect with the *Turks*. All the Nations mention'd in this Paragraph are call'd *Tartars*.

X. ACCORDING to the Account we have of the learned *Buchars*, they took the Name from the Original *Tartars*; But do not any Ways deſcend from them; ſince they are, by the very *Buchars*, call'd *Kalmucks* and *Mungals*, alſo *Dokos* or *Nokos-Uigurs* (27); whoſe Anceſtors, like thoſe of the former, firſt inhabited on the *Eaſtern* Banks of the *Wolga*, and afterwards a great Part of their Off-ſpring remov'd *Northward*, towards the *Mæotick Lake*, where the Fortreſs of *Aſof* ſtands; and towards Mount *Caucaſus*.

XI. WHE-

* Our Author is here, and in other Places, where he mentions the *Slavi*, *Sclaven*, or *Sclavonians*, almoſt always to be underſtood in a general Senſe, as the Word was taken by the Ancients, and not in a particular Senſe, as it is now meant of the *Sclavonians*, or Modern Inhabitants of a Province in the Kingdom of *Hungary*, call'd *Sclavonia*, ſituate between the Rivers *Danube*, *Saw* and *Draw*; Or, when he is to be underſtood in a particular Senſe, it is eaſily diſcover'd by the Context.

(27) Vid. *Hiſt. Genealog. des Tartars*, *Leyde*, 1726. *p.* 39. how theſe Nations came by the Name of *Uigur*.

XI. WHETHER theſe are the *Cimmerii* mention'd by *Herodotus*, in his fourth Book, (whom the *Arabians* call *Kæmeri*; and whom he places on the *South* Side of the *Palus Mæotis* (28), or on the *Cherſoneſe*, (otherwiſe the *Crimm*;) who (as *Nicephorus Gregor.* mentions from *Homer*,) were alſo call'd *Scythians*, but long after, upon the Change of their Settlement, got the Name of Cimmerii (*vid. Dict. Car. Steph. p.* 1799.) which agrees with what *Plutarch* mentions, *viz.* That the *Greeks* gave theſe *Scythians* the Name of *Cimmerii* (*vid. Sheringh. de Orig. Gent. Anglic. p.* 349.) or whether they are thoſe very *Scythians*, which the *Cimmerii* (who inhabited the *Cherſoneſe* or *Thracian Boſphorus*) vanquiſhed, and drove away, I leave to the Judgment of others. This, however, is remarkable, and worthy our Conſideration, that as theſe Nations are call'd by the *Tartars Docos* or *Nokos-Vigur*, as the others are *Unn-Vigur*; Not only *Iſaac Tzetza* reckons the *Daci* among the *Scythians*, (*vid. Dict. Car. Steph. p.* 1799.) But alſo, as the *Tartarian Hiſtory of Abulgaſi Bagadur Chan* ſhews, that the *Uigurs* had a Governour whom they, from Heir to Heir, always call'd *Kuth* or *Idi-Kuth*; ſo the *Cimmerii*, whom *Procopius* mentions, (in his fourth Book, *Cap.* 19.) and divides into *Kuth-Urguri* and *Uthurguri*, may very well denote theſe our *Uigurs*. To this, likewiſe, we may properly add, what *Andr. Müller Greiffenh.* (*in Diſquiſ. Geog. & Hiſt. de Chat. p.* 62.) relates out of *Schilberg*; *viz.* that the Country of *Diſt* or *Deſchte Kaptzack* (which is the Region between *Aſtracan* and the *Palus Mæotis*, on the *North* of the *Caucuſus*, and alſo contains that Tract of Land, of which I am now ſpeaking) was govern'd by a certain *Tartarian* Prince, called *Idacu* or *Idicuht*; I ſhall, in its proper Place, ſhew the Relation of the *Uſbeck-Tatarian* Nation to this, and its Deſcent from *Idicuht*.

XII. To the third Claſs, I reckon the *Samojedes*, who extend themſelves, *Eaſtward*, from the Neighbourhood of *Archangel*, in *Europe*, and the *Moure Manſkoian* or *Pytziorkoian More* (*i. e.* Sea)

(28) *Mæotis*, *Mæotidis*, was not at firſt a Proper Name, for the *Turks* and *Perſians* not only ſay a great *Mæbyth*, but alſo, in the *Gothick* Language, *Mæs* or *Mæſa* ſignifies a very great *Moraſs*, or *Moor*. And hence comes the Diſſention among the Learned, about this Word. (Vid. *Caſp. Abels Teutſch und Saechſiſche Alterthuemer.* p. 233, and 434.

Sea) in the *Weſt*, into *Aſia*, along the *Mare Glaciale*, by the Mouths of the Rivers *Oby* and *Jeneſei*, to the River *Lena*. Of this Claſs, there are to the *Southward*, from the *Mare Glaciale*, even to *Siberia*, ſeveral Tribes who have lately ſeparated themſelves from the Reſt; *viz. Oſtiack* and *Kanſkoian Tartars*, who live near the Cities of *Narim*, *Tomſkoi* and *Craſſnoyahr*, who uſe, indeed, the Language of the *Samojedes*, but ſo corrupted, with Words of the Neighbouring Nations, as hardly to be known; And they are, as the *Samojedes* themſelves likewiſe are, very Heathens. When I travell'd through the Regions inhabited by theſe People, and was among them, I enquired whether they had lived there in Ancient Times? They anſwer'd; They had heard from their Fathers and Grandfathers, that they came thither from *Souomiſſembla* (which is *Finnland.*) From whence it ſeems, that the *Samojedes* and the *Hunns*, or thoſe mention'd in the firſt Claſs, were of the ſame Origin, and a Part of the *Hyperborean* Nations, ſo often mentioned by Ancient Writers (29).

XIII. THE fourth Claſs comprizes the *Calcha-Mungals* and *Kalmucks*, who were formerly one People. Of the former, *P. Jacob Bouvet*, (in his *Portrait hiſtorique de l'Empereur de la Chine*, *p.* 50.) ſays as follows: "At the ſame Time, revolted "another King of the *Mangu* (*Mungals*) People, the Head of "the principal Branch of thoſe Princes, who deſcended from "the Emperours of the *Weſtern Tartary*, and reign'd in *China*, "before the *Imperial* Family of *Taiming*, *&c.* But the latter, *viz.* the *Kalmucks*, though, at the Election of *Zingis Chan*, to be the General Head of the whole Nation, they were, at firſt, ſeparated from rhe *Mungals*, from whence, likewiſe, they are called, in the *Tartarian* Language, *Kalmucks*: Yet, after *Zingis-Chan* became the General Monarch of the *Tartars*, they again united with the *Mungals*, and made one Nation, under the Government of certain Viceroys. They are now divided into the *Eaſtern*, *Weſtern*, and *Middle*.

XIV. THESE two are properly thoſe *Tartarian* Nations, who, from *Aſia the Greater*, thrice invaded the *Leſſer Aſia*; *viz.*

(29) Vid. *Verelium* (*cap.* 1. *p.* 20. *in Notis ad Herw. Saga*) who quotes the Opinion of the Ancients, with a tolerable Accuracy; But he himſelf ſeems to depart from it.

viz. First under the Reign of the famous *Ogus-Chan*, in the Time of *Gyges*, Son of the *Lydian* King *Ardyſus*, when the *Maſſagetæ* drove away the *Scythians*, and they the *Cimmerii*, which happen'd about 670 Years before the Birth of CHRIST: And afterwards, the ſame *Scythians* or *Mungals* went over the *Wolga* or *Araxes*, and attack'd the *Cimmerii* again, near the *Pontus* and *Palus Mæotis*, in the Time of *Cyaxares*, King of *Media*, about 632 Years before the Birth of CHRIST, and then forced a Paſſage into *Syria*, *Paleſtin*, and *Egypt*, as will be ſhewn below.

XV. AND though there be no Doubt of the Truth of the Invaſion of theſe Nations, under the Command of *Ogus-Chan*, yet I ſhall prove more clearly, in its proper Place, that the Invaſion of the *Scythians*, deſcribed by *Herodotus*, (in his fourth Book,) is the very ſame. The ſecond Irruption of theſe Nations was in the thirteenth Century, under the Command of *Bathus*, Grandſon * of the great *Zingis-Chan*. This *Bathus* broke into *Hungary*, and even into *Sileſia*, where, in the Year 1242, the Duke of *Lignitz* was defeated by theſe *Tartars*. Their third Irruption happen'd in the fifteenth Century, when *Timur-Beck*, or *Tamerlan*, as he is call'd, overcame the *Turkiſh Emperour Bajazet*, the firſt of *July*, 1412, near the City of *Anghuria*.

XVI. MANY Circumſtances concur to ſhew, that the Anceſtors of theſe *Tartars* were thoſe *Maſſagetan Scythians*, of whom *Herodotus*, *Curtius*, and others ſpeak, and who are call'd, by *Ptolemy*, the *Aſiatick Scythians intra Imaum*; For, as he divides *North Aſia* into two Parts, he calls the *Weſtern* Part, *Scythia intra Imaum*, and the *Eaſtern*, *Scythia extra Imaum*. I ſhall ſhew, in the Sequel, that, as Ancient Authors place theſe *Maſſagetan Scythians* on the other Side of the *Caſpian* Sea, ſo the ſame Sort of People not only inhabited there, from the Beginning; But that theſe alſo are the very *Nomades*, whom *Arian* mentions (30). The Particle *Ma*, in

* I have tranſlated the *German* Word, *Enckel*, Grandſon, becauſe this *Bathus* may be ſuppos'd to have been the Succeſſor of *Zingis-Chan*, and probably in a direct Line; Or elſe the ſame Word ſignifies, likewiſe a *Nephew*, and the *Germans* uſe it promiſcuouſly for both.

(30) In the Time of *Alexander the Great*, the *Nomades* liv'd to the *North* of the City of *Samarcand*, in the Defart where the River *Polytimetus* has its Courſe. (Vid. *Arian*, in the Tranſlation of *Abiant: liv.* 4. § 3. *p.* 125.) And the Names *Nomas* and *Nomades* denote

in the *Tartarian* Language, being uſed ſometimes as *Cis, citra & intra*, in *Latin*, and ſometimes as a Conjunction Copulative, thence, likewiſe, are derived the *Arabian* Word *Ma-giugi*, the *Tartarian*, *Ma-Tſchudi*, the *Perſian*, *Ma-gors*, the *Hebrew*, *Ma-gogæi*, and the *Greek*, *Ma-ſgetæ*, *Ma-ſchytæ* or *Maſſagetæ*, all which are not only Synonimous Terms, but alſo Appellatives, like *Barbari*, *Ethnici* (31), *Infidels*, *Cruel*, *Wild*, *Inhuman People*; However, theſe Names were afterwards appropriated to particular Nations: And therefore, in latter Times, we find alſo *Maſſagetæ* in the *European Scythia*, who perhaps were the ſame whom *Ammianus Marcellinus* mentions to have been the true *Alani*, and deſcribes them as a well-proportion'd and tall People, (*vid. Geſchichte der Teutſchen D. Joh. Jac. Maſcou. p.* 282.*) which cannot be the *Mungal Kalmuck Maſſagetæ*, who are an ugly, deform'd Nation. And that theſe Ancient *Maſſagetan Scythians* are to be reckon'd a different Race from the *Alani*, appears farther from this: Becauſe, when the *Mungals*, in the twelfth Century, ſubdued all *Perſia*, and came, at Length, to the *Alani*, between the *Black* and *Caſpian Sea*, they would not own them for their Brethren and Relations, though they acknowledg'd the *Kaptſchacks* and *Uigurs*, who, at that Time, were the next Neighbours to the *Alani*, to be ſo, (*vid. l'Hiſt. des Tartars, à Leyde*, 1726, *p.* 309.) All theſe aforeſaid Names, and Synonimous Terms, give me Room to think, that perhaps this is the very Reaſon, why the Learned, hitherto, cannot agree, either in the Explication of the Words, *Gog* and *Magog*, or what Nations the *Hebrews* underſtood by the Names, *Goy*, or *Gojim*.

XVII. THUS *David Nerreter*, (in his *Neu eröfneten Mahomediſchen Moſchea, p.* 470.) is of Opinion, that *Magog* ſignifies *diſcovered* and *manifeſted*: On the contrary, in *Dict. Car. Steph. p.* 1267, this Word is explain'd by *tegens* and *tegulans*, *concealing*

note *Herdſmen*, and *People that live by breeding Cattel*, whom *Stephanus* calls *Nomæi*; and theſe Names, likewiſe, are Appellatives; Such *Nomades* having alſo formerly been found in *Arabia*, *Abiſſinia*, and *Sarmatia*.

(31) *Sternhielm* ſays, that the *Greek* Word ἔθνος is not in its Original a *Greek*, but an ancient *German* Word, derived from *Aſhæth*, which denotes *Bruſcus* and *Thymus* (Vid. *Verelium, p.* 113.) from whence the Word *Hæthen*, (*Germ. Heyden*) Heathens, (or *Pagans*) is derived: Which latter is the ſame as the *Sclavonian* Word *Pagan*, (i. e. *unclean*.)

* A Tranſlation of this incomparable Work is now in the Preſs, by the Title of *The Hiſtory of the Ancient Germans*, &c.

ing, *covering*. The Authors of the *Index* to the *Stutgard-Bible*, ſay, it denotes *high* or *Height*: *Bochart* derives it from a *Hebrew* Word, which ſometimes ſignifies to *pine*, to *ſwoon*, or to *be low-ſpirited* or *melancholy*, (*vid. Allerneueſten Staat von Caſan und Aſtracan*, *p.* 242.) And the Author *de l'Hiſt. Geneal. des Tart. à Leyde*, 1726, brings it from the Name of a *Tartarian Chan*, *Mogac*. When I caſually mention'd this Difference to ſome, who are well ſkill'd in the *Hebrew* Tongue, their Anſwer was; That the Primitives of this, and many other Names and Words, are not to be found in the *Hebrew*: In which Caſes, the *Chaldean*, *Syriack*, *Arabick*, *Perſian*, nay, other Languages, uſed in Countries more towards the *North*, muſt be conſulted. I, therefore, doubt not, but the Learned will give ſome Approbation to what I have here obſerved; Since the aforeſaid Enquiries into the Etymologies of theſe Names vary ſo much; And I ſhall coroborate my Opinion, that the Word *Ma* is uſed both for *Cis*, *Citra* and *Infra*, and likewiſe as a *Conjunction Copulative*, by many more Examples.

XVIII. I DO NOT aſſert this, merely as my own Conjecture, but from what the *Tobolſki-Bucharian Tartars* have taught me: Becauſe they call the *North-Weſtern* Side of *China*, where there is no Wall, but extream high Mountains, *Tzin ma Tzin*, and *Zinnu ma Zinn*, which agrees with *l'Hiſt. Geneal des Tartars*, *p.* 382. The Reaſons they aſſign for it are theſe: The Kingdoms of *Chotena* and *Thibet* once belong'd to *China*, and were comprehended under the Name of *Tzinn* (32): But as they were ſeparated by very high Mountains, though they were yet united; *China* was call'd *Tzinn*, and *Chotena* and *Thibet*, *Ma Tzinn*, i. e. *China* on this Side, or hitherwards (33). Whence the *Turks* and *Tartars*, who call the *Northern China*, as well as the Kingdoms of *Thibet* and *Chotena*, by the Name of *Kathay*, repeat the Word *Kathay*, inſtead of *Tzin*, and for *Tzin-ma Tzin*,

(32) The *Kalmucks* and *Mungals* call *China*, *Tzinn*, and alſo *Kathay*; And the *Bucharian-Tartars*, in like Manner as the *Perſians*, call it *Cinn-Chin*, or *Sinn*. But why the *Turks*, *Tartars* and *Ruſſians* commonly call it *Kathay*, I ſhall explain more particularly, in the Sequel.

(33) *India extra Gangem*, (by which *Thibet*, and *Choteen* are alſo to be underſtood) *Macyn aut Magyn ab Incolys appellari, ſcribit M. Niger. vid. Dict. Car. Steph. p.* 1116.

ſay *Kathay-Kathay*; (ſee *Andr. Mull. Greiffenh. Hebdom. Obſervat. Sinenſ. p.* 42) (34).

XIX. The ſame *Tartars* have alſo told me, that they uſe, in the like Manner, the Name *Ma-Tſchudi*, which ſignifies *Scythæ intra*, or on this Side Mount *Imaus:* And when they, at the ſame Time, would denote the *Heathen roving Scythian Nations*, who inhabited the other Side of that Mountain, they call them *Gæd-Tſchudi*, *Ma-ſchudi* or *Ja-gougi* and *Ma-gougi* (35); And theſe Words then ſignify the very ſame as *Gog* and *Magog*, or *Gojim*, *Ma-Gojim*. About four or five Years ago, I conferr'd about this Matter, with the learned *Aſſeſſor Brenner*, his Majeſty's Librarian, in *Stockholm*, and that he, at leaſt in ſome Meaſure, approved my Obſervations, may be ſeen, in his *Moſes Armenus*, (*p.* 100,) when he makes Mention of them. It is, therefore, no Wonder, that this Name, which is now become ſo common, and is applicable not to one, but to many Nations, as an Appellative, is no more known in *North Aſia*, under the Name of *Gog* and *Magog*, or any Thing reſembling it, as the Tranſlator *de l'Hiſt. Genealog. des Tart. p.* 148. *Note* (*b*) very well obſerves.

XX. The Particle *Ma* leads me to remark, firſt, that none of the Ancient Writers give any Deſcription, either of the *Greek Maſſagetæ*, the *Perſian Magors*, or of the *Tartar Ma-Tſchudi*, as belonging, in the moſt Ancient Times, to *Europe*, or place them

(34) The Name *Kathay* was in Uſe among the *Aſiatick Scythians*, in the Time of *Alexander the Great:* For the *Sophitian Empire*, of which *Curtius* makes Mention (*L.* 10.) is, at the ſame Time, called by *Strabo* (*L.* 12.) *Cathæa*. But the Country of *Sophito* is no other than the Regions of *Thibet* and *Tanguth*, where the wiſe and high Prieſt, *Dalai-Lama*, lives, with his pretended holy *Lamas*, (or *Prieſts*.) By the Name *Sophits*, the *Greeks* denoted thoſe who ſtudied Philoſophy, *Sophia*, in *Greek*, ſignifying Wiſdom: And ſince the *Mungals* and *Kalmucks* pretend, that their *Dalai Lama*, or *Prieſter John*, had his Reſidence ſome Thouſands of Years ago, in the *Tanguthian* Regions, he (that is, his Anteceſſors) muſt have been there in the Time of *Alexander*. And that the *Greeks* had Reaſon to call theſe *Lamas* (or Prieſts,) in the Country of *Thibet* (or *Matſchin*) *Sophiſts*, is confirm'd by the Ceremonies and Cuſtoms, which theſe *Lamas* have, to this Day, in their Religion, which chiefly conſiſt in *Predictions*, *Prophecies*, and *Chiromancy*.

(35) *Gædz* or *Gæz*, in the *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* Language, ſignifies a *Plain*, an *even flat Field*; And therefore, *Gædzudi* may denote the *Scythians* who liv'd in flat and *moraſſy* Places, but *Madzudi* thoſe who liv'd on this Side of the Mountain, or on Eminencies and high Countries; In like Manner as the *Ruſſians*, in their Language, call *Czeremiſſi Lujowaja* and *Najornaja*, (that is, thoſe who live in low Countries, and upon high Land;) From which Word *Lujowaja*, *Marcus Paulus* has, perhaps, taken the Word *Lug-mongug*, and pretends it to be *Gog*, and *Magog*.

them there, in the old Maps, as *Aborigines:* They only ſpeak of *Scythians*, *Getæ*, and *Tſchudi*, but without *Ma*, becauſe neither *Imaus*, nor *Taurus*, nor *Caucaſus*, nor the *Riphæan* and *Rymnician* Mountains were ever placed in *Europe*. Hence it appears, that the Particle *Ma* is only applicable to the *Eaſt Scythians*, and *Sgetæ* or *Tſchudi*; Becauſe, as I have obſerved already, it was unneceſſary to apply it to the *European Scythians*, in whoſe Country there were no ſuch high Mountains, to ſeparate them, as in *Aſia:* Which *Herbelot* (in his *Bibliotheque Orientale*, *p.* 383.) confirms, when he ſays, *Les* Getes *ou* Scythes *Orientaux, qui habitent au de la du Mont* Imaus *& du Fleuve Sihon, que les Anciens ont appellè* Jaxartes, *&c.* When, therefore, I conſider, at the ſame Time, what has been ſaid before, of the Generality of Names, I can by no Means deny, that all theſe Names; As *Gog* and *Magog*, *Geth* and *Maſſageth*, *Get-Tſchudi* and *Ma-tſchudi*, *Jagiugi* and *Magiugi*, i. e. *Scythians* beyond, and on this Side, or in the Valleys, and on the Mountains, may alſo be applied to particular Nations, (as it is the Opinion of many Authors) and that ſome have more eſpecially had theſe Names, though they had their Proper Names beſides: My Intent is only to obſerve, that ſince the Terms *Scythians* and *Getæ* have been of ſo general Uſe, how difficult it would probably be to determine, to what Nations, either formerly, or yet exiſting, the Names of *Gog* and *Magog* can be aſſign'd?

XXI. The *Scythian* and *Magogean* Names being common to ſeveral Nations, who have had their Proper Names beſides, is agreable to what is practiſed, in our Times. For thus the *Maloroſiſkian Coſacks*, in the *Ukraine*, or *Leſſer Ruſſia*, who are diſtinguiſhed into *Burghers* and *Coſacks*, have properly two Names, *viz. Ukrainians* and *Coſacks*, and are, however, in general, called *Coſacks*, which, ſtrictly ſpeaking, belongs not to the *Burghers*, becauſe they are not inrolled under the Standard. The *Uſbecks*, likewiſe, are diſtinguiſh'd into *Bucharian Burghers* or *Ulajeti* (*i. e.* belonging to, or dwelling in Cities,) whereas the whole Country in general is call'd *Uſbecky*, or the *Uſbeck-Tartary*.

XXII. In like Manner, the Writers of Antiquity have moſtly omitted the particular Names of Nations, Kings, Countries and Cities, and, inſtead thereof, put the Appellative and Titular

Names: Thus we have *Artabanus*, i. e. *Magnus Dux*; *Chanbalick*, i. e. *Reſidentia*; and *Sacæ*, *Scythæ*, i. e. *Hunters*, *Archers*, &c. And ſuch Appellatives having, I ſay, remained fix'd to certain Nations, I ſhall ſhew, in its proper Place, which thoſe Nations were, and how long the Names *Scythians*, *Getæ* or *Tſchudi* were in Uſe, in the *Eaſt*; For, at this Time, they are no more to be found there, than the Terms of *Sarmatian* and *Scythian* are to be found in *Europe*. All this plainly ſhews, that they were Surnames, and that what I have above obſerv'd of the *Coſacks*, is true of them: To which we may likewiſe apply, what *Pliny* (*H. N. L.* IV. *cap.* 25.) ſays of the *European Scythians*; viz. *Scytharum nomen uſquequaque tranſit in Sarmatas atque Germanos. Nec aliis priſca illa duravit appellatio, quam qui extremi gentium harum ignoti prope ceteris mortalium degunt.*

XXIII. THE ſame may be ſaid of the Names *Gog* and *Magog*; The Prophet *Ezekiel*, (*in the* 38*th and* 39*th Chapters*,) and *Joſephus* (in *L.* VII. *c.* 1.) call the *Scythians*, *Magogæi*, and the latter follows the Prophet in this, that he does not give the Name of *Magog* to the Son of *Japhet* only, (*Gen.* x.) Nor does he confine the Denomination of *Gog* and *Magog*, or *Scythians*, to his Progeny: On the contrary, the Prophet means hereby only to denote the ſeveral remote Nations or *Gojim*, whoſe particular Names were unknown to the *Jews*. And for this Denomination, he had good Reaſon, becauſe Part of theſe remote Nations were really Deſcendents of *Magog* (in *Gen.* x.) For as it is there ſaid of *Japhet*'s *Sons*, *Gomer* and *Javan*, that they peopled the Iſlands of the *Gentiles*: So the Prophet (*in the* xxxixth *Chapter*,) ranks *Magog*, and the Iſlands of the *Gentiles*, on whom GOD would ſend down Fire from Heaven, in one Claſs: Yet the Names *Gog* and *Magog* have a general Acceptation in no other Place but (*Revel.* xx. *ver.* 8.) where the *Gentiles*, in the four Corners of the Earth, are underſtood by them. But ſince Part of the Nations, who dwelt to the *Northwards* of the *Jews*, were deſcended from *Magog*, the Prophet might very well call thoſe Nations the Progeny of *Magog*, or *Magogæi*; And he poſſibly might know, which were ſtrictly ſuch, but that is what we cannot ſo well determine.

XXIV. But, as ſeveral Writers will, nevertheleſs, apply and limit *Ezekiel*'s Prophecy of *Gog* and *Magog*, partly to certain Nations, ſuppos'd to be of *Scythian* Extraction, and partly to the Inhabitants of particular Countries; I muſt allow, it might, indeed, be very difficult, though not impoſſible, to determine any Thing, with more Certainty, concerning it now, than in former Times, if every Thing that belongs to this Matter, were to be previouſly ſought for, and brought together. I find, indeed, many obſcure Traces; But the World is not now to be convinced otherwiſe than by Authentick Proofs: For as to the Words *Gog* and *Magog*, or the chief Prince of the Land of *Magog*; Though, at the Entring upon this Subject, I obſerv'd, that their Roots are not to be found in the *Hebrew* Tongue: Yet we have them in other *Eaſtern* Tongues, though but as Appellatives, or Titles of Honour and Dominion; *e. g.* in the *Turkiſh* Language *Gug* and *Juge* ſignify *Sublimis, excelſus, magnus, & glorioſus*; ſo likewiſe, *Gugelenmek* ſignifies *exaltari & faſtigari*. In the *Hungarian* Language, *Gög* ſignifies *Superbia* and *Elatio*, and *Gögös*, *arrogans & ſuperbus*. In the *Perſian* Language, the Word *Gihew* or *Gkiew* denotes *ſtrenuus, magnificus*, & *potentiſſimus*; With which the *German* Word *hoch* or *hogh* (i. e. *high*,) bears an Analogy, as do the Words of the ſame Signification in all the Dialects of the *Cimbro-Anglo-Saxo-Gothick*, and other Languages thereon dependant: For the *Germans* have changed the G of the ancient barbarous People into H; which G is ſtill to be found in the ancient *Vandal* and *Ruſſian* Languages, wherein the H is not pronounced, *e. g.* inſtead of *Halſtuch* (*i. e. Cravat*,) they ſay *Galſtuck*. All this is applicable enough to the Name of *Gog*, the chief Prince (36) of *Meſech* and *Thubal*, (*Ezekiel, Chap.* xxxviii. *ver.* 2.) And ſince it appears from hence, that *Gog* is an Appellative, and Title of Honour, which ſeveral Kings may have had, as formerly many Kings of *Egypt* had the Title of *Pharao* and *Seſoſtres*, and, in *Perſia*, *of Artawanes*, i. e. *Magni Duces*; (which the *Latins* have turn'd into *Artabani*; Though this *Parthian* Term comes from the *Mungal-Scythians*, in whoſe Language *Wann* or *Uvan* ſigni-

(36) Or (according to the Original Text) the *Chief Prince* of the Country, *Roſs*, *Meſech*, &c.

ſignifies a Prince:) So the *Gog*, which the Prophet ſpeaks of, can denote here nothing elſe. But who the Prince was, to whom this titulary Name of *Gog* was given, in *Ezekiel*'s Time, is very difficult to determine: Unleſs, if it was apropriated to any Prince of the Remote Nations, (or *Gojim*,) it might perhaps, by omitting the G, denote the *Ogus-Chan* of the *Tartars:* And this *Ogus-Chan* might be the *Scythian* King *Madias*, whom ſome Writers make a Governour of the *Cimmerii*, *Getæ* and *Goths*, (*vid. Torf. Ser. Dynaſt. Dan. in* 8. *p.* 176.) which *Ogus*, the *Tartars* and *Turks*, (juſt as the *Goths* their *Ogg*,) formerly adored, as the greateſt and mightieſt of their Anceſtors, and the higheſt God of their Country and Kingdom (37). If we look into Chronology, we may ſuppoſe this *Ogus* to have flouriſh'd in *Tartary* about eighty Years before the Prophet *Ezekiel*, there being not only thirty-two Governors, but alſo an Interregnum of 450 Years, between him and *Cingis*, or *Zingis-Chan* (38), who was

(37) Vid. *Biblioth. Suec. Part I. p.* 52. & *Peringskiold's Bibliſchen Stamm-Baum, oder Geſchlechts-Regiſter, p.* 16, 17. But that many Writers have made a Sort of *Chaos* of the Hiſtory of the *Scyths*, and blended the Atchievements of the *Getes*, *Celts*, *Goths*, *Cimbri*, *Hunns* and *Tartars* together, is prov'd by ſeveral Authors, who have endeavour'd to bring theſe Things into ſome Form again; Which may, indeed, be very difficult, but, however, ſooner or later, may not be impoſſible, eſpecially when we are better acquainted with the *North* of *Aſia*, in Reſpect as well to its Languages, as its Hiſtory. And juſt ſo it is, likewiſe, with Regard to the *Ogg* of the *Goths*, and the *Ogus* of the *Tartars*. *Ogus*, which moſt of the *Tartars*, in the *Eaſt*, (who, indeed, have one Dialect with the *Turks*, but whoſe Words, with Reſpect to Antiquity, are more pure) pronounce *Okus*, ſignifies an *Ox*; Whence alſo the *German* and *Gothick* Words, *Ochs* (an *Ox*,) and the Word *Ook* (a *Yoke*,) may have taken their Riſe; And *Keiſler*, (in *Antiquit. Celt.*) derives the Name *Ogmius* from the *Iriſh* Word *Ogum*, *Eloquence*; And *Bochartus* (in *Orig. Gall. in Boxhorn. p.* 13.) deſcribes the *Celtick Hercules* as an Orator, who, according to *Lucian*, had the Surname of *Ogmius*; This might likewiſe be applied to *Ogus*, the *Tartarian Hercules*, of whom Hiſtory mentions, that in the firſt Year of his Infancy, he had the Name of *Allah* (or *God*) in his Mouth, and, in the ſame Year, gave himſelf the Name of *Ogus*, *vid. l'Hiſt. des Tartars à Leyde* 1726. *p.* 34. *

* At the Expiration of a Year, he ſhould have ſaid; *For his Author relates the Matter thus:* " *His Father having aſſembled all the Nobles of his Court, and cauſed a ſplendid En-*
" *tertainment to be provided for them, order'd the Child to be brought in, and, addreſſing*
" *himſelf to them, ſaid:* You know, that, my Son being a Year old, it is now the Time
" (*according to our Cuſtom*) to give him his Name; *Upon which, every one being attentive*
" *what Name his Father would give him, the Child began to ſpeak, and ſaid*; What other
" Name do you pretend to give me, my Name is *Ogus*.

(38) The Word *Cing* or *Zing* in the *Mungalian* and *Kalmuck* Language, ſignifies *great, mighty*, or *Monarch*; Which is probably the ſame with the Word *Cyng* in the *Anglo-Saxon* and *Britiſh* Languages, ſignifying a *King*. (Vid. *Gloſſ. Joh. Georg. Wacht. in Prolegom.*) †

† Upon

was born in the twelfth Century, in the Year 1154, (or, as others ſay, 1164.) And both this *Ogus*, and the Nations, partly deſcended from him, and partly founded by him, *viz.* the *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Mungals* and *Hunns*, made, in following Times, terrible Irruptions, not only into the *Leſſer Aſia*, but quite into *Paleſtine*. Theſe Circumſtances agree ſo exactly with the Prediction of the Prophet, that this Opinion might highly deſerve to be farther examin'd into: Eſpecially if either we will admit the above-mention'd Proof, that *Magog*, of the *Hebrews*, and *Magougi*, *Madſchyth* or *Maſſgæth* of the *Tartars*, are all one, and that this latter may very well be uſed for the Name of *Madſchias*, *Madſias*, or *Madias*; Or, if to this we add, that *Aſs* and *Æſer* in the old *German* and *Gothick* Tongues, ſignify God and Gods, by which they underſtood Princes and Heroes, (which the Modern *Tartars* call *Æeſch*, *Aſem* and *Aſam)* and *Madur*, in the old *Iſlandiſh* Language, ſignifies a Man; from whence may be deriv'd the Name, *Madur-as* or *Madi-as*, (i. e. a *Divine* and *Heroick Man*,) which may have been the Surname of *Gogus*, or *Ogus-Chan* (39).

XXV. THESE remote Nations or *Gojim* may have been ſurnamed *Gojits*, by Foreigners, from the Title of their Prince; Juſt as the *Kalmucks* are called *Kontaiſchini*, by the *Ruſſians*, from their Prince or *Kontaiſch* (which is a Title of Honour given their Sovereign;) And as they name their own *Kalmucks*, upon the *Wolga*,

† UPON *which Occaſion we may, likewiſe, obſerve, that there are, in this Language, ſeveral* Mungalian *Words and Names, which are yet in Uſe. e. g.* Sheringham, (in Diſſert. de Orig. Gent. Angl. p. 110.) *mentions; That* Meddu, *in the* Britiſh *Tongue, ſignifies*, in Health, ſtrong, hearty. *Now this Word, among the* Kalmucks, *is a Word of Salutation, when they enquire after any one's Health, and has likewiſe the ſame Signification. Again,* Cain, *in the* Britiſh *Tongue, ſignifies,* white, fair, noble; *for which the* Kalmuck *Word is* Zain. *So* Bychan, little, mean, *is, with the* Kalmucks *and* Mungalians, Byzechan, *&c.*

WITH *Regard to the Termination* is, *in the Name* ZINGIS, *it denotes the Superlative Degree. Thus* Zing-iſs, *is as much as to ſay, the greateſt of all, or the moſt mighty King and Monarch.*

(39) That the Appellative Names of Princes and Reſidences have often been taken for Proper Names, is a Thing not unknown to the Learned; And ſhall, in the Sequel, be prov'd, by many evident Inſtances. I ſhall here only obſerve, that the Appellative Names of Reſidences may often become Proper Names, e. g. *Tura*, *Cambalick*, and *Stolitza*, are but Appellatives, the firſt of which denotes the Capital City in *Siberia*, *Tobolsky*, the ſecond the Reſidence of *Peking*, in *China*; But, by the Third, the *Poles* and *Ruſſians* very often denote the City of *Warſaw*, as well as *Muſcow*; Which is the ſame as when *Rome* is ſometimes only call'd *Urbs*, (the *City*) and *Jeruſalem Keduſcha* (i. e. the *Holy*.) The like of which many ancient Writers have taken for Proper Names, and thereby cauſed a great Confuſion in Antiquity.

Wolga, *Ajuckini*, from their Prince *Ajucki*; and thoſe *Mungals* that have an *Uvann* or *Wann* for their Prince, *Wanſki-Ludi*. And, therefore, ſome Nations may, in Length of Time, have loſt the Names which they had from the Titles of their *Chans*. For Inſtance: When the *Kontaiſch* and *Ajucki* of the *Kalmucks* die, their Subjects will no more be call'd *Kontaiſchini* nor *Ajuckini*; For they do not call themſelves ſo now, Foreigners and *Ruſſians* only give them this Name. Many Nations, indeed, out of Love to their Princes, have conſtantly preſerv'd ſuch Names, as we have an Inſtance in the *Uſbecks*, who once had another Name: And this in former Times was very common. e. g. The primitive *Turks* (according to the Relation of *Eaſtern* Authors) were call'd ſo from their chief Anceſtor *Turr*; And the *Mungals* from their *Mung'l*.

XXVI. THESE *Gojim*, or *Gogs*, as the *Hebrews* call'd them, from their Prince, ſome Tribes of whom the Prophet names, *viz.* *Meſech* or *Moſynæci*, *Tibareni* or *Tubalits*, and *Roſchi*, who liv'd on the *Black Sea*, muſt be ſuppos'd to have been, as well on this, as on the other ſide of the *Caucaſus*; Which no one can diſpute. And from thence, as has been mention'd before, the Particle *Ma* gave Riſe to the Appellative, which denotes the *Magougi*, *Madſchudi* and *Ma-ſgets*, of the *Tartars*: The *Ma-ſgets*, as we find, being placed, for this Reaſon, near the *Imaus*, the *Magors* near the *Taurus*, the *Madſchudi* near the *Ryphæan* Mountains, and the *Ma-Tzin* towards *China*.

XXVII. THE Words *Gogi*, *Gougi*, *Schuidi*, *Sgetæ*, and *Zayjadi*, as I have obſerv'd above, the *Sclavonians* and *Ruſſians* now pronounce *Tziuht* and *Tſchuht*, which one would almoſt imagine to be the ſame with the Word *Thiuth*, which was ſo much in Uſe in the old *German* and *Gothick* Languages; Of which *Leibnitz* diſcourſes in his *Miſcellanies* (pag. 64.) and ſuppoſes it to ſignify *People*. But as for the Name *Gougi* and *Magougi*; *Herbelot* (in his *Biblioth. Orient.* p. 677.) expreſſeth himſelf as follows: *Les Muſelmans diſent, que tous les Biens nous ſont venus par les Deſcendans de Sem, & tous les Maux par ceux de* Japhet, *du quel ſont venus les* Jagiouges, & Magiouges, *qui ſont* Gog & Magog, *ou les* Hyperboriens, Tſchin & Matſchin, *qui ſont les* Turcs & *les* Khozariens, *peuples qui habitent les vaſtes Campagnes, nommées* Kapgiak *ou* Kipchak:

chak: And farther, (*p.* 811.) Jagioug & Magioug *qui ſont le* Gog & Magog *de l'Ecriture Sainte.* Tho' in this, *Herbelot* is, in ſome Meaſure miſtaken, and ſhould rather have ſaid: *Jagioug*, and *Magioug* denote the *Turks* and *Khozares*, and not *Tſchin* and *Matſchin*, which, has been already prov'd, have Regard to the Kingdom of *China*; And ſo *La Croix* (in his *Hiſtoire du Grand Genghizcan*, p. 6.) places *Gog* and *Magog* in old *Mogoliſtan*; Which, as I ſhall ſhew, in its due Place, was *North* of the *Caſpian* Sea, and is the *Kapchak* or *Kaptſchak* which *Herbelot* mentions, where *Ogus-Chan*, as well as *Turr*, (or *Turck*) the Anceſtor of all the *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Mungals*, &c. had their Reſidence, near the Mountains *Ulu-tag* and *Kitzick-tag*, and on the Banks of the Lake call'd *Iſſechkol*, (vid. *Hiſt. Genealog. des Tart. à Leyde*, 1726. p. 24. & 30.) It farther appears, from what has been ſaid, (1.) That the *Jagiouge* and *Magiouge*, or *Jadſchiudi* and *Madſchudi*, of the *Tartars*, are all one with *Gog* and *Magog*. (2.) That by theſe the Nations far *Northward* of the *Jews* are meant; (which is ſhewn by the Word *Hyperborians*;) And, (3.) That the firſt Syllables of theſe Words, *Ja* and *Ma*, have their particular Meaning; And, therefore, what I have ſaid of this above muſt be right, *viz.* that *Ja* or *Gatziudi* denotes thoſe *Scythians* who dwell in the Valleys, and beyond the Mountains, and *Ma*-or *Maziudi* thoſe upon the Hills, and on this Side the Mountains; Which will appear yet more clear, when I come to the Deſcription of this *Northern* Part of *Aſia*.

XXVIII. I HAVE already mention'd, that the *Hebrews* generally underſtood, by the Name *Goy* or *Gojim*, a remote Heathen People, and that the Root of this Word is not to be found in the *Hebrew* Tongue; I will, therefore, now take Notice of ſome Words, of the ſame Signification, in other *Eaſtern* Languages. And firſt, if we conſider the Diſpoſition of Mind, expreſs'd by theſe Words: *Ghewi*, and *Ghawi*, in the *Arabick* Tongue, it ſignifies *errans*, *errabundus*; *Ghaur*, *Ghâwur*, *Ghewr*, and *Ghewür*, in the *Perſian* and *Turkiſh* Languages, ſignify an unbelieving *Heathen*; And *Ghor* and *Ghour*, in the ſame Languages, *cæcus*, *cæcus corde*, *ſtolidus*, *ſtupidus*, *vecors*, *iners*; *Giohûl* alſo, in the *Arabick* Tongue, ſtands for *ſimple*, *ſtupid*; *Ghyjet*, for *Temeritas*, *Incogitantia*; And the *Arabians* call the *Pagan* Times, before *Mahomet*,

Giahalyja; *Ghay* (40), ſignifying an *Error*, *by which he that is ſeduced ſinneth*, and likewiſe to be *miſled* and *ſeduced*. All which have an Alluſion to *Goy* and *Gojim*; And if we have a View to the Diſtance of Places, *Ghayet* and *Ghâje*, in *Turkiſh*, ſignify the Extremity of a Thing, its utmoſt Bounds or End. *Gewa* and *Givâh* is a wide extended Country. Of which Words we, likewiſe, yet find ſome Tracks in *Tartary*: The *Ajuckian Kalmucks*, who live on the *Wolga*, give themſelves the Surname of Tor-*gauht* or Tor-*giuht*, in Order to diſtinguiſh themſelves from other *Kalmucks*: For *Torr* or *Turr* is; *I ſit*, *I dwell*; and *gauht* or *giuht*, in the *Mungalian* Language, *remote*; They having formerly been at the greateſt Diſtance from other *Kalmucks*. (Vid. *l'Hiſt. des Tartars*, *p.* 114.)

XXIX. To conclude this Matter, I muſt add: That, as I ſaid at firſt, the *Scythæ intra Imaum* of *Ptolemy* denoted the *Mungals* and *Kalmucks*, in which Paſſage *Herodotus*, becauſe of the Particle *Ma*, has ſet *Ma-ſgetæ*; So I muſt obſerve, that whereas *Ptolemy* underſtands, by the *Imaus*, a large Chain or Ridge of Mountains, running from *South* to *North*, and calls them *Samanthini*, which *Mercator* explains, ſaying: They ſignify *Iniſia*, (vid. *Diction. Car. Steph. p.* 1115.) the latter of theſe two corrupt Names denotes the Mountains on the Banks of the River *Jeneſei*, and the former the *Sayanſkian* Mountains, as they are call'd to this Day, on the Banks of the ſame River, which, indeed, ſtretch, from *South* to *North*, along the ſaid River: But theſe cannot denote the true *Imaus*; And *Ptolemy* is, likewiſe, entirely miſtaken, in taking the *Samanthian* and *Jeneſian* Mountains for it. For as thoſe Mountains ſtretch away from the *Imaus*, which is now call'd *Imus-tag*, from *South* to *North*; So the true *Imaus* bends chiefly from *Eaſt* to *Weſt*, and ſeparates a great Part of the *Kalmuck-Tartary* from the *Empire* of *Kaſchgar* or little *Buchary*. I therefore place the *Mungals* and *Kalmucks* to the *Weſt*, and within the *Samanthinian* and *Jeniſean Imaus* of *Ptolemy*, as I do likewiſe the *Nomadean-Maſſagete-Scythians*, of *Herodotus*: But the *Eaſtern Tartars* I place

(40) With this the *Hebrew* Dialect, uſed in *Abyſſinia*, (*viz.* the *Ethiopian* Language) perfectly agrees; In which the following emphatical Words are very common; *viz.* *Ghâj*, a *horrible Error*; *Crime*, or *Vice*; *Giguj*, *one that is vicious*, or *is accus'd of a Vice*; in the Plural Number *Gigujan*, *thoſe that are vicious*, or *in a horrible Error*; and *Guighaja*, *to be in a great Error*.

place without thoſe Mountains, towards the *North-Eaſt*, and *Eaſt*, and the *Empire* of *China* in the *North*, where they formerly had their Seat, and have yet. The Reader will not take it amiſs, that I have wander'd ſo far from my Relation of the *Mungal* Nations, to diſcuſs this Matter; ſince I could not well avoid taking the Opportunity which offer'd, on this Occaſion, to lay down ſome Things for a farther Conſideration and Enquiry, and to fix ſome Grounds here to which I may refer in the Sequel.

XXX. But to return to the *Mungal* Nations: We muſt know, that theſe are the People whom the *Chineſe*, with Reſpect to their Situation, call *Weſt Tartars*, and others *Weſt Mungals*: But they do not reckon themſelves *Tartars*, neither would they, by any Means, be thought ſo by others. The Reaſon why foreign Nations give them now the common Name of *Tartars* is; Becauſe, at the firſt Grand Irruption into *China*, by the *Original Tartars*, (who were known by the *Chineſe*, and dwelt near them) under Command of *Ogus-Chan*, they were the firſt who enter'd into Alliance, and united with the true primitive *Tartars*. And there, or, at leaſt, near *China*, Part of theſe *Mungals* firſt ſettled themſelves, in the Time of this *Ogus-Chan*. For the Ancient *Mungaliſtan* was not ſituated, where the *Mungals* liv'd, in the Time of the great *Zingis* and *Ung-Chan*, and where Part of them yet inhabit; But near the Mountains of *Ulu-Tag* and *Kitzich-Tag*, or *Urnack* and *Lurnack*, and near the Lake, which is call'd, to this Day, *Iſſechkoll*, in the *Eaſtern Turkeſtan*; *(See my Map.)* I ſhall ſhew in the Sequel, that this Lake and Place is the ſame with the *Iſſedon Scythica*, mention'd by Ancient Writers; Whence likewiſe, the *Iſſedonians* of *Herodot. Lib. IV.*

XXXI. But as, in the Time of *Ogus-Chan*, the Name *Tartar* was known to the *Chineſe*, but not that of *Mungal*; And the *Chineſe*, in their Writings, were oblig'd to invent a new Character, for every new Nation or Name; And beſides, the Word *Tata* having much the ſame Signification with them, as *Barbarus* among the *Latins*; So they took no Care, in their Writings, to diſtinguiſh the *Mungals*, who were united with the *Tartars*, and had the ſame Cuſtoms and Manners with them; (Tho', in following Times, they were more exact in this.) Thence the Name *Tartar* became ſo general with them, in like Manner, as

is now practis'd by the *Turks*, in the Word *Kathai*, they reckoning all the Countries, *Eaſtward* from the *Usbecks*, a Part of *Kathai*, or *China*; and hence comes their Repetition of the ſame Term *Kathai-Kathai*, after the manner of *Tzin-ma Tzin* (41), which I took Notice of before. And becauſe *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, when he was in *China*, was not rightly inform'd of the State of Things, he, as well as the Monks ſent into *Tartary*, viz. *Plan*, *Carpin*, *Rubriquis*, &c. have themſelves taken up, and miſled us *Europeans*, with the *Chineſe* Conceit, that all thoſe People, whether *Kalmucks* or *Mungals*, muſt go under the Denomination of *Tartars*: Tho, at preſent, we know better how to diſtinguiſh them: And this may be ſufficient to ſay previouſly on this Matter.

XXXII. I COME now to a Deſcription of the Fifth Claſs, *viz.* the *Tunguſian Tartars*, or, more properly (as the *Siberian Tartars*, in *Tobolſky*, call them) the *Tingiſian Tartars*, who have not their Name from *Tongus*, Swine, (tho' they indeed eat them) as the Author *de l'Hiſt. Genealog. des Tart. à Leyde* 1726. *p.* 344. obſerves. For this is only given them as an Opprobrious Name, on Account of the Affinity between the Words, *Tingis* and *Tongus*, and becauſe they eat Swine. *Vincentius Beluacenſ.* (*Lib.* 32. *cap.* 8.) and the *Hiſt. du Grand Genghizcan par M. la Croix*, (*p.* 54.) ſay they were call'd *Su-Mungals*, i. e. *Water* or *Sea-Mungals*, (which Word, in *Das Veränderte Rußland*, is, by an Error of the Preſs, written *Sani-Ongals*) becauſe they live to this Day on Rivers, and not like the aforeſaid *Mungals*, in dry and barren Countries, neither do they wander from one Place to another, and encamp in the Fields, as the former do: However, as they have often been under their Dominion, they are compriz'd under the Common Name of *Mungals*. Now as Su-*Mungal* and *Tingis* are, in Effect, the ſame, the latter ſignifying, in the *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* Languages, what *Su* does in the *Mungalian*, *Sea* or *Water*; And, moreover, *Tonger*, in the *Hungarian* Tongue, ſignifies a Lake or Pool, *Vincentius Belluacenſis* has rightly obſerv'd, that theſe *Tunguſian*,

(41) The *Perſians*, in their ancient Writings, call the *Tartarian Kings*, *Hakan-Chini*, *Tzini*, or *Sini*, as ſome Modern Authors very well obſerve: But by this they properly underſtand only thoſe that have reigned in *Caſchgar* or *Choteen*: But when they alſo call them *Torcim*, or *Turkim*, they mean thoſe Princes that have Dominion over the *Tartars* who inhabit more towards the *North*.

guſian, or *Su-Mungals*, are Original *Tartars*: But then his Conjecture as to the Derivation of the Name *Tartar*, is erroneous, when he ſuppoſes they have taken it from a River call'd *Tata*, which, according to him, runs thro' their Country; And this Opinion ſeveral other Authors have follow'd: For after all poſſible Enquiry made among theſe Nations, I have been able to procure no Intelligence of any ſuch Thing; Their Anſwer being conſtantly; that they know of no River call'd either *Tata* or *Tatar*.

XXXIII. THIS Opinion of their being true *Tartars* agrees perfectly well with the *Chineſe Annals*, and, likewiſe, with the Manuſcript of the *Tartarian Abulgaſi Bagadur Chan*, in which it is affirm'd, that the Anceſtors of this *Tunguſian* Nation were the firſt Original *Tartars*, (as I ſhall plainly prove, in a proper Place:) For theſe were, in former Times, one and the ſame Nation with the *Dſudſudian*, or *Daur-Schoian*, *Bogdoan* or *Niuchæan* and *Jupian Tartars*, who alſo are call'd *Martiſian* or *Manddſchi-Diſchin*, and have now the Dominion of the *Chineſe Empire*; They are alſo call'd, at the ſame Time, *Eaſtern Tartars*: And from them, in ſubſequent Ages, all other *Tartars* took this Name.

XXXIV. ANCIENT *European* Writers have deſcrib'd this Nation under the Name of *Abi-Scythians*, and placed them in *Scythia extra Imaum*. Of theſe *Scythians*, the Author of the Supplement to *Curtius* (*Lib.* 1. *c.* 6.) obſerves, that they ſent their Deputies to *Alexander the Great*, when he encamp'd, with his Army, on the River *Jaxartes*, (which is the *Falſe Tanais*,) whoſe Abode is aſſign'd by *Ptolemy* under the Parallel of 60 Degrees, and the Meridian of 140. (See the Tranſlation of *Arianus*, by *Monſ. d'Ablancourt*, *p.* 119.) To prove that the *Su-Mungals* were the *Aby-Scythians*, it may be worthy of Remark, that there are many Words of the *Medo-Perſian* Tongue to be found in *Great Tartary*: *e. g.* The River *Tiger*, which, in *Tartary*, is call'd *Tugur*, and has the ſame Signification as the former, *viz. rapid*, or *vehement in its Courſe*. In this Language the Word *Abe* or *Abi* ſignifies *Water*, *Sea*, and *Rivers*. And as *Stephanus*, (in *Æſchile Prometheo*) calls theſe *Abies* likewiſe *Gubii*, (vid. *Dict. Car. Steph. p.* 17.) So, in the *Sclavonian* and *Ruſſian* Tongues, this latter Word

Word denotes a *People who live on Seas, Rivers and Lakes.* e. g. The *Sinus Dulcis*, into which the River *Oby* falls, is call'd, by them, *Guba-Taſowſkoi.*

XXXV. SINCE then *Su* and *Tingis* are all one with *Abe* and *Guba* (42), and the Deſcendants of theſe *Abies* live, to this Day, where *Ptolemy* places their Anceſtors, *viz.* in the Parallels of 50 and 60, and the Meridians of 120 and 140. We may plainly infer, if the Names of *Abe* and *Abi*, be interpreted in all the four Languages; Eſpecially ſince the Meaning of *Aber* in the Ancient *Celtick* and *French* Tongues, is a Stream, a River, a Waterfall, and likewiſe a Haven, (from whence the Modern *French* Word, *Havre*) they will appear to have one and the ſame Signification (43). And from this, likewiſe, appear the Grounds which ſome Authors may have had to take *Oby* and *Abi* for ſynonimous Terms. Nay, it is highly probable, that ſince, in the *Kalmuck*, and other *Tartarian* Languages, *Sui* and *Su* ſignify, as has been obſerv'd, *Water* and Sea; (whence the *Germans* ſay *See*, the *Swedes Siö*) and the *Suiones*, according to *Tacitus*, were a People living near the Sea, in *Europe*; that the Name of theſe People may have taken its Origin from the *Sui* or *Su* of thoſe Nations, who wander'd from the *Eaſt* to the *Weſt* (44).

XXXVI. To this, I will only add, that ſince Authors deſcribe thoſe *Abies* as a good and upright People: I could wiſh the Reader would conſult the Appendix to *Olearius*, of the *Tartarian* War with *China*; Where thoſe *Eaſtern Tartars* are deſcribed, as differing very much from the other Rabble, who bear that Name; *viz.* that they were a *diſcreet, valiant, prudent and upright Nation.* The *German* Jeſuit, Father *Kilianus Stumph* (45), in the Manuſcript he publiſh'd of *China*, 1712, bears Teſtimony of them, that they were, indeed, an honeſt and upright People; But

(42) Vid. *Das Veraenderte Ruſſland*, p. 182. in which *Taſſarskoja* is an Error of the Preſs.

(43) Vid. *Abrah. Mulij. Archæol. Teut.* Likewiſe *Læſcher Lit. Celt.* p. 13.

(44) *Joh. Georg. Wacht.* (in his *Gloſſ. Germ. Præfat.* § XLV. *Not. M.*) thinks the *Goths* underſtood *Finnland*, by the Name *Abalum*; This may, however, be applicable here, in a certain Senſe only; Becauſe the Country abounds with Rivers, Water and Fiſh.

(45) It is inſerted in *Das Veraenderte Ruſſland*, p. 102. and theſe are the *Tartars* of whom I here treat; which *Kilianus* there calls the *Weſtern Tartars*, who are different from thoſe he calls *Jupi*, or that wear Fiſh-Skins.

But that, by Degrees, they learn'd many bad Things of the *Chineſe*. And ſince, in other Things, we look upon the Teſtimony of two or three, as a ſufficient Eviction of the Truth, and I have, in this Caſe, produced four or five, I hope, I have gain'd the Approbation of the Reader, and that my Proofs have carried a ſufficient Weight with them.

XXXVII. SIXTHLY, and laſtly, I come now to thoſe Nations, who inhabit the Extremity of the *North-Eaſtern* Regions, towards the Promontory of *Tabyn*, *viz.* the *Jukagri*, *Koræiki*, *Tſchucktſchi*, *Liutori*, *Kamtſchadali*, and *Kurili*. And to what Nations of Antiquity to compare theſe, I muſt confeſs, I am at a Loſs; Eſpecially, ſince they have no Reſemblance to thoſe in the Fifth Claſs, who are their neareſt Neighbours, either in their Language or Figure. This Country was, as I have ſaid above, Part of the unknown Ancient *Scythia*; Of which, Ancient Writers give no Account: Nor can I, therefore, compare them, with any of the Nations of Antiquity: And ſince more Circumſtances of theſe Nations will be particularis'd in the Deſcription of them, I ſhall defer all farther Conjectures 'till then.

XXXVIII. THUS much being premis'd, It is evident, what falſe Conceptions we have hitherto had, in *Europe*, of this *North-Eaſtern* Part of the World! By ſuppoſing it to be entirely inhabited by *Tartars*, and by no other Nations. Juſt as in the Time of the *Aſſyrian* Monarchy, and the *Children of Iſrael*, it was believ'd that all Nations and Countries which lie beyond *Aſſyria*, *Greece*, and *Perſia*, were call'd *Gog* and *Magog*, *Goy* and *Magoy*, or *Gojim* and *Magojim*: Theſe Denominations were not in themſelves wrong; But they were not the proper Names of thoſe Nations, whereby they call'd themſelves; But only Appellatives, as I have mention'd above, which were given to all remote Nations, whoſe particular Names were unknown: It is the ſame, to this Day, with the Inhabitants of *Upper Aſia*, who call us *Europeans*, in general, *Frangs*, or *Franks*, without Diſtinction; Whether *Germans*, *Engliſh*, *French*, *Spaniards*, *Swedes*, or *Dutch*. This is ſuppoſed to have had its Origin from the *Holy War*: And the moſt knowing of the *Bucharian Tartars*, in the City of *Tobolſky*, confeſs'd, that, before our Arrival in *Siberia*,

Word denotes a *People who live on Seas, Rivers and Lakes.* e. g. The *Sinus Dulcis*, into which the River *Oby* falls, is call'd, by them, *Guba-Taſowſkoi.*

XXXV. SINCE then *Su* and *Tingis* are all one with *Abe* and *Guba* (42), and the Deſcendants of theſe *Abies* live, to this Day, where *Ptolemy* places their Anceſtors, *viz.* in the Parallels of 50 and 60, and the Meridians of 120 and 140. We may plainly infer, if the Names of *Abe* and *Abi*, be interpreted in all the four Languages; Eſpecially ſince the Meaning of *Aber* in the Ancient *Celtick* and *French* Tongues, is a Stream, a River, a Waterfall, and likewiſe a Haven, (from whence the Modern *French* Word, *Havre*) they will appear to have one and the ſame Signification (43). And from this, likewiſe, appear the Grounds which ſome Authors may have had to take *Oby* and *Abi* for ſynonimous Terms. Nay, it is highly probable, that ſince, in the *Kalmuck*, and other *Tartarian* Languages, *Sui* and *Su* ſignify, as has been obſerv'd, *Water* and Sea; (whence the *Germans* ſay *See*, the *Swedes Siö*) and the *Suiones*, according to *Tacitus*, were a People living near the Sea, in *Europe*; that the Name of theſe People may have taken its Origin from the *Sui* or *Su* of thoſe Nations, who wander'd from the *Eaſt* to the *Weſt* (44).

XXXVI. To this, I will only add, that ſince Authors deſcribe thoſe *Abies* as a good and upright People: I could wiſh the Reader would conſult the Appendix to *Olearius*, of the *Tartarian* War with *China*; Where thoſe *Eaſtern Tartars* are deſcribed, as differing very much from the other Rabble, who bear that Name; *viz.* that they were a *diſcreet, valiant, prudent and upright Nation.* The *German* Jeſuit, Father *Kilianus Stumph* (45), in the Manuſcript he publiſh'd of *China*, 1712, bears Teſtimony of them, that they were, indeed, an honeſt and upright People; But

(42) Vid. *Das Veraenderte Ruſſland*, p. 182. in which *Taſſarskoja* is an Error of the Preſs.

(43) Vid. *Abrah. Mulij. Archæol. Teut.* Likewiſe *Læſcher Lit. Celt.* p. 13.

(44) *Joh. Georg. Wacht.* (in his *Gloſſ. Germ. Præfat.* § XLV. *Not. M.*) thinks the *Goths* underſtood *Finnland*, by the Name *Abalum*; This may, however, be applicable here, in a certain Senſe only; Becauſe the Country abounds with Rivers, Water and Fiſh.

(45) It is inſerted in *Das Veraenderte Ruſſland*, p. 102. and theſe are the *Tartars* of whom I here treat; which *Kilianus* there calls the *Weſtern Tartars*, who are different from thoſe he calls *Jupi*, or that wear Fiſh-Skins.

But that, by Degrees, they learn'd many bad Things of the *Chineſe*. And ſince, in other Things, we look upon the Teſtimony of two or three, as a ſufficient Eviction of the Truth, and I have, in this Caſe, produced four or five, I hope, I have gain'd the Approbation of the Reader, and that my Proofs have carried a ſufficient Weight with them.

XXXVII. SIXTHLY, and laſtly, I come now to thoſe Nations, who inhabit the Extremity of the *North-Eaſtern* Regions, towards the Promontory of *Tabyn*, *viz.* the *Jukagri*, *Koræiki*, *Tſchucktſchi*, *Liutori*, *Kamtſchadali*, and *Kurili*. And to what Nations of Antiquity to compare theſe, I muſt confeſs, I am at a Loſs; Eſpecially, ſince they have no Reſemblance to thoſe in the Fifth Claſs, who are their neareſt Neighbours, either in their Language or Figure. This Country was, as I have ſaid above, Part of the unknown Ancient *Scythia*; Of which, Ancient Writers give no Account: Nor can I, therefore, compare them, with any of the Nations of Antiquity: And ſince more Circumſtances of theſe Nations will be particularis'd in the Deſcription of them, I ſhall defer all farther Conjectures 'till then.

XXXVIII. THUS much being premis'd, It is evident, what falſe Conceptions we have hitherto had, in *Europe*, of this *North-Eaſtern* Part of the World! By ſuppoſing it to be entirely inhabited by *Tartars*, and by no other Nations. Juſt as in the Time of the *Aſſyrian* Monarchy, and the *Children of Iſrael*, it was believ'd that all Nations and Countries which lie beyond *Aſſyria*, *Greece*, and *Perſia*, were call'd *Gog* and *Magog*, *Goy* and *Magoy*, or *Gojim* and *Magojim:* Theſe Denominations were not in themſelves wrong; But they were not the proper Names of thoſe Nations, whereby they call'd themſelves; But only Appellatives, as I have mention'd above, which were given to all remote Nations, whoſe particular Names were unknown: It is the ſame, to this Day, with the Inhabitants of *Upper Aſia*, who call us *Europeans*, in general, *Frangs*, or *Franks*, without Diſtinction; Whether *Germans*, *Engliſh*, *French*, *Spaniards*, *Swedes*, or *Dutch*. This is ſuppoſed to have had its Origin from the *Holy War*: And the moſt knowing of the *Bucharian Tartars*, in the City of *Tobolſky*, confeſs'd, that, before our Arrival in *Siberia*,

Siberia, they had never heard of any ſuch particular Names, as *Swedes*, *Germans*, *Finn-landers*, or *Livonians*, &c.

XXXIX. THEREFORE *Thomas Hiærner*, in his Manuſcript Hiſtory of *Eſthonia*, *Livonia* and *Lithlandia* judges right, why ſo many Nations and Countries had quite other Names among their Neighbours, than what was uſual and known among themſelves; *viz.* That it aroſe from the Provinces, to which they were neareſt adjoin'd, and with which they became firſt acquainted. Thus the *Finnlanders* call all *Eſthonia*, *Wira-Mah*, becauſe *Wirrland* lies the neareſt to them: For the ſame Reaſon, they call all *Germany* from *Saxony*, and all *Sweden*, according to the Province of *Roſlagen*. The *Romans*, in the ſame Manner, call'd all *Denmark*, *Sweden* and *Norway*, partly from *Schonen*, *Scandia*, and partly from *Tulemarck*, a Diſtrict in *Norway*, *Tulen*, &c. To this we may add, that the *French*, to this Day, call the *Germans Allemands*, from the Name of one particular Nation, call'd *Alemanni*. The very ſame has been obſerv'd by the *Chineſe*, who call all the People of *Tartary*, *Tata*, from the *Tartars* who formerly dwelt neareſt them. This is what I thought proper to premiſe in general, concerning theſe Nations and Countries; and to this Ground-work I ſhall, in the Sequel, refer, when I come to a Deſcription of their Migrations.

SECT. IV.

Of the Polyglot Table, *and its Uſe, in Enquiring into* Ancient Hiſtory.

SUMMARY.

§. I. AN *Accident has occaſion'd this Table, of the Harmony of Languages, to be defective in ſome Parts of it.* II. *Several Ancient Names and Words in theſe Languages explain'd. The Etymology highly conducive to that End.* III. *The Contents and Method of this* Polyglot *Table.* IV. *The* Tar-

tars

tars *want Words for many* European *Things, which are unknown to them.* V. *And, therefore, their Languages have not been ſo liable to Change. There is a great Affinity between the* Turkiſh, Tartarian, *Ancient* German-Gothick *and ſome other Languages.* VI. *In the Denomination of thoſe Things, which have always been familiar to them, their Languages are often more copious than the* European. VII. *The ſeveral Nations which are ranged under each Claſs, in the Deſcription, have the ſame Dialect with thoſe divided in the ſame Manner in the Table, that is, every Nation with its Claſs.* VIII. *The Utility of this* Polyglot *Table is ſhewn by the Harmony there is between the Languages of the* Hunns, Saeckler, Hungarians *and* Finnlanders. IX. *By the* Etymology *of the Words,* Daza, Teuht, *&c. And likewiſe,* X. *Of the Words* Turuja, *and* Chuncker. XI. *To ſhew farther the Uſefulneſs of this Table, the Author gives the Origin of the Words* Sachſen, Landſaſſen; XII. *Of the* Hungarian *Word* Fen; *Of the* Jyrcæ *mention'd by* Herodotus; *And,* XIII. *Of the Words* Cinn, Tſchin, *or* Cenn, *the like of which we find, likewiſe, in* Pliny, Curtius, *and other Ancient Authors. Such* Cinnian *Surnames are, to this Day, in Uſe, in the* Greater Tartary. *What theſe Words ſignify among the* Arabians. *Whence the Name of* Saracens *had its Original? The* Arabians *formerly call'd the* Southern *Nations* Black, *and the* Northern Red *People. This the* Eaſtern Tartars *likwiſe do, when they diſtinguiſh* Cataja *or* Katais, *by the Names of* Black *and* Red. *Whence the* Characeni *were? What their true Names are? They have likewiſe been call'd* Saracens. XIV. *What the Words* Oglani, *and* Iungling *ſignify?* XV. *Whence the Name of* Boryſthenes *is derived? What* Mare Maruſa *ſignifies?* XVI. *Several of the Languages in the Table are taken from the Writings of two learned Men.* XVII. *Two Languages which are in Uſe in* Penſylvania, *are omitted, in the Table, for Want of Room.*

§. I. I HAVE already made ſome Remarks, concerning the Extraction and Migration of the *Scythian* and *Tartarian* Nations: Order now requires me to give ſome Account of their Languages. With Reſpect to the Specimen of the Harmony

mony of Languages, annexed to this Treatiſe, I have already obſerv'd in my *Prodrome*, publiſh'd in 1726, the unhappy Fate which befel my Notes, on my Journy between *Siberia* and *Muſcow*: And ſeveral Words and Numbers, which I had carefully collected, being then loſt, is the Occaſion, that ſome Blanks are to be found in the Columns of this Table; But to ſupply the Defect, I have not only prefix'd an Alphabetical *Kalmuck* and *Tartarian* Vocabulary; But alſo have, throughout the whole Deſcription, explain'd many *Mungalian*, *Hunnian*, *Tunguſian* and other *Tartarian* Words and Names, which I could not ſo properly place in the Columns of the Table. By this Means, I have not only traced the Original Names of ſeveral Nations; but have every where furniſh'd Matter, which may be of great Service to the Learned, in making a farther Enquiry, into their Migrations.

II. In my Enquiries into the Etymology of many Paſſages and Words, in Ancient Authors, I have partly made Uſe of the Languages in this Collection, partly of thoſe uſed in the *South-Eaſtern Parts*, in which latter I have been obliged to call in the Help of others. Whatever ſmall Miſtakes I may have here and there made, in this Collection of Words and Names, will, I hope, be ſufficiently attoned for, in the Eyes of the Learned, by the Goodneſs of my Intention. And to ſuch, I leave the perfecting of this Work. It is a Proverb very well known; *Vocabula ſunt Veſtigia, vel rerum Cubicula.* The Truth of this Axiom I have ſufficiently experienc'd, in my Enquiries into the Etymology of Ancient Names and Words: However, I have been very careful to exclude all ſuch Etymologies, as have the Appearance of being far-fetch'd, or, in any wiſe, abſurd. I take the Liberty to apply here, what the King of *Pruſſia*'s Privy-Counſellor, Mr. *Gundling*, *p.* 7. of his *Gungliania*, ſays, concerning Enquiries into the Antiquities of the *Germans*. Whoever (ſays he) will attempt to write any Thing of *German* Antiquities, with Solidity, and will pretend rightly to explain the Ancients, muſt, above all Things, apply himſelf to the Etymology, and Original Signification of Words, *&c.* And this he confirms with an Example, by explaining the *Latin* Word *Scotatia*, by the Help of the *Ancient German*: And he proves, that it is not derived from the

the *Latin* Word *Scutica*, a Whip, but from a certain Cuſtomary Practice. To this we may add a *Northern* Expreſſion, when the Peaſants are digging a Ditch, about their Fields, they ſay, *upſkotta Jorden*, which ſignifies, *to caſt up the Earth:* And this agrees with what Mr. *Gundling* obſerves, in the Place above quoted, about cutting of Sods, *&c.*

III. To give in the next Place, an Account of what is contained in this Polyglot Table: I might, indeed, have gone the ſame way to Work, as *Burgo-maſter Wittſen*, and *Andrew Mül. Greiffenh.* have done, and collected the Lord's Prayer in theſe ſeveral Languages. But as my Intention, when I was in theſe *North-Eaſtern* Parts, was only to publiſh a Map, and a Deſcription; And the Knowledge I wanted, not only of the Names, but, for greater Certainty of the Dialects likewiſe, of the ſeveral People I had to mention, being deſign'd purely to effect this, I choſe the eaſieſt, and, at the ſame Time, ſureſt Method, and made it my principal Care to learn the Names of their Numbers, as leſs liable to Alteration, than any other. And beſides, I could meet with none here, who knew any Thing of the Lord's Prayer, or from whom, conſidering their univerſal Stupidity, it would have been eaſy to have procured a Tranſlation of it: They poſſeſs Skill enough to count Ten, and that is ſufficient to ſhew us the Difference of their Dialects. The Curious will, therefore, I hope, be ſatisfied with what I now offer, 'till ſome more ſkilful Perſon may preſent the Publick with ſomething more perfect. I truſt, at leaſt I have given Satisfaction, as far as *Leibnitz.* (in his *Miſcellan. p.* 20.) deſires, in the *Memorandum* he gave to *Father Rodeſtam* to take with him on his Journy.

IV. To ſay a Word or two, in general, of the Nature of the Languages ſpoken by theſe People, it muſt be ſuppos'd, that being quite ſeparated from all other Nations, and living in great Simplicity, they cannot have a fourth Part of the Words which are in the *European* Tongues; For being ignorant of ſo many Thouſands of Inventions, Faſhions, Inſtruments, Cuſtoms, *&c.* they can have no Names for them; Nor have they, indeed, ſcarce for any Thing but what Nature produces among them; of this I ſhall give an Inſtance or two. When, in the Year 1716, a certain *Swediſh* Lieutenant, call'd *Mulyn*, was ſent, by *Knees Gagarin*,

then Governour, to the Gulph of *Kamtſchatki*, to be aſſiſtant in building of Ships: He went thither from the City of *Jakuhtſki*, directly *Eaſt* and *South-Eaſt*. And when he, with his *Ruſſian* Convoy, came to the Foot of the Mountains, which ſeparate the Countries of *Jukuhtſki* and *Koræiki*, they had no other Way but to go over them, on Foot. With much ado, they got an Ox over with them, to the other Side, one of the many they had taken with them, from *Jakuhtſki*, for their Suſtenance. The People of *Koræiki*, who had never ſeen the like Creature, before, call'd it *Ruſki Olehn*, (*i. e.* a *Ruſſian Raindeer* *); for thoſe Creatures only being known to them, and having no Notion of Cows or Oxen, they compared the Ox, to an Animal, which, in their Opinion, he moſt reſembled. *Iſbrand Ides* relates, in the Deſcription of his Travels, that when he was in *Siberia*, on his Journy to *China*, and in a Veſſel, on the River *Oby*, that his Servants, for Paſtime, having taken out an artificial Bear, which by Clock-work beat a Drum; the *Oſtiacks*, or Heathens, on the River *Oby*, ſome of whom he had on board, to work the Veſſel, had no ſooner obſerv'd it, but they fell upon their Knees before this Piece of Machinery, and were going to worſhip it.

V. We may, therefore, very well believe, that the Languages, Manners, and Cuſtoms, which theſe Nations have had, from Times immemorial, are not ſo liable to Change as thoſe in *Europe* (46): Which, we may alſo ſee, in *Leibnitz*, *Miſcell.* (*p.* 152,) from which *Legerus* informs *Spener*, that there is a Great Mixture in the *Turkiſh* Language, becauſe they had all their *Religious Rites* and *Terms* from the *Arabians*, all their *Politicks* from the *Greeks*, their *Naval* and *Mercantile* Knowledge from the *Italians*, and their *Mechanicks* and *Metallicks* from

* The *German* Word *Renn-thier*, which we generally tranſlate, as I have done above, *Rain-deer*, does not denote any Creature of the *Deer-Kind*; For *Thier*, in *German*, ſignifies an *Animal* or *Beaſt*, in general; Tho' our *Deer* is probably deriv'd from it: And *Renn-thier* ſignifies a *running Beaſt*, or a *Beaſt ſwift of Foot*; A Name very proper for this Creature, which, it is ſaid, will draw a Sled, over the Ice and Snow, 200 Miles in a Day.

(46) But juſt the ſame, as it is, in this Point, with the *North-Eaſtern* Nations in *Aſia*, ſo it is with the moſt remote Nations, in *Europe*; For the Learned *Stephanus* obſerves, (in his Notes, *p.* 14.) that the Language, which the Ancients call'd *Aſamal*, (i. e. *Aſiatic*, or the *Aſares* Language,) has been no where preſerv'd more pure, in the *Northern European* Countries, than in *Iceland*. *Vid. Joh. Pet. Kohlii Introd.* in *Hiſt. & Rem Literar. Slavor.* p. 69.

from the *Germans*. And here we may obſerve, not only, that the *Turks* are but New Comers into *Europe*; But I have alſo, on this Occaſion, perceived, in particular, that the *Turkiſh* Language has a greater Affinity to the ancient *German*, *Gothick*, *Celtick*, and *Britiſh* Languages, than *Legerus* thought. I have obſerved, that there are on both Sides, eſpecially if we take the old *Turkiſh*, or *Tartarian* Language, many Hundred Words, which belong neither to *Mechanicks*, nor *Metallicks*, not only Nouns, but Verbs alſo, that agree together, and come from the ſame Root. It is therefore not to be look'd upon as a contemptible Aſſertion, when ſome Authors ſay; The *Franks* and *Turks* were formerly one and the ſame People.

But to mention only ſome few of theſe Analagous Words: *Renck*, in the *Turkiſh* Language, ſignifies *Deceit:* Now it is common with the *Germans* to ſay, *Er machet allerhand Rænche*, (i. e. *He is full of Tricks.*) *Kawhagi* ſignifies *Quarrelſome*, and the *Germans* ſay, in ſome of their Dialects, *kabbeln*, *kaveln*, (to *Quarrel* or *Diſpute.*) *Bugiack* denotes a *Corner*; in *Low-German*, *Bucht* is a *Bending*, or *Angle*. *Aib* is, in *Turkiſh*, *ugly*, *foul*, *filthy*, &c. and the ſame Signification has *Aiſch*, in *Lower Saxon*. *Skær* and *Æſker* is, in *Turkiſh*, an *Army*, the *Germans* ſay *Schaar* or *Krieges Schaar*. *Schewar* is a Word by which the *Turks* denote all Sorts of *Tools*, *Neceſſaries*, or *Furniture*; In *Lower Germany* they ſay *Scharwerck*. *Sik* and *Tekſit*, to *thicken*, is the *German*, *dick*, *Swediſh*, *tiock*, (*thick.*) *Okus* is, in *Turkiſh*, the ſame as in *German*, *Ochſe* (an *Ox.*) *Buſuck*, or *buſtuck*, *broken*, *divided*, *ſeparated*. *Stuck*, in *German*, is a *Piece*, or *Part* (46 *a*). *Hele*, *at laſt*, *finally*; The *Lower Germans* ſay *heel*, (*whole.*) *Ghæiret*, in *Turkiſh*, is *Boldneſs*, *Aſſurance*, the *Germans* ſay *gierig*, *begierig*, *begehren* (i. e. *eager*, *deſirous*, *to deſire.*) *Gian* or *Dſian*, the Soul, is in *Swediſh Ande*, with which the *Ger-*

(46 *a*) I HAVE already mention'd two *Tartar-Scythian* Families, the *Buſuck* and *Utz-Ocken*, and that the Foundation of theſe two Families is the Original of the *Parthians*; Since, therefore, it is known, that *Paras*, and *Pharas*, and likewiſe *Pharaka*, in *Hebrew*, *Chaldaick*, and *Arabick*, ſignify *ſeparavit*, *diſtinxit*, and *diſperſit*; And not only this is the ſame with the *Tartarian* Name *Buſſuck*, which *Ogus-Chan* gave to his eldeſt Son, at the Time of laying this Foundation; But the *Arſacian* Family in *Perſia*, which is allow'd by every Writer to be of the *Parthian* Race, has the Surname of *Altonâjiff*, which is the ſame with *Buſſuck*, and *Pharas*; And again, as this is a moſt evident and ſure Foundation upon which we may raiſe our Deſcription of the Migrations of the *Parthians*; So I ſhall, when I come to the Work itſelf, clear that Matter up, with farther Circumſtances, as Opportunity ſhall offer.

German Phraſe, *das ahnte mir ſo* (i. e. *my Mind miſgave me*, or *told me ſo*) has an Affinity. The *Turkiſh* Word *Sarp* ſignifies, *ſharp*, *ſevere*, with which agree the *German* Words, *ſcharf*, *herb*. *In* or *Inmeck*, *in*, *inwards*, or *into*, in *German*, *in*, *darinn*, *hinein*. *Fereſet*, in *Perſian* and *Turkiſh*, is a *Mare*, in *German*, *Pferd*, *Fert*, is a *Horſe*. *Jord* or *Jurd*, in *Perſian*, and *Turkiſh*, ſignifies *Territory*, or *Dominion*; But, in *Swediſh*, the whole *Earth*, or *World*, is call'd *Jiord*. *Wiran* ſignifies *Diſturbance*, or *Diſunion*: The *Germans* ſay; *Er machet nur lauter Wirwar*; (i. e. *He does but occaſion all Manner of Confuſion.*) *Chæm* or *Kæm*, is *Deſtruction* or *Ruin*; and what is more intent on Deſtruction and Ruin, than Revenge? Whence the *German* Word *hem-gierig*, and the *Swediſh Hemde*, (*Vengeance*, or an *exerciſing Deſtruction.*) *Chærabi* and *Chærâb*, *ſpoliare*, *ſpoliatus*, which is the *German*, *rauben*, *beraubet* (i. e. *to rob*, *robb'd.*) *Türs* or *Dürus*, is the *German* Word *derb*. *Braga*, in the *Tartarian* Tongue, is a *Liquor*, like *Beer*, made of Oatmeal, whence probably the *German brauen*, and the *Swediſh*, *bryga*, (to *brew.*) *Bull* ſignifies *much*, *great*, *extenſive*, *mighty*, which is the *Swediſh*, and *Ancient German bolde*, (whence *bold* in *Engliſh.*) *A-ous*, in the *Turkiſh-Tartarian* Languages, ſignifies *Curdled Milk*; And is the *Swediſh* Word *Oſt*, Cheeſe: *Koyahn*, in the *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* Languages, ſignifies a *Houſe made of Wood*; the *Low Germans* ſay *Koye*, *Kiffe*, *Kate*, (whence probably, in *Engliſh*, *Cottage.*) *Liæ* and *Lia*, is *connected*; And is the ſame as when the *Germans* ſay; *Sie haben eine Lie* * *gemacht*, (i. e. *They are Confederates.*) *Meg*, a Little Bird; The *Low Germans* call a certain Sort of ſmall Birds, *Meeſchen*, or *Meiſchen*, (i. e. *Tom-tits.*) *Kanta*, a *Drinking Cup*, is in *German Kanne*, (*Angl. Cann.*) *Geitzi*, a *Goat*, *German*, *Geiſz*. *Gemengein*, a *Multitude* or *Aſſembly*; is the *German* Word *Gemeinde*, *Congregation*. *Cift*, *Marriage*, in the *Swediſh Gift*, and *Giftermal*, *Married*, and *Marriage*. *Bockmeck*, is the *German biegen*, *bücken*, to *bend* or to *bow*. *Iigyt*, is the *Dutch* Word, *Jeucht*, (*German*, *Jugend*,) *Youth*; *Zerer*, *Offence*, *Vexing*, has an Affinity with the *German* Word *Zerren*, (to *teaze* or to *vex*;) The *Arabians* pronounce it *daran*,

* I know of no ſuch Word, in any of the Modern *German* Dialects; It may, perhaps be in ſome or other of the Ancient *Northern* Dialects.

daran, and the *Low Germans taren* or *tarren*, i. e. (to *teaze*, to *vex*, or to *offend.*) *Feræhlenmeck*, *lætari*, is the *German* Word *freuen* (to *Rejoice.*) *Kerabi*, anſwers to the Word *Karafyn*, a *Flagon* or *Glaſs-bottle*. *Iſſidi*, ſignifies *Urine*, in *Low German*, *Piſſe*, (Angl. Piſs;) *Sui*, is *Water*, a *Stream*, or *Rivulet*; in *German*, *See*, and in *Swediſh*, *Siö*, are the *Sea*, alſo a *Lake*. *Giüda* or *Schiüda*, ſignifies, in the *Perſian* and *Turkiſh* Languages, to *ſeparate*; and the *German* Word *Scheiden*, is the ſame: To which we likewiſe may reckon the *Low German* Word *quiet*, that is, *quit*, and the *French* Word *quitter*. *Chalt* or *Kall*, in the *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* Languages, ſignifies, *I ſtay*, *I remain*, *I ſtop*, and is the ſame as the *German* Word *Halt*, as, *Mit der Armee halt machen*, (i. e. *to halt with the Army*); And the Words *Germ*, *Geri*, or *Gerin*, in the *Perſian* and *Arabick* Tongues, (which the *Turks* have adopted in their Tongue,) ſignifies, *ad iram promptus*, *ſtrenuus*, *audax*, *rapidus*; Whence, doubtleſs, came the *French* Words *Guerre*, *Guerrier*, and the *German*, *Heer*, *Kriegs Heer*, *War*, *Army*, likewiſe, *Grimmig*, *fierce*; And the Old *Celtick* Word, *Garw*, or *Agarw*, which is the ſame with the latter, has an Affinity with them. I could cite many more ſuch Examples; But theſe may ſuffice.

SINCE then ſo many of the like Words have found their Way, from the *Eaſt* to the *Weſt*, why may not the ſame, likewiſe, have happen'd to the Names of many Nations. *E. g.* As ſeveral Authors have given their Opinions of the Etymology of the Names *Celtæ* and *Gauls*: I hope the Reader will allow me, on this Occaſion, at leaſt, to offer mine. There is no Doubt but that the *Celtæ* originally brought their Name from the *Eaſt*: For the moſt Ancient and moſt Eminent among prophane Writers, mention no other Names of Nations but theſe three, *viz.* the *Greeks*, *Scythians*, and *Celtæ* (46 *b*): But the *Celtæ*, in the *Weſt*, being ſo much encreaſed, that they were obliged to ſend out Colonies, and to ſeparate themſelves (46 *c*); They who remain'd in their old Habitations, as well as the others who ſepa-

rated

(46 *b*) Vid. *Rud. Atlant. Tom.* I. *Cap.* 3. § 11. *p.* 59. It. *Tom.* I. *p.* 499, & 830.

(46 *c*) Comp. *Geſchichte der Teutſchen*, *D. Joh. Jac. Maſcou*, *p.* 4. § 3. eſpecially where he ſays, that we find no certain Account, what came of thoſe Colonies, which *Sigoveſus* carried over the *Rhine*.

rated from them, and removed elſewhere, had thoſe additional Names given them, which beſt ſuited their reſpective Changes of Circumſtances. So ſome were call'd *Kalli* or *Galli*, others *Giuthi*, or *Guideli*, and others otherwiſe. In order to make this more evident, it is to be obſerved, that the *Eaſtern* Nations denoted a *permanent, ſettled Dwelling*, or *Eſtabliſhment*, by the Word *Kall* or *Chall*; Which Word has its Root in the *Hebrew*, *Chaldaick* and *Arabick* Tongues. *Chul*, in *Hebrew*, ſignifies to *remain* and to *reſt*, and its third Perſon, in the Pretertenſe, is *Châl*, whence the Feminine *Châlâ*, *ſhe, or it remains*, as *Hoſ.* xi. *ver.* 6. we read *Châlâ*, *it ſhall abide, viz.* the Sword, in the Cities of *Aſſyria*. Hence comes the *Chaldaick* and *Rabbinick* Word *Chail*, which denotes any *Thing ſurrounded with a Wall*, or a *Fortreſs*, built for the Security and Safeguard of the Inhabitants againſt their Enemies: So likewiſe, in the *Arabick*, the Word *Chalad* ſignifies *perennavit, ſempeternus fuit*, *Hhall*, likewiſe, in this Language, ſignifies *ex itinere diverſatus fuit, ſubſtitit, quievit in loco aliquo*. But the *Turks* and *Tartars* have taken many Words from this Language; *E. g.* the Word *Kalan*, in *Turkiſh*, denotes, to *ſtay behind* and *tarry*, to *reſt ſafe:* A *Fortreſs* likewiſe, or a *City ſurrounded with Walls*, is called *Kalla*, and the Pavement of any Place *Caldicim*, which is juſt what the above-mention'd Word *Chail* denotes (46 *d*). Nay, it may be a Queſtion, whether the laſt mention'd *Arabick* Word *Hhall*, does not agree with the *German* Word *halt?* As, *mit der Armee einen halt machen*, (i. e. *to make a Halt with the Army.*) I think it alſo not foreign to my Purpoſe, to mention ſome Inſtances, that ſeveral Nations and Cities, in the *Eaſt*, have actually taken their Names from this Word. The famous *Ogus-Chan* founded the Race of the *Kall*, or *Ckal-atzes*. For when *Ogus-Chan* went, with his Army, from *Tartary* to *India*, one Part of the People, under his Command, tired with the tedious March, remain'd at a certain Place,

(46 *d*) *Chardin*, in his Voyages, (*p.* 267.) takes Notice, that the City of *Tefflis* was call'd *Kalla*, by the *Georgians*, becauſe it is a Fortreſs, and encompaſs'd with a Wall; Beſides, the *Kalmucks* and *Mungals* call the *Chineſe* Wall, *Halgan* and *Chalgan*; And thoſe *Mungals*, whoſe Chief is the *Tuſchidu-Chan*, and their High Prieſt *Kutuchta*, are call'd *Calcha-Mungals*, Watchmen or Guards of the *Chineſe* Wall; Or thoſe who liv'd in *China*, in the twelfth Century. And, as the *German* Verb *Weilen*, to *tarry* or *remain*, agrees with the Noun *Weiler* (*Vicus*, *Villa*, a *Village*,) and, likewiſe, with the *Turkiſh* Word *Wilajetti* (a *City*;) So the Words *Kalla*, *Challa*, *Chail*, (a *City*) have an Affinity with the Words, *Chala*, *Chal*, and *Chul*, to *remain*, *reſt*, *tarry*, *ſit down* and *ſettle*.

Place, 'till *Ogus-Chan* came back, with the Reſt of his Army: And becauſe they ſuffer'd very much there by Famine, they were call'd *Kall-atzi*, from *Ats*, in *Turkiſh*, to be *Hungry*, and *Kall*, to *Sit*, or to *ſtay behind*. (Vid. *Hiſt. des Tart. p.* 56. *) (46*e*) And here, I call to Mind, that *Tacitus* alſo mentions one of theſe Nations, whom he calls *Calaci*, (Vid. *Dict. Car. Steph. p.* 534.) From this very Word *Kall*, *Call*, or *Chall*, to *ſit*, to *ly*, to *ſtay*, or *ſtand ſtill*, the *Kalmucks* have alſo obtain'd their Sur- or Additional Name: For theſe, and the *Mungals*, having formerly been one Nation, and the *Mungals* going into Countries more *Northward*, They that remain'd were afterwards call'd by the *Tartars*, *Kall-Umack*, *the remaining Family*: *Umack*, ſignifying, with them, a *Family*: Nay, I am almoſt perſuaded to believe, that the Name *Chaldeans* is derived likewiſe from this Word: And if to what has been ſaid on the *Chaldaick* and *Rabinick* Word *Chail*, and the *Turkiſh Kalla*, *Challa*, *Caldirim*, we add the following Remark, *viz.* that the fourteenth *Aſſyrian* King, who firſt fortify'd *Babylon*, (for he could not have founded it, that being attributed to *Nimrod*, Vid. *Gen.* x. *ver.* 10.) was not only call'd *Chaldæus*, but, likewiſe, all who ſettled in this fortify'd Place, were then firſt call'd *Chaldim* (46*f*); I do not, in the leaſt, doubt, but the Reader will conclude with me, that this Name muſt have had its Origin from the above-mention'd Primitive Words. Having now ſhewn, by ſeveral Examples, the Signification of the Word *Kall*, and that, in the *Eaſtern* Countries, it was cuſtomary to call Nations by this Name: And it being, moreover, known, that *G* and *K* are generally us'd promiſcuouſly, according to the Dialects of different People, I think I may now, not only with more Confidence, affirm, that the *Celtæ*, who ſtay'd behind, were call'd *Kalli*, *Galli*, *Kalatæ*,

* *The Author of the* Hiſt. des Tartars, &c. *in the Place above cited, ſays,* Ogus-Chan *gave this Name only to one Perſon, of whom he enquir'd the Occaſion of their Lingring, from whoſe Off-ſpring* (he adds) *the ſeveral numerous Branches, which now go by that Name, are deſcended.*

(46*e*) But as, not alone the *Perſians*, but ſeveral *Tartarian* Nations, frequently change K into G, as I have already more than once obſerv'd, they may likewiſe have been call'd *Galatzi*.

(46*f*) Vid. *Stanlei Index Philol. ad Hiſt. Philoſ. Orient.* But I am of Opinion, that the Name *Chaldæus* is here only an Appellative; Becauſe this fourteenth King fortified that City.

latæ, or *Galatæ:* But the following Obſervation will yet more confirm it, *viz.* that the Brethren of theſe *Celtæ*, who ſeparated themſelves from them, and went to *Britain*, were, on the contrary, diſtinguiſh'd by the Name of *Guithi*, or *Guideli* (46 *g*).

For as the former Word *Kall* is a pure *Scythian*, *Perſian*, and *Tartarian* Name, ſo is this latter likewiſe; As is evident by the Word *Guida*, which ſignifies to *ſeparate*, to *part*, to *divide*, or to *leave* (46 *h*), and the laſt Syllable *li*, or *elli*, denotes, in the *Tartarian* Language, *People*, *Folk*; *e. g.* The *Turks* call the *Hungarians*, *Magiar-eli*, the *Tranſylvanians*, *Erdel-eli*, and the *Romans*, *Uroum-eli*. The *Kazincian Tartars*, who live on the River *Jeniſei*, near the City *Craſnoyahr*, formerly gave each other Names, likewiſe, in this Manner; As we may ſee by the following ancient Rime of theirs: *Kagirbiſchtim*, *Kach-bill*; *Tuwa-gerdim Tuba-bill*; (*i. e.* the *Kazincian* Tribe is ſpit out, and that which is ſettled on the River *Tubq*, and is call'd *Jeſer*, is ſeparated;) ſo likewiſe the *Azincian* Tribe has, among themſelves, the Sur-name of *Gugui*, (i. e. *Loſt*, *ſeparated*, *disjoin'd*, and is the ſame with the above-mention'd Word *Güida*.) But as to the *Celtick* Name itſelf, other Writers have given various Explications of it; In my Opinion, however, the beſt is that of the late Baron *Leibnitz*, *viz.* That this Name, formerly, was not pronounced *Celt*, but *Kelt* (46 *i*); With which not only *Stiernhielm*, (in his *Anti-Cluv. p.* 101.) agrees: But it is alſo alledg'd, in *Biblioth. Angl. par Arm. de la Chapelle*, as I have already mention'd, that ſome Remains of this Name are ſtill found in *Ireland* and *Scotland*, and that the *Fitſchit Gwideliene* were in former Times, and originally, call'd *Keilſt* and *Keilt*; And here he, at the ſame Time, obſerves, that the Word *Fitſchit* denotes *picti*. The Reader will be pleaſed to call to Mind, what I ſaid above,

(46 *g*) Vid. *Biblioth. Angl. par Arm. de la Chapelle, Tom.* V. *Part* II. *à Amſterd.* 1728.

(46 *h*) *Sheringham* (*in Orig. Gent. Angl.* 8. *p.* 34.) obſerves, that the Word *Guith*, ſignifies a *Divorce*; Which is very right, ſince the *Kalli* and *Guid-eli* were Brethren, and both *Celtæ:* And the latter were called *Guid-eli*, becauſe they left the Continent, and went over to the Iſlands of *Britain*.

(46 *i*) *In Miſc. Leibn. Otii Hannov. p.* 122. it is ſaid; *Veteres* Celtarum *nomine* Germanos Galloſque *comprehendebant*, *&c.* Galatas & Celtas *vel ut pronuntiari deberet*, Keltas *idem vocabulum eſſe putem*, *&c.* And lower down; *Ego quidem non dubito*, *ſi* Turcis & Tartaris *eruditio daretur*, *exorituros ex ipſis*, *qui* Hyperboreos *ad Majores ſuos non minore quam* Rudbeckius *jure referant*.

above, that the Name of the *Celtæ* firſt came from the *Eaſt*; and that theſe People had it there, before they began their Migration. I ſhall, therefore, now take Notice what Conjectures I have found concerning it, in the *Eaſtern* Countries. The *Tunguſian* Nations, which are in *Siberia*, under the Dominion of the *Ruſſians*, are the ſtrongeſt, talleſt, and moſt dextrous People of all who inhabit thoſe Parts, and much reſemble the *Italians*. They are the only People, who, to this Day, paint their Faces, with divers Colours and Figures, (*Comp. Iſbrand Ides*) on which Account, they, likewiſe, may very well be call'd *Picti*: The *Oſtiacks* call them *Kellem* or *Kuellem*. The greateſt and moſt powerful Tribe among the *Sabatzi Tunguſi*, who live near the Source of the River *Aldan*, is call'd *Keltaku*, or *Kieltaku*. I have enquir'd of the *Oſtiacks*, why they call this Nation *Kuellem*? They could, however, give me no other Reaſon but this: *viz.* Becauſe this Nation was divided into Three Parts, and the Number Three is called, in their Language, *Kuellem*; And they believ'd they had their Name from thence. Which ſeems to be grounded on Truth; For the *Arintzian Tartars* call the *Tunguſians*, in their Language, *Tongæ-kſe*, *Tongæ*, in their Language, ſignifying *three*, and *Kſe*, *People*, *Tribe*, *Perſon*. In the *Hiſt. Geneal. des Tart.* the *Tunguſian* is ſuppoſed to be the true, primitive, *Tatarian* Nation, which divided itſelf into ſo many ſeveral Branches; (*vid. p.* 103.) Which has a Connexion with what I have obſerved of the Number *Three*, among the *Oſtiacks*: In the ſaid *Tartarian* Hiſtory, indeed, only two Places are mentioned, where two Branches of the *Tunguſians* ſettled: But the Word *ſeveral*, as we find it in the Copy, denotes more than two. All this ſhews, pretty evidently, that a Part of theſe Nations were thoſe *Kelts*, who firſt went into *Europe*, and were afterwards there call'd *Kalli*, or *Galli*, and *Gwideliens*: However, I leave it to the Judgment of others, who may, perhaps, hereafter, find Opportunity to come at plainer Proofs; For there are many more Things in theſe Countries to be examined and enquired into. And if, when I travell'd thoſe Parts, I had met with more Encouragement and Aſſiſtance, I could have given much greater Light, in ſome Caſes: But as all Hopes of ever returning from theſe Parts were almoſt loſt; ſo I conſider'd this Matter as likely

to be Labour loſt; Not knowing whether my Endeavours would ever be of any Benefit to *Europe*. This Doubt was not wholly groundleſs; Becauſe the two firſt Maps I finiſh'd met with a quite different Fate from what I deſign'd them. However, I rejoice that I am able to preſent the Curious in *Europe* with this Trifle, and with what, by the Help of GOD, ſhall follow. But to return from this Digreſſion:

VI. I OBSERV'D above, §. IV. that the Languages of theſe remote People could not be ſo copious as the *European* Tongues; But in ſuch Things, as they have conſtantly been uſed to, and have been familiar with, theſe Nations have more Words than we *Europeans*: *e. g.* the *Tartars* call a Foal of one Year old *Gabagæ*, of two Years *Tai*, of three Years *Junan*, of four Years *Dunahn*; and when it is five Years old they call it *Aht*, or *Morin*, a Horſe. (This latter is perhaps the ſame Word, with which the *Low-Germans* and *Goths* denote the Female of this Species; as, *Mär*, *Mähr*, or *Mähre*, *Angl.* a *Mare*). In the *Tartarian* and *Turkiſh* Languages, a Brother is call'd *Karintaſch*, and contracted *Kartaſch*; but the eldeſt Brother is named *Agai*, and the youngeſt *Ænim*: Inſtead of which *(moſt) Europeans* muſt have two Words, *viz.* an *Adjective* and a *Subſtantive*. And it is the ſame in other Things, *viz.* to *ride*, to *ſhoot*, to *hunt*, &c. for which they have many Words and Appellations. And, therefore, we *Europeans*, in the like Caſes, may rather ſeek for the Origin of a Word among them, and in their Languages, than in ours in *Europe*. Of which ſeveral Examples will be found in this Work.

VII. BUT tho', according to the foregoing Chapter, the ſeveral Nations in *Tartary* are divided into Six Claſſes, for a Diſtinction of their Migrations, and the Countries they now inhabit: Yet it is certain, as may be ſeen in the ſix Diviſions in the Table, that all thoſe Nations, ſpecify'd in the foregoing Chapter, according to their Claſſes (which, on Account of the ſmall Space, and compendious Repreſentation, in the Table, I could not particularly name,) have all one Language and Dialect with thoſe Nations, mention'd in the Table; So that, for Inſtance, thoſe Nations, which, in the Deſcription, have been mention'd in the *Hunnian* Claſs, have one Dialect with thoſe that ſtand in the *Hunnian* Table. Concerning which Diviſion into *Six* Parts, how

it

it ſo happen'd, in this Work; Tho', on the contrary, the *Eaſtern* Nations order all their Buſineſs, Affairs and Diviſions, according to the Number *Nine*. I ſhall give my Thoughts more particularly below.

VIII. To ſhew then the Uſe of this Table, and the Advantage which may ariſe from it, if the Reader pleaſe but to take before him the firſt or *Hunnian* Nation, and collate the Numbers and Words of the *Hungarian Sæcklers*, and the *Finnlanders*, with the Six following *Hunns*, he will find that theſe *Hungarians* and *Finnlanders* have the ſame Dialect with the former. The *Hungarians* and *Finnlanders*, for Inſtance, call the Number 4, *Nelly* and *Nellie*; But the other Six pronounce it *Nilla*, *Nille*, *Nelet*, *Niall*, *Nell*, *Nelle*, &c. This, together with other Accounts, which agree with this, in Hiſtory, ſufficiently prove, that theſe Nations have formerly been the ſame with the ſaid *Hungarians* and *Finnlanders*. Which is alſo *Baron Leibnitz*'s Opinion, (in his *Miſcell. p.* 157.) where he obſerves; *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Lib.* 31. Hunnis *tribuit*, *quæ* Tacitus Finnis, *unde forte aliqua* Hungarica *lingua cognata*, &c. But whereas, in *Holy Scripture*, ſeveral Languages muſt be conſulted to find out the literal Senſe of an obſcure Paſſage; So likewiſe, it is neceſſary, with Regard to remote Nations, to enquire, as much as poſſible, whether ſome or other of them is not call'd, in their ſeveral Languages, by a different Name from what they have aſſum'd unto themſelves? In which Particular, I have diligently inform'd myſelf in theſe Countries, and added it to the Titles of ſome Nations in the Table, becauſe, by this Diverſity of Appellations, of the ſame individual People, many Qualities, Cuſtoms and Manners, from whence ſuch Nations have formerly acquir'd their Names, have frequently been expreſs'd: For Inſtance, the *Baſhkirrs*, a *Tartarian* Nation ſo call'd, which now uſe the *Tartarian Bulgarian* Language, are called by others, who have the ſame Language with them, and are alſo their Neighbours, *Sari-Yſhteck*, i. e. *red or yellow-hair'd Oſtiacks*; By which Denomination it plainly appears, that theſe were formerly Deſcendants from the *Hunns*, tho' they are now reckon'd among the *Tartars*. For the *Oſtiacks* have generally red Hair, more than any other Nation living thereabouts, and ſtill ſpeak the *Hunnian* Language; Whence the Obſervation

ſervation is natural, that theſe *Baſhkirrs*, who have alſo red Hair, were anciently deſcended from the *Oſtiacks*. The Reader will, likewiſe, be pleaſed to compare with this, what has been mention'd above of the *Tunguſians* and *Aby-Scythians*.

IX. THESE few Inſtances, which have been collected in my Table, out of ſo many Languages of the *North-Eaſt* Parts of *Aſia*, may alſo give Occaſion to a farther Enquiry into the Derivation of many unknown Names. For Example: In *Ovid*, (*lib.* I. *ex Epiſt. ad Maximum* 11.) we read of thoſe *Scythians* or *Sarmatians* who liv'd in *Pontus*, whoſe Metropolis was named *Tomi* or *Tomus*, whence they were call'd *Tomitani*; (*Vid. Joh. Kohlii Introd. in Hiſt. & rem liter. Slavor. p.* 83. & 84.) Now the Reader will find, in the Table, that *Tuman* and *Tumen*, in the *Tartarian Bulgarian* Language, ſignifies *Ten Thouſand*; And the *Aſiatick Scythians*, who are their Deſcendants, ſtill retain the Cuſtom, from former Times, that the chief *Murſæ*, or Princes, next the *Chan*, command a Camp containing 10000 Men; which are often converted into Cities, and ſurrounded with a Rampart of Earth; As for Inſtance, the City of *Tumen*, in *Siberia*, 30 *German* Miles on this ſide of *Tobolſki*, has its Name from ſuch a *Tartarian* Camp, conſiſting of 10000 Men. And the ſame may have been the Caſe with the *Tomi* or *Tomitanian Scythians*, and *Sarmatians*, ſo call'd in Ancient Times, by *Ovid* or *Strabo*; Tho' *Tomi* denoted nothing more than a *Horde* of 10000 Men.

X. AND farther, if we obſerve in the *Kalmuck* Vocabulary, that *Tamgatſh* ſignifies a Treaſurer, and *Gatza* Treaſure (47); It is eaſy to comprehend why the *Chineſe-Tartarian Chan*'s Letter to the *Roman Emperour* was dated from *Tamgatſh*. (Vid. *Miſcell. Leibnitz*, *p.* 56.) (48). Likewiſe, if we obſerve, in the Table, that the *Jakuhtian Tartarian* Nations not only call three of their principal

(47) The *Ruſſian* Word *Gazack*, and the *German*, *Schatzgebung*, have, perhaps, the ſame Origin with this, in the *Perſian* Language, in which *Gaza* ſignifies the ſame Thing. And the Reaſon why the *Eaſtern Tartars* call their Reſidences *Tamgath*, ſeems to ariſe from the *Scythians*, who, notwithſtanding they were continually ranging from one Place to another, yet, in the moſt ancient Times, had certain conſtant Places of Reſort, whither they brought the Treaſure or Revenues of their Princes.

(48) *Andr. Müller Grieffenh.* (in his *Diſqu. Geog. & Hiſt. de Chat. p.* 3. & 56.) has ſeveral Explications of this Word: But *Golius* (in his *Alferganus*, *p.* 107.) ſays very juſtly, that the great Extent of the City of *Cambalick* or *Peeking*, was the Occaſion of building the City of *Tamgay*, by which is denoted the Treaſury, or inward City of the Emperour; But not that the Emperour himſelf is ſo call'd.

principal inviſible Gods, *viz.* (1.) *Ar-teugon*, or *Ar-tugon*, (2.) *Schugo-teugon*, and (3.) *Tangara*, but likewiſe diſtinguiſh a Prince and Governour by the Name of *Tugon* or *Teugon*, and throughout all *Tartary* the Name *Tſchiuthi* and *Getſchudi* ſignifies a *Heathenijh* unciviliz'd Nation: All this, I ſay, has a very remarkable Connection with an Obſervation of the late Mr. *Leibnitz*, on the *Germania* of *Tacitus*, where he aſſerts, that *Teuht* ſignifies a Title of Honour or Dominion, and *Tiuht* the common People; Which is farther confirm'd by the chief Prince of the *Gallo-Græcians*, or *Gallatians*, being call'd *Ortiagon*, in *Polybius*, (*in excerpt. Valeſ.*) Likewiſe when *Strabo* (*Lib.* IV. *p.* 183.) denotes the *Teutones* by the Name *Toygones*, which *Florus* calls *Toliſtobogi* or *Tolſtobochi* (49). (Vid. *Dict. Car. Steph. p.* 1931.) But this latter is a *Vandal* and *Sclavonian* Word; For *Toliſto* or *Tolſto* ſignifies, indeed, properly *fat* and *ſtrong*, but ſometimes alſo, denotes *great*, *high*, and *eminent*, and *Bogi* or *Bochi*, *Gods*, which has then almoſt the ſame Signification with *Teutobogi*; Compare with this, *Geſchichte der Teutſchen D. Joh. Jac. Maſcow*, *Lib.* 1. *p.* 11. *Not.* 5. and what has been obſerv'd before of the Words *Thiud*, *Tziuth*, and *Scyth*: All which is, probably, one and the ſame, with the above mention'd *Arteugon* and *Tuigon*, which is in Uſe among the *Jakuhtian* Nations. Some Writers derive the Name *Teutſch* (which ſignifies *German*) from *Teut*, *Tuiſton* or *Teutates*, who, as they ſay, was Prince of the moſt Ancient *Germans* (50); To which *Georg. Horn.* (*in Hiſt. Philoſoph. cap.* 6. & 12.) alſo agrees. And it may be worthy of Conſideration, that what has been ſaid above, of the *Jakuhtian Teugon*, confirms, in a great meaſure, the Opinion of thoſe Authors, who derive the Name *Teutſch*, from the General *Teutobogh*; On the contrary, other Writers derive it from *Thiud*, or *Tziut*, (i. e. *Soldiers*,) likewiſe from the Word *Thoed* or *Tud*, *i. e.* the *Earth*, and pretend, that *Theotiſci* ſignifies *Sons of Earth*. (Vid. *Gloſſar. Germ. Joh. Georg. Wacht. p.* 303.) I muſt, therefore,

(49) Some of the *Vandal* and *Sclavonian* Nations pronounce this Word *Tloſto*; with which perfectly agrees the Word *Tlom*, ſignifying in the *Tunchinian* Language, *Præcipuus in aliquo Loco*; *Caput*, *ſeu Præcipuus in Pago*. (Vid. *Dict. Anamit. S. Tunchinicum Alexandri de Rhodes*, *p.* 811.

(50) The *Teutones*, of *Diod. Sicul. ſunt præcipui Warinorum*, *ſeu Roſtochienſes*, *quorum ditio a Teut*, *Teutoboch*, (the Idol *Teuto*) *ad Wiſmariam uſque Teutoniæ encomio innotuit*, *ut demum poſt extinctos*, *Francos hoc elogium commune factum ſit totius Germaniæ*. *Sp. Doc. in ed. Meckl. Gent. Erneſt. Joach. Weſtph. p.* 59.

fore, in Order to reconcile this, and ſhew that both Parties may have good Grounds, cite here an Inſtance, which is as curious, as it is pertinent. The *Jakuhtians*, of whom Mention has been made above, call the *Ruſſians Lutſchæ*, or *Ludzæ:* I, therefore, enquired of them, why they call'd them ſo? Their Anſwer was: That when the *Ruſſians* firſt brought them under their Yoke, in Order to let them know their Superiority, and that they were of better and more noble Extraction than the *Jakuhti*, they were wont to uſe theſe Words: *My Lutzæ*, or *Ludtſchi kacwy*, i. e. *We are a better, more eminent, honourable and renowned Nation than you*; And therefore they call'd the *Ruſſians Lutſchæ* or *Ludtſchi.* Which I certainly take to be nothing more, than that the *Ruſſians* declar'd to the *Jakuhti*, that they were alſo call'd *Sclavi*, or *Sclavonians*, and that this Name ſignify'd *Praiſe*, *Honour*, and *Excellent*; The Word *Sclava* having that Signification, and being pretty equivalent to the *Ruſſian* Word *Lutſchi*; The ſame may alſo be the Caſe with *Thiud* or *Tziuth*, when it denotes People, and alſo Soldiers, *viz.* that ſome of thoſe *Tziuhtian* People obtain'd the Name of great or eminent, by way of Diſtinction; Which the Name *Teut* and *Teugon* denotes, as has been ſaid above; And that thence the *Germans* may have call'd themſelves ſo; But other Nations may have nam'd them from the firſt Name *Thiud* or *Tziuht*, whence, as has been obſerv'd, may ariſe the *Italian* Word *Tudeſco*, and the *Gothick*, *Tuiſkar*; For we find many of the like Examples. The *Finnlanders*, for Inſtance, do not call themſelves, in their own Language, or Country, by that Name; But *Suomalain*, and *Suomeis*; And again, with Reſpect to the Word *Tuiſco* or *Tuiſcones*, which ſignifies *Sons of the Earth*, the following Relation will not be improper here: When I was among the *Oſtiacks*, on the River *Oby*, and, in Diſcourſe, aſk'd them, ſince they were call'd by the *Ruſſians* only, and not by themſelves, by the Name of *Oſtiacks*, whence they had, among themſelves, the Name of *Chondichue?* (which in *Das veränderte Ruſſland, p.* 187. is written *Chontiſchi.)* They anſwer'd, they came formerly from the River *Chonda* or *Conda*, which falls into the *Oby*, and that they call'd themſelves ſo from thence. I reply'd, this could not poſſibly be their original Name; Becauſe they own'd, that they and the *Permecki* were formerly one Nation; They anſwer'd;

ſwered; that they call'd themſelves alſo *Tſchuludi*; I aſk'd, what was the Signification of this Name? They ſaid *Tſchu* and *Thiu* ſignify'd *Earth*, and they being originally Sons of the Earth, they, therefore, call'd themſelves as aboveſaid: But they could inform me of no other Name; Tho', thoſe *Oſtiacks* that live farther towards the *Eaſt*, near the City of *Tomſkoi*, told me, they came from *Sauomis Sembla*, which is either *Finnland* or *Lapland*.

XI. I HAVE alſo mentioned; that *Turuja* and *Tura* ſignify, among the *Siberian Tartars*, as alſo with the *Finnlanders*, a Reſidence or Metropolis: This may agree with what *Mezeray* writes; *That the* Franks, *in the Year* 291. *built a City, which they call'd* Troja *or* Turoja. (Confer. *Gloſſar. Germ. Joh. Wacht. Præfat.* § xxv. not. r. Likewiſe, *Caſp. Abel's Teutſche und Sæchſiſche Alterthüm, p.* 50.) Nay, perhaps, not only the Name of the City of *Zor* or *Zur*, which afterwards was call'd *Tyro*; But alſo the City of *Troy* itſelf, in the *Greater Phrygia*, denote the ſame. For *Leuenclaw* calls it alſo *Turgauht*. (Vid. *Verel. Herw. Saga, cap.* 1. *p.* 6.) with which may be compar'd, what *Læſcherus (de Lit. Celt. p.* 35.) ſays of the Word *Durum*. Farther, we ſee in the Table, that the *Eaſtern Tartars* call the *Crim-Tartarian Chan, Chuncker*; Nay, that all his Subjects, as often as they ſpeak of him, in his Abſence, ſay *Chuncker:* This may ſerve as an Illuſtration of what *Wigul-Hund.* (in his Gloſſary) has already ſhewn, that the common *German* Word *Juncker* * was, among the *Ancient Germans*, the Title of a Prince. The *Crimiſh Chan* being reckon'd as ſuch, only becauſe not deſcending, in a direct Line, from the great *Zingis-Chan* (51); Whence came the ancient Cuſtom, among the *Turks* and *Tartars*, that their Sovereigns are preſented, by their Princes and *Vaſſals*, with a richly attir'd Falcon, which is call'd *Choncker* or *Chuncker*, (vid. *Tim. Beck. Tom.* 11. *p.* 75.) the Meaning of which is, that the Sovereign has adopted the Prince for his Son, and demands Obedience of him; And, on the contrary, that he will behave himſelf as a Father to him: For the Character of

* It now ſignifies the Son of a Knight or private Gentleman, an Eſquire; alſo, at Court, a Yeoman, or Groom of the Chamber, *&c.*

(51) Compare this Paragraph with *Conſt. Porphyr. de Adminiſtr. Imper. Cap.* 37. where, inſtead of *Chunker* or *Chonker*, the Word *Conkar* is made Uſe of; But has the ſame Signification with the former. And *Loccenius (in Leg. Weſt. Goth. p.* 96.) uſes the Word *Junck-Hærra* in the very ſame Senſe, alledging it to have been the Title for a Prince.

Father has always been in great Esteem among the *Eastern* Nations. If the *Turkish Sultan Muhameth-Charasm-Schach* would but have allow'd the Title of Father to the *Great Zingis* or *Cingis-Chan*, and would himself have been contented with that of *Chonker*, or Princely Son, the *Schach's Empire* would not have been destroy'd. (Vid. *Hist. Geneal. des Tart. cap.* 13. *p.* 238.†)

XII. I HAVE, likewise, shewn, in the Table, that the *Mungals* call a *Man of great Merit*, or a *Nobleman*, *Saissan*. Ancient Geographers have plac'd the *Sassens* or *Saissi*, upon their Maps, on the *East* Side of the *Wolga*; And in the *Kalmucky*, or Country of the *Kalmucks*, near the River *Irtish*, there is a great Lake call'd *Nurr-Saissan*, i. e. *Noblemans-Lake*; Since then the Learned are not yet agreed about the Name of *Saxons*; may not this, probably denote their Name and Extraction? Because, in the *British* Tongue, they are call'd *Saissi*, and, likewise, by the *Ancient Celto-Angli* have been call'd *Bro-Sais*. For the *Saxons*, who came with their General *Oden*, or *Wodan* (52), from the *East*, (*vid. Sheringh. de Orig. gent. Anglic. p.* 150.) may probably have been such *Saissans*, or *Men of Merit*; Especially as this Word seems to be retained, in the Names *Sassen*, *Landsassen*, or *Getreue Untersassen* *, which may probably have the very same Original Signification, with the *Tartarian* Word *Saissan*; Therefore, when some Authors derive the Name of the *Saxons* from the former, they seem not to be much in the Wrong. (Vid. *Abrah. Mylü Archæol. Teuton. p.* 242. & 278.)

XIII. THE Table also shews, that, with the *Mungals*, *Fann* or *Vann* is a Title of a Prince; (which the *Chinese* pronounce *Uvan.*) Compare this with what the *Hungarian Rector*, *Matth. Belius* mentions, (in his *Excerc. de vet. literat. Hunno-Scythica*, *Sect.* 11. iv. *and* v.) of the *Hungarian* Word *Fen*; *viz.* that it denotes,

† By the Account given in the Place here quoted, it does not appear, that the *Turkish Sultan* refus'd *Zingis-Chan* his Demand; But that their Difference happen'd afterwards on another Account.

(52) *Wodan* or *Woidan* is a *Sclavonian* Word, and signifies, a General. It is derived from *Wogu*, (*I lead*,) *Wodit*, (*He leads*;) Therefore the Angel *Gabriel* is call'd, in this Language, *Silnoi Woida*; (*a Mighty General.*)

* The Primitive, *Saſz* or *Sassen* is, if I mistake not, obsolete, and not in Use in any of the Modern *German* Dialects; But the Compounds of it, which are yet preserved, shew that it must have signify'd an *Inhabitant having a real Estate or Possessions*; *Sassbast*, signifies *settled, establish'd, having Domicil in a Town or City*. *Besæssen* signifies *having Possession*, or *being possess'd of*; *Landsassen*, *Freeholders*; *Untersassen*, *Subjects* or *Vassals*; *Getreue Untersassen*, *faithful Vassals*, &c.

denotes, *Bright, Famous, Illuſtrious, Serene:* Now I leave it to others to judge, whether this does not alſo agree with the former? Farther, I make Mention, in the Table, of thoſe Nations which *Herodotus* calls *Jyrcæ:* Now this Name may, not improbably, be derived from the *Turkiſh* Word *Jtrück*, which ſignifies *Wandering*, or *having no fix'd Abode:* Likewiſe in the ſame Language *Jyrugi*, ſignifies a *Walker*, and *Runner:* Whence ſome Authors, by the Name of *Jyaca*, in *Herodotus*, rightly underſtand the *Turks*, who, in his Days, were ſuch *Wanderers*; Compare with this, *Conſt. Porphyr. de Adminiſtr. Imp. cap.* 29. How they formerly fled and roved from one Place to another.

XIV. MOREOVER, when it appears, that the Word *Cinn, Zinn, Tzinn*, in the *Sclavonian, Perſian* and *Tartarian* Languages, ſignifies the Order or Line of Deſcent, or the Progenitors †, which, in the *Turkiſh* Language, is *Sira*, (that is the *Latin* Word *Series*;) Likewiſe, that this Word *Cinn* or *Tſchin* denotes alſo a *heaping up* or *gathering together*, and ſometimes *Soldiers, that are divided into certain Claſſes.* Theſe Appellatives, which we find in Ancient Writers, muſt needs have ſome particular Signification; (*Confer. Pomponius Mela*, *Lib.* II. *Cap.* 1. *Car-Cinn. Plin. Lib.* VI. *Cap.* 12. *Orgo-Cinn* and *Lib.* VI. *Cap.* 27. *Chara-Cinn, or Chin.*) Eſpecially ſince the two great Tribes of the *Eaſtern Tatars*, from one of which the preſent *Chineſe-Tartarian Imperial* Family deſcends, are call'd to this Day *Char-Cinn* and *Chor-Cinn*, (*i. e. the Black and Red Tribe*, or *the Black and Red Regiments*) (53). Nay, there are yet ſeveral Ancient ruin'd Places without the Wall, *viz. Alack-Cinn* and *Ack-Cinn*, (*i. e.* the checkered and white;) which Word *Cinn, Cenn*, (or *Zinn* and *Zend*) has alſo a like Signification in the *Arabick* Tongue, in which *Sgindi* and *Sgendi* ſignify an *Army*, inſtead of which *Leuenclavius* writes *Zindi* and *Zind*, (vid. *Herbelot's Biblioth. Orient, p.* 545.) (54) From this Word, and the Adjective *Cha-*

† With which Words our *Kin, a-kin, Kindred, Kinſman*, &c. ſeem to bear an Analogy.

(53) The *Eaſtern Tartars*, who poſſeſs *China*, divide themſelves into eight Large Regiments. The firſt four of which have the chief Standards or Colours; And from theſe ariſe four others.

(54) This Word *Cenn* or *Cinn* denotes, likewiſe, in the Languages of the Ancient *Northern* Nations, a Tribe, Race, or Family. (Conf. *Gloſſ. Germ. John Georg. Wacht. p.* 242.)

Father has always been in great Eſteem among the *Eaſtern* Nations. If the *Turkiſh Sultan Muhameth-Charaſm-Schach* would but have allow'd the Title of Father to the *Great Zingis* or *Cingis-Chan*, and would himſelf have been contented with that of *Chonker*, or Princely Son, the *Schach's Empire* would not have been deſtroy'd. (Vid. *Hiſt. Geneal. des Tart. cap.* 13. *p.* 238.†)

XII. I HAVE, likewiſe, ſhewn, in the Table, that the *Mungals* call a *Man of great Merit*, or a *Nobleman*, *Saiſſan*. Ancient Geographers have plac'd the *Saſſens* or *Saiſſi*, upon their Maps, on the *Eaſt* Side of the *Wolga*; And in the *Kalmucky*, or Country of the *Kalmucks*, near the River *Irtiſh*, there is a great Lake call'd *Nurr-Saiſſan*, i. e. *Noblemans-Lake*; Since then the Learned are not yet agreed about the Name of *Saxons*; may not this, probably denote their Name and Extraction? Becauſe, in the *Britiſh* Tongue, they are call'd *Saiſſi*, and, likewiſe, by the *Ancient Celto-Angli* have been call'd *Bro-Sais*. For the *Saxons*, who came with their General *Oden*, or *Wodan* (52), from the *Eaſt*, (*vid. Sheringh. de Orig. gent. Anglic. p.* 150.) may probably have been ſuch *Saiſſans*, or *Men of Merit*; Eſpecially as this Word ſeems to be retained, in the Names *Saſſen*, *Landſaſſen*, or *Getreue Unterſaſſen* *, which may probably have the very ſame Original Signification, with the *Tartarian* Word *Saiſſan*; Therefore, when ſome Authors derive the Name of the *Saxons* from the former, they ſeem not to be much in the Wrong. (Vid. *Abrah. Mylü Archæol. Teuton. p.* 242. & 278.)

XIII. THE Table alſo ſhews, that, with the *Mungals*, *Fann* or *Vann* is a Title of a Prince; (which the *Chineſe* pronounce *Uvan.*) Compare this with what the *Hungarian Rector*, *Matth. Belius* mentions, (in his *Excerc. de vet. literat. Hunno-Scythica*, *Sect.* 11. iv. *and* v.) of the *Hungarian* Word *Fen*; *viz.* that it denotes,

† By the Account given in the Place here quoted, it does not appear, that the *Turkiſh Sultan* refus'd *Zingis-Chan* his Demand; But that their Difference happen'd afterwards on another Account.

(52) *Wodan* or *Woidan* is a *Sclavonian* Word, and ſignifies, a General. It is derived from *Wogu*, (*I lead*,) *Wodit*, (*He leads*;) Therefore the Angel *Gabriel* is call'd, in this Language, *Silnoi Woida*; (*a Mighty General.*)

* The Primitive, *Saſz* or *Saſſen* is, if I miſtake not, obſolete, and not in Uſe in any of the Modern *German* Dialects; But the Compounds of it, which are yet preſerved, ſhew that it muſt have ſignify'd an *Inhabitant having a real Eſtate or Poſſeſſions*; *Saſshaft*, ſignifies *ſettled, eſtabliſh'd, having Domicil in a Town or City*. *Beſaſſen* ſignifies *having Poſſeſſion*, or *being poſſeſs'd of*; *Landſaſſen*, *Freeholders*; *Unterſaſſen*, *Subjects* or *Vaſſals*; *Getreue Unterſaſſen*, *faithful Vaſſals*, &c.

denotes, *Bright*, *Famous*, *Illuſtrious*, *Serene:* Now I leave it to others to judge, whether this does not alſo agree with the former? Farther, I make Mention, in the Table, of thoſe Nations which *Herodotus* calls *Jyrcæ:* Now this Name may, not improbably, be derived from the *Turkiſh* Word *Jtrück*, which ſignifies *Wandering*, or *having no fix'd Abode:* Likewiſe in the ſame Language *Jyrugi*, ſignifies a *Walker*, and *Runner:* Whence ſome Authors, by the Name of *Jyaca*, in *Herodotus*, rightly underſtand the *Turks*, who, in his Days, were ſuch *Wanderers*; Compare with this, *Conſt. Porphyr. de Adminiſtr. Imp. cap.* 29. How they formerly fled and roved from one Place to another.

XIV. MOREOVER, when it appears, that the Word *Cinn*, *Zinn*, *Tzinn*, in the *Sclavonian*, *Perſian* and *Tartarian* Languages, ſignifies the Order or Line of Deſcent, or the Progenitors †, which, in the *Turkiſh* Language, is *Sira*, (that is the *Latin* Word *Series*;) Likewiſe, that this Word *Cinn* or *Tſchin* denotes alſo a *heaping up* or *gathering together*, and ſometimes *Soldiers, that are divided into certain Claſſes.* Theſe Appellatives, which we find in Ancient Writers, muſt needs have ſome particular Signification; (*Confer. Pomponius Mela*, *Lib.* II. *Cap.* 1. *Car-Cinn. Plin. Lib.* VI. *Cap.* 12. *Orgo-Cinn* and *Lib.* VI. *Cap.* 27. *Chara-Cinn, or Chin.*) Eſpecially ſince the two great Tribes of the *Eaſtern Tatars*, from one of which the preſent *Chineſe-Tartarian Imperial* Family deſcends, are call'd to this Day *Char-Cinn* and *Chor-Cinn*, (*i. e. the Black and Red Tribe*, or *the Black and Red Regiments*) (53). Nay, there are yet ſeveral Ancient ruin'd Places without the Wall, *viz. Alack-Cinn* and *Ack-Cinn*, (*i. e.* the checkered and white;) which Word *Cinn*, *Cenn*, (or *Zinn* and *Zend*) has alſo a like Signification in the *Arabick* Tongue, in which *Sgindi* and *Sgendi* ſignify an *Army*, inſtead of which *Leuenclavius* writes *Zindi* and *Zind*, (vid. *Herbelot*'s *Biblioth. Orient*, *p.* 545.) (54) From this Word, and the Adjective *Cha-*

† With which Words our *Kin*, *a-kin*, *Kindred*, *Kinſman*, &c. ſeem to bear an Analogy.

(53) The *Eaſtern Tartars*, who poſſeſs *China*, divide themſelves into eight Large Regiments. The firſt four of which have the chief Standards or Colours; And from theſe ariſe four others.

(54) This Word *Cenn* or *Cinn* denotes, likewiſe, in the Languages of the Ancient *Northern* Nations, a Tribe, Race, or Family. (Conf. *Gloſſ. Germ. John Georg. Wacht.* *p.* 242.)

ra, the Name of the *Saracens* is undoubtedly ariſen; I cannot, therefore, forbear obſerving, that, though very much has been written concerning the Name and Original of theſe Nations; yet, in my Opinion, they have never hitherto been ſufficiently explain'd. But as it ſtands in the above-mention'd Diſtinction of the *Black* and *Red* Colour, (or *Char* and *Chor*;) So, no Doubt, the Caſe is, in Reſpect to this *Saracenian* Name. For, according to the Account of *Abul Feda*, (in the Life of *Mahomet*) all the *Arabian* Nations were divided into the *Black* and the *Red*; And by the *Black* were particularly underſtood the *Arabians*, properly ſo call'd, as by the *Red* were thoſe Nations who inhabited all the Regions to the *North* of them: As the Learn'd Profeſſor of the *Arabick* Tongue, at *Oxford*, Mr. *Gagnier*, (in *Abu'l Fedæ*'s Life of *Muhammad*, or *Mahomet*, *Cap.* vii. *p.* 14.) has tranſlated it (55). By which, together with what has been mention'd above, it plainly appears, not only in what Senſe the Words *Cinn*, *Cenn*, *Zinn* and *Tſchin* are taken; But alſo, becauſe, with all the *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* Nations, the Word *Chara* as well as *Kara*, ſignifies *black*, it is as plain, that the *Arabians*

(55) Cum jam eſſet Apoſtolus Dei quadraginta Annos natus, miſit illum Deus ad *Nigrum* (i. e. *Arabes*) & ad *Rubrum* (i. e. *Barbaros*) Apoſtulum, ut lege ſua, leges priſcas aboleret: *That is, When the Apoſtle of* God (*thus this falſe Prophet is here call'd*) *was* 40 *Years of Age, God ſent him to the* Black (i. e. *to the* Arabians) *and to the* Red (i. e. *to the* Barbarians, *or Foreigners, who were not* Arabians) *that by his Law, he might aboliſh the ancient Laws.* In the ſame Page, (note, 6.) this learned Profeſſor obſerves farther, on this Matter: In Specie autem per *Nigrum* intelliguntur *Arabes* a vultus colore, utpote qui Auſtraliores orbis cogniti partes incolunt, per *Rubrum* autem cæteri populi, qui magis ad Septentrionem vergunt, ſunt quæ reſpectu *Arabum Barbari*. Quæ Denominatio eis competit tam a vultus colore rubro, quam quia populos præcipue *Romanos* ab *Eſavo* ſeu *Edom*, cujus ſignificatio eſt *rubrum*, rufus, oriundos eſſe exiſtimant. Quam quidem opinionem a *Judæis* mutuati ſunt, apud quos ſolemne eſt per *Eſavum* ſeu *Edom Romanum* Imperium intellegere; *Arabum* Hiſtorici Romanos apellant *bani l'aſsfar*, q. d. Filios *Ruſi*, *Flavi*, *Crocei*, quod fuit cognomen *Roum*, filii *Ais*, ſive *Eſavi*, filii *Iſaaci*, &c. (i. e.) *But, in Particular, by the Term* Black, *are defin'd the* Arabians, *from the Colour of their Countenance, as inhabiting the more Southerly Parts of the known World: As by the* Red *are meant the other People, who inhabit more to the Northward, and are, in Reſpect of the* Arabs, Barbarians; (*or* Foreigners.) *Which Deſcription ſuits them, as well on Account of their Ruddy Complexions, as alſo becauſe they eſteem thoſe Nations, eſpecially the* Romans, *to have derived their Original from* Eſau *or* Edom, *which ſignifies* Red, *or* Red-hair'd; *Which Opinion, indeed, they borrow'd from the* Jews, *with whom it is uſual to underſtand the* Roman Empire *by the Appellation of* Eſau *or* Edom. *The* Arabian *Hiſtorians ſtile the* Romans, Bani l'aſsfar, *that is, Sons of the* Red, Yellow, *or* Saffron-Colour'd, *which was the Surname of* Roumis, *the Son of* Ais, *or* Eſau, *the Son of* Iſaac, *&c.* Concerning this Matter, conſult the Hiſtory of *Joſephus Ben Gorion*, (Cap. 2. &c.)

bians have been called, by the *Northern* Nations, for that Reaſon, *Characin* or *Characeni*: And they have likewiſe been call'd, indifferently, *Saraceni* and *Characeni*, and by ſeveral Authors *Agareni*; The Origin of which latter Word is plainly ſhewn by the Learned Profeſſor, Mr. *George Jac. Kehr*, (in his *Diſſertation* upon the *Saracens, Hagarens, and Moors, p.* 22. §. 30.) *Kara* or *Chara-Cinn* ſignifies, therefore, among the *Northern* Nations, the *Blackiſh Nation* or *Tribe*. Thus the *Tartars*, to this Day, divide the uttermoſt *Eaſtern* Part of the World, or the Kingdom of *China*, with its Appurtenances; *viz.* the *Chineſe Tartary*, in the ſame Manner, as has been mention'd above, of the *Arabians*, (who likewiſe divide the *Weſtern* Part of the World ſo,) into *Black* and *Red*, and call the *Southern* Part *Kara-Kitai*, and the *Northern* Part *Schara* or *Sara-Kitai* (56). (Vid. *l'Hiſt. des Tart. p.* 121. *nota* (*a.*) And it is evident, that K is often changed into C, and S. e. g. the *Greeks* pronounce *Kaiſor*, the *Latins*, *Cæſar*, and the *Perſians*, the *Turkiſh K*, generally, like *ch* and *ſch*. It is, therefore, certain, that the Name *Saracen* is but an Appellative, and properly denotes nothing but the Black *Arabians*; But as the *Saracens* are ſuppos'd to have been a particular Tribe among theſe *Arabians*; or, as ſome ſay, like the *Banditti* in *France*: So they may alſo have been improperly call'd *Chara-Cenn* or *Kara-Cinn*, by Foreign *Tartarian* or *Turkiſh* Nations: The Word *Kara*, with them, very often denoting ſomething bad, or whatever is rude and cruel, *e. g.* They call the *Peaſants*, *Cara Chalk*; a *deſolate Country* or *Deſart*, *Kara-Kum*; and a *Whirl-Pool*, *Carabugas*: And this Name ſhould, properly, be pronounced only *Characen*, or *Karacen*. But as among all the

(56) Several Writers have been led into a Miſtake, by the near Reſemblance of the Sound of theſe Words, and have call'd that Country which lies *Northward* from *China*, *Kara-Kitay*; as the laſt mention'd Author (*p.* 21. *Not. a*,) likewiſe obſerves; which properly ſhould be call'd *Sari*, or *Schari Kitay* (i. e. the *red Kithay*,) from whence came the preſent *Tartar Chineſe* Imperial Family, which in the *Tartarian* Language is call'd *Chara-Cinn*, or *red Tribe*. On the contrary, that which lies in the *South*, as I have ſaid above, is ſtill call'd *Kara-Kitay*. From hence we may, likewiſe, underſtand, why *Schilberg* writes (cap. 30.) *Erat etiam Chataja pars Tartariæ rubræ, ejus enim tres partes erant*: Keyat, Jatzu, Mugal. On which *Andr. Mul. Grieffenh.* (in *Diſquiſitione Geograph. de* CHATAIA, *p.* 98.) obſerves, *Hæ ſunt Mogul Jeſo Katay*, i. e. *Kataya* was, likewiſe, a Part of the *Red Tartary*, which is divided into Three Parts; *viz. Keyat, Jatzu, Mugal, &c.* But it is beyond all Doubt, that *Jatzu* is the Country of *Jedſſo*, or *Jetzo*, as *Greiffenhagen* obſerves: And *Mugall* or *Mungall* is as well *North* as *North-weſt* from *China*.

the *Turks* and *Tartars*, and, in ſeveral ancient *Weſtern* Languages, *Sari*, and *Schari* ſignify *Red* and *deep Yellow* (57), and the *Saracens* formerly lived near the *Red Sea*, which got this Name from the *Greeks*, in an odd Manner (58): And, beſides, theſe Nations are ſince removed from this Sea, into Countries more towards the *North:* So they have from thence been call'd, at the ſame Time, *Saraceni* or *Scharaceni*. As a farther Confirmation of this, the Word *Saracen* is neither mention'd in the *Perſian* Hiſtory, nor known among the Nations in *Tartary:* But the latter, as well as the former, call the *Chaliſe* Nations only *Arabians:* And when I mentioned this Name to the Learn'd *Bucharians*, in the City of *Tobolſky*, they anſwered: That it was quite unknown to them: With which *Herbelot* (in his *Bibliotheque Orientale*) agrees, when he mentions, (in the Article of *Scharacah*, *p.* 777.) that ſome Authors, indeed, pretend to derive the Name of *Saracens* from a certain *Arabian* City, call'd *Scharaca:* But, ſays he, the *Greeks* and *Latins* only uſed to name thoſe Nations *Saracens*, who, in their own Language, call'd themſelves only *Arabians*. And notwithſtanding the famous Profeſſor of the *Arabick* Tongue, *Thomas Erpenius*, (formerly at *Leyden* in *Holland*,) publiſhed in 1625, a Hiſtory of the Actions of the *Arabian* Princes, from the Time of *Mahomet*, in the *Arabick* and *Latin* Tongues, under the Title, *Hiſtoria Saracenica:* Yet in the *Arabick* Text of *Elmacini*, the Author of this Hiſtory, there is not one Syllable of the Name *Saracens*, but they are always, in the *Arabick* Tongue, call'd *Muſelmen*. It is, therefore, certain, that the Word *Sari*, or *Schari* comes from the *Northern* Nations: And all that can be alledged or wrote farther, about the Derivation of this Name, may

(57) In the *Hungarian* Language *Sarga* ſignifies *Red*, or *Deep Yellow*; and, in the ancient *French* Language, *Saur* ſignifies the ſame, (vid. *Dict. Univerſ. de Trevoux*, Tom. III.) I ſhall, in a proper Place, prove, that, from this, and other Words of the ſame Origin, was formed the Name of the *Sarmates*, or *Saurmades*, who, as well as the *Scythians*, were almoſt all Red-hair'd; And their Poſterity, *viz.* the *Permecki*, *Oſtiacks*, *Wotiacks*, *Samojedes*, *&c.* are great Admirers of *red* Cloth, or any Thing of that Colour: The *Ancient Germans*, likewiſe, counted *Red* Hair a Beauty. (Vid. *Cimbriſche Holſteiniſche Antiquitæten Remarquen*, *p.* 194. & 198.)

(58) *Prideaux*, (*in his Hiſt. des Juifs*, *p.* 19.) ſays, the *Red Sea* was, in ancient Times, call'd *Yam Edom*; Becauſe the Poſterity of *Edom* inhabited thoſe Parts: But the *Greeks* hearing this Name, and knowing, that *Edom*, in the *Syriack* and *Phœnician* Languages, ſignify'd *Red*, thence call'd this Sea the *Red Sea*.

may very well be grounded upon what has been here related; Eſpecially, ſince this Cuſtom of giving Nations ſuch Appellative Names, is to this Hour, in Vogue, in *Tartary*, as *Kara-Kalpack*, *Sari-Yſchteck*, which latter is a Nick-name given to the *Baſchkirs*, by the *Coſaci Hordæ*, becauſe they have red Hair.

XV. BUT again, to mention ſome more Particulars of the Table; The Reader will there find the Words *Ogul* and *Uglani*, which, among the *Tartars*, ſignify a *King's Son*, and *of a Royal Family:* And I am almoſt of Opinion, that this denotes not only the *German* and *Swediſh* Words *Iüngling* and *Yngling*, (*i. e.* a *Youth*;) But alſo, that the famous Generation of the *Ynglingi*, of the *Gothick* Nation, have derived their Name from the two famous Royal Youths, (of whom Mention will be made hereafter;) It being not cuſtomary, in ſpeaking of the Son of a Peaſant, or Commoner, to ſay; That is a well-bred Youth, (or *Iüngling*,) But only, that is a Boy.

XVI. FARTHER, when I mention, that the *Jakuhtian Tartars* call a Capital River, *Uruſs*, and *Buruſs*, which Word agrees with the *Greek* Word *Ruſa*, and the *Perſian Rud*, I, from thence, infer, that the Name *Boryſthenes* is not derived from the *Latin* Word *Boreas*, as ſome will have it, but rather has a Connexion with the former: And, finally, when ſome Writers doubt, whether the *Cimbri* deſign'd, by the Name of *Mare Maruſa* to denote the *Mare Mortuum*, or *Glaciale*; It will be found, in its proper Place, that the Word *Marus*, in the *Sclavonian* Tongue, ſignifies the ſtrongeſt and hardeſt Cold, and that thereby the *Mare Glaciale* is rightly underſtood. There is, therefore, Reaſon to preſume, that the *Cimbri*, in the Days of *Philemon*, from whom we have this, ſpoke the *Sclavonian*, or *Vandalian* Language. Many more of the like Words and Names, the Reader will find in the Deſcription itſelf: I have, in the mean Time, touch'd on the few foregoing Examples, not only to ſhew the Uſefulneſs of the Table, and other *Eaſtern* Words, which the Reader will find in this Work; But alſo, ſince it is evident, that ſo many *European* Nations did originally, in ancient Times, depart from the *Sarmatians* and *Scythians*, out of the *Eaſt*, to ſettle in the *Weſt*, that, therefore, we have Reaſon

to

to look into these Languages, as well as into others in Use more to the *Southward* of the *East*.

XVII. And though I, my self, collected all the Languages and Dialects of these Nations; yet I must inform the Reader, that those five Languages, which I have placed between the *Caspian* and *Black-Sea*, were communicated to me by the learn'd *Assessor*, *Henry Brenner*, Librarian to His Majesty, at *Stockholm*, who has been in these Places, as appears in his *Moyse Armen.* (*Stockholm* 1723.) But that Language which I call the *Curilian* Language, I extracted out of N. N.; For, as the Author calls it a *Southern Jedsonian Language*, and the *Kurili*, of whose Language I could hear nothing, live in *Kamtschatki*, or *Jedso*, (which is all one) as my Author says; I have inserted it likewise.

XVIII. I Might also have added two Languages, used in *Nova Suecia*, or *Pensylvania*, publish'd, by a Minister, who has been there with the *Swedish* Colony, but whose Name I have forgot: Whereby one might have judged, whether these Nations have any Relation to those in *Kamtschatki*, with Respect to their Language; Because only the Straits of *Davis* and *Anian* separate these Nations, and in *Kamtschatki* there are some Customs like to those in the *West Indies*. The *Peruvians* hang their Dead on Trees; which some in *Kamtschatki* do likewise: Also in *Kamtschatki*, as well as in the *West Indies*, they live in Houses or Hutts built in the Air, upon four Posts, into which they ascend by a Ladder. But there being no Room for them in the Table, and these latter Languages being published; Any one, who is curious, may easily procure them, and compare them with these. The Reader will now be pleased to call to Mind, what I mentioned above, that not only the Divisions of my Map into the several Kingdoms and Provinces; But also the General Description of the *Tartarian* Nations, as likewise of their Languages, and of this Introduction and Description, has almost always happen'd to be in *Six* Parts, which Order I shall, in like Manner, follow, when I come to treat of these Matters particularly. But that I may likewise give some Account how my Division came to be in this Manner, I shall, in the following Section, shew somewhat more at Large, which of the Numbers the Ancient and

and Modern *North-Eaſtern*, *Pagan* and *Tartarian* Nations have principally had a Regard to; and, to this Day, obſerve, in their Occupations and Enterprizes: On which Occaſion, many Memorable Circumſtances, worthy of the Reader's Attention, will occur.

SECT. V.

Of the Diviſion of this Work, which has almoſt always happened to be by the Number SIX: *Upon which ſeveral Occaſional Remarks are made on the Cuſtoms of ſeveral Nations,* JEWS, PAGANS, *and* TARTARS, *to adjuſt and divide all their Occupations and Concerns, according to ſome certain Number.*

SUMMARY.

§. I. *THE Number* SEVEN *was always eſteemed Sacred by the* Jews, *from whom the* Perſians *likewiſe borrow'd it, in ſeveral Caſes.* II. *We likewiſe find many Inſtances of it, in the Cuſtoms and Actions of the* Mahometans. III. *The* Japoneſe *pretend, that they proceeded originally from ſeven pure Spirits; And as this Number has been eſteem'd myſtical, by many Nations, ſeveral Writers have made their particular Remarks thereupon. Of the ſuperſtitious Uſe of this Number, we find many* Relicks *among the* Chriſtians. IV. *On the other Hand, the Number* NINE *has been eſteemed ſacred with the* Pagans. V. *The learned* Morhof's *Opinion of the Numbers* SEVEN *and* NINE. *In what Caſes the Inhabitants of theſe* North *and* Eaſtern *Parts of* Europe *and* Aſia *ſhew a particular Regard to the latter.* VI. *For Inſtance, in Judicial Fines, in the Celebration of their Feſtivals, and Sacrifices.* VII. *The* Livonian *Peaſants are very Superſtitious, with Regard to this Number. With the* Samojedes

it is likewiſe very much in Eſteem. On the other Hand, the Ruſſians *are great Admirers of the Number* TEN. VIII. *Several memorable Inſtances, that the Ancient Inhabitants of* Aſia *had as much Regard to this Number, in their Occupations, as the Modern* Kalmucks *and* Mungals. IX. *Peculiar Obſervations of the* Turks *and* Tartars, *with Regard to the Number* NINE. X. *This Number is look'd upon as ominous by many Nations.* XI. *The Nature of the Number* NINE *conſidered.* XII. *The Number* THREE *has been eſteem'd Sacred by many Nations, in Ancient Times; as it is by the* Tartars, *to this Day.* XIII, XIV. *Particularly by the* Kalmucks, Mungals, *and* Arintzian Tartars; *On which Occaſion, the Author gives a ſhort Account of the latter.* XV. *Several Remains of Superſtition, with Regard to the Number* THREE, *are found in* Siberia, *among the* Mahometan Tartars. *Perhaps, by this Number, they Worſhip the* TRI-UNE GOD, *without their Knowledge.* XVI. *Several Reflections on the Number* THREE, SIX, *and* NINE, *alluding to the Paſſion of our* SAVIOUR. XVII. *Some Account of the Number* SIX, *in particular, which gives Occaſion to mention ſomething of the* Chriſtian *Religion, with Regard to theſe People.* XVIII. *Why the Number* SIX *is made Choice of in the Diviſion of this Work.*

§. I.

THAT the Ancient *Pagans*, *Scythians*, *Goths* and *Cimbri* held the Number NINE to be Sacred and Myſtical, as the *Hebrews* did the Number SEVEN, we know from many Authors *. For, with Regard to the *Jews*, and their Worſhip, we find, not only in the Erecting of their *Tabernacle*, that Regard was had to the Number SEVEN, in many Things, as the *Seven Candleſticks*, the *Seven Loaves of Shew-Bread*, &c. But that they celebrated the *Seventh* Day, the *Seventh* Month, and the *Seventh* Year, as Holy: And as well the Prophets as the Evangeliſts have cited this Number in many of their future Prophecies †. Nay the *Perſians* ſeem to have borrow'd this Ceremonial Number from the *Jews*, in many Points. For when *Smerdis*, the Uſurper of the *Perſian* Monarchy, was murder'd, by ſome of the Chief Men of the Kingdom, who conſpir'd againſt

* See *Bod. Meth. Hiſt. p.* 329. & 30. † *Apocalyp.* 8.

againſt him, and *Darius Hyſtaſpes* (who was one of them) was choſen King, the Reſt reſerved this Privilege to themſelves, that SEVEN of the Principal Nobles ſhould always be joined with the King, in the Adminiſtration ‡. This Cuſtom probably extended itſelf from thence into the *Eaſtern Tartary*; For when the *Eaſtern Tartars* were driven out of *China*, and ſettled in the Province of *Nyuchea*, they divided themſelves into *Seven* large *Hords* ‖. And here we may obſerve, that the *Kalmucks*, though they call themſelves only *Derbon Oiret* or *Oileth*, (*i.e.* the four *Oiretian* Tribes;) Yet they call this Form of Government *Dolong Coſchun*, or the *Seven* Great Regiments. For, as not only ſeveral Cuſtoms, and ſome Relicks of the *Medo-Perſian* Language, are yet preſerved among theſe People; So as well that, as what I have here obſerved of the Number SEVEN, among theſe *Eaſtern* People, may probably have been introduc'd, when *Jeſdigærd*, King of the *Perſians*, fled out of *Perſia* to *Kathay*, in the Year 637. (Vid. *Eutych. Annal. Alexand. Tom.* II. *p.* 296.)

II. AND farther, as many Tenets of the *Mahometan* Religion are taken from the *Jewiſh* and other Ceremonies; So probably this, that the Soul of *Mahomet* is to be tranſported, by his Diſciples, to Glory, in the *Seventh* Heavens: For the *Mahometans* admit of *Seven* Heavens, and, at the ſame Time, of Seven Degrees of each Kind of Glory, as likewiſe of Seven Earths or Worlds, to diſtinguiſh ſo many Kinds of Miſeries and Puniſhments. Each of theſe has its peculiar Name *, and they ſuppoſe immenſe Spaces between each Earth and each Heaven. Again, Seven Qualifications are required to entitle a *Mahometan* to the full Order of Prieſthood. And ſo their Nobility, if they can prove their Deſcent for *Seven* Generations, are allow'd equal to the moſt Ancient Families †.

III. BUT whence the *Japoneſe* came to eſteem this Number Sacred, I am at a Loſs to determine. They ſuppoſe *Seven* pure Spirits, from whom, in their Opinion, they and all their Anceſtors had their Origin: Three of which they ſay were ſingle,

‡ See *l'Hiſtoire des* Juifs, *par Monſ. Prideaux*, *p.* 105. & 327. ‖ See *Appendix to* Olearius, *of the* Tartarian *War*.

* *L'Hiſt. des* Tartars, *à* Leyde, 1726. *p.* 105. & 327.

† *L'Hiſt. des* Tartars, *à* Leyde, 1726. *p.* 1.

But the other four married ‡. As, therefore, this Number has not only its natural Foundation; But, likewiſe, as we have ſeen above, has been eſteem'd Sacred, and Myſtical, as well by the *Jews*, as, from them, by ſeveral other Nations; Some Modern Writers have from thence endeavour'd to find ſomething peculiar in this Number. Thus they obſerve, that this Number is ſo combin'd of 3 and 4, that the Aggregate of the Progreſſive Numbers to Seven, makes four Times itſelf, as may be ſeen below ‖, and thereby is the Director of Time, according to the Courſe of the two great Luminaries, even as the Moon finiſhes its Courſe in four Times Seven Days †. Likewiſe from theſe, and the following Grounds, it appears, the *Greeks* invented ſome of their Fables, *e. g.* When they ſuppos'd their God, *Pan*, invented the Muſical Inſtrument he is deſcrib'd as playing upon, conſiſting of *Seven* Pipes, alluding to the Heavenly Harmony of the Seven Planets. So likewiſe, when they aſcribe to *Mercury* the Harp or Inſtrument of *Seven* Strings, to repreſent the *Seven* Liberal Sciences *. To all this we may add the ſuperſtitious Notion, that if an Infant be born in the *Seventh* Month, it will thrive as well as if born in the Ninth Month; But not if born in the Eighth Month †. Likewiſe, that the Nature of Man is ſubject to ſome particular and important Change every *Seventh* Year; Whence thoſe Years, eſpecially the 49th, or *Seventh* Time *Seventh*, are called *Anni Climacterici*, &c. ‡

IV. In

‡ See *Biblioth.* Angl. *par* Arm. de la Chap. Amſterd. 1727. *Tom.* V. *Part* I. *p.* 39.

‖ 1. † Vid. Grævii Synt. Diſſert. p. 709, & 710.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.

28.

* *Vid.* Melancht. *Declam. Tom.* I. *p.* 5.

† *Vid.* Jacob Ruffen *Stadt-Artzte in* Zurich, *p.* 43.

‡ The *Greeks*, and ſome other Nations, likewiſe, divided the World into *Seven* Climates, which Cuſtom the *Mahometans* have preſerv'd to this very Day; Which we may ſee by the large *India-Perſian* Medal, which was ſtruck in Honour to the *Great Mogul, Aurengzebe*, in his Reſidence of *Debli*, which is now in the Cabinet of the Princes of *Gotha*: In the Illuſtration of which, *M. Kehr*, (in the Treatiſe he publiſh'd for that End, entitled: *Mogolis Magni Aurenk-Zeb Numiſma Indo-Perſicum*, in Royal *Quarto*, *Lipſ.* 1725. *p.* 14. and 37--40) proves, that one of the Titles of the *Great Mogul* is, *The moſt Illuſtrious Prince within the Compaſs of the Seven Climates.*

IV. In the ſame Manner, all the *Pagan* Nations have been bigotted to the Number Nine: For the Ancient *Cimbri*, and *Goths* celebrated the *Ninth* Day, *Ninth* Month, and *Ninth* Year, as Sacred, and perform'd *Nine* different Sacrifices in them ‖, as *Joh. Magnus*, (in his *Chronicle*, *L.* I. *p.* 15. *It. L.* III. *p.* 94.) ſhews us, from many Authors; and farther obſerves, that *Zamolxes* * and *Decineus* introduc'd the ſame, among the *Goths*, from the Philoſophy of *Pythagoras* †; Out of which he taught them, that the Number Nine, which was compounded of 3 Times 3, muſt be laid down as the Ground of all their Actions and Undertakings. (Vid. *Leges Weſt-Gothicæ in Suionia Joh. Loccen. p.* 104.)

V. Of this Number, we, likewiſe, find many Things mention'd by ſeveral Authors. Eſpecially by *Morhoff*, (in his *Polyhiſtor.*) who

‖ Vid. *Adam Brem.* p. 144. with which we may compare *Trogill. Arnkiels Cimb.* Paganiſm, *Hamb.* 1702. Likewiſe *Dithmar. Merſeb. L.* I. *Annal. in Vita Imp. Henr.* I. Where we find the following Words: "I have heard ſuch ſtrange Things related of their "(*viz.* the Ancient *Danes*) Sacrifices, that I cannot paſs them by in Silence. In the "Iſland of *Selon* (now *Zeeland*) there is a Place call'd *Lederum* or *Lethre*, which has long "ſince been a Heap of Ruins; But was formerly a great City, the Capital of the King-"dom, and the Reſidence of their Ancient Kings Here the Inhabitants aſſembled, at "the Expiration of every *Nine* Years, in the Month of *January*, after the Time of our "*Epiphany*, and ſacrific'd, as an Offering to their Gods, ninety and nine Human Bodies, "with the ſame Number of Horſes, Dogs and Cocks.

* Zamolxes was eſteem'd a God by the *Getæ* or *Thracians*, who, according to the Teſtimony of *Herodotus*, call'd themſelves ἀθανίζοντες, or *Immortal*, and was named *Gebeleizin*; Of which Word *Mornæus* has given us an Explication; (Vid. *Georg. Horn. Hiſt. Philoſ. Libr.* IV. *p.* 226.) tho' whether he has hit the Mark is very much to be doubted. For, as the *Getæ*, *Cimmerii* and *Sarmatæ* honour'd the God *Mars*, before all other of the *Pagan* Deities, and, in the *Tartarian* Language, the Words *Gewele* and *Gebele*, which the *Turks* pronounce *Ghælebe* and *Ghelebegi*, and *Cinn* or *Zing*, ſignify *Great*, *Mighty*, and *Monarch*; Likewiſe, in *Perſian*, *Ghew* denotes *Victory*; this ſeems rather to have been applicable formerly to the Name and Attributes of *Mars*; Eſpecially as the *Cimmerii*, *Sarmatæ*, *Getæ* and *Maſgetæ*, came originally from the *Eaſt*. Upon which Occaſion, I cannot forbear mentioning; That as I was on my Travels, on the River *Oby*, and ask'd an *Oſtiack*; What he thought became of their Souls when they dy'd? His Anſwer was; That thoſe who came to a violent End, or were kill'd in Combat with the Bears, came immediately into Heaven: But for them, who dy'd in their Beds, or in a uſual Manner, they were oblig'd to ſerve the auſtere Deity, under the Earth, a long Time, before they were admitted into Heaven. And here I call to Mind what *Valerius Maximus* ſays of the *Cimbri*. *Celtiberi & Cimbri* (ſays he) *in acie gaudio exultare conſueviſſe, tanquam glorioſe & feliciter vita exceſſuri, Lamentari vero in morbo, quaſi turpiter perituri, &c.* But that theſe *Oſtiacks* were a Part of thoſe Primitive *Sarmatæ*, who were the firſt Inhabitants of *Ruſſia*, and amongſt whom there is a Tribe call'd *Wotiacks*, who call themſelves, in their own Language, *Arr*, and their Country *Arima*, I ſhall plainly ſhew, in its proper Place: And *Pliny* ſays, *L. VI. c.* 18. the *Sarmatæ* were firſt call'd *Aramæi*, in which, likewiſe *Hornius*, (*Hiſt. Phil. L. IV. p.* 225.) agrees.

† Vid. *quoque Frid. Genthenii Hiſt. Philoſoph. p.* 42.

who treats of it at large, and alſo mentions, that *Pythagoras* was inſtructed in this enigmatical Philoſophy, by the *Egyptians* ‡: Tho' others pretend that *Pythagoras* was a Diſciple of *Zoroaſter* ‖. The ſame *Morhoff*, after having farther ſhewn, that the Number NINE, as well as SEVEN, might be grounded in Nature, and therefore did not happen to be ſo by Chance; The Art of Muſick, for Inſtance, terminating and becoming compleat in the Number SEVEN, and Arithmetick in NINE *: He then goes on, in the ſame Chapter, and ſays; *He does not in the leaſt doubt, but many Remains and Monuments of theſe Matters muſt yet exiſt among the* Eaſtern *Nations.* I ſhall, therefore, proceed to relate, what I myſelf have obſerv'd, in thoſe *North-Eaſtern* Parts, as likewiſe what I have remark'd in other Writers, who have treated of this Part of the World, concerning this Subject, and particularly with Regard to the Number NINE, what yet remains among the Inhabitants of theſe Parts. *L'Hiſtoire du Grand Ghenghizcan, par Monſ. Petis de la Croix, p.* 79. informs us, that when *Temugin* was elected *Great Chan*, and nam'd *Ghenghiz-Cann*, all the People bow'd their Knees to him *Nine* Times, to wiſh him a proſperous Continuation of his Reign: And this is yet a Cuſtom with the *Chineſe-Tartarian Emperours*, before whom Ambaſſadors, when they are admitted to Audience, are oblig'd to make their Obeiſances kneeling, *Nine* Times at their Entrance, and juſt as often at their Departure †. The ſame Ceremony is yet in Uſe with the *Usbeck-Tartars*; For when a Perſon has any Thing of Importance to aſk of, or to treat with, their *Chan*, he muſt not only offer a Preſent, conſiſting of NINE particular Things or Curioſities; But when he approaches him, to deliver it, muſt bow *Nine* Times; Which Ceremony theſe *Tartars* call the *Zagataian* Audience. We have, likewiſe, an Account of the ſame Ceremony in ſeveral Parts of the Hiſtory of *Timur-Beck*, by Monſ. *Petis de la Croix* ‡.

VI. WE find in ſeveral Writers, that the Number NINE was obſerv'd, in Ancient Times, among the *Northern* Nations, on

‡ *Morhoff Polyhiſtor. Tom. I. L. II. c.* 7. *It. Tom. II. L. II. c.* 6. & 18.
‖ *Humphr. Prideaux Old and New Teſtament, p.* 289.
* *Morhoff. Tom. I. L. I. c.* 12.
† Vid. *Das Veraenderte Ruſſland, p.* 34. It. *Isbrand Ides Reiſe-Beſchreibung. p.* 100.
‡ Vid. *l'Hiſtoire de Timur-Beck. Tom. II. p.* 244.

on many other Occaſions. *Loccenius* informs us; That the *Gothick* Laws required a Fine to be paid three Times, with *Nine* Marks each Time *: And it is, to this Day, a Rule with the *Kalmucks* and *Mungals*, that if a Perſon ſteal any Thing from another, he muſt reſtore it not only *Nine*-fold; But, if the Matter be of Importance, *Nine* Times *Nine*-fold; Whether Sheep, Horſes, Camels, *&c.* And *Isbrand Ides* tells us; That, according to the *Chineſe* Laws, Criminals are puniſhable to the *Ninth* Generation † (*a*). The Number NINE being obſerv'd in their Religious Ceremonies, as I have already remark'd of the *Cimbri* and *Goths*, that they celebrated the *Ninth* Day, the *Ninth* Month, and the *Ninth* Year, in which they offer'd *Nine* different Kinds of Sacrifices; And they, likewiſe, bemoan'd their Dead *Nine* Days together ‡; So *Loccenius* is of Opinion, that it is not without ſome particular Reaſon, that the Province of *Kajania*, in *Finnland*, has *Nine* Roſes for its Coat of Arms ‖.

VII. BESIDES theſe Inſtances, we find many more Remains of the like to this Day, among the old ſuperſtitious Peaſants in *Livonia*. They uſually carry *Nine* different Kinds of Things, as Iron, Pewter, Braſs, *&c.* for Offerings to their *Hayns*, or *Idolatrous Groves*. They count the *Ninth* Joint in Human Bodies, and thence preſage their Good or Bad Fortune. So likewiſe they reckon the Ninth Joint or Knot in Straw, and thence foretell whether they are to expect a fruitful or barren Crop. And they generally compound their Medicines of *Nine* ſeveral Herbs. *Pliny, in Hiſt. Nat. Lib.* XXIX. *cap.* 6. mentions a certain Medicine for the Eyes, made of a green Lizard, in preparing of which they made the following ſuperſtitious Uſe of the Number NINE. They ty'd

* Vid. *Joh. Locc. Leg. Weſt-Goth. p.* 104.
† Vid. *Isbrand Ides Reiſe-Beſchreibung. p.* 173.
‡ Vid. *Rhodigini Lection. Antiqu. Lib. XVII. cap.* 21. *p.* 932.
‖ *Vid. Loccenii leg. Weſt-Goth. p.* 107.
(*a*) According to the *Engliſh* Tranſlation of the Travels of *Isbrand Ides*, it is only Rebels who are liable to this rigorous Law; And the ſame Author adds, that the then Emperour, *Canghi*, being a mild Prince, and averſe to Cruelty, when he found himſelf obliged, in Compliance with this Law, to put to Death the Children and Relations of *Ouſangeii*, who was convicted of Rebellion, to teſtify his Averſion to ſuch a Practice, cauſed Proclamation to be made before-hand, that he had not condemn'd them, but that he was conſtrain'd by the rigid Laws of the Empire, the general Aſſembly of the Princes of the Blood, and the Supreme Courts of Juſtice of the Land, not to delay the Puniſhment of any Perſon who was convicted of Rebellion.

ty'd *Nine* ſmall Stones, each mark'd with a particular Character, to the Tail of this Creature, and then put it into a Veſſel. Then taking, every Day, one of theſe Stones off, the *Ninth* Day they look'd upon the Lizzard to be ſanctify'd to their Uſe. The Cuſtom of the *Livonians* in Compounding their Medicines has a pretty near Reſemblance to this. The ſame is obſerv'd by the *Samojedes*, who, when they pay their Tribute, which is always in Furs, bind *Nine* Ermins, Squirrels or other Skins in a Bundle: But the *Ruſſians*, who ſet a Value upon the Number TEN, inſtead of NINE, when they receive theſe Furs, unty the Bundles, and repack them with *Ten* Skins in a Bundle. This Veneration which the *Ruſſians* profeſs to have for the Number TEN, they probably had from the *Greeks*, who held this Number in high Eſteem: For the *Slavonians* had, in Ancient Times, great Intercourſe with that Nation. *(Vid. Rhodigin. lect. antiq. Lib.* XXII. *cap.* 14. *p.* 1242.*)* So likewiſe the *Ruſſians* not only frequented and traded to *Conſtantinople*, before and at the Time of the Emperour *Conſtantius Porphyrogenetha*; (See the Author of that Name, *de adminiſtr. Imper. Cap.* IX. *p.* 15.*)* But likewiſe borrow'd the Fundamentals of their Religion, Writing, and Letters from the *Greeks*. And here, it may not be improper to obſerve, that when the *Czar Peter* I. of Glorious Memory, in his Reign, divided the *Empire* firſt into *Nine* Governments, he afterwards alter'd it, and made *Ten* of them: But whether this was done for Conveniency, eſpecially as the Government of *Caſan* was very large and extenſive, or whether for any other Cauſe, I ſhall not pretend to determine. So, however, it happen'd, and the *Empire* of *Ruſſia* is now divided into *Ten* Governments, and therein the Preference given to the Number they ſet a higher Value upon, than that of NINE. On the other Hand, in the Kingdom of *Tanguth* there are many Images which ſhew the Regard they had in their Sacrifices to the Number *Nine*; As the Idol *Manipe*, which they repreſent with *Nine* Heads *; And, in *India*, the *Bramans* pourtray their Idol *Narran* with *Nine* Hands on each ſide †.

VIII. THE

* Vid. *Kirch. Chin. illuſtr. Pars* IV. *cap.* 2. & 3. item *pag.* 235.

† Vid. *Eraſmi Franciſc. L.* III. *p.* 1005.

VIII. The People of *Asia* have, likewise, had Regard to this Mystical Number, in their Military Transactions: For when the *Tartars* defeated *Henry*, Duke of *Lignitz*, in *Bohemia*, in 1242. they fill'd *Nine* Sacks with the Ears of the *Christians*, and carry'd them away as Trophies of their Victory ‡. Which Barbarity, King *Boleslaus*, of *Poland*, happily reveng'd, in the Year 1259. when having defeated the *Tartarian* Chiefs *Najaja* and *Thelebouga*, he likewise carry'd off *Nine* Sacks of the Ears of the *Tartars*, from the Field of Battel. This Custom, the Off-spring of these *Tartars*, *viz.* the *Kalmucks* and *Mungals*, have preserv'd to this Day; For when the *Kalmuckian* Prince *Bosta-Chan* waged War with the *Chinese*, in 1696. and the latter excited the King or *Chan* of the *Mungals* against the *Kalmucks*, by which Means the *Kalmuck* Army was entirely ruin'd *; The *Mungals* cut off the Tresses of Hair from the Heads of the dead *Kalmucks*, and, filling *Nine* Sacks with them, carry'd them off, as so many Trophies of their Success: All which was told me at *Tobolski*, by several *Tartars* and *Kalmucks*, who very well remember'd this Action, and were some of them present at it.

IX. We likewise find the Use of the Number Nine, in the Division of many Things, not only among the *Eastern*, but among the Ancient *Western Pagan* Nations. *e. g.* Among the *Greeks*, who divided their Alphabet, which, otherwise, consisted of three Times Eight, or Twenty-four Letters, into three Times *Nine*, for the Sake of this Number: But as there then was, in each Division, a Letter too little, they added to each a Sign or Character, to supply the Want of those Letters, and thereby compleat the Number of three Times Nine †. So likewise *Herodotus* divided his History into *Nine* Books, according to the Number of the Muses, from whom he named them. And as for the *Eastern* Nations, I shall add the following In-

N stances:

‡ Vid. *Erasmi Francisc. Blut. Adler-Blitz.*

* We have an Account of this Action not only in the News-Papers of the Year 1696, but in several Authors, who call the Prince of the *Kalmucks* corruptly *Luth*, which should be *Elöth*; For so the *Kalmucks* are call'd among themselves, as likewise by other *Eastern* Nations. (Vid. *Autor zur Einleitung der Hist. von Asia, Africa,* and *America, nach der Methode des Herren Puffendorff's, p.* 415.)

† Vid. *Adrian. Amerot. de Græcor. Notis Arithm. in fol. antepenult. Lexici Græco-Lat. Scapulæ. edit.* 1548. With which compare the learned Professor *Swartzius* of *Altorff*, in his *Dissert. de antiq. Num. Senarii Nota Episimon dicta.* § III. *pag.* 4. & 5.

ſtances: The *Tartarian* Author, *Abulgaſi Bagadar Chan*, whom I have frequently mentioned above, made Choice of twice *Nine*, or Eighteen Books, from whence he took the Grounds, or principal Materials, for his Hiſtory ‡. He likewiſe makes Uſe of the following Form of Words in his Hiſtory: "As GOD, the "LORD, had given Being to twice *Nine*, or 18000 Species or "Kinds of Things, (or, as the Tranſlator terms it, *Creations*) "from which all other Beings were afterwards generated, and "GOD himſelf had ſhewn a Liking to the Number NINE; So "the *Turks* always endeavour'd to conform themſelves to this "Number ‖ (*b*): And he, for his Part, had found, in Compi-"ling of his Hiſtory, that this Number always exactly anſwer'd "his Expectation; He had, therefore, divided his Hiſtory into "*Nine Bapp.* or Parts." In which, however, I believe, he has rather acted as a good *Muſſelman*, and followed his Prophet *Mahomet*, who employed *Nine* Writers, to Pen his *Alcoran*, and other pretended Divine Revelations: And who, at his Death, left *Nine* Wives, with whom he had cohabited *. We are, likewiſe told, that the famous Porcelain Tower, at *Nanking* in *China*, conſiſts of *Nine* Stories or Diviſions. And here it may, likewiſe, not be improper to remark, that the *Winuli* encompaſs'd their great and famous City of *Rethre*, in *Mecklenburg*, where the Idol *Radegaſt* was worſhipp'd, with a Wall having *Nine* Gates. (Vid. *Helmondi Chronica Slavorum*, *p.* 5.) And alſo, that the Country of the *Avarian Hunns*, which was attack'd by the Emperour *Carolus Magnus*, in the Year 792, was fenced in with *Nine* Walls of Earth or Mud. (Vid. *Mezeray*, *Lib.* IX. *p.* 739.)

X. So, likewiſe, the Ancient *Heathens*, when they had a ſtrict Regard to the Number NINE, in their Undertakings, promiſed themſelves a proſperous Iſſue of them. And therefore *Nebuchadnezar* came, in the *Ninth* Year of the Reign of King *Zedekiah*,

‡ Vid. *Hiſtoire des Tartars, à Leide*, 1726. *p.* 4.

‖ *Id. p.* 7. & 8.

(*b*) I find, however, in the Place our Author cites, the following Words only: *Je l'appelle une Hiſtoire Genealogique des* Tartars, *& je l'ai diviſé en* neuf Parties, *pour me conformer aux autres Ecrivains, qui ont tous ce nombre en particuliere Recommendation.* The Form above mention'd may perhaps be in the Original.

* Vid. *Abu'l Feda de Vita Mohammedis, Oxonii*, 1723. *Fol. Cap.* 69. *p.* 152. *Nota* (*a*) *Ib. Cap.* 68. *p.* 147--151. *in textu & notis.*

kiah, againſt *Jeruſalem*; And, in the eleventh Year of the Reign of that King, on the *Ninth* Day of the fourth Month, took it; (or, as the Bible expreſſes it, *the City was broken. Jerem.* xxxix. *ver.* 1, *and* 2.) Again, *Seleucus Nicanor*, the *Ninth* Son of *Antiochus*, built ſeveral Cities, which from his Name, were called *Seleucia*; As *Seleucia* in *Pieria*; *Seleucia ad Euphratem*, *Seleucia ad Belum*, &c. As we are informed by *Appian.* And *Otogerius Goland*, a Prince of the Ancient *Germans*, went with *Nine* Heroes, or renowned Warriors, into *Spain*, where he fought ſucceſſively againſt the *Moors.* (Vid. *Luc. Marienum de rebus Hiſpanicis*, *Lib.* IX. and *Franc. Taraph. de Reg. Hiſp. ad an.* 717.)

XI. If we take Notice of what *Iſbrand Ides* tells us, from *Neuhoff*: *viz.* That there is a River, call'd *Lyen*, in the *Chineſe* Province of *Xantum*, into which if Nine Twigs be thrown together, three of them will always ſwim towards the *North*, and ſix towards the *South*; Which *Neuhoff* ſays, he himſelf has tried and experienced †. Likewiſe, that *Temugin* or *Temuzing*, who was afterwards called the *Great Zingis-Chan*, deſcended, in the *Ninth* Generation, from a Widow called *Alancu*; of whom the *Mungals* pretend, that ſhe bore a Son in a ſtrange ſuper-natural Manner, which pretty cook'd up Story thoſe People very much exaggerate (Vid. *Hiſtoire des Tartars, à Leyde*, 1726. *p.* 155. (*a*) That in the two firſt *Dynaſties* of the *Tartarian* Emperours,

† Vid. *Andr. Mull. Commentat. de Monument. Sin. p.* 1.

(*a*) What I find of this ſupernatural Birth, in the Place above cited, and in the foregoing Pages, is contain'd in the following Words: *Tamuzin* & ſes quatres Freres deſcendent dans la 9me Generation des trois Freres nez d'*Alancu*, Veuve de *Dejunbajàn*, en la Maniere ſuivante: "Quoiqu' aprez la mort de ſon Mari il ſe trouvât pleuſieurs qui recherchaſ- "ſent *Alancu* en Marriage, elle refuſa conſtamment de ſe remarier; Mais quelque peu de "temps aprés ayant dormi une Nuit juſqu' au lever de l'*Aurore*, elle vit en s'eveillant quel- "que choſe d'auſſi brillant que le Soleil tomber en ſa Chambre, par l'ouverture du toit, "& s'approcher d'elle ſous la Figure d'un Homme de Couleur orangée, avec des yeux "d'une beauté toute particuliere, ce qui l'epouvanta en ſorte qu'ell n'eut ni la force de "parler, ni celle de ſe tenir ſur ſes pieds: Cependant comme elle ne perdit point Con- "noiſſance, elle remarqua que cet Eſprit, apres avoir couché quelque tems avec elle, diſ- "parut ſoudainement. Cinq ou ſix jours d'aprés l'Eſprit revint la voir en la même ma- "niere, & continua ſes viſites aupres d'elle aſſez ſouvent dans la ſuite. Cependant elle ſe "trouvoit enceinte du fait de cet Eſprit dés ſa premiere viſite. *Alancu*, ayant atteint le "terme de ſa groſſeſſe, accoucha heureuſement de trois Fils à la fois." Our *Tartarian* Author here continues to give the Genealogy of the youngeſt of theſe three Brothers, from whom *Tamuzin*, afterwards *Zingis-Chan*, was deſcended, and being come to *Tamuzin* and his

who reign'd in *China*, only nine Regiments in each came to the Government. *Viz.* The *Eaſtern*, who were driven out of this *Empire*, by the *Weſtern*, who eſtabliſh'd themſelves there, in their Room; But after the *Dynaſty* of theſe *Weſtern Tartars* had likewiſe remained during a Succeſſion of *Nine* Emperours, they were, in like Manner, obliged to give Place to the *Chineſe*, or the firſt Emperour of the Family of *Taiming*. Whether the preſent third *Tartarian Dignity*, which began in 1644, will ſtand longer, Time muſt ſhew. If, I ſay, we give Heed to theſe Things, we may be convinced, that this Number ſhew'd itſelf to be, among the *Pagan* and *Scythian* Nations, in a Manner ominous, and to be, in thoſe Countries, as it were, grafted in Nature itſelf, and therefore, as I have already obſerved of the Number SEVEN, might be call'd, with them, Climacterical. And here I muſt not omit, that the *Jewiſh* City of *Bethſean*, or *Bethſchan*, the only One which the *Scythians*, in Ancient Times, ever poſſeſs'd in thoſe Parts, and was, therefore, called *Scythopolis*, and afterwards, in the Times of Chriſtianity, became an Archiepiſcopal See, had *Nine* Biſhopricks under it. (Vid. *Delit. Orient. Pars* II. *p.* 97.) It is, likewiſe, remarkable, that *Mahomet* waged three Times *Nine*, or twenty-ſeven Wars; *Nine* of which ended in a Battle, to his Advantage *. And to this may very well be added, what *Relandus* † relates of the *Americans*, in *Candia*, who having painted the *French* Coat of Arms with an Ax over it, placed *Nine* Characters on each Side of it, reſembling the *Greek* Letter Φ, by which they meant that they had been attack'd and defeated by 180 *French* Soldiers, the Figure Φ repreſenting ten Men, which is particularly remarkable on Account of the Affinity there ſeems to be between the *Aſiatick* and *American* Nations, of which I ſhall obſerve more below.

XII. To conclude, I may add much the ſame Obſervation of the Number NINE, as I did before of the Number SEVEN multiplied by four. *viz.* Add as many *Nines* as you pleaſe together; or, which is the ſame Thing, multiply any Number

his four Brothers, he adds: "Ces cinq Freres avoient tous le viſage blanc tirant ſur le "jaune, & un bord rouge entre le noir & le blanc des Yeux.

* Vid. *Abu'l Feda, de vita & reb. geſt. Mohamed. edit. Oxon.* 1723. *in fol. Cap.* 71. *p.* 156.

† *Hadrian Reland, in Diſſertat.* XII. *de ling. Americ.* § XII. *p.* 195.

ber by NINE, the Figures of the Product added together, will always be reducible to NINES. Thus,

9
9
—
18 and 1 and 8 make 9. Again,

9
9
9
—
36 So 3 and 6 makes 9. So likwiſe,

5
9
—
45 And here 4 and 5 make 9. Again,

12
9
—
108 and 1 and 8 make 9. Farther,

1423	1
9	2
—	8
12807	0
	7
	—

18 which being added, make, as we ſee, twice 9. And the Product of this added again, makes 9. So again, — — — — } 56728 5

9	1
—	0
510552	5
	5
	2
	—
	18

IN ſhort, multiply any Number, though never ſo great, by Nine, the Figures of the Product added together, will always be redu-

reducible to NINES *. I might add many other Inſtances of the Uſe of this Number NINE, among the *Aſiatick* Nations, in other Things; But, by what I have ſaid already, it is ſufficiently evident, that, as well in ancient Times, as at preſent, not only among the *Pagans* and *Scythians* of *Europe*, but, likewiſe, to this Day, among the *Tartars* in *Aſia*, the Number NINE has been, and is yet eſteem'd, as it were, ſacred, myſtical and ominous. I ſhall, therefore, only add, that there is a great Affinity, in the Denomination of this Number among the above-mention'd *Aſiatick* and *European-Scythian* Nations. The Modern *Tartars* call it *Nukos*, or *Nogos*, for which the *Turks* pronounce *Dokos*; The ancient *Goths* ſaid *Nu*; The *Franks* and *Alemanni*, *Nium*; The *Armorici*, *Naou*; With which agree the Modern *German*, *Neun*; The *Latin*, *Novem*; The *French*, *Neuf*; The *Italian*, *Nove*; the *Dutch*, *Neghen*; The *Spaniſh*, *Nueve*; and the *Engliſh*, *Nine*. And as, finally, this Number has the Number THREE for its Root, which the *Pagans* likewiſe laid down for the Grounds or Foundation of their Number NINE, I ſhall now ſay ſomething of that Number.

XIII. WE find in ſeveral Writers, that the ancient *Chaldeans* and *Magi* recommended the Number THREE, in their Inſtructions and Propoſitions †: And ſo the ancient Wiſe Men and Philoſophers, among the *Heathens*, as *Plato*, *Homer* and *Ariſtotle*, with many others, as is plain by their Writings, very much extol'd the Number THREE, in which, according to them, is to be found the *Beginning*, the *Middle* and the *End* ‡. And thence, perhaps, in following Times, may have ariſen the Reaſons among the *Aſiatick Scythians*, and the Relicks yet remaining among the Modern *Tartars*, that the Number THREE was viſibly regarded by both, in many of their Tranſactions and Occurrences. For when *Temougin*, afterwards call'd *Zingis-Chan*,

* AND here, perhaps, we may not improperly apply to theſe two Numbers, SEVEN and NINE, what *Luther* ſays, in his Preface to *Ezekiel*, where the Prophet ſpeaks myſtically of the *New Jeruſalem*; *viz.* That reckoning, according to the Words of the Prophet, the City towards the *North* muſt be SEVEN, and the City on the high Mountain, NINE large *German* Miles, in Length and Breadth.

† Vid. *Stanlei Hiſt. Philoſ. Orient. L.* I. *Sect.* II. *Cap.* 4. *ſq.*

‡ Vid. *Rhodigin. Lection. antiq. L. XXII. c.* 9. *p.* 1234. & *L. XXVIII. c.* 6. *p.* 1550.

Chan, who laid the Foundation of the *Tartarian* Monarchy, made an Alliance againſt *Unch-Chan*, this Confederacy was ratified by the Offering of a *Horſe*, an *Ox*, and a *Dog*. (Vid. *Hiſt. de Genghiz-Chan, p.* 39.) And, to this Day, the *Jakutians*, a *Pagan* Nation, in *Siberia*, who dwell near the City *Jakutzkoi*, on the River *Lena*, ſacrifice to three inviſible Deities, of which they have no Repreſentation, either in Painting or Sculpture, and which they diſtinguiſh by the Names of *Arteugon*, *Schugo-Teugon*, and *Tangara*. In a Treatiſe lately publiſh'd by an anonymous Author, entitled: *Des H. Röm. Reichs Kirchen Staats, erſter Theil, Artic.* II. *p.* 8, *and* 12. we find the following Account. "The moſt ancient *Germans* (*ſays my Author*) worſhip'd the "true GOD, by the Name of *Thoyth* and *Theut*; And the firſt "Inhabitants on the *Eaſt-Sea*, worſhipp'd an Idol call'd *Trigla*, "and *Trigliuff*, which latter had three Heads on one Body *, by "which the Myſtery of the HOLY TRINITY was myſtically "repreſented †." But from that very ſame Place from whence the firſt Colony came into *Germany*, (*viz.* from *Egypt*) the Forefathers of our *Jakuhtians* probably came likewiſe: Eſpecially if we obſerve what the *Tartarian* Hiſtory ſays of *Ogus-Chan*, who

* Compare with this, what is ſaid in the following Paragraph, of the Image with three Heads, among the *Kalmucks*, of which the Reader will find a Repreſentation below; As likewiſe what is there ſaid of the Number THREE.

† NOTWITHSTANDING the *Mahometans* profeſs openly, in Compliance with their *Kobran*, to be the moſt obſtinate and incorrigible *Anti-Trinitarians* of all the Nations of thoſe Parts: Yet I have obſerv'd, among the moſt Knowing of them (who have more Opportunity of being acquainted with the Doctrine of CHRIST, than the more remote *Pagans*, and are inform'd that the *Chriſtians* worſhip a TRI-UNE-GOD) that if one diſcourſes with them moderately and reaſonably, and more in a Myſtical, than Literal or Figurative Manner, they have not ſo obſtinately diſavow'd this Myſtery. Upon which Occaſion I call to Mind, what Mr. *Fabricius*, who was formerly Ambaſſador in *Perſia*, told me: *viz.* That dining once at the King's Table, at *Iſpahan*, when many of the Greateſt Men of the Kingdom, and, among others, the *Mufti*, were preſent, the latter ſaid, he could not conceive, how the *Chriſtians*, among whom there had always been very wiſe Men, could have the Thoughts of believing a TRINITY, to which many others added their ſeveral Opinions of the Matter; At Length, the King, taking up the Argument, ſaid, I will tell you how they underſtand this Matter. Whereupon he took up the Corner of his Robe, and folding it into *Three* Plaits, ask'd the Company whether thoſe *Three* were not One, and the ſame Piece? To which they anſwering, Yes; He unfolded the Plaits, and then ask'd them again, if that was not one Piece? Which no One being able to contradict; And thus, concluded He, I ſuppoſe the *Chriſtians* underſtand their Doctrine of a Trinity. From whence it appears, that there muſt be ſome Seeds of Conviction ſow'd and remaining ſecretly in the Hearts of many of them, which they dare not manifeſt.

who reſided on the *Eaſtern* Banks of the *Wolga: viz.* Firſt, that he was no Idolater; and Secondly, That he march'd with his Army as far as *Egypt* (or *Meſſra.*) (Vid. *l'Hiſt. des Tartars, p.* 38, *and* 55 *.) Thirdly, That our *Jakuhtians* inhabited before in the *South*, towards the Kingdom of *Tanguht*, as they themſelves have informed me, and *Iſbrand Ides* ſo far confirms, when he ſays, they and the *Bratti*, who yet live on the *Lake of Baikal* †, were formerly one People. Fourthly, That theſe *Jakuhtians*, contrary to the Cuſtoms of all the Nations who inhabit thereabouts, wear long Hair, and ſhort Cloaths; Whereas all the other, are either ſhorn quite bare, or, at leaſt, have only a long Treſs behind. And fifthly, that they had but lately the Cuſtom, (which ſince the Coming of the *Ruſſians* into thoſe Parts has been forbidden them) that when any Perſon of Condition died, they buried one of his moſt faithful Servants, who had been neareſt about him, at the ſame Time with him, alive. I ſhall have more to ſay of theſe People, when I come to give a particular Deſcription of them ‡. And here I cannot but confirm the Truth of what *Iſbrand Ides* writes of theſe People, *viz.* That, at a certain Time of the Year, they make a great Fire, into which they ſprinkle a Sort of Brandy diſtill'd from Mare's Milk, towards the *Eaſt*, and thereby make an Offering to Heaven. I took an Opportunity of enquiring into the Truth of this Relation, of ſeveral of the *Jakutians* themſelves, who all confirmed it. What I have ſaid above of the Number THREE, is farther confirmed, by an Offering or Sacrifice, which I have ſeen perform'd among the *Wogulitzi*, a *Heathen* Nation,

* This Paſſage of *Ogus-Chan*'s having been in *Egypt* or *Meſſra*, is but obſcurely given by the Tranſlator of the above-mention'd *French* Edition, which, as I have already obſerved, was taken from the firſt *German* Copy; But, in that I afterwards corrected and amended, this Paſſage is related ſomething more circumſtantially.

† The Lake of *Baikal* is to the *South* of the *Jakuhtians*, and the Kingdom of *Tanguht* or *Thibet* is to the *South* of that.

‡ The Reader may compare this Paragraph with *Schickardi Tarich*, (*Edit. Tubingæ*, 1628. *pag.* 134.) where the Names *Thibet*, *Zincha*, *Bucktare*, and *Hha-Chan-Chini regis Turkeſtan*, occur, which denote *Tanguht*, *China* and *Buchar*, as likewiſe the ancient *Turkiſh* Name for Rulers *Cha-Chan*. We may, likewiſe, on this Occaſion, farther obſerve, what we find in *Herbelot* (*Biblioth. Orient. p.* 421.) of the People call'd *Haidelah*, and of the Country of *Thibet* or *Tanguht*, alſo, in the ſame Author, *p.* 920. of the *Molhebiti*, and farther in *Hiſt. Byzantina*, *Tom. III. Cap.* 5. & 6. of the *Nephthaliti*. I, for my Part, have neither Time nor Learning ſufficient, to unfold this Matter, as it ſhould be: And therefore wiſh ſome other would take the Trouble off my Hands.

Nation, on the Borders, between *Siberia* and *Ruſſia*, when having killed ſeveral Bears in the Woods, they offered *Three* of them to their *Gods*, in the following Manner. Their Temple is a very poor Building of Wood; In this they placed a Table, inſtead of an Altar, behind which they ſet the Heads of Three Bears, with the Skins of them flea'd off and ſtuff'd, in a Row, one by the other. On each Side of them ſtood a Fellow, with a large and long Switch in his Hand. All this being in Order, another Fellow came in with an Ax, and made as if he would attack the Bears, while the other pretended to defend them, and, at the ſame Time made an Apology, that it was not their Fault that the Bears were ſhot, but the Blame was to be laid on the Arrows and Iron, which were made and forged by the *Ruſſians* *. In the mean Time, others were buſied without the Temple, in Boiling and Roaſting the Fleſh of theſe Bears; And the Women, to whom a certain Portion of the Meat was allotted, made themſelves merry, when the Ceremony was at an End, To this we may properly add what *Loccenius* writes of the *Hunns*, that they choſe *Three* Dogs Heads for the Sign or Token of their Offerings, becauſe the *Wogulitzi* deſcended from the *Hunns*. And the ſame Author adds, what I have obſerved before, that the *Gothick* Laws required a Fine to be paid *Three* Times, and *Nine* Marks each Time †.

XIII. It is a Cuſtom, to this Day, with the *Mungals* and *Kalmucks*, that when a Woman bears a Child, and is afterwards re-admitted into the Community of the People, ſhe muſt, in the Preſence of their *Lama*, or *Prieſt*, and her neareſt Relations, jump *Three* Times thro' a Fire; Which they call the Purification. The ſame *Mungals* and *Kalmucks* have, likewiſe, generally a ſmall Idol, with *Three* Heads, hanging about their Necks, or they place it in ſome convenient Place of their Habitation. This Idol is commonly made of *Terra Sigillata*, *Catechu*, or ſome other Kind of Metal, which they fetch from the Country of *Tanguht*, from their *Dalai-Lama*, or ſo named *Prieſter John*; A Draught of which, with a farther Account of it, the Reader will find below. We read, likewiſe, in *Curtius*, and other Authors, as ſomething memorable,

O

* Compare this with *Das Veraenderte Ruſſland*, *p.* 204. § 16.
† Vid. *Loccen. Leg. Weſt-Goth. p.* 107.

morable, that the Number *Three* was in Eſteem with the moſt ancient *Scythian* Nations, as a Myſtical Number, in many other Things, *e. g.* when the *Scythians* ſent King *Cyrus*, upon his invading their Country, by their Ambaſſadors, a *Bird*, a *Frog*, and a *Mouſe*, accompany'd with five Arrows. And we find the ſame Cuſtom, among the People of *Siberia*, to this Day: For the *Arintzian Tartars*, who live under the Dominion of the *Ruſſians*, on the River *Jeneſei*, near the City of *Craſnojahr*, told me; That when the *Ruſſians* had made themſelves Maſters of *Weſt-Siberia*, and theſe *Tartars* ſaw, that they brought one Nation after the other, under their Yoke, and of Conſequence reaſonably concluded, that it would ſoon come to their Turn likewiſe; They ſent Ambaſſadors to the *Ruſſians*, who took with them an *Arrow*, a *black Fox*, and a *Piece of Red Earth*; By which they meant, according to their Cuſtom, to offer the *Ruſſians* the Alternative of Peace and War. But the latter purſuing their Deſign, and falling unexpectedly on theſe People, their *Horde* was ſo entirely routed and cut off, that of 7000 Men, of which they then conſiſted, only about 200 are now remaining. However, they have yet their own ſeparate Tongue, of which the Reader will find a Specimen in the *Polyglot Table*.

XIV. The mentioning of theſe People brings to my Mind a pleaſant Paſſage, which was related to me by themſelves, when I was among them, and I accordingly noted down in my Journal. I aſk'd them, how their *Horde* or Tribe came to be ſo ſmall, ſince they had their own ſeparate Language? They anſwer'd, that they had the Name of *Arrintzi*, or *Arrinci*, from the Word *Arr* or *Ara*, that ſignifies a *Hornet*, which, in the *Swediſh* and *Gothick* Tongues, is call'd a *Geting*, the Nature of which Creature is ſuch, that their Sting is obnoxious to Man and Beaſt, and if a Number of them be together, are capable of ſtinging a Man or Beaſt to Death. Now as they were, in ancient Times, a great and mighty People, who deſtroy'd great Numbers of other Nations, they were, therefore, compar'd to Hornets, and from the Word *Arr* were call'd by the *Ruſſians*, *Arrinci*. At a certain Time, a vaſt Swarm of Serpents came into their Country, who had Heads like Men, and ſhone like the Sun itſelf: With theſe they indeed, wag'd War; But were, at Length, overcome by them

them, routed, and great Numbers of them kill'd by these Creatures; Upon which those who remain'd were oblig'd to leave the Country they before liv'd in. Tho' this Story appear'd very ridiculous to me, I, nevertheless, noted it down in my Journal; And when I came afterwards, in *Europe*, to read *Herodotus*, I there found the same History of the Serpents, in his IVth Book, which he calls *Melpomene*, related of a People whom he calls *Neuri*; Which occasion'd me to make several Reflections: For, as these People hardly ever so much as heard of our *European* Writers, nor could have been inform'd of any of the Histories contain'd in them, it is certainly very extraordinary, that they should have so many Traditions and Relations, which frequently agree so exactly with Accounts given by our Ancient Historians. It, therefore, is reasonable to believe, that they may have been of the Number of the Ancient *Scythians*, who first came into *North Asia*, or the *Eastern* Side of the *Wolga*, but afterwards remov'd to the *Western* Side of that River, where they inhabited at the Time of *Herodotus*. And that these People being afterwards oblig'd to give Way to a superior Force of other Nations, coming from the *Southward*, (*e. g.* the *Assari* and *Vanni* of *Odinus*, who went thro' *Russia*) were dispersed, some into one Part, and some into another; And these *Scythians*, whom *Herodotus* calls *Neuri*, going afterwards in Search of their own Country again, one Part of them became the original *Lithuanians* (*a*), and, on the other Hand, many belonging to the *Finnlandian* and *Hunnian* Tribes repair'd to the *North*: For that these People have a great Affinity one with the other, I shall prove more evidently below, in its proper Place; And, at the same Time, shew what Remains and Ruins of Antiquity are yet existing in the Parts where these *Arintzi* now inhabit. *

XV. But to return to the Number Three, we find many superstitious Remains of it in *Siberia*, among the *Mahometan Tartars*. For Instance, when they give a Child its Name, which

(*a*) As our Author explains the *German* Word, *Litthauer*, which signifies *Lithuanians*, by the Word *Letten*, which denotes the Inhabitants of one Part of *Livonia*, (*See my Note to Sect. III. § VII. of this Introduction,*) I am at a Loss to know which he means; Tho', by the Context, I believe it must be *Lithuanians*.

* Compare with this *Matth. Belii Prodrom. de Hung. antiq. Lib. II. Sect. I. Cap.* 1. & 4. p. 31. who, in that Place, makes Mention of these *Neuri*.

muſt always be the *Third* Day after its Birth, the Witneſſes or principal Godfathers (if I may be allow'd to call them ſo) muſt bawl the Name *Three* Times in the Child's Ear: But it would carry me too far, ſhould I pretend to relate all the Inſtances, which are to be found in *Tartary* and *Siberia*, of the Regard had to this Number THREE. I ſhall, therefore, only obſerve farther, that as theſe poor blinded People hold thoſe Numbers for Sacred and of great Honour, tho' they know nothing of the Grounds, whence thoſe Cuſtoms aroſe; And as they lay down this Number, as the Source of all their Actions, Dealings and Ceremonies; So they, as it were, worſhip the TRI-UNE GOD, tho' without any Knowledge of Him, (as St. *Paul* ſaid to the *Athenians*, Acts xvii. 23.) and, therefore, we cannot pretend to ſay When? Where? and How? this TRINITY in UNITY may, by Means of the Scripture, be farther manifeſted, preach'd, and more evidently exalted? For which End, ALMIGHTY GOD may, in a private and peculiar Manner, work upon the Minds of many of them, tho' His Ways and Means are impenetrable to our Eyes; And I ſhall, in a proper Place, give ſeveral Inſtances of true *Chriſtian Pagans*, and, on the contrary, of very *Heatheniſh Chriſtians*, which I have here and there met with in theſe Countries.

XVI. FINALLY, it may perhaps, now we are conſidering theſe Matters, be a Speculation not altogether unprofitable, if we reflect, that ALMIGHTY GOD may have had an Eye to the *Third* and *Ninth* Numbers, which were eſteem'd ſo Sacred, and held ſo much in Honour, by the *Heathens*, when, by His All-wiſe Direction, before the Apoſtles were ſent to preach the Goſpel to the Heathens, the SAVIOUR of Mankind begun and finiſh'd the Courſe of His Sufferings in the Fleſh, on the laſt Day of His Temporal Life, in theſe Sacred and Myſtical Numbers of the *Heathens:* For tho' He was, indeed, carry'd by the *Jews*, and ſet before *Pilate*, in the firſt Hour of the Day; Yet, at that Hour, He was pronounc'd, by this His Judge, to be innocent, and not deſerving of Death. But, in the *Third* Hour, He was ſcourg'd, in the *Sixth* crucify'd, and, in the *Ninth*, gave up the Ghoſt. The *Jews* not only deſpis'd and ſet at nought the *Heathens*, and their Ceremonies; But refus'd to hearken to the Goſpel of CHRIST; GOD, therefore, caſt them out, and, with them, the Myſtical Number,

Number, which the ALMIGHTY Himſelf had ordain'd in many Things, was aboliſh'd. From this Time the Number SEVEN, which before was held good and fortunate, may, in the enſuing Times of *Chriſtianity*, have been look'd upon as a fatal Number (according to the Modern Proverb) (*a*) which may perhaps have ariſen from the *Seven* Trumpets, and *Seven* Thunders, (*Rev.* viii. *and following.*) And there are many who are ſuperſtitious in this Matter, that preſage not the beſt of this Number SEVEN †. Nay, perhaps, CHRIST Himſelf, in theſe laſt Hours of His Paſſion, may have been willing to ſhew the haughty *Scribes* and *Phariſees*, that He was no Reſpecter of Perſons; But, by His Choice of theſe Numbers, which were held Sacred by the *Heathens*, He gave a viſible Token of their Call to Salvation. Theſe occaſional Reflections will be the more excuſable in me; Since CHRIST Himſelf makes almoſt the ſame Application (*Matth.* xii.) of *Jonas* being *Three* Days and *Three* Nights in the Whale's Belly, to His being *Three* Days and *Three* Nights in the Heart of the Earth. Nay, who can ſay? Whether St. *Paul*, who was ſent to preach the Goſpel to the *Heathens*, may not often have made Uſe of this Propoſition to them, among other more weighty Grounds of Truth? Which, with Men of their Capacity, may not have been one of the leaſt Arguments to convince them. Eſpecially as the *Heathens* held this Number in ſo high Eſteem, tho' it was deſpis'd by the *Jews*. A certain learned Man is fallen upon the ſame Way of Thinking, when in his Diſſertation on the *Gods* of the *Cimbri*, he makes his Application to CHRIST. This Author quotes a Paſſage out of *Edda Iſlandorum, ex Editione Petri Jo. Reſenii Mytholog.* XLVIII. *Lib.* 5. That *Thorus* (*b*) (according to the Opinion of the *Ancient Cimbri*) fought with the *Migardinian* Serpent, and obtain'd the Victory; But after having retreated

(*a*) The *Germans* have ſeveral Proverbs denoting the Number *Seven* to be an unfortunate Number; But as our Author calls it here a Fatal Number, I ſuppoſe he means, *Sieben machet den Galgen voll*; (i. e. *Seven fills the Gallows.*)

† Vid. *Das Frauſtadtiſche Zion Sam. Fried. Lauterbachs, p.* 722. where many fatal Occurrences are related, which happen'd in ſuch Years, in which more than SEVEN have met: To which we may add, what *Tentzel* has obſerv'd on this Matter, in his *Monthly* Diſcourſes, for the Year 1686. p. 83. *viz.* that, according to a *French* Hiſtorian, every *Seventh* King of *France*, from *Lewis* I. has been made a Priſoner.

(*b*) *Thorus* or *Thor* (from whence our *Thurſday*, or *Dies Jovis*) was the *Jupiter* of the *Ancient Northern* Nations.

ed *Nine* Paces, he fell down dead, by the penetrating Force of the Venom, which the Serpent had breath'd upon him. Now as this Fable is a Repreſentation of the Sufferings and Death of CHRIST; So, in my Opinion, the *Nine* Paces are particularly applicable to the *Ninth* Hour, in which *Jeſus*, tho' a Conquerour, gave up the Ghoſt ‖.

XVII. I HAVE, indeed, already been ſomething diffuſive in my Diſcourſe on this Subject; I hope, however, I may be allowed to add a Word or two, to conclude, of the Number, under which, as I have obſerved above, the Diviſion of my Work has happened to fall; For as I have not obſerved, that the Ancient *Heathens*, *Scythians*, and Modern *Tartars*, have had any Regard in their Diviſions, to the *Medium* between the Numbers THREE and NINE, that is, the Number SIX; And, nevertheleſs, as I have obſerved already, the *Saviour* of Mankind was crucified in the *Sixth* Hour, ſo I have, on the contrary, remark'd, that the Modern *Tartars*, and *Pagans*, have treated this Number with a Sort of Contempt: For though ſome of them will give Ear to the Hiſtory of CHRIST, when related to them, in ſome Points, yet they will not be brought to believe any Thing of a *Crucified* JESUS, or to acknowledge, that there can accrue any great Benefit to Mankind from the Croſs; Nor will they allow of a Mediator between GOD and Man, or a Middle Perſon in the *Godhead*. They cannot, with their Underſtanding, reconcile the Myſtery, which lies conceal'd under theſe Things; Nor can they conceive how CHRIST, as very GOD, ſhould be ſo impotent, as not to be able to withſtand his Perſecutors? The *Brabintzian Tartars*, therefore, compare the outward viſible State of Mankind, in this World, to their future State in that which is to come; And ſay, that they, who are happy and rich in this World, will ſerve a rich and mighty *God* in the other World: But for thoſe who are in a poor Condition here, they muſt be contented, hereafter, to take up their Habitation with a poor *God*, and to ſerve him. And though the *Mahometans* allow (with ſome Additions, however) that CHRIST was not only born of *Mary*, without the Help of Man, by

‖ Compare *Philippi Frid. Hane Diſp. de Sacrorum Chriſtianorum in Cimbria primordiis, Kilonii*, 1728.

by the Angel *Gabriel*'s Breathing upon Her, from which She conceived; But likewiſe, that He was ſent by GOD to preach to Mankind; That He was a righteous Prophet, and that the *Jews* perſecuted Him, laid violent Hands on Him, and brought Him to the Croſs for His Truth and Righteouſneſs: Yet they add, that when the *Jews* were about to put their cruel Purpoſe in Execution, He vaniſh'd out of their Sight, and another Perſon was crucified in His Room. The very ſame has been related to me by a Native *Indian*, whom I met with in *Tobolſki*, and who, after having lived many Years in the Kingdom of *Tanguht*, came, as a Pilgrim, through *China* into *Siberia*, and, at Length, to *Tobolſki*, where he was baptized, according to the Tenets of the *Ruſſian* Religion. When I aſk'd this Perſon; Whether the Inhabitants of *Tanguht* had ever heard of the Name of CHRIST, or knew any Thing of the Goſpel; And whether they had not the ſame Ceremonies, in their Exerciſe of the *Chriſtian* Religion, as were in Uſe with the *Ruſſians?* His Anſwer was; They knew ſomething of the *Chriſtian* Religion; But did not make Uſe of the Croſs, as the *Ruſſians* do; Nor did they believe any Thing of the Crucifixion, or, as he expreſs'd himſelf, in his ſimple Manner of Speech, of the Conflict between CHRIST and the *Jews*: But this might be an Adumbration, that the Doctrine of the Croſs is, as it were, a Folly to thoſe *Chriſtians* who lead the Lives of *Heathens*, and a Stumbling-block to the uncircumciz'd Hearts of the *Jews*; For the wearing of a Croſs about one's Neck, as is enjoined by the *Grecian* Church, or to ſign with the Sign of the Croſs, as in ſome other, will hardly be alone ſufficient.

XVIII. SINCE then I have undertaken, as an unworthy Member of the Church of CHRIST, to give a brief Account of the *Heathens* and *Scythians*, and their Deſcendants, the *Tartars*, who inhabit the *Northern* Parts of *Aſia* and *Europe*, their Cuſtoms, Faſhions, Manner of Living, Lauguages and Countries, it ſo happen'd, as I have obſerved already, that the Number SIX, or *Medium* between THREE and NINE, at which Hour, likewiſe, our *Saviour*, CHRIST, was crucified, has every-where ſerved for my Number of Diviſion of this Work: From whence it appears, that I have deviated therein, as well from the *Pagan*, as the *Jewiſh* uſual Numbers of Diviſion, and Cuſtoms. And as this

this Regulation or Adjuſtment of my Work, by the Number SIX, was entirely caſual, it led me to many good Thoughts, during the Courſe of it: For though, in the Beginning, I could not rightly comprehend, what might be the Meaning of the many, as well exteriour as interiour Impediments, which threw themſelves, in great Numbers, in my Way, and of which I have given ſome Account in my *Prodrome*; Yet, in the Proſecution of my Work, I obſerved, that, with Regard to other Writers, it is common, for many Hindrances to ariſe in all good Deſigns, and poſſible Undertakings, which are often not ſooner viſible, than in the Sequel and Iſſue of them; Theſe, however, ought ſo little to diſcourage us, in ſuch Undertakings, that they ſhould rather be a Spur to our Inclinations, to purſue the Good we have begun with the greater Zeal. But when I came to reflect by what Number this Work was to be divided, that Diviſion not only gave me a great Satisfaction, but was, together with other Views that offer'd, a great Incitement to the Progreſs of it. And the more, as this Middle Number will always put me in Mind of our Mediator, and likewiſe of the Middle Path, that I may not deviate from the Truth of Things, either to the Right, or to the Left (*a*).

(*a*) Tho' our Author, throughout this whole Section, and more particularly in the latter Paragraphs of it, diſcovers a Tincture of that Spirit of Superſtition (I had almoſt ſaid Enthuſiaſm) which is very common in *Germany*, *Denmark* and *Sweden*; Yet I have choſen to tranſlate him entire, tho' there are ſome Periods which may ſound very odd and uncouth to an *Engliſh* Ear, rather than, by omitting any Thing, give Reaſon to ſurmiſe, that I have left out ſomething of greater Importance; And notwithſtanding, as it is very common in that Way of Writing, I have often found great Difficulty to come at our Author's Meaning, or to gueſs at a Meaning by the Context; where the Words contain little or none, as has ſometimes been the Caſe.

SECT.

SECT. VI.

Of *the Boundaries between* Europe *and* Asia.

SUMMARY.

§. I. *THE Boundaries between the* North *and* Eastern *Parts of* Europe *and* Asia *have been hitherto very uncertain.* II. *A Description of the Boundaries fix'd by Ancient Writers on the River* Pytziora. III. *What is to be enquired into concerning these Boundaries.* IV. *What Motives the Ancients had to fix them in this Place.* V. *The* Russians *had formerly two great Marts, or Staples, for Merchandize. There has formerly been a Trade on the* Caspian *Sea, and from* India, *into the* Scythian, *or* Pytziorian *Sea.* VI. *Proofs that this Passage was practicable.* VII. *Whether the Ancients ever came, with their Ships, from* Kathay, *thro' the Streights of* Weygatz. VIII. *The Ancients were of Opinion, that the* Caspian *and* Scythian *Seas join'd. The Word* Tazata, *in* Pliny, *denotes* Nova Zembla. *Description of a Passage formerly used, from the River* Taas *into the* Oby. IX. *And of the strange Kind of Boats us'd by the Inhabitants there. How the Country of* Kamtschatki *came to be discover'd.* X. *Ancient Geographers mistook the Island at the Mouth of the River* Lena, *for* Nova Zembla. *Neither Ancient nor Modern Geographers have had a true Information of these Parts.* XI. *A strange Maxim which has prevail'd in* Russia *is the Reason we have but lately had any Account of those Countries.* XII. *Many* Arabian *Coins and Ruins of Ancient Fortresses are found in* Great Permia. XIII. *This Country was formerly very wealthy. An Account of the* Solotta Babba, *(or Golden Woman) in those Parts.* XIV. *An Explication of the Name* Gumala, *given to this Idol by the* Finnlanders. XV. *The* Northern *Boundary of* Europe *and* Asia *was not known in the Days of* Ptolemy. *This gave Occasion*

to more Modern Geographers to invent a new One. A Deſcription of it. XVI. *The moſt natural Boundaries are thoſe made by the* Riphæan *Mountains.* XVII. Aſia *lies much higher than* Europe. XVIII. *This Declivity prov'd by the* North *Wind, and the Courſe of the Rivers.* XIX. *There is a great Difference between the Animals, Vegetables and Minerals, on the different Sides of theſe Boundaries. Theſe Boundaries are more diſtinct and natural than the former.*

§. I. EVERY one who is converſant in Geography knows, that there has, for a conſiderable Time, been a Diſagreement among Geographers, about the Certainty of theſe Boundaries: And, therefore, Profeſſor *Eberhard David Haubers*, (*in his uſeful Diſcourſe on Geography, p.* 80, 81.) has likewiſe not only taken Notice: *That, for this Reaſon, in ſeveral new Maps, the Boundaries between* Europe *and* Aſia *have been wholly omitted*; *But he adds*; *Becauſe, in our Days, we have a more exact Account of the Situation of the Boundaries of theſe Parts, as laid down by the Ancients:* And *Mr. de l'Iſle*, (*in his Determination Geographique de la Situation & de l'Etendue des differentes Parties de la Terre, dans les memoires de l'Academie des Sciences an.* 1720, &c.) has ſhewn, *that we had no Reaſon, on Account of the Various Nations that lived in the Neighbourhood of them, and were ſubject to the ſame Prince, to go from the Boundaries which were of old eſtabliſh'd.* But ſince neither Monſieur *de l'Iſle* (in his *Determination Geographique*,) nor the Profeſſor, (in his Diſcourſe,) have been pleaſed to fix the Limits towards the *North*, as laid down by ancient Geographers, I ſhall here, for the better Underſtanding of theſe Boundaries, give a particular Account, of the Knowledge I obtain'd of their Situation, whilſt I was in *Ruſſia*.

II. IT is ſufficiently known, that the Ancient Geographers laid down the River *Donn* or *Tanais*, (which the *Tartars* to this Day call *Tünn* or *Dunn* (59), for the Bounds between *Europe* and *Aſia*; And of this we find Evidence enough, as well in their Writings, as in thoſe of Modern Authors, who have borrow'd from them; But they very ſeldom mention how the Bounds

(59) Vid. *Joh. Georg. Wacht. Gloſſ. Germ. Præf.* § 45. where it is ſhewn, that the Word *Tonn*, in the *Celtick* Language, ſignifies *Water*, and a *Flood* or *Inundation*.

Bounds were fix'd, from the Bending of that River, farther on towards the *North*, or how they were named: For it is not to be preſumed, that the River *Donn*, which flows out of *Ruſſia*, above 120 *German* Miles, from the *Weſt*, under the fifty-firſt, fifty-ſecond, and fifty-third Degrees of Latitude (60), ſhould have preciſely made theſe Boundaries; And yet it is certain, that, according to the Account of all Geographers, the Ancients remain'd with the ſaid Bounds, on the *Weſt* Side of the *Wolga*. Theſe Bounds, therefore, could be no otherwiſe form'd, than by a Line drawn from the Bending of the River *Donn* over to the *Wolga*, and firſt following the Courſe of that River, towards the *North*, to the fifty-fifth Degree of Latitude, from thence (becauſe the *Wolga* turns again, like the River *Donn*, towards the *Weſt*,) carrying it on farther, towards the *North*, along and up the River *Kama*, to the ſixtieth Degree of Latitude (61), and from thence again, along the River *Kolwa*, and from this laſt, and the *Wytſcherka*, farther upwards on the River *Wogulka*, and between the Source thereof, and the Head of the River *Pytziora*, acroſs a ſmall Spot of firm Land, half a Mile broad, (which the *Ruſſians* call *Wolock Pytziorſkoi*, or the *Pitziorian* Ferry, and the *French Portagie*) and ſo farther along this River *Pytziora*, to the

(60) Comp. *Conſt. Porphyrog. de adminiſt. Imp. Cap.* XLII. *p.* 132. who ſays: The *Tanais* has its Riſe near the *Ruſſian* City of *Sarcel*; But that the *Ruſſians*, in his Time, were never ſeated in *Aſia*.

(61) IT is no Secret, that the *Tartars* call the River *Wolga*, *Edell*, *Idell*, and *Atell*, which Name in my Opinion, denotes the ſame as the *German* Word *Edl* or *Edel*, (i. e. *noble*;) And this River very well deſerves the Name, as well on Account of its Excellency, as its great Abundance of Fiſh, and wide Extent. Juſt as the *Euphrates*, (*Daniel* viii. 2) has, likewiſe, the Name of *Ulai* or *Aulai*, ſignifying the *Chief*. Beſides this, the *Perſian* King *Nauſchirvan* was ſurnamed *Edill*; (i. e. *juſt*, *righteous*, *without Fault*;) But this Word is *Arabick*. However, by this Word, *Edell*, they denote not only the *Wolga*, but ſeveral other Capital Rivers, which fall into it; nevertheleſs, with additional Names ſuperadded, *viz.* The *Wolga* they call *Edell* only, but the River *Kama*, *Arck-Edell*, and the River *Wiatka*, *Naucrat-Edell*; By this latter Name it appears, that the Kingdom of *Naucratis*, over which *Hacanus*, or *Scha-Chan*, King of the *Turks* and *Hirri*, (or *Chazari*, as *Conſtant. Porphyrog. de adminiſtr. Imp. cap.* X. *p.* 30. calls them) reign'd, lay between the *Wolga* and the River *Kama*, on the *North* Side of the Metropolis of *Caſan*; Of which the learned Profeſſor *Theophil. Siegefr. Beyerus*, (*in Comment. Acad. Scient. Imp. Petropol. Tom.* 1. *p.* 459.) makes the following Mention: *Cubadem* autem Patrem *Nuſrevani Perſarum* bellum geſſiſſe cum *Hacano* rege *Turcarum* & *Hyrcorum*. *Hacanum* illum dominatum fuiſſe regno *Nucrato*, & *Ruſſis* univerſis, exercitum quadricies mille militum habuiſſe, *&c. i. e.* But *Cubades*, Father of *Nuſrevan*, waged War with *Hacan*, King of the *Turks* and *Hyrri*. This *Hacan* ruled over the Realm of *Nucratis*, and all *Ruſſia*; and had an Army of 400000 fighting Men, *&c.* And this agrees very well; Becauſe the Province of *Wiatka*, where this River runs, did formerly belong to the *Tartarian* Regions, and not to *Ruſſia Proper*.

Mouth of it, and to the *Sarmatian*, or, (as it is call'd) *Mauremanſkoian* Sea; (which the Ancient *Goths* call'd *Gandawyck*:) And thus, I ſay, they muſt have fix'd the Boundaries between *Europe* and *Aſia*, becauſe, as I obſerv'd before, we know, that they ſet them on the *Weſt* Side of the *Wolga*.

III. In this Manner we may find theſe Boundaries fix'd in ſome ancient Maps, (though they are not ſo plainly and expreſsly deſcribed (62). It now remains to examine, (1.) What Reaſons the ancient Geographers had, to fix the ſaid Bounds by the River *Pitziora*. (2.) What induced the Modern Geographers to leave theſe Bounds, and to fix others, farther towards the *Eaſt*, by the River *Oby*? (3.) Whether, in theſe Places, ſuch Boundaries are not to be found, as are immoveable, and, at the ſame Time, more apparent than both the former? Since ſeveral Objections have alſo been made to theſe new Boundaries, as appears, among others, by the above-mention'd *Profeſſor Hauber's Diſcourſe*. To decide this Matter, it will be neceſſary to go farther back, and caſt an Eye into Antiquity.

IV. Ptolemy has not ſo ſufficiently explained, for what Reaſon the ancient Geographers fix'd theſe Boundaries at Places leſs perceptible, towards the *North*, than towards the *South*, on the *Tanais*: It were, therefore, to be wiſh'd, that *Hauber* and *de l'Iſle* had quoted ſome other ancient Geographers, on that Account; But, I find, they had no other Reaſon to give, but that we might be contented with the Ancient Boundaries, becauſe the Nations that live there-abouts, as well to the *Weſt* as the *Eaſt*, are all under the Dominion of one Sovereign; From whence this Concluſion followed: That the Boundaries were ſet farther out to the *Oby*, on Account of theſe Nations being thus under the ſame Juriſdiction: But that this was not the true Reaſon, I ſhall ſhew below. As for the firſt: I have found it reaſonable to conclude, as well from the Relations of the People, as the Monuments which yet remain, That the Ancients were, without Doubt, induced to fix the Boundaries after this Manner;

(62) *Cluverus* (in his *Introd. Geograph. Lib. I. p.* 51.) has not given the cleareſt Idea of this Poſition, from the Account of ancient Authors; Since he there obſerves, that they had fix'd the Source of the *Tanais*, as far as the River *Pytziora*; Which is not ſo; For they carry'd this Boundary, from the aforeſaid Bend of the *Tanais* over to the *Wolga*, and along the above mention'd Rivers, as far as to the Source of the River *Pytziora*.

ner; Becauſe the above ſpecify'd Courſe of the Rivers was the true Way, which was uſed by thoſe Nations, that traffick'd formerly from the *South*, and the *Indies*, over the *Caſpian Sea*, into the *North*, long before the Navigation to the *Eaſt-Indies* was found out by the *Europeans*. For though naturally they might, on Account of the Situation, and great Mountains, have drawn the ſaid Limits farther towards the *Eaſt*; Yet the Account given by Travellers, of this Way, to which the *Aſiatick* Nations, that lived in the Neighbourhood of it, as well as the *Europeans*, could, on both Sides, have eaſy Acceſs, and becauſe they could go directly out of the *Caſpian*, into the *Scythian* Sea, proved an Inducement to the Ancient Geographers, to chuſe it for the Boundary between *Europe* and *Aſia*.

V. In Order to ſet this Matter in a yet clearer Light, we are to conſider, that there were formerly, on Account of this Commerce, two Staples or Marts, in *Ruſſia*, one of which, before *Novogrod* became famous, was near the ancient City of *Ladoga*, (which the *Goths* call'd *Holmgorda-Ryck*, and the *Danes*, *Oſtregard* (63), and likewiſe *Chunigard* (64);) From which Place Trade

(63) *Oſtregard* (*Oſter Garden*, *Oſter-City*) is the ſame as when the *Eſthonians* ſay *Ulima*; For *Ules* ſignifies, with them, *upwards*, and *ma*, *Country*, by which *Ulima* they denote that Country which lies from them to the *Eaſt*, as *Pleskau*, *Petzur*, and *Novogrod*; And this Country being formerly call'd *Rugia* and *Rogia*, as the *Ruſſians*, to this Day, call the City of *Narva* ſometimes *Rugigorod*; The true *Ulima Rugia*, or (contracted) *Ulmerugia*, lay between the *Lakes* of *Ladoga* and *Peipus*, and not in *Pruſſia*, as *Joh. Magus* and others think. Nay, it ſeems, not improbable, that the Name *Holmgartia* has, in Time, been deriv'd, from *Ulmrogia*, and is one and the ſame City. (*But of this in another Place.*) As for *Holmgardia*, *Peter Dieckman*, (*in his Hiſtorical Obſervations on ſome of the Swediſh Runſteines: Stockholm* 1708. *p.* 15.) relates as follows: "*Holmgarth*, *Holm-*"*gært*, is a Country ſituated beyond *Eſthonia* and *Ingria*, towards the *Lakes* of *Ladoga* "and *Peibus*, where the City *Aldejuborg*, the Reſidence of the *Holmgardian* Kings, for-"merly ſtood, and the adjoining Country belonging thereunto was call'd *Holmgardia*, "whither the *Swediſh* King, *Haldan*, the Elder, went, to marry the Daughter of King "*Envinda*" And again, (*p.* 135.) *Holmgarda-Land*, *Holmgardia* and *Garderyke*, in which the *Metropolis*, and the Royal Reſidence of *Aldejuborg* formerly was, and which might perhaps be Originally *Alogia-borg*, becauſe there was in that Place, a Queen of the Name of *Alogia*, &c. But it is my Opinion, that Queen *Olga* is to be here underſtood; For as *Claude Duret* (in his *Treſor de l'Hiſtoire des Langues de cet Univers, à Cologne*, 1613. *p.* 346.) bears Teſtimony; *Rurich* the firſt King of *Wenden* or *Wandalia*, the Inhabitants of which are alſo call'd *Waragi*, reſided chiefly in *Ladoga*; But *Igor*, the Son of *Rurich*, married *Olgha*, Daughter of *Goſtomiſle*, who reign'd long after her Husband's Death.

(64) Vid. *Helmold Chronic. Slavor. p.* 1. *Henricus Bangert* has made a very pretty Remark upon this, in the ſaid Chronicle, (*p.* 3.) *viz.* That this *Ruſſian* Metropolis was call'd, by *Helmoldus*, *Chue*, and by *Adamus Bremenſis*, *Chiven*. But the Deſcendants of the

Trade muſt have been extended farther over the Lake of *Ladoga*, the *Finnlandian Gulph*, the *Baltick*, and ſo on to the City of *Wiſbuy* in *Gothland*; Since that Place was very famous, on account of its Great Commerce, in ancient Times. *Joh. Nic. Strelow*, (*in præfation. Guthiland. Chronic.*) therefore obſerves very juſtly, that many *Syrian*, *Arabian*, *Grecian*, *Roman*, and *Cimbrian* Coins have been found there, in their Ancient Burial-Places: With which agrees, what *Conſtant. Porphyr. de Adminiſtr. Imp. Cap.* 42, ſays: That the *Ruſſians* formerly traded beyond the *Pontus Euxinus* to *Conſtantinople*, and even into *Syria*. The other great Staple of Commerce was in the Country of *Biarma*, or *Great Permia*, near the City of *Tzordyn*, on the River *Kama*, which latter, though it is, at preſent, reduced to a very low Condition (ſince *Solikamſky* is become famous, on account of the Salt-works that are there) is yet, in the *Ruſſian* Tarifs, call'd *Weliki Permia*, i. e. *Great Permia*; From whence the whole Province, which formerly extended, in Breadth and Length, much farther than it now does, has its Name. To which Mart, Trade was carried on from the *Caſpian* Sea, and the *Eaſt-Indies*, by the *Wolga*, *Kama*, and other aforemention'd Rivers, into the *Scythian* or *Pytziorian* Sea, and ſo farther along the Sea-Shoar to *Norway*, and perhaps to the *North Sea* (65).

VI. BUT that this Paſſage has been, and is yet, in Part, practicable, and that the Commerce from the *Indies*, towards the *North*, has been carried on, in this Manner, is very credible, if we conſider and examine the following Circumſtances, and ancient Tokens, which are to be found in thoſe Places: For, in the firſt Place, the Diſtance from *Aſtracan*, by this Way, is but about 300 *German* Miles, which Paſſage, by Water, for this Traffick, was formerly no leſs practicable, than it is now for the *Ruſſians*, to carry on Trade, in the very ſame Manner, five or

the *Hunns*, *viz* the *Oſtiacks*, (and *Helmoldus* ſays: *Ruſſia* was alſo call'd *Chunigard*, on Account of the Anceſtors of the *Hunns*) call a Metropolis, to this Day, *Chue* or *Chuoiſe*, e. g. *Toboll-Chuotſe*; And the Name *Chiven*, which *Adamus* uſes, may denote the ſame; As, for Inſtance, the Camp-City, where the *Turcomannian Chan* reſides, beyond the *Caſpian Sea*, is yet call'd *Chiva*. (See alſo, *Das veraenderte Ruſſland*, *p.* 16.)

(65) See alſo, what the ſaid *Bangertus* (*in Helmoldum*, *p.* 31.) obſerves, of the Navigation from the *Weſt* to the *Eaſt*, and into *Ruſſia*.

or 600 *German* Miles, to *China*, out of one River into another, as I have already mention'd: And this, with much more Inconveniency; Since, in this laſt Paſſage, there are not only dangerous Cataracts, or Waterfalls, in the Rivers (66); But alſo two very large Tracts of Land, to be travelled over, which was not the Caſe, in the other Paſſage; The Boats and Merchandizes being, as I have ſaid before, carried only half a *German* Mile by Land (67). Secondly, It is not unlikely, what *Pomp. Mela* (*L.* II. *cap.* 5.) tells us, from *Corn. Nep. viz.* that a King of the *Suabians* preſented *Q. Metellus Celer* with ſome *Indians*, who, by a Storm, had been caſt on the Sea-Shore, near the *Elbe*. Now though ſome Authors queſtion the Truth of this Relation, and doubt whether they were really *Indians*; Yet, conſidering the aforemention'd Navigation, and comparing it with what follows, it will very well admit of a farther Explication. For, ſuppoſing they were not Natives of *India*; Yet they may very well have been ſome ſuch People as the *Bucharian Tartars*, who are Merchants, and the famous *Seres* (68), who formerly traded throughout all *Aſia*, as they do to this Day, and probably had their Trading Towns, on the Mouth of the River *Pytziora*. I will not, however, on this Occaſion, diſpute, what the Anonymous Author of the *Hiſtory of the great and powerful* EMPIRE *of Moſcovy*, (printed at *Nurnberg* 1687. *p.* 25.) ſays, that, inſtead of the abovemention'd King of the *Suabians*, it was *Lindormus*, a King of the *Goths*, that ſent theſe *Indians*, who came through

(66) Vid. *Isbrand Ides.*

(67) The *Ruſſians* keep Horſes there, to this Day, to convey Boats, from the *Wogulka*, to the River *Pytziora*, which Place, as I have mention'd above, is call'd *Wolock Pytzorskoi*.

(68) The *Usbecks* call the Citizens, and Merchants, in Cities, *Særr*, or *Sært*, which others comprehend under the Name of *Buchars*. The *Armenians*, who, from Times Immemorial, have traded thro' all the *Aſiatick* Regions, could never eſtabliſh any Commerce in *Great Tartary*, except what may have caſually happen'd, during the Reigns of certain *Tartarian Princes*, who favour'd and protected them therein; But as ſoon as the *Tartarian* Princes dy'd, this Protection or Security for their Commerce, among theſe Savage People, alſo expired; And their own Merchants, *Særtes* or *Seres*, carry'd on their Trade as uſual. Theſe *Særtes* or *Seres* are now Vaſſals, Citizens, and Merchants, under three Dominions. (1) Without the *Chineſe* Wall, under the *Chineſe* Juriſdiction, where they are call'd *Choton*, or *Koton*. (2) Among the *Usbecks*, who call them *Sertes*, or *Buchars*. (3) In little *Bucharia*, or the *Empire* of *Caſchgar*, under the *Kalmuck Kontaiſch*, where they are call'd only *Buchars*; Theſe have carry'd on a Trade, with the *Scythians*, from Times Immemorial.

through the *Northern* Sea, into *Germany*, to *Metellus Celer*, Governor of *Gaul*.

VII. FROM this Relation, ſome of our Collectors of *Northern* Voyages, have vainly imagined, that theſe Merchants came, with their Ships, round about *Nova-Zembla*, or through the *Streights* of *Weygatz*, from *Kathay*. But I ſhall plainly ſhew, in its proper Place, that this could not be: And, on the other Hand, by the Collection of Voyages to the *North*, printed at *Leipzig*, in 1706, *p.* 320, it appears, that there are ſeveral convenient Havens and Ports, at the Mouth of the above-mention'd River *Pytziora*, on both Sides. It is in vain, therefore, to hope, what *Prof. Eberh. David Hauber* ſays, (in his *Uſeful Diſcourſe on the preſent State of Geography*, *p.* 43.) viz. *That, by the Diſcovery of the Country call'd* Kamtſchatki, *the long wiſh'd for Paſſage, through the* North *to the* Eaſt, *was, at Length, found out:* For the *Ruſſians* did not go through the *Streights* of *Weygatz* to *Jedſo* or *Kamtſchatki*, but by the River *Lena*, which lies on the *Eaſt* Side of *Nova-Zembla*. And if it be not Navigable, on the *North* Side of this Iſland, the Paſſage by the *Streight* of *Weygatz*, to the *Eaſt*, will be attempted in vain, as well by Reaſon of the fix'd Mountains of Ice, as the Iſlands of the ſame, which are continually driving, and ſtop the Paſſage. Beſides, it would be impoſſible to double the Promontory of *Tabyn*, from *Weygatz*, farther to the *Eaſt*; Becauſe the ſame Difficulty would occur there, as in the *Streight* of *Weygatz*; Of which more in another Place. But that the *North Sea*, in *Europe*, which has not ſo dangerous a Communication with the *Mouremanſkoian* and *Pytziorian Seas*, where the above-mention'd Trading Towns were ſituated, on the River *Pytziora*, was navigated, in the earlieſt Ages, and in the Time of the *Romans*, appears by what *Tacitus* mentions, in the Life of *Agricola*, (*cap.* 28.) *viz.* That the *Uſipii*, who ſerv'd the *Romans* in *Britain*, having taken three ſmall Veſſels, which they were about to make off with, the *Swedes* and *Frieſlanders*, who took them to be *Pirats*, ſeized them: And *Læſcherus* likewiſe mentions, that the *Ruſſians* came thither, with their Veſſels, before the Birth of CHRIST (69).

VIII. THIS

(69) Vid. *Læſcher. Lit. Celt. p.* 28.

VIII. THIS Navigation, from the *Caſpian* into the *Scythian* Sea, or the Report of it, as I have ſaid above, may have induced ſome ancient Authors, for want of a better Knowledge, to ſay; That the *Caſpian* Sea has a Communication with the *Scythian* Sea; Whence, likewiſe, they very often miſtook one for the other. Thus *Pliny* places the Iſland of *Tazata* in the *Scythian*, and *Pomp. Mela*, in the *Caſpian* Sea (70). And here it is to be obſerved, that by *Tazata*, or *Taſata*, is to be underſtood *Nova Zembla*, which formerly was call'd ſo, from the River *Taas*, which is pretty large, and withal ſo Navigable, that Ships of ſome Burden may frequent it; On which River the Little City of *Starri Taſowſkoi* is ſituated. This River falls, oppoſite to *Nova Zembla*, into the ſame great Sea, into which the River *Oby* alſo falls, before it quite reaches the *Streights* of *Weygatz*. Foreigners, who frequent the *Northern* Parts by Sea, call this Sea, *Sinus dulois*, and the *Ruſſians* call it *Guba Taſowſkoi*, *i. e.* the *Taſian Gulph*; Thence the new Land, or the Iſland of *Nova Zembla*, is call'd *Taaſata*, from the River *Taas*: For though the *Oby* is larger, the Ancient *Scythians* or *Schudi*, and *Tſchudes*, (as the *Tartars* called them) travell'd from *Siberia*, up the River *Wach* or *Wag*, from that into the River *Taas*, thence into the ſaid Gulph of *Guba*, and then proceeded farther towards the *Weſt*, into the Mouth of the River *Oby*. They went up this River, 'till, at Length they came, on the Right, into the River *Sob* or *Soba*, through which, the *Aſiatick-Scythian* Merchants, from *Aſia* and *Siberia*, arriv'd at the aforeſaid River of *Pytziora*, in *Great Permia*, where the above-mention'd Marts, or Cities of Trade were Situate. And this has not only been, of late Years, the readieſt and ſhorteſt Way of trading by Water, from *Siberia* to *Permia* or *Ruſſia*, 'till the former Governour *Knees Gagarin* forbid it, under Pain of Death, on Account of the Paſſage, and Duty, by the City of *Warkaturia*: But alſo ancient People, in the City of *Tobolſky*, have told me, that they have gone out of the River *Taas*, along the Shoar of the *Gulph* of *Guba*, into the *Oby*, and out of that into the River *Sob*, to *Permia*; On which Occaſion they mention'd, that the Gulph of *Guba* had ſo muddy a Bottom, that their Poles, with which they puſhed their

(70) Vid. *Dict. Car. Steph. p.* 1930.

Boats along the Shoar, often ſtuck, and were loſt in it; And, likewiſe, that it ebb'd and flowed like the *Weſt Sea*.

IX. THUS, in the moſt ancient Times, People were wont to creep along the Shoars of the Ocean, and other Seas, from one Place to another (71); By which Manner, likewiſe, the *Ruſſians* diſcover'd the Country of *Kamtſchatki*, or the Iſland of *Jedſo*, by going out of the River *Lena*, along the *Mare Glaciale*: For when the Wind blew at *North*, and forced the Ice on Shoar, they retired, with their ſmall Veſſels, into the Mouths of the Rivers; And when the Wind came about to the *South*, and drove the Ice from the Shoar, they ventured to Sea again, and advanced farther towards the *Eaſt*, 'till they came to *Jedſo* or *Kamtſchatki*; Of which more in the Sequel. And here I cannot forbear mentioning, in the Note below, what a ſtrange Sort of Veſſels, the *North-Eaſtern* People, who live upon the Coaſts, to this Hour, make Uſe of; Which may be reckon'd as great a Rarity to us now, as they were in the Time of *Metellus Celer* (72). And this may have been one Reaſon, that induced the King of the *Suabians* to make him a Preſent of the *Indian* Merchants I mentioned above.

X. WHEN, therefore, we find, in ancient Maps, beyond *Nova Zembla*, farther towards the *Eaſt*, in the *Mare Glaciale*, the following Remark made by Geographers: *Tazata Inſula hic uſpiam a Plinio ponitur*, no other Iſland, but the above-mention'd, can be meant by it, and, by no Means, that which is ſituate at a good Diſtance from thence, in the *Eaſt*, over-againſt the

(71) Compare this with *Zorgdragers Alte und Neue Gronlandiſche Geſchichte*, (publiſh'd 1723. *p.* 179, & 180.) where it is ſaid, that *Hemskirch's*, or *William Bareut's* People, ſail'd, with an open Veſſel, from *Weygatz*, and *Nova-Zembla*, along the *Pytziorian* Coaſt. And more particularly, the ſame Author (*p.* 165.) with which, what has been ſaid about this Matter will be found to be exactly conformable.

(72) They are Boats, which can hold 10 or 14 Perſons, (and may be taken to Pieces, and laid together) call'd, by the *Koræiki*, and *Kamtzadali*, *Badari*; And here we may obſerve, that, in the ancient *Celtick* Language, *Bod* ſignify'd a *Boat*, whence they probably firſt had their Name. *Mezeray*, (in his *French* Hiſtory,) ſays, that thoſe which the firſt *Saxons* and *Franks* uſed, were made of Leather; And, of the like, *Pliny* alſo writes (*Lib V. cap.* 4.) Alſo *Olof Sage*, (*Cap.* 6.) mentions them as follows: Cum iter facerent inter *Mios* & *Vener*, in *Uplandia*, humeris naves & arma portabant. i. e. *As they purſu'd their Journey betwixt* Mios *and* Vener, *in* Uplandia, *they carry'd their Veſſels and Arms on their Shoulders.* I have ſeen ſuch a Boat in the City of *Tobolsky*, which was brought thither from the *Mare Glaciale*, near *Kamtſchatki*; The Staves were of Whalebone, and the Sheathing of Seal-Skins.

the River *Lena*; For which Error, however, Geographers are not to be blam'd, they having follow'd *Pliny*, who was not truly inform'd of this Matter; And other Ancient Writers, as well as he, have ſhewn, that they had very little Knowledge of theſe *Northern* Parts. This *Strabo* does not deny, when he ſays (in his Seventh Book,) that thoſe Countries, which are ſituate on the Ocean, beyond the *Elbe*, were unknown to him, and that he had never heard any Man affirm, that Ships had gone from thence, into the *Eaſtern* Countries, to the Mouth of the *Caſpian* Sea. This confirms what I have mention'd above, of the Opinion of the Ancients, concerning the Conjunction of the *Scythian* and *Caſpian* Seas; Since we ſee that *Strabo* believ'd the latter had an Outlet. This his Surmiſe cannot, therefore, invalidate, what I have ſaid above, of Veſſels paſſing out of the River *Pytziora*, into the *Weſt*, along the Sea-Coaſt: For this Courſe into the *Weſt* may not have been ſo frequently uſed in his Time; Which may, likewiſe, be inferr'd by the Relation given above of the *Indians*; For why elſe might not the *Swabian* King (or *Lindormus* the aforeſaid King of the *Goths)* have made a Preſent to *Q. Metellus Celer* of other People, who doubtleſs may have been caſt away, thereabouts, beſides theſe? For no other Reaſon, certainly, but for the Singularity of their Ships, the like of which had ſeldom been ſeen there. If we ſuppoſe, he made this Preſent on Account of the People, who had a different Aſpect from the *Europeans*, it is again a Confirmation, that the Caſe muſt not have been ſo uncertain as ſome pretend. It was, therefore, probably, in this Particular, with *Strabo*, as it often happens now, with our Modern Geographers. How came it to paſs, that about 15 Years ago, they knew nothing of the Country of *Kamtſchatki*, nor had even ſo much as heard the Name of it? Notwithſtanding the *Ruſſians* have traded thither, for above 50 Years paſt. And why did *Monſ. de l'Iſle*, one of the beſt Geographers, in our Time, when he publiſh'd his *Theatre complet & particul. de la Guerre du Nord*, in the Year 1711. p. 2. ſay; The Boundaries of *Ruſſia* in the *Eaſt* extended no farther than to the River *Piſida* (73), beyond the *Oby*; whereas they reach'd, above 60 Years ago, 150 *German* Miles beyond that River, farther towards the *Eaſt:* Or

(73) This River actually is in *Siberia*, tho' ſome make a Doubt of it. (*See my Map.*)

what is the Reaſon, that *Iſbrand Ides*, who, in the Year 1694. travell'd thro' *Siberia*, and ſeveral Parts of *Tartary*, does not mention one Word of this Country? And ſo, likewiſe, may this *Northern* Navigation have been practis'd, by the Inhabitants of the *Northern* Sea-Coaſts, long before it came to *Strabo*'s Knowledge.

XI. BUT the Reaſon why, in Geography, we have been ſo lately acquainted with the Situation of theſe Countries, is not, that Perſons of Curioſity have been altogether wanting in *Ruſſia*, who might have delineated theſe remote Countries of the *Eaſt*, many Years ſooner. The contrary of this we know, by a Painter, call'd *Penela Potſki*, who, above 60 Years ago, ſent a Draught of *Nova Zembla*, the *Streight* of *Weygatz*, and the Mouth of the River *Oby*, from *Moſcow* to *England*: As *Zorgdrager*, (*in his ancient and modern Hiſtory of Greenland, p.* 165.) mentions. And I can teſtify, that I found an old Painter in *Tobolſky*, who, indeed, had made particular Maps of all the Provinces of *Siberia*, and the bordering Countries, but kept them ſo ſecret, that all I could obtain of him was the Sight of them. However, ſo much I ſaw, that he was a Painter only, but no Geographer; Yet, according to his Conception of Things, he had delineated the ſeveral Cities, Countries, and Rivers. A certain Political Maxim, which prevails in *Ruſſia*, has hitherto prevented the publiſhing of ſuch Maps: *viz.* That the Inhabitants are not allow'd to reaſon, or talk, much leſs to write, of any great Matters of State, or Publick Affairs; Of which the following may ſerve as an Evidence: When, in the Year 1689. Prince *Galiczin* march'd with an Army to *Crim-Tartary*, a Nobleman in the Army, by Name *Roſladin*, kept a Journal, for his own Curioſity. The Prince was no ſooner acquainted with it, than he not only impriſon'd him, but caus'd his Journal to be publickly burnt; Notwithſtanding it contain'd nothing againſt the Intereſt, either of the *Empire*, or his Sovereign; But were only ſuch Obſervations as he had penn'd down, to ſatisfy his private Curioſity. And if the Prince himſelf had not been unfortunate ſoon after, it might have coſt this Nobleman his Head. This Political Maxim was ſtill prevalent in *Ruſſia*, and *Siberia*, during the Time of our Captivity; So that the *Czar* himſelf did not know the particular Circumſtances of the moſt

remote

remote Parts of his own Dominions; And this Maxim I myſelf was made ſenſible of, to my great Prejudice: For when, in the Year 1715. I had made a Map of *Siberia* and *Tartary*, with great Labour, as I have obſerv'd above, and would have ſent it to a certain Perſon, in *Ruſſia*, who intended to have had it engrav'd in *Europe*, and had offer'd me 200 Ducats for it; The then Governour, *Knees Gagarin*, when he heard of my Deſign, took it from me. This *Knees*, who had farm'd *Siberia*, and left no Stone unturn'd to promote his private Intereſt, perceiv'd that I had mark'd out many Particulars, in my Map, ſuch as Places where Minerals are to be found, and the like, did not care to have ſuch Diſcoveries come to the *Emperour*'s Knowledge; Tho' he pretended to aſſign other Reaſons to me, for this hard Uſage. I thought it not improper to mention this, and what I have ſaid before, if it were for no other Reaſon, but becauſe formerly, the ancient *Vandals*, *Celts*, *Sclavonians*, *Sarmatians*, &c. cultivated the ſame Maxims and Politicks; Which was the Cauſe why the *Romans* and *Greeks* were without any particular Knowledge of remote Countries, for a conſiderable Time; And could have no certain Account of them, till they obtain'd it, either by ſome extraordinary Accident, or the Progreſs of their Wars.

XII. BUT to return from this Digreſſion, to the Matter in Hand, and to give ſome farther Proof concerning the Paſſage aforeſaid, out of the *Caſpian* into the *Scythian* Sea. It is worthy our Remark, thirdly, that on the above-mention'd River *Pytziora*, eſpecially near the aforeſaid City of *Tzordin*, or *Welyka Perma*, many Coins of the ancient *Arabian Chalifs* are found, in the Tombs, (which are there in Abundance;) And, in the Rocks and Cliffs, certain Characters are written or burnt in, with an indelible red Colour; (ſome of which the Reader will find in the Sequel of this Work.) There are, likewiſe, in no Part of *Ruſſia*, perhaps more Ruins of Sconces and Fortreſſes, than in *Great Permia*: The like Forts or Intrenchments of Earth the ancient *Germans* alſo had, before they began to build Cities; Theſe *Julius Caſar* indeed, calls *Oppida*, as *Mezeray* (in his *Hiſt. part.* 1. *in Addit.*) mentions; But the latter proves, that they were only Forts of Earth, which ſerv'd them for a Retirement, in Caſe of Neceſſity;

ceſſity; And the Ruins I have juſt mention'd may probably be the Remains of ſuch *Oppida* only.

XIII. FOURTHLY, In the ancient *Gothick* Books, or *Saga*, Mention is often made of the Riches of the Country of *Biarma*, or *Perma*; And, according to *Petreus*, and *Herberſtein*, *Solotta Babba* (or the *Golden Woman*) was formerly worſhipp'd there, who, according to an ancient *Ruſſian* Chronicle, had her Temple on the River *Dwina*, to which perhaps *Tacitus* alludes, when he ſays of the *Eſthonians*: *They worſhipp'd the Mother of the Gods*, &c. Compare alſo *Herodotus*, who (in his 4th Book, or *Melpom.*) ſays: The *Agrippæi*, who alſo are call'd *Sacri*, inhabited near to, and upon, the *Riphæan* or *Permian* Mountains, whither many other *Scythian* and *Grecian* Merchants, who dwelt on the *Boryſthenes*, and *Pontus*, reſorted, not only on account of their Traffick, but for their Devotion alſo; now the *Turks* go on Pilgrimage to *Mecca* and *Medina*: But no one will, I hope, deny, that the *Eſthonians*, as well as the *Permians*, are Deſcendants from the *Finnlanders*, notwithſtanding *Tacitus* ſays, their Cuſtoms and Habits reſembled the *Suevi*.

XIV. THE *Golden Woman*, I juſt mentioned, was worſhipped by the ancient *Finnlanders*, by the Name of *Jumala*, or *Gumala*, by which Name the preſent *Finnlanders* call the true GOD; As appears by this; Becauſe the *Heathen Scheremiſſi*, *Morduini* and *Permecki*, who alſo are of *Finnlandian* Extraction, to this Day, call their *Idols Jumis Jumala*, and *Junn*: And the *Laplanders* call GOD in *Heaven*, *Immel* or *Jubmal*, (*Vid. Schefferi Lapponia.*) Beſides, the ancient *Oſtro-Goths* underſtood Heaven, by the Word *Amal*, which may be the ſame with *Jumul*. (Vid. *Laſcher. lit Celt. p.* 69.) This may be derived from the *Arabian* Tongue, in which the Words *mele'* or *mala'*, in the Plural Number, *Emla* (which is the ſame with the *Laplandian Immel*, Heaven) ſignifies *celſitudo*, *opulentia* and *plenitudo* (*i.e.* Highneſs, Wealth, Plenty.) Like as the *Oſtiacks*, on the River *Oby*, underſtand, by the Name *Thorum*, both Heaven, and GOD in Heaven. Since then ſome compare the Name *Jumala*, or *Gumala*, with the *Swediſh* Words *Gammal* and *Gumma*, (i.e. *Old Man*, and *Old Woman*; What other reaſonable Conjecture can we make of it, than that the Words *Gammal* and *Amal* are

all one, becauſe H and G are eaſily convertible to each other; As we find in the Modern *Ruſſians*, who have no H, but pronounce that Letter, in Words of other Languages, as they do G. Or elſe, that they are compared on Account of the Similitude of the Words: For though the firſt *Heathens* acknowledged one Superior Being; Yet they worſhipp'd it under ſeveral Images; to the Chief of which, no Doubt, they gave the Name of an *Ancient Man*, or *Ancient Woman*, by which they meant to Worſhip the true GOD, in *Heaven*; Becauſe Nothing is Greater, Higher, or Elder, than GOD and *Heaven*. The like, I have obſerved, among the *Oſtiacks*, and other *Pagans*, in *Siberia*, who call their chief Idols, in the *Ruſſian* Language, *Starryck* and *Starrucha* (*i. e.* the *Ancient Man*, or *Ancient Woman* (74): And ſuch an Image of an *Ancient Man*, cut in Stone, I found on the River *Jeniſei*, near the City of *Abakan*, which they call *Starrick*, a Repreſentation whereof, with a farther Illuſtration of this Matter, the Reader will find below.

XV. I COULD here bring many more ſuch Reaſons and Tokens, to ſhew, how this bleak *Northern* Part of *Ruſſia*, or *Great Permia*, came to be in ſo flouriſhing a State; But I ſhall defer it, 'till I come to a particular Deſcription of the Province itſelf: And only mention this one Thing more; That ſince the Commerce from *South* to *North* has ceaſed, either on Account of the Wars, or for other Reaſons, the above-mention'd Paſſage has likewiſe been, in a great Meaſure, diſcontinued, and the Paſſage by Sea, to the *Indies* found out. Eſpecially, as this Country was afterwards inhabited chiefly by Wild, Undiſciplined, and *Pagan* Nations; And beſides, Nature having formed no ſuch remarkable Boundaries there; The *Northern* Limits of *Europe* and *Aſia*, have not been, in following Times, ſo well known as the *Southern*, on the *Tanais*, which have been inhabited by more ſociable Nations. This has conſequently given Room to Modern Geographers, to ſet the Bounds of *Europe*, ten Degrees of Longitude, or about 100 *German* Miles, farther towards the *Eaſt*, and fix it to the Mouth of the River *Oby*; Partly, becauſe *Old Aſia* is almoſt twice as long as *Europe*, and therefore, as they thought, might ſpare a Piece: And partly, becauſe the Situation

(74) Vid. *Das veraenderte Ruſſland*, p. 207.

tion of this Country was, in a Manner, unknown to them; Or elſe, no Doubt, they would have choſen the *Riphæan-Permian* or *Werkaturian* Mountains, for that End; But more eſpecially, as they had diſcovered the Great River *Oby*, farther towards the *Eaſt*, to be a remarkable and good Boundary. For which Reaſon, as the aforeſaid Profeſſor *Hauber*, agreeable to the Opinion of Monſieur *de l'Iſle*, ſays, the Extenſion of the Bounds would hardly have taken Place, on Account of the Difference of Nations; Since one and the ſame People, *viz.* the *Scheremiſſian*, *Wotiakian* and *Siberian Tartars*, dwell ſtill partly in *Europe*, and partly in *Aſia*; whether the Boundaries be carried farther, to the River *Oby*, or the old ones be retain'd. But the new Boundaries on the *Oby*, when they ſtretch from thence towards the *South*, have, likewiſe, had no natural and remarkable Limits, as in the *North*; Since Modern Geographers have only drawn a fictitious Line, from the Conjunction of the Rivers *Oby* and *Irtiſch*, which is three Days Journey beyond the City of *Tobolſky*, through the Plain, or Deſart of *Nogay*, to the City of *Aſtracan*. Whereas they might, at this Place, as well have kept the ancient Bounds in the *South*, near the *Tanais*, which is probably what *Hauber*, from *de l'Iſle*, likewiſe aims at. It is no Wonder, that this would not give Satisfaction to inquiſitive and curious Geographers: And, therefore, thoſe who have publiſhed New Maps of this Part of the World, have, on Account of the Diſſention of Geographers, in this Point, often made no Bounds at all between theſe two Parts of the World. But ſince, according to *Hauber's* Suppoſition, mention'd above, we are now better informed of the Situation of theſe Countries, to which the wonderful Fate of the *Swediſh* Captives, in theſe remote Regions, contributed not a little only, but (if I may be allowed to ſay it) by far the greater Part; Becauſe other Foreigners would hardly have ventured to go thither, if the *Swedes* had not been there before them: And beſides, thoſe who came thither, in that Time, applied themſelves immediately to the *Swedes*, and got a good Information from them; So, among many other Diſcoveries, this, likewiſe, has been made; That Nature has, as it were, mark'd out a Way for us, by which we may remedy the Uncertainty of the above-mention'd Boundaries.

XVI. Of

XVI. Of this, we have, in the third Place, the following Remarks to make: First, Between the Mouths of the ſaid Rivers, *Pytziora* and *Oby*, and from the *Mare-Glaciale*, ariſe the Mountains, which the Ancients call *Montes Riphæi*, and the *Ruſſians*, *Kamenoi* or *Weliki-Pojas* (*i. e.* Stone or Great Rock Girdle, likewiſe, *Pojas Semnoi*, *i. e.* the Girdle of the Earth) (75). They extend, like a Chain, from *North* to *South*, or from the 70th to the 54th Degree of Latitude, where they join the *Montes Rymnicii*, as the Ancients call them, (or, as the *Tartars* call them, *Urall-Tau*;) Whence three Capital Rivers take their Riſe and Courſe, *viz.* the *Jayck*, or *Rymnnes*, towards the *South*, the *Toboll*, towards the *North*, and the *Samara*, towards the *Weſt*. Theſe Mountains, which, in the old Map of *Scythia*, and *Tartaria Aſiatica*, *Tabula Peutingeriana operibus Ptolemæi infixa*, are pretty well laid down, divide here into two Parts. One Part goes towards the *Eaſt*, to the River *Irtiſch*, and ſeparates *Tartary* from *Siberia*, in ſeveral Places: The other Part, joining the River *Samara*, goes along the Banks of it, a good Way, towards the *Weſt*. It afterwards is pretty much broken, and leaves a conſiderable Chaſm; But there this River may ſerve for the Boundary; It continues, however, here and there, from the City of *Samara*, on the *Weſt* Side of the River *Wolga*, a great Way along the Banks of it; And the River *Wolga*, beſides, has, in the ſame Place, a very high and remarkable Shoar, (that is, in Regard to the *Weſt* Side of this River) which at laſt grows into a Chain of very High Mountains, from the forty-ninth Degree of Latitude, and joins again not only to the *Donn* or *Tanais*, abovemention'd, but to Mount *Caucaſus*, between the *Black* and *Caſpian Sea*: So that here, it reaches the Bounds, ſet by the Ancients, in the *South*: And thus, I have here given, in the firſt

(75) It is worthy our Conſideration, as, in the *Tartarian* and *Turkiſh* Language *rif-æt* ſignifies *Height*, and *rif'i high*, (*vid. Complem. Theſ. Ling. Orient. Meninski*, p. 53.) whether the *Rifæan* or *Riphæan* Mountains had not their Name from thoſe Words; But then it would be only an Appellative Name; With which other Mountains, in more Places, might alſo have been named; Nay, it is not improbable, ſince, in the ancient *German* Tongue *Ries* ſignify'd *high Mountains* (*e. g.* the *Rieſen Gebürge*) that by changing of *f* into *s*, this likewiſe may have ſome Affinity*; (vid. *Læſcher de Lit. Celt. p.* 102.) As, in the *Swediſh* Language *rieſſa* and *uprieſſa* ſignify to *raiſe any Thing up*.

* *Rieſe*, in all the Modern *German* Dialects, ſignifies a *Giant*; And the *Rieſen Gebürge* (or *Montes Sudeti*) on the Borders of *Bohemia*, are ſuppoſed to be called ſo on Account of their prodigious Height.

Place, the viſible Marks only of the Bounds between *Europe* and *Aſia*.

XVII. SECONDLY, There is, (on the *Northern* Bounds of *Europe* and *Aſia*) by means of theſe Mountains, a great Difference, on the *Weſt* and the *Eaſt*-Side of them, of the Situation and Surface itſelf: For the *Aſiatick* Countries in the *North*, which begin on the *Eaſt*-Side of theſe Mountains, ly much higher than thoſe in *Europe*; And are, in Compariſon with the latter, elevated, like a Table above the Ground it ſtands upon: For, if we go out of *Ruſſia*, from the *Weſt* towards the *Eaſt*, over the ſaid *Ripbæan* and *Rimnician* Mountains, into *Siberia*, we go perceptibly more up Hill than down Hill. But if we come from the *South*, out of *Perſia* and the *Indies*; Not only the preſent *Tartars*, who travel thoſe Countries; But alſo *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, (*lib.* 1. *cap.* 37.) and likewiſe *Goes*, and others, that have gone from this Side into *Tartary*, tell us, that they have travell'd almoſt three Days over the Mountains *Belur* and *Pame*, before they could reach the Height of *Tartary*. And if we go farther from thence, and from *Tartary*, *Eaſtward*, towards the Sea of *Japan*, or if we come from *Mungalia* to the *Chineſe Mountains*, which ly *Weſt* and *North-weſt* from this *Empire*, they are not only inviſible, tho' ſo very high, till we come within half a Mile of them; but we muſt go to the Wall, and on the *North-weſt* Side of it, almoſt half a Mile, continually down Hill; With which *Isbrand Ides*, (*in Seiner Reiſe Beſchreibung. p.* 64.) agrees, and ſays, when he came from the *North*-Side, to the *Jalian Mountains*, he found the Country much lower on the *South*-Side of theſe Mountains, towards *China*, than on the *North*-Side of them. Again, towards the *North*, *Siberia* has a continual Declivity, quite to the *Mare Glaciale*; And, on this Account, it is ſo much expos'd to the Cold; Becauſe, on this Side, it is not at all ſcreen'd from the *North*-Winds by the Mountains on the *Mare Glaciale*, which ly ſo much lower than *Tartary*. Of this, we cannot have a better Idea, than by a Compariſon of the City of *Tobolſky*, in *Siberia*, with that of *Stockholm*, in *Sweden*: The latter is in the Latitude of 60 Degrees, and yet it produces fine Fruits, (*viz.*) Apples, Pears, Cherries, *&c.* While the former, tho' it lies in 58 Degrees, and conſequently two Degrees, or thirty *German* Miles, farther towards the *South*, produ-

ces no ſuch Thing; And even no Corn will grow in *Siberia*, beyond 60 Degrees of Latitude (eſpecially towards *Nova Zembla*) tho' in *Sweden*, they have it in 64 Degrees.

XVIII. WHAT I have here obſerv'd of the Declivity, is alſo farther confirm'd by this, that when the *North-Wind*, (which, as I have remark'd in *Tobolſky*, hardly ever laſts above three Days together), begins, in Winter-time, the ſecond Day is much colder than the firſt; And the third ſo piercing, that the Magpies, of which many Thouſands are to be ſeen in *Tobolsky*, in Winter-time, fall down, frozen to Death, upon the Ground; And if we went abroad, at that Time, great Care was requir'd to ſecure our Fingers and Noſes. When it happen'd, (as it frequently did) the fourth Day, that the Wind turn'd full *South*, which naturally is warmer; Yet it was as cold as on the third Day, when the Wind was *North*. This was wholly occaſion'd by the Repercuſſion of the *North* Wind, from the High Mountains, which ly *South*, oppoſite to the *Mare Glaciale*; By which, likewiſe, the afore-mention'd Declivity is very obſervable. The Elevation of *North-Aſia*, in Reſpect of *Europe*, may alſo be obſerv'd, in that the Courſe of the Rivers is different from what thoſe in *Europe* take, where ſome go towards the *North*, *viz.* the *Viſtula*, *Düna*, *Dwina*, *Pytziora*; Others towards the *South*, *viz.* The *Dniper*, *Donn*, and *Wolga*; So that the Elevation is clearly in the Middle only (76); Nor have theſe, on that Account, far to the Sea; But,

(76) To ſhew this, *Juſtin* ſays, (*Lib.* 11. *cap.* 1.) Scythiam *adeo editiorem omnibus terris eſſe, ut cuncta Flumina ibi nata in* Mœotida, *tum deinde in* Ponticum mare *decurrant.* (*i. e.* Moreover, *Scythia* is ſo much higher than all other Countries, that the Rivers which ariſe there run down to the *Palus Mœotis*, and then into the *Euxine* Sea;) But had he known the Situation and Height of the *Southern Scythia*, in *Aſia*, he would have had more Reaſon to ſay ſo of that Part of it. Compare, therefore, this with what has been ſaid, Sect. III. §. XIX. in the Note of *Gadzudi* and *Madzudi*, and likewiſe §. XXVIII. of *Jagiougi* and *Magiougi*, and of the *Præfixa Ga* and *Ma*; Inſtead of which the *Sclavonians* and *Ruſſians* uſe the Prepoſitions *Sa* and *Ma*; Which might denote the *Scythians* who liv'd beyond the Mountains, in the Valleys, and thoſe on this Side, upon the High Lands. For, in the ſame Manner, the *Arabians* diſtinguiſh the two Provinces *Mecca* and *Medina*, calling the latter *Nagiad*, and the former *Tahama*; Of which, *Herbelot* (in his *Biblioth. Orient. p.* 657.) writes as follows: *Nagiad ou Neged, C'eſt une petite Province de l'Arabie, dans laquelle la Ville de Medine eſt ſituée; on l'appelle ainſi, à cauſe que ſon Terrain eſt un peu plus elevé que celui de la Province de Tahama ou la Ville de Mecque eſt batie*; *Thaham*, or *Teham*, in the *Arabick* Tongue, ſignifies *great Heat, a calm and warm Air, where not the leaſt Wind is ſtirring*, which, as it is ſaid, is in Reality, the Nature of this Country: And, therefore, *Angelus a Sancto Joſepho*, (in his *Gazophil. linguæ Perſa-*

in *Siberia* all the Rivers, (*Kamtſchatki* only excepted,) have a much longer Courſe, and run from *South* to *North*; As the *Lena*, *Oby*, *Irtiſch*, and *Jeniſei*; Some of which, *viz.* the three latter, run almoſt 300, and 350 *German* Miles, continually from the *South*, and are ſo rapid, that they rather deſerve the Name of Torrents than Rivers. What a Height then, muſt not their Springs

Perſarum, *p.* 223.) ſays, that a Perſon who had been in *Mecca* told him; The Country about the City of *Mecca* was like Hell, the City itſelf like a Flame of Fire, and the Inhabitants like burning Coals. But the *Perſians*, as well as the *Arabians*, call this Province, likewiſe, *Gaur* or *Ghaur*, becauſe it lies very low and deep. (*Vid. Herbelot. p.* 360.) Whereby it appears, that the *Eaſtern* People were generally accuſtom'd to give Appellative Names, as well to their Countries, as the Inhabitants of them; Which they took from the particular Properties of the former; and from the Manners, Cuſtoms, and Nature of the latter; So likewiſe, in *Saxony*, they that live towards *Bohemia*, in the Mountains, are call'd *Oberlander* (i. e. *Highlanders*;) On the contrary, the Inhabitants, beyond *Thuringia*, in the *Weſt* and *North*, are call'd *Lower Saxons*; And, with Regard to *France*, thoſe low Countries which ly between that Kingdom and *Lower Saxony*, are nam'd *Niederlander*, (i. e. *Netherlanders*.) Juſt the ſame, it is with what has been ſaid of *Jagiouge* and *Magiouge*, of the *Præfixa Ga* and *Ma*, and of *Salagu* and *Nagornie*; But that the Word *Gog* may, in a certain Senſe, be apply'd to the Height, and Elevation of a Country, as alſo to the Eminency of a Perſon, we may ſee, (1.) By the Word *Gjëeaguein*, which in the Ancient *Armenian* Language, (*vid. Joh. Joach. Schræderi Theſaur. ling. Armen. p.* 237.) denotes a *high hilly Country*; Inſtead of which the *Armenians* now ſay *Gog*, and therefore call *Caucaſus*, *Gog-haſan*, the *high Bulwark*; (Vid. *Epit. Comment. Moyſ. Armeni. Henri Brenn. p.* 80.——) And *Haſan*, in the *Arabick* Tongue, ſignifies *Munimentum*, or *Bulwark*. (2.) That, by this Word, is ſometimes underſtood Mount *Caucaſus* in particular, and ſometimes a *high hilly Country*, in general, we may ſee, farther, becauſe in *Africa* and *Abyſſinia*, that Country in which the *Lunarian* Mountains are, where the *Nilus* has its Source, is call'd, in the Maps, *Gojame*, and by ſome Writers *Regnum Gogian*, on Account of its *Height* and *Elevation*, in Reſpect to other Countries thereabouts; (*Vid. Joh. Jacobi Boiſſarti Veſſuntini Vitæ, & Icones Sultan. Turcor. p.* 233.) And moreover, becauſe the *Eaſtern* Nations very often change not only *K* and *G*, but alſo the Vowels; And, in the *Perſian* Language, a Mountain is generally call'd *Koh*, *Kuh*, and *Kæb*; Whence the hilly Country in the Province of *Irak agemti*, in *Perſia*, is alſo call'd *Kohiſtan*, and *Kuhiſtan*, or *Guhiſtan*; So the *Turks*, on the *Weſt* Side of the *Caſpian Sea*, call the whole Country *Dageſtan*, from *Dag*, a Mountain, which, in the *Perſian* Language, would be *Guh*, or *Guhiſtan*; (*Vid. Herbelot Biblioth. Orient. p.* 394.) It likewiſe appears, that the Word *Gog* denotes a *high hilly Country*, from *Hadrianus Relandus*, (in his *Diſſert. Philolog. p.* 154. §. XLV.) where he ſhews plainly, that the *Greeks* fram'd the Appellative Name *Caucaſus*, from the *Perſian* Word *Koh* and *Kuh*. If what has been mention'd, be, therefore, compar'd, with the Situation of the Countries in *North-Aſia*, it will appear very viſibly, that the ancient Nations did not, without Reaſon, make Uſe of the Appellatives *Jagiougi* and *Magiougi*, *Gaziudi* and *Maziudi*, and *Gog* and *Magog*; Likewiſe *Geth*, *Maſſageth*, or *Maſſageth*: And that all theſe are ſynonimous with the Word *Schudi*, or *Scythi*, may be ſeen by what *Diodorus Siculus*, (*in lib.* 11. *p.* 127. *Edit. Wechel. Hanau.* 1604.) writes: *Majorem enim in modum hæc Natio crevit, regeſque habuit memoratu dignos ex que Sacæ & Maſſagetæ, &c. aliique plures aliis nominibus indigitati originem ducunt, &c.*

Springs have, in Reſpect to (77) their Mouths? Indeed, the whole Territory, of the *Greater Tartary*, ſhews the Elevation of theſe Countries plain enough: It being every where barren, ſandy, and without Trees, which is not the Caſe of *Siberia*, whither the Rivers take their Courſe, and continually decline, towards the *Mare Glaciale*. The Ground there is ſo fenny, that, even in Summer, there is no Travelling, but upon the Rivers, where, from *Weſt* to *Eaſt*, we go very ſlowly, againſt the Stream, eſpecially with large Veſſels; But our Return is, in Proportion, ſo much the quicker: And this is the ſecond great Difference between theſe two Parts of the World. The third is, that all Rivers coming from the *Weſt* Side of the *Riphæan* Mountains, towards *Ruſſia*, fall into the Rivers *Wolga* and *Kama*, and conſequently towards *Europe*; And, on the contrary, all from the *Eaſt* Side of theſe Mountains run into *Siberia*, and towards *Aſia*.

XIX. THERE is alſo a great Difference between the Animals, Vegetables and Minerals in *Siberia*, and thoſe in *Ruſſia*, or between thoſe of the *Weſt*, and thoſe of the *Eaſt*-Side of theſe Mountains. For the Rivers in *Ruſſia* have Salmon (78), *Eels*, Crawfiſh and Smelts, which are not in *Siberia*. And not only ſeveral Sorts of Fiſh are found here, which are not in *Ruſſia*, viz. *Muxun*, White Salmon, *&c.* likewiſe clear tranſparent Stones of all Colours, which may be poliſh'd as fine as *Bohemian* (or *Briſtol*) *Stones*. But Common Stones, with which they pave the Streets in *Europe*, are not in *Siberia*; But of Gray, Quarry and Limeſtones there are enough. Likewiſe, on the *Weſt*-Side of the *Wolga*, and of the above-ſaid Mountains, there grow *Haſels* and

(77) As the Continent of *North-Aſia* is bounded by the Sea, towards the *North Pole*, at the 75th Degree of Latitude, and not only the Rivers of thoſe Parts, but alſo thoſe of *North Europe* precipitate towards the *Pole*, (which is cover'd on all Sides with Ice; *Vid. C. G. Zorgdragers alte und neue Gronlandiſche Geſchichte*, 1723. *p.* 144, 145.) and concenter there in a narrow Compaſs; So we may from thence conclude, that the Rivers flowing from the *North* towards the *South*, fall back into the great Ocean, and extend themſelves thither; Which indeed *M. O. Wexonius* (*in Epitome Deſcript. Suec. Goth. Fenning, &c. cap.* 5.) likewiſe ſays; But does not ſhew ſufficient Cauſe to prove it; For what he ſays of the Waters, that fall into the *Pontus Euxinus*, is a very Trifle to the Great Number of thoſe that empty themſelves towards the *Pole*.

(78) This being a Sea Fiſh, which, eſpecially in Spring, ſeeks the Rivers and freſh Water; I ſhall, in a proper Place, ſhew the Reaſon, why this Fiſh, which the *Ruſſians* call *Craſna Ribba*, (or Red Fiſh,) is not in *Siberia*, where the Rivers have their Courſe towards the Sea, as well as thoſe in *Europe*; And the ſame may be obſerv'd of other Fiſhes.

and *Oaks*, which are not to be ſeen in *Siberia*; As, on the other Hand, here are Cedar-Trees, and Larch or *Larix*-Trees, and ſeveral Sorts of Shrubs and Dwarf-Trees, which are not in *Ruſſia*. In the Woods, likewiſe, are Sables and other Animals. In the Mountains are found the *Aſbeſtus*, or *Amiantus*, *Mammuts-Teeth*, and ſeveral other Minerals, none of which are on the *Weſt* Side of the ſaid Mountains. And, if I were not apprehenſive of being too tedious, I could diſtinguiſh the *North-Eaſtern* Parts of *Europe* and *Aſia*, by ſeveral other Tokens which theſe Mountains afford. I will, however, add, to what I have already ſaid, an Obſervation which has been made on Dr. *Leyſer*'s *Treatiſe* of the Uſefulneſs of *Geography* (*p.* 26.) Where the following Quære is made: Why ſhould not Natural Geography rather, and with greater Juſtice, require, that all Parts lying in a Natural Situation together, and conſtituting the whole, be Inſeperable, as is cuſtomary in the Conſideration of the Natural Properties of other Things, *&c.?* According to which Axiom, an Improper Separation is made, when the Bounds are ſet on the River *Oby*; Which will be avoided by placing them along the Mountains I have ſo often mention'd: And hereby it appears, though ſummarily, yet ſufficiently, that the Bounds ſet by the Ancients in the *North*, on the River *Pytziora*, are not enough diſcernable: That thoſe by the Moderns, on the River *Oby*, towards the *North*, though perceivable, are not Natural, and that thoſe in the *South*, by the *Hagaijan* Deſart, towards *Aſtracan*, have been Viſible in the Maps only. Whereas theſe which have been propoſed, by the Mountains, are as diſtinct, as they are natural, and, at the ſame Time, extend to the Bounds, fix'd by Ancient Geographers, in the *South*, on the River *Donn*, and the *Caucaſian* Mountains: And this, I think, is agreeable to Monſieur *de l'Iſle*'s Poſition; Who, in the Place above-mention'd, is for keeping the Boundaries ſet by the Ancients; Becauſe the Moderns have carried them too far, by placing them at the River *Oby*.

APPEN-

APPENDIX.

Some Obſervations on Abulgaſi Bagadur-Chan's Tartarian *Hiſtory, and how far it agrees with thoſe of* European *Writers.*

SUMMARY.

§. I. *AN Account of the* French *Tranſlation of a certain Manuſcript, publiſh'd at* Leyden, *entitled,* Hiſtoire Genealogique des Tartars, *&c. To underſtand this Hiſtory, it is neceſſary to compare it with the Writings of the* Perſians, Turks, *and other Nations.* II. *Some Account of the Life of* Abulgaſi Bagadur-Chan, *Author of this Hiſtory.* III. *This Hiſtory gives us a great Light into the Hiſtory of* Ogus-Chan, *Founder of the* Turkiſh, Tartarian, *and ſeveral other Nations.* IV. *This* Tartarian *Author agrees with the* European *Writers, in his Diviſion of the Dynaſties, and Genealogy of the Rulers.* V, VI, VII. *His Conformity with* Jo. Magnus *ſhewn through ſeveral* Epochs. VIII, IX. *His Agreement with this Author farther proved, from his Account of the Names and Actions of theſe Rulers.* X. *The Opinions of both Authors concerning the* Amazons; *And the Period of Time, in which they are ſuppoſed to have exiſted.* XI. *They agree, likewiſe, in their Relation of another Military Occurrences.* XII. *The* European *Writers,* Jo. Magnus, Annius Viterb. *and others, differ, however, from this Ancient* Tartarian *Author, in the Circumſtances and Application of their Relations.* XIII. *The Concluſion of the Introduction.*

I. THE Reader may, perhaps, know, that in my *Prodrome*, publiſhed in the Year 1726, I mention'd a certain

tain *Tartarian* Manuſcript, which, by my Care, had been tranſlated out of the *Tartarian* into the *German* Tongue, and out of this into *French*, by another Friend, who publiſhed it at *Leyden*, in the Year 1726, with the Title of *Hiſtoire Genealogique des Tartars:* And as I have the *German* Copy yet by me, in which, at my Return to *Tobolſky*, 1723, I made many Corrections among the *Tartarian Buchars*, and afterwards augmented it with many Remarks; I ſhall juſt mention ſome few Things concerning the ſaid Treatiſe; For as this is the very firſt *Tartarian* Writer that has appear'd in *Europe*, from the *Eaſtern* Side of the *Caſpian* Sea, who is deſcended from the *Mungalian* and *Tartarian-Uſbeck* Nation; And beſides, as by this Means, the Wiſhes of the Author of *the moſt Modern State of Caſan, Aſtracan*, &c. publiſh'd, in 1723, are fulfill'd; This Author obſerving, in his Preface, that the Hiſtory of *Tartary* was, in itſelf obſcure and imperfect; Becauſe, 'till then, not one Writer of that Nation had appear'd in *Europe*; And that, for what Accounts we had from thence, we were wholly oblig'd to the Care and Application of Travellers: For theſe Reaſons, I ſay, I think myſelf the more obliged, to give my Sentiments of him, in this Place: Eſpecially, as I was the Occaſion that his Work was publiſhed, and have obſerved, that ſome have not thought the moſt favourably of it; Not by any Fault of the *French* Tranſlator, but of the Work itſelf, which was publiſhed without my Knowledge. For, as it has always been my Opinion, that the ſhort and obſcure Stile of the *Tartarian* Writer, can, by no Means, be underſtood, but by the Help of the moſt Ancient and beſt *European*, *Turkiſh* and *Perſian* Writers; Becauſe he gives quite other Names to the Nations, Countries, Mountains, Rivers, *&c.* than we find in the *Perſian* Writers, which could not be ſufficiently remedied by the Notes of the *French* Tranſlator: I ſhall, for that Reaſon, (as the Work contains ſeveral good Things, concerning the Migrations of Nations, and for the Explication of the Hiſtory of the Ancient *Scythians*) give ſome Specimens of it, by which the Value of the whole may, in ſome Meaſure, be judged of.

THIS *Tartarian* Author, who calls himſelf *Abulgaſi Bagadur-Chan*, was born, as the ſaid *Hiſt. General. des Tart. p.* 2. obſerves, in the Year 1605, beyond the *Caſpian Sea*, in *Urgentz*, the

the Metropolis of *Charaſmia*; Of which City, and its Inhabitants, *Pliny* makes mention, (*Tom.* 1. *lib.* 6. *cap.* 20.) and calls it *Organagæ*; But *Procopius*, (*Lib.* 1.) calls it *Gorga*. Our Author's Father, *Araep Muhammed Chan*, in the Year 1643. deſired the Protection of *Schah Abbas*, King of *Perſia*, againſt his own rebellious Sons, whom *Tavernier*, (in his *French* Edition, in 8*vo*. *Tom.* 1. *p.* 579. mentions) but calls him only the *Usbeckian* Prince. *Abulgaſi* was 38 Years of Age, when he began his Reign: In his Youth, he was expos'd to various Changes of Fortune and Troubles. His two Elder Brothers expell'd their Father out of the Kingdom, to which *Abulgaſi*, was ſo far from conſenting, that he followed him into *Perſia*; And during his Reſidence there, he became acquainted, not only with many learned *Perſians*, but, likewiſe, with their Writings and Hiſtories. At Length, when, after the Death of his Father and Brothers, he came to the Crown, he enjoy'd Peace and Tranquility; And being well inſtructed in the Hiſtory of his Country, and Maſter of the *Perſian* and *Kalmuck* Languages, he apply'd himſelf, with great Diligence, to the Study of Genealogy, and the Deduction of the Race of the *Tartarian Chans*, which was his principal View, and wherein he has done better Service to us *Europeans*, than we have had from any *Turkiſh* or *Perſian* Writer; But as this Work was carry'd on under a very bad State of Health, his Abruptneſs, and too great Conciſeneſs, in his Relations of the Actions of thoſe Princes, and his Obſcurity in ſome other Parts of it, are very Excuſable; And as, in the *German* Tranſlation, likewiſe, ſome Things are not the moſt perſpicuouſly given, I have collated the firſt Tranſlation, with other *Eaſtern* Writers, and added, in ſeveral Places, explanatory Notes and Remarks.

III. Our Author has, in Particular, given us a great Light, as to the famous Ancient *Ogus Chan*; Of which Conquerour of all *Aſia*, *Herbelot* has collected ſome Things, from the *Eaſtern* Writers. This *Ogus Chan*, who is look'd upon, by the *Eaſtern* Nations, in their Hiſtory, to have been the Founder of all the *Turkiſh*, *Tartarian*, and *Kalmuck* Tribes, has been likewiſe mention'd by ſeveral *European Authors*, who have made him a *Parthian*, and call him *Oguzes*, (*vid.* the Author of the *Einleitung der Hiſtorie von Aſia*, *Africa*, & *America*, p. 509.) From his Line, the preſent

Ottoman Imperial Family boaſts itſelf to be deſcended; (*vid. Bibl. Orient. d'Herbelot, p.* 685.) And therefore call themſelves *Oguz-Thaifahſi*; Some Modern Writers imagine him to have been *Hugo*, or, as the *Italians* ſay, *Ugutio*, the firſt of the Kings of the *Franks*, whom they ſuppoſe to be *Tanaus*, *Tanaſis*, or *Tanhauſer*, the firſt King of the *Germans*, by others call'd *Idanthyrſus*, or *Indathyrſus*, (*vid. Caſp. Abel's Teutſche und Sächſiſche Alterth. p.* 40. & 43.) and the like Fancies (79). Be this as it will, *Ogus* muſt needs have been a very conſiderable Perſon in his Time; Becauſe his Name is as well known, to this Day, among the *Tartars*, throughout the *North* and *Eaſtern* Part of *Europe* and *Aſia*, (and eſpecially among the *Weſtern* Part of them;) as *Alexander the Great*, and *Julius Cæſar*, with us. This has induced ſome to think, that, ſince he is as famous in the *Tartarian* Hiſtory, as *Madyes* in the *Scythian*, they muſt be one and the ſame Perſon; Of which, I have already made ſome Mention. *Madyes*, according to the Account given by *Herodotus*, (*Lib.* 1. and 4.) infeſted *Aſia the Leſs*, in the Time of *Cyaxares*, King of *Media*, which happen'd about 630 Years before the Birth of *Chriſt*; And between *Zingis-Chan* (who, according to the *Hiſt. du Grand Genghizcan, p.* 16. was born *Anno Chriſti*, 1154.) and *Ogus-Chan*, were 32 Princes, whoſe Lives, becauſe no Dates are mention'd, and in ſuch Caſe commonly 40 Years are reckon'd to each, will make 1280 Years, to which, if we add 450 Years, for the Interruption of the Line of the *Chans*, they make together a Period of 1730 Years, between *Ogus-Chan* and *Zingis-Chan*. This will agree pretty well with the 600 Years before CHRIST, when *Madyes* flouriſh'd: And, in this Light, *Ogus* and *Madyes* may be imagin'd to have been the ſame; Eſpecially as the Names *Ogus* and *Gogus*, or *Gog*, have likewiſe a great Affinity, as I have mention'd above; But then forgot to obſerve; That tho' the *Tartars* ſay, that *Ogus*, in their Language, ſignifies an *Ox*; Yet, in the *Turkiſh* Language, *Ogus* denotes *Praiſe*, *Honour*, or *Glory*; To which, in the ſame Language,

(79) *Clemens Alexandrinus* puts inſtead of the Name *Idantyrſus*, *Iden-Tura*, (*vid. Matth. Bel. de vetere litterat. Hunn. Scyth. Sect. II.* § 11.) which I believe to be his true Name; For the Word *Turr*, *Turcim*, and *Tura*, ſignifies, in the *Turkiſh* and *Perſian* Language, a *King*; likewiſe a *Reſidence*; and *Turim*, in the Ancient *Gothick* Language, denotes *great*, *mighty*, and a *Regent*; As for the Word *Iden*, which is very much uſed among the *Tartars*, I ſhall explain that in another Place.

Language, *Megd*, and, in the *Arabick*, *Madych*, are ſynonimous. (*Vid. Theſaur. ling. Orient. Meninſk. p.* 656. & 4230.) Thus the Words *Megd*, or *Madych*, and *Ogus*, and *Gog*, have one Signification; So that both the Hiſtory and Names tally pretty exactly.

IV. SINCE then our Modern Writers give themſelves ſo much Trouble, to find out an Agreement in the Names of the *Scythian* Kings, that occur in the *Aſiatick* and *European* Hiſtorical Antiquities, and to make a Compariſon of their Actions; I ſhall mention a Caſe out of our *Tartarian* Author, in which I will not pretend to decide; But ſhall leave it, with ſome Helps, however, for a farther Enquiry. Our *Tartarian* Author mentions Eighteen of the beſt and moſt Ancient *Turkiſh* Writers, out of which, he ſays, he has, eſpecially in the earlieſt Times, deduced his Genealogy; And as he found ſuch a Diſparity and Intermixture in it, he has, as he ſays, corrected ſeveral Things in his Hiſtory. In Particular, I cannot eaſily conceive, how, in the Diviſion of the Dynaſties, and the Genealogy of the Princes, he agrees ſo perfectly with an *European* Author, I mean the *Swediſh* Biſhop *Johannes Magnus*, who, among our Learned, is look'd upon as an erroneous and deficient Writer, and that, in ſome Reſpects, not without Grounds. It is not to be preſumed, that his Writings came to the Hands of this *Tartarian* Writer; But we may rather ſuppoſe, that their Harmony proceeds from this, either that *Joh. Magnus* grounded ſome Parts of his Hiſtory upon *Juſtin*, *Strabo*, and others, who took their Accounts from the Hiſtory of *Megaſthenes*, a Prieſt in *Perſia*, a little before the Time of *Alexander the Great*; And the Fragments of this *Megaſthenes*, as *Tavernier* ſays, being ſtill in *Perſia*, our *Tartar* may likewiſe have taken his Hiſtory thence; Or *Joh. Magnus* muſt have found ſome Anonymous Writings in *Rome*, and other Places, which he has apply'd to certain Caſes and Circumſtances of his Hiſtory.

V. FOR, as this *Tartarian* Author makes his firſt General Diviſion into two *Empires*, *viz.* the *Tartarian* and *Mungalian*, ſo, likewiſe, we find it, not only in other Writers, who knew of but two principal *Empires* beyond the *Caſpian* Sea; *viz. Regnum Maſſagethicum* and *Sacæum*; But *Joh. Magnus* alſo divides the *Euro-*

pean Northern Part of the World into the *Regnum Gothicum & Swedicum*, the Juſtneſs of which I leave undetermined. But how it comes, that the Actions of theſe latter Kings, and thoſe of the *Mungalian* and *Tartarian* Kings, and the Diviſions of the Dynaſties, and the Numbers, on both Sides, are ſo very like, is the Queſtion? I could, therefore, almoſt aſſert, that *Annius Viterbienſis*, whom *Joh. Magnus* has followed, in many Points, had that very Hiſtory, which *Gazan-Khan*, the fifth Deſcendant from *Gengiz-Khan*, cauſed to be wrote in *Perſia*, in the Year 1304. From which, in ſome Places, an Application may have been made to the *Gothick* Hiſtory: For firſt, *Annius Viterbienſis* ſays, *Japhet* had eight Sons, (and the ſame ſays our *Tartar*,) among whoſe Names are ſome very much alike; as *Cæmeri* and *Comerus*, &c. of whom *Herodotus* and others ſay: *Comerus Scytha more Scythico, unde venerat, docuit Italos urbem curribus componere*, &c. Which *Cæmeri* or *Camarï*, the *Perſian* Writers, not only call *Gomari*; But reckon eleven Children of *Japhet*'s (*vid. Herbelot, p.* 897.) among whom they have probably reckon'd ſome Grandchildren. And in *Jornandes*, and *Prætor.* (in his *Orb. Gothic*) we find ſeveral Liſts, in which are Names, that likewiſe agree with thoſe which the *Tartar* quotes. *e. g. Taunack*, and *Taunaſis*, *Ogus* and *Augis*, *Ethele-Chan* and *Athal.* But the aforeſaid *Joh. Magnus*, as I have ſaid before, agrees the moſt with our *Tartar*; which will appear more plainly, when I place the Dynaſties, and Tables of Genealogy, together, *viz.*

JOH. MAGNUS	ABULGASI BAGADUR CHAN.
1. *Magog*	1. *Turck*; Some make him the ſame with *Turr*, a Son of King *Firidun.*
2. *Swen*	2. *Taunack*, who is not to be found in the *Turkiſh* and *Perſian* Writers.
3. *Gothar*	3. *Ilzæchan*; Other Writers call him *Almanzi*, and make him the *Mannus* of the *Germans.*

4. *Ubbe*

4. *Ubbe*	——	——	——	4. *Dibba*; *Kui-Chan.*
5. *Sigge*	——	——	——	5. *Kayuck-Chan*, or *Gayuck.*
6. *Erich*	——	——	——	6. *Alenzæ-Chan*; Others call him alſo *Alexia.*

HERE both Authors conclude their firſt *Epoch*, and each of them relates ſuch Actions and Circumſtances of his Six Kings, as have a perfect Reſemblance one to the other. For firſt, *Joh. Magnus* exaggerates the Good and Golden Age, in which the firſt Men after the Deluge lived; On which Matter, if I remember right, *Annius Viterb.* likewiſe touches; and the *Tartar* does the ſame. Secondly, *Joh. Magnus* alledges, That the happy Days, which Mankind enjoy'd in that Golden Age, induced them to neglect the Worſhip of the true GOD, and run into Idolatry, and all Manner of Abomination, which the *Tartar* likewiſe obſerves.

VI. THIRDLY, *Joh. Magnus* remarks, that, after the Death of King *Erich*, the Union in the *Swediſh* and *Gothick* People was broken, and they began to diſtinguiſh themſelves, by the different Names of *Sweeds* and *Goths.* The *Tartar* gives us to underſtand as much by what follows; (*viz.*) That the ſixth, *Alænzæ Chan*, (who anſwers to *Erick*, the ſixth) had Twins, *viz. Tartar* and *Mungal* (80), who, when they came to Maturity, ſeparated, and two Nations deſcended from them. Fourthly, *Joh. Magnus*, ſuffers the Line of the *Gothick* Native Kings to reſt, and ſays he had, indeed, found the Names of eight of them, and no more; But nothing of their Lives and Actions. This

(80) *Vid. Hiſtoire Geneal. des Tartars* (*Cap.* 11. *p.* 26.) And with this, *Diodorus Siculus* ſeems to agree, in his Account of the *Scythians*: See *Lib. II. fol.* 127. *Edit. Wechel. Hanow*, 1604. where he ſays: *Inter poſteros hujus Regis* Scytharum *duo extiterunt Fratres, Virtutis eximiæ, quorum uni* Palo *alteri* Napæ *nomen erat, hi poſt multas res præclare geſtas regnique partitionem alios Palos alios Napos de ſe nominarunt.* (*i. e.* Among the Deſcendants of this King, there were two Brothers, of ſingular Virtue, one of which was call'd *Pal*, and the other *Nap.* After they had done many great Actions, and divided the Empire, one Part of the Inhabitants was, from them, call'd *Pali*, the other *Napi*:) But our *Tartarian* Copy mentions, that there were two Princes of the *Mungalian* Race, whoſe Poſterity call'd themſelves *Kajaht*, and *Napoſler* or *Nagoſler*; (*vid. l'Hiſt. des Tart. p.* 74.) On which Occaſion, we may obſerve, as I have already ſaid, that it is not to be regarded, when, in Ancient *European* Writers, the Names of Princes and Nations do not always agree with the *Tartarian* Names, if the Circumſtances and Hiſtorical Relations do but agree. I ſhall, in the Sequel, cite more Inſtances out of *Diodorus Siculus*, which likewiſe agree as well with our *Tartarian* Hiſtory.

This our *Tartar* does likewiſe, and mentions only eight Kings of the *Tartarian* Line, by Name, ſaying, he knew nothing of any of their Actions, except of the laſt, and theſe eight Kings were the following:

JOH. MAGUS.	ABULGASI-CHAN.
1. *Udde.*	1. *Tartar-Chan.*
2. *Alde.*	2. *Bucha-Chan.*
3. *Oden.*	3. *Ilænzee-Chan.* (81)
4. *Carl.*	4. *Ethele-Chan.* (82)
5. *Biorn.*	5. *Attaiſir-Chan.*
6. *Goethar.*	6. *Orda-Chan.*
7. *Gerder.*	7. *Baidu-Chan.* (83)
8. *Sigge.*	8. *Siunts-Chan.* (84)

VII. BOTH Authors leave us only the Names of this Line, and ſo conclude the ſecond Epoch, and *Joh. Magnus* undertakes to mentions thoſe Kings which went into other Countries, and gives us ſome Account of the Actions of each; The very ſame does, likewiſe, our *Tartarian* Writer, as to the *Mungal*-Line, and ſays, that *Tartar-Chan*, with his People, left *Mungal-Chan*, and went towards the *Eaſt*; But *Joh. Magnus*, as I have ſaid, deſcribes the Actions of thoſe Kings, who went out of their Country, whereas the other ſays nothing of them; But treats of the Affairs of thoſe who remained in the *Weſt*. The Princes of both Authors are again in the ſame Order, and Number, *viz.*

JOH.

(81) *Herbelot* (in his *Biblioth. Orient. p.* 875) calls him *Bilingch-Chan.*

(82) *Prætor.* (*in Orb. Goth. Lib.* 6. *Cap.* 2.) mentions a *Gothick* King, on the *Viſtula*, called *Athal*, which is not unlike this. And the Name *Ethel Rugi* is not unknown in Antiquity.

(83) This is omitted in *Herbelot*, *I. c. p.* 875.

(84) *Siuntz-Chan* is by others, and likewiſe by *Herbelot*, call'd *Suneg* and *Sinig* (*vid. Biblioth. Orient.* the fore-cited Page;) And this agrees pretty well with *Sigge*, in the oppoſite Liſt. And, if we knew the Signification of both Names, there would, perhaps, be a greater Reſemblance. Here likewiſe we are to obſerve, that, with Regard to this Concluſion of *Joh. Magnus*'s Epoch, *Meſſenius*, *in Scandia illuſtr.* (*Tom. XIII. p.* 7.) remarks, that theſe Eight Kings ruled over the *Goths* 400 Years, which probably denotes thoſe 400 Years, in which the *Mungals* inhabited the Mountain call'd *Irgunakon*; (*vid. Hiſt. des Tartars*, *p.* 74.) during which *Sweden* was govern'd by Judges; Likewiſe, that *Joh. Magnus*, in the Context, reckons no more than Seven Kings, to King *Berick*; But in the Margin he puts Eight.

JOH. MAGNUS.	ABULGASI-CHAN.
1. *Berik.*	1. *Mungl-Chan.*
2. *Gapter.*	2. *Cara-Chan.*
3. *Augis.*	3. *Ogus Chan.* (85).
4. *Amale.*	4. *Siuntz-Chan.*
5. *Balte* or *Galte.*	5. *Guldus* or *Galdus*, are pretty much alike.
6. *Gadryk hin Mickle.*	6. *Menkeli* (*Mickle* and *Menkeli* is all one.) (86)
7. *Filmer hin Mickle.*	7. *Tengis.*
8. *Tanauſi.*	8. *Il-Chan.*

VIII. JOH. MESSENIUS (*in Scand. Illuſt. Tom.* III. *p.* 16.) after having rejected the Opinion of *Laurent. Neric.* that the firſt King of *Sweden* was call'd *Wilchinus*, and *Swecia*, properly ſo call'd, *Wilchin-Landia*, proves, that *Joh. Magnus*, inſtead of *Gethric*'s Son, call'd *Wilkini*, has put the Name *Villmer* or *Fillmer*, and that by the Name *Wilkina*, not only *Sweden* is to be underſtood, but alſo *Ruſſia*, *Poland*, and other Countries. Therefore, it ſeems to me, that this Name denotes nothing more than the *Sclavonian* Word *Welikie*, as *Iwan Baſilowitz Weliki* (87); Since then the Words *Mickle*, in the *Gothick* Language, and *Weliki*, in the *Sclavonian*, have one Signification, and *Joh. Magnus* has chang'd the Name *Wilkini* into *Fillmer*, it is eaſy to conceive, why the Word *Mickle* is join'd to the Names *Gadryck* and *Filmer*, and that it is the ſame in the *Sclavonian*, *Gothick* and *Turkiſh*. *Herbelot* (in his *Bibl. Orient. p.* 576.) ſays, that this Name *Menkeli* ſignifies *Michael*; and that Archangel being eſteem'd the Greateſt next to GOD, *Menkeli* may be the ſame with *Mickle*, *Great* or *Mighty*; As I have mention'd above, that, in the *Sclavonian* Tongue, the Archangel is call'd *Silnoi Woywoda*, i. e. *a Great or Mighty General.* Many Actions and Things are related

(85) This has a pretty near Reſemblance to that which ſtands oppoſite to it in the other Liſt, and by *Prætor.* (*in Orb. Goth.*) is call'd *Captus.*

(86) *Vid. Complem. Theſ. ling. Orient. Meninski, p.* 437, & 986. This Name ſignifies, in the *Tartarian* Language, the *Great Sea.*

(87) Which the *Vandals* pronounced *Wilkie*, and call'd the Ocean *Wilka-voda*, i. e. *the great Water.* (*Vid. Joh. Georg. Eccardi. Hiſtor. Stud. Etymol. ling. German. p.* 281.)

related concerning theſe eight Kings, both in the *Tartarian* and *Gothick* Hiſtories, which very much reſemble each other; Tho' they may ſeem different, from the different Names given them by our Authors: (1.) Under the two firſt, which ſtand oppoſite to each other, *viz. Berich* and *Mungal-Chan*, happen'd the Separation of the Nations, *Berick* going out of *Sweden*, and the *Mungal*'s Brother, *Tartar Chan*, with his People, towards the *Eaſt*. (2.) *Joh. Magnus* ſays, (*Lib.* I. *cap.* 4.) That King *Berick* is the Founder of the Name, and Tribe of the *Gæpidi*, which he derives from the Word *Gependa*, ſignifying to *ſtay behind, delay*, or *be ſlow:* This our *Tartarian* Author relates of the Third, in his Order, *viz. Ougus-Chan*, who founded the *Carlickes* that ſtaid behind in the Snow. For theſe People, it ſeems, being upon a certain March, were overtaken by ſo great a Drift of Snow, that they could not get forwards, and it was a long Time before *Ougus-Chan*'s Army found them again (88). And as *Ogus-Chan* was likewiſe the Founder of the Tribe of the *Uigurres* (which ſignifies *Confederates*) ſo it is ſaid of the *Gothick* King *Gadericus* or *Gaderick-hin Mickle*, that he had declar'd the *Vandals* to be his Confederates. *Joh. Magnus* (*Lib.* I. *cap.* 15.) ſays: The Inhabitants of the Country, which the *Goths* invaded, fled to their Neighbours, the *Vandalian* Nation: And it is obſerved of *Ogus-Chan*, that when he endeavour'd to unite the bordering Nations, in Point of Religion, they retired to the *Tartars*, their Neighbours. *Joh. Magnus* (*Lib.* I. *c.* 15.) ſays of King *Taunaſi*, that he marched his Army into *Egypt*, and after his Expedition, returned into *Scythia*, with great Triumph, where he reſted a long Time. We find the ſame, in the *Tartarian* Hiſtory, of *Ogus-Chan*, that he return'd, with Great Triumph, from *Meſſra* (or the preſent City of *Alcairo*) which lies on the *Nile*, in *Egypt*, into his Hereditary *Empire* of *Mungaliſtan*,

(88) So the *Gæpidi* may very rightly be call'd *Sigipedi*, as they are by ſome:) *Vid. Caſpar Abels Teutſche Alterth. p.* 208.) For, in the *Tartarian* Hiſtory, it is ſaid, that they follow'd the Army on Foot, becauſe their Horſes periſh'd in the Snow. (*Vid. l'Hiſtoire des Tartars, p.* 52.) And here, I muſt not omit to obſerve, that, in the *French* Tranſlation of this Hiſtory, there are ſome Paſſages, that are not ſo exactly explain'd as in my *German* Tranſlation; Eſpecially ſince, as I have before obſerv'd, it has been revis'd anew, in the Year 1723. in the City of *Tobolsky*. I did deſign to have publiſh'd it with Notes and Illuſtrations, which will now hardly be done, unleſs I ſhould find an Editor to take the Charge off of my Hands.

ſtan, where he held ſolemn Rejoycings, and lived, for a conſiderable Time, in Quiet. *Diodorus Siculus* agrees with this Account (*Lib.* II. *p.* 127.) and mentions the *Scythians* in the following Manner: *Aliquanto poſt tempore progenies horum, virtute & arte bellica præſtans, terras ultra* Tanaim *multas ſubegit. Tum verſis, in alteram partem, ad* Nilum *uſque progreſſi multis in medio Gentibus ſub jugum redactis*, Scytharum *Imperium, qua ad* Oceanum Orientalem, *qua ad* mare Caſpium & Mæotim *uſque prolatarunt.* (*i. e.* " Some Time after, their Deſcendants, who were " famous on Account of their Valour and Wars, ſubdued many " Countries, ſituated beyond the *Tanais:* And then, turning on " the other Side, went as far as the *Nile*, and, by conquering " the Intermediate Nations, extended the *Scythian Empire* to " the *Eaſtern* Ocean, to the *Caſpian* Sea, and to the *Palus Mæo-* " *tis.*") And *Joh. Magnus* (*Lib.* I. *cap.* 33.) ſays, That in the Time of the wiſe Philoſopher *Zænta* (who is placed betwixt *Gaderick* and *Filmerhin-Mickle*, and whom ſome will not allow to have been a King, but only to have govern'd during the Interregnum) the two principal Tribes of *Para-Buſcei* and *Pylatti* had their Riſe. And this is alſo ſaid of *Ogus-Chan: viz.* That, when he was in *Syria*, near *Scham* or *Damaſcus*, by the Advice of his wiſe Miniſter, (who, in the *Tartarian* Hiſtory is call'd *Irkill-Chodſæ* (89), and who ſerved both the Father and the Son of *Ogus-Chan*, with his prudent Counſels, which may allude to the aforeſaid Interregnum) then the two Lines of the Sons of *Ogus-Chan* were founded, *viz*, the *Boſſuckian* or *Buſſuckian*, and *the Utz-Ockian.*

IX. IT is, likewiſe, remarkable, that the Names, which *Joh. Magnus* cites, agree with the *Tartar*, as *Buſceos* with *Buſſuck*; And as in the *Tartarian* Language, *Utz-Ock* ſignifies Three Arrows, it may perhaps only be an Interpretation of the *Swediſh* and *German* Words *Pyhl*, *Pfeil*, or *Pylatti* (90). And, in its proper Place, I ſhall plainly ſhew, that the Founding of theſe two *Tartarian* Lines was the true Original of the firſt *Parthians*,

(89) The Name *Irkill-Chodſæ*, or *Chodſchæ*, is omitted in *l'Hiſt. des Tartars*, *p.* 63. But it is to be found in my *German* Tranſlation, as many others are, which are not in this *French* Tranſlation.

(90) Inſtead of *Pylatti*, others put *Pileati*, and tranſlate it *Royal* or *Epiſcopal Caps.*

whom *Curtius*, (*Lib.* VI. *cap.* 1.) mentions, as deſcending from the *European Scythians*; Which Relation, if not exactly the ſame with this Account, yet agrees ſo far; Becauſe *Ogus-Chan* gave Riſe to theſe Families, not far from *Damaſcus*, and ſo near the Borders of *Europe*. *Strabo*, (*Lib.* XV.) calls this *Tanauſis*, of *Joh. Magnus*, *Idan-Thyrſus*; And *Arrianus*, (*Lib.* VIII.) *Ida-Thyrſus*; And as they both agree, that he was the Founder of the *Parthians*, perhaps *Ogus* appears here under the Name of *Idan-Thyrſus*, or *Tanauſis* (91). Farther, *Joh. Magnus* mentions, (*Lib.* I. *cap.* 32.) that *Tanauſis* was accounted, by his Subjects, one of their beſt and moſt renown'd Kings, and was by them, plac'd among the Number of the Gods. If, therefore, the Names in the Liſt were not chang'd, this would likewiſe agree with *Ogus-Chan*, he being reckon'd, to this Day, in *Tartary*, one of the Greateſt and moſt Eminent of their Kings, and believ'd to be the Founder of all their Tribes. Again, the Kings which *Joh. Magnus* places after *Tanauſis* are five, *Zænta*, *Sagill*, *Penexexagoras*, *Telephus*, and *Euriphilus*. Whereas our Author concludes his Epoch, with King *Ill-Chan*, who is plac'd over-againſt *Tanauſis*; But I am apt to think, that, in the Continuation of the Genealogy, as far as regards this Line, one of our Authors is miſtaken in it; And that thoſe five Kings were of the *Tartarian*, and not of the *Mungalian* Race; For that was wholly rooted out with *Ill-Chan*; Whereas the *Tartar* Line continu'd to flouriſh. (*Vid. Hiſt. Geneal. des Tart. p.* 70.) So the *Poliſh* Writer *Guagninus*, in the Chapter where he treats of the *Amazons*, calls theſe five Kings expreſly, *Tartarian* Kings; and *Joh. Magnus* likewiſe mentions them as living in the Time of the *Amazons*, and being preſent at the Deſtruction of the City of *Troy*.

X. JOH. MAGNUS brings down the Time of the *Amazons* to King *Cyrus*, and makes their Period to have continu'd about 450 Years; Here again our *Tartarian* Author mentions, that thoſe few *Mungals* of King *Ill-Chan*'s Army, who, after his Defeat, fled to

(91) Whoever pleaſes to compare this Paſſage, with what *Jornandes*, (*de rebus Gothicis*, *cap.* 13, 14.) and likewiſe *Prætorius* (*in Orb. Goth. L. W. cap.* 3. § 2.) have wrote of the two Tribes of the *Amali* and *Balti*, will find that all which is there ſaid is alluſive to what I have here mention'd; For *Gapt* begot *Halmal*, *Halmal*, *Augis*, and *Augis*, *Amala*; by whom the Tribe of the *Amali* was founded. A Critick muſt, however, ſeek for this in Hiſtory as well as in the Signification of the Names.

to the Mountains, (of which more hereafter) dwelt there 450 Years, in which Time they very much encreaſed. And tho' he mentions nothing here of the *Amazons*; Yet it is remarkable, that both Authors mention the Number 400 and 450 expreſly, as I have obſerv'd before. Moreover, our *Tartar*, as ſo many Authors queſtion the Story of the *Amazons*, ſeems to be of the ſame Mind, by his Silence as to the Tranſactions of the 450 Years, when the *Mungals* encreaſed among the Mountains. But if, nevertheleſs, an *Amazonian* Government did ever exiſt in *Scythia*, it muſt have been during theſe 450 Years, and after the *Tartars* had totally defeated the *Mungalian* Army (92); For our *Tartarian* Author ſays, in his Manuſcript, that he ſhould have been very deſirous of giving the Names of thoſe Princes, who govern'd the *Mungals*, in the Mountains, in his Genealogy; But that nothing was to be found of them in any Book (93). It is, therefore, to be ſuppos'd, that, after the Men of the *Mungalian* Army were all kill'd, their Wives, who were left, retired into the *European Scythia*, or *Sarmatia* (94); For if the *Amazons* had remain'd in the *Aſiatick Scythia*, our *Tartarian* Author would not have paſs'd over that Hiſtory in Silence.

XI. LASTLY, The ſaid Writer tells us, that when *Ill-Chan*, with his Army, was wholly defeated by the *Tartar-Chan*, two Princes eſcap'd, *viz.* *Kajahn* and *Nokes*, or *Nogos*, who, with a few of their People, retired to a certain Mountain call'd *Irgania*, or *Erganiakon*, where they liv'd 400 Years, and multiply'd greatly. *Joh. Magnus*, likewiſe, mentions two Royal Princes, whom he calls *Folin* and *Solaphiter*, but who are call'd, by others, *Plinos* and *Scolopithos* (95), who likewiſe, after they were defeated in

(92) See an Account of the great Battel between the *Mungals* and *Tartars*, in the *Hiſt. des Tartars* (*p.* 69, 70.) With which *Abadalla Bæidav.* (*in Hiſt. Sin.*) and likewiſe *Herbelot* (*in Dict. Orient. p.* 489.) agree.

(93) This Paſſage denotes the Term of 400 Years, mention'd above, which *Joh. Magnus* fixes, to the Time when *Sweden* was govern'd by Judges.

(94) So, likewiſe, the *Poliſh* Writer *Guagninus* ſays expreſly; The *Amazons* were *Scytho-Mungalian* Women.

(95) *Herbelot*, *p.* 489. calls theſe Princes *Kian* and *Tegoutz*, and the Place to which they fled *Erkanak-Koun*; And *Abadalla Bæidav.* (*in Hiſt. Sinenſi*, *p.* 70.) denotes them by the Names of *Kaban* and *Tegur*; and the Place of their Retirement he calls *Argent-Kon*; As to the *Tartarian* Name *Kajan-Nokè*, whoſe firſt Deſcendants were called *Cajahi*, *vid. l'Hiſt. des Tartars* (p. 74.) *Pliny* (*Lib. IV. cap.* 11.) and *Solinus*, (Cap. X. & XVI.) may likewiſe

Capadocia, fled to the Mountains of *Caucaſus*, in which Paragraph *Joh. Magnus* has the following Words: *The Neighbours of the* Goths *united, and fell unawares upon them*; And this our *Tartar* repreſents

likewiſe properly be look'd to on this Occaſion; For they both make Mention of the *Pygmei*, who are there called *Katuzi* and *Katuzan*; Which Denominations, (1.) agree pretty well with our *Tartarian* Names; (2.) The War between the *Pigmies* and *Cranes*, or *Storks*, which *Pliny* deſcribes, is to be underſtood in this figurative Manner; That as the *Cranes* and *Storks* have annually their Summer and Winter-Quarters or Reſorts; So the *Scythians* repair'd in Summer to one Place, and in Winter to another, and there, took up their Habitations, which all the *Tartars*, *Mungals* and *Kalmucks* do, to this Day; That is, in the Summer-Time they live on the Banks of Rivers, Lakes, or Seas, where Fiſh is plenty; and in Winter in the Woods, where Game abounds, for the Convenience of Hunting. Theſe Authors, therefore, have compared the *Scythians* to *Storks* and *Cranes*; and by the *Pygmies* they mean a Sort of warlike People; Conf. *Calimach. in Orat. de bello Turcico*, (*in Bizarri. Hiſt. rer. Perſicarum*, *p.* 389.) who likewiſe takes Notice of ſuch a Compariſon; But *Pygmæus* denotes *Bellator & ad bella promtiſſimus*, as *Hieronymus* in *Hezekiel*, Cap. xxvii. explains it, (*vid. Dict. Græc. lat. Septemviror. Budæi, &c. Item, Scapul. in Lexic. Græc. lat. p.* 1411.) which Explication, eſpecially in this Place, is much better, than to ſuppoſe *Pygmæi* ſignifies a little People of a Foot high; Whence, likewiſe, the *Latin* Word *Pugil*, *Pugilis*, which denotes properly one that fights with the Fiſt, is probably deriv'd; With which *Jobus Ludolff* (*in Comment. Hiſt. Æthiop. p.* 73.) agrees. (3.) If, therefore, we conſider, that the *Mungals*, who, after the Term of 400 Years, came out of the Mountains, were called *Cajaht*, or *Cajahtuzi*; And likewiſe, that they firſt began the War with the *Tartars*, (or *Cranes*) before any other Nation, (*vid. Tartar Author*, *p.* 77.) it is plain, that by *Cajahtuzi* the above-mention'd *Catuzi* of *Pliny* are to be underſtood; Eſpecially, if to this we add, that *Thomas Hyde* (in his *Leipſ. de rebus Perſ. p.* 427.) explains the Word *Catuzi* to be a People who live ſeparated from all other, in Mountains, Rocks and Clifts. But *Cajaht*, in the *Turkiſh* Language, ſignifies not only a ſtony Mountain or Rock, but our *Mungals*, who have got the Surname of *Cajaht*, liv'd alſo 400 Years in Rocks and Mountains; And this is a more evident Confirmation that, by the above-mention'd Author's fabulous Account, our *Tartarian* Paſſage is meant, and it likewiſe confirms *Baron Leibnitz*'s Opinion of the Mythology of the Ancients, whoſe Words I have already cited; (*Sect. I.* §. *XLIII.*) And, (4.) *Pliny* and *Solinus* call the Habitations of the *Pygmæi*, *Geraunia* and *Geronia*, (which, in my Opinion, ſhould rather be *Gergonia*;) Inſtead of which our *Tartarian* Author calls the Mountain where the *Mungals* inhabited *Irgania*, or *Irgania-Kon*, and explains theſe Names as follows: *Irgania* (ſays he) denotes the Declivity or Surface of a high ſteep Mountain, and *Kon*, *Konia*, or *Gonia*, a Corner, Angle, or Nook; becauſe the Mountains, in theſe Places, were very high and pointed. The latter Word *Kon* (a *Corner*) has the ſame Signification with the *French*, *Coin*; the *Perſian*, *Kiing*; the *Italian*, *Cantone*; the *German*, *Kante*; and the *Greek*, *Gonia*, or *Konia*: And the Word *Gar*, in the *Sclavonian*, *Akre*, or *Akros*, in the *Greek*, *Ayres* and *Jyrka*, in the *Finnlandian* Languages, ſignify a high Shoar, the Top of a Mountain, likewiſe the Surface and higheſt Part of a Mountain, which in the *Mungalian* and *Tartarian* Languages are expreſs'd by the Words *Irr*, *Erck*, and *Arck*. It is, therefore, very probable, that the *Greek* Word *Gergonia*, or *Geraunia*, agrees with the above-mention'd Names *Irgania-Kon*, *Erckane-Koun*, and *Argent-Kon*, and that the War, which the *Mungals*, who came out of the Mountains, waged with the *Tartars*, denotes the Battel of the *Pygmæi* with the *Cranes*; Eſpecially as the *Tartarian* Copy mentions, that the *Tartars* defeated the *Mungals*, and put them to the Flight; But that theſe, after a Term of 400 Years, when they return'd from the Mountains, were the firſt who attack'd the *Tartarian* Nation.

repreſents thus: The *Tartarian Siuntz-Chan*, made an Alliance with *Kirgis-Chan*, and all his Neighbours, and the *Mungalian Ill-Chan* was defeated by theſe *Confederates*, by means of a Stratagem. (*Vid. Hiſt. des Tartars, p.* 69.) In which both our Authors again agree, tho' indeed in the Circumſtances of the Hiſtory, and the Place where it happen'd, they differ. Thus we ſee the great Conformity of both Writers, and were I not apprehenſive of being too tedious I could alledge many more Inſtances to prove it.

XII. HENCE it is, however, ſufficiently evident, that both Authors agree in the Diviſion of the Dynaſties, in the Actions of their Kings, and in their Genealogies, and that they differ only as to the Places, which they make the Scenes of Action, and where they pretend that their firſt Princes reſided. Theſe Things I leave to learned Hiſtorians to reconcile: I ſhall only add, to conclude, that the Reader may compare, what I have here mention'd, with *Petrus Parvus Roſenfontanus*'s Opinion of *Joh. Magnus*, *viz.* that he mix'd the Achievements of the *Aſiatick Scythians*, with the Actions of the Foreign *Goths*, to which he may probably have been miſled, by the above-mention'd Tranſlation of *Annio*, by *Beroſus*, who, indeed, may have had ſome Fragments of theſe Matters from the *Eaſt*; But made ſo many Additions to them, and applied them in ſo odd a Manner, that all he has wrote, is accounted fabulous: But if we knew how to diſtinguiſh every where the Good from the Bad, we might, perhaps, find ſeveral Things in his Work, which might be admitted by us as evident Truths.

As the *Kalmuck-Mungalian Vocabulary*, and the *Polyglott Table*, will be of great Uſe for the Explication, not only of the following Work, but likewiſe what I have already ſaid, in the foregoing Introduction, I think proper to place theſe two Pieces here, in the Middle, and then to proceed to the particular Deſcription of the *North* and *Eaſtern* Parts of *Europe* and *Aſia*.

VOCA-

VOCABULARIUM

CALMUCKO-MUNGALICUM.

A.

ARtzul, a Handkerchief.
Alta, Gold.
Æme, a Woman.
Are, a Man.
Aretaka, a Cock.
Ama, the Mouth.
Ara, the Jaw-Teeth.
Aſſun, Hair.
Amdatai, *Amtüichan*, } ſweet.
Acha, a Brother.
Alabuga, *Alagbu*, } a Purſe.
Arriki, Brandy.
Aroeku, to ſweep, or bruſh.
Arbabuda, Barley.
Allaga, the Hand.
Aleſu, Oats.
Abo, Hunting.
Altanſubus, Pearls.
Arion, clean.
Acie, a Relation.
Alema-modo, an Apple-Tree.
Alema, an Apple.
Aſkun, in the Evening.
Ajolæchai, the Belly.
Abdara, the Bed, likewiſe a Cheſt.
Ajaka, a Cup.
Arſlon, a Buffaloe, or Bull.
Artſchol, Bed-Cloths.
Ahlonbun, Callico.
Artſchi, I grumble, or mutter.
Alchæ, *Æchæ*, } a Mother.
Anidſohi, I drive out.
Achtol, I cleanſe.
Abdedſohi, I begin.
Arſlan, a Lion.
Aſaka, I throw out.
Aſock, I enquire.
Aboba, *Abkobiſche*, } I buy from.
Arky, I break out.
Aſſoo, I beg, or pray.
Apocha, I am vex'd or ſorry.
Ainæ, I fear.
Apſchyri, I bring.
Amedo, I remain.
Ære, Spiders.
Arul, a Spindle.
Aliſſon, a Sand-box.

Alun,

Alun, the Pannels of a Saddle.
Alæ, the Thumb.
Aluku, the Scabbard of a Sword.
Argul, I boar thro'.
Abſchi, I inherit.
Aſſo, a Queſtion.
Anni, I comprehend, underſtand.
Abſchird, I find.
Ajahr, late.
Ala, } I kill.
Alagdhi, }
Artſchi, I ſcold.
Æregi, I ſeek.
Abaga, a Grandfather.
Aitachan, ſmall, narrow.
Altatzchi, a Goldſmith.
Altanzaana, a Gold Chain.
Alaſko, a Hammer.
Artziol, a Cravat.
Ajagka, a wooden Bowl.
Adſarga, a Stonehorſe.
A, I.
Altſchi, to me.
Amaran, I keep off.
Aodſægui, dung'd Ground.
Andieſon, rak'd Ground.
Altanocks, Gold-Plate.
Arabai, *French* Barley.
Agutſchi, good.
Ailſchi, I go thither.
Alun, a Halter.
Aorkyl, I leave behind.
Æmnæ, to cry or weep.
Æmnætſchi, I cry.
Aldatulæ, a Fathom of Wood.
Anordæbel, a Jacket, or Stays.
Aleman, Lemon-colour.
Amedo, I live.
Amegenæka, a Grandmother.
Ædæſſen, Meal, Flour.
Æbdæ, I ſpoil.
Amaradizchi, I chaſe away.
Æltagadgi, I kiſs.
Abiræ, I vex or aggrieve.
Aigra, near.
Awnæ, I take.
Aluchutzchi, a Piſtol-maker.
Adotzchi, a Herd, or Keeper of Horſes at Graſs.
Adochudagalatzghir, a Stable.
Ara, a Bolſter.
Artaga, I ſet higher.
Antatay, Carrots.
Æmeltzchi, a Sadler.
Anius, a Key.
Alagada, a Diſtaff.
Adæmack, Sour Milk,
Argatzchi, a Betrayer, or Traytor.
Atſchi, of, from.
Abdænei, I ſpoil.
Altalagie, I gild.
Ælgi, I deſerve, or I earn.
Artzæ, a Juniper-Tree.
Arkedgi, I throw down, or overthrow.
Ætkæ, I cut into Pieces.
Arba, a Pack or Bale.
Abdara, a Box, or Cheſt.

B.

Bytzychanſchira, a Chair.
Buſſi, a Girdle, or Saſh.

Bæli, Gloves.
Büſdebell, a *Kitajan* Coat.
Bytzychan abdara, a little Box.
Bolaga, a Sable.
Boro, Blue.
Bulgari, a Hide, or Skin.
Byceſen, to write.
Bolos, Steel.
Bu or *Bob*, a Gun.
Bucha, a Dove.
Bække, an Inkhorn.
Beadenai, *Bultzick*, a Sparrow.
Bayan, great and eminent.
Budutus, a great great Grandfather.
Bytziganongzo, a Boat.
Burgas, a Broom.
Beſſige, a Fever.
Buſſe, a Belt.
Biciganzoer, a Haſel-Hen.
Belen, ready.
Burunkuy, dark.
Burchan, God.
Buda, Oatmeal.
Bayſchin a Houſe.
Bayſay, Colworts.
Budſieger, curled.
Bugu, a Hart or Stag.
Bula, Burial.
Bigia, the Body.
Budal, Linnen Cloths.
Boeſſun, or *Boſſu*, a Louſe.
Bultzani, the Camp.
Boſs, I let in.
Burchatzchi, a Painter.
Batayan, a Fly.
Bal, Mead.
Bulack, Moraſs, Fenny.
Belen, I prepare.
Badſchi, I tolerate, or I approve.
Banildu, I return.
Budſchiger, a Cravat.
Baruldugi, I turn off, avert or hinder.
Burchuch, the Navel.
Bydun, peeled, or Pearl-Barley.
Biluda, I make ſharp.
Byſdæbel, a Coat.
Boelſchioergenæ, Raiſins.
Bolun, horned Cattle.
Bitziatzchi, a Writer.
Bilu, a Grindſtone.
Bitzſigachai, a Pig.
Batælgæ, a Table-Cloth.
Bitziachan, a Plate.
Budungchutzchu, a Tyger.
Bojas, *Tartarian* Onions.
Bolgaura, eſpouſing.
Biſkuhs, a Fidler.
Buhral, a Fiddle, or Violin.
Buru, the Evening.
Bahri, I propoſe, produce.
Bodzar, I defile.
Borludſchi, I marry.
Batula, I Eſpouſe.
Balgus, Wax.
Boll, or *Kitat*, a Servant.
Budhun, I grow thicker.
Baienæ, I have been.
Boro, Tile-Colour.
Billran, I work in Timber.
Baſſa, yet.
By, I.
Boerenkuy, round.
Burgaſu, Fir.

Buric,

Buric, a Trumpet.
Boro, Rain.
Baigan, rich.
Baga, little, few.
Bida, We.
Baitaria, Wheat.
Baſan, a Retreat.
Bydoenæ, a Partridge.
Bugædæ, every where.
Bontzioch, a Broom.
Budura, Beans.
Boelgioergænæ, a Bear.
Beæ, I work.
Boroota ſſun, Blue.
Bidſchicu, a Letter.
Bulægi, I ty faſt.
Boro, Steel.
Budun, an Adjutant of the Artillery.
Buſtur, a Screw.
Bitſchi, Print.
Biludæ, a Turner.
Baroltuajaga, an Iron Frying-Pan.
Burtzak, Peaſe.
Baidgigi, I live.
Bajehr, I rejoyce.
Barudgi, I finiſh.
Baiehu, I live beyond a certain Time mention'd.
Bitgirtui, glad.
Buduchtzichi, a Dyer.
Biſguhr, a Flute.
Bari, I faſt.
Bajarladie, *Bajehr*, I rejoyce.
Baliydh, I am miſtaken.
Bilachan, a Muſician.
Batur, *Oloen*, I ſay.
Ba, I commit Sin.
Bidſchigi, I write.
Bulugartzchi, a Tanner.
Buſſe, a Girdle.
Boloſanmacha, boil'd Meat.
Bitſchæker, Goſlings.
Bæletzchi, a Glover.
Bortoga, a Wooden Diſh.
Bæli, a Glove.
Bolgi, I call to Mind.
Bidnaidu, here, hither.
Barri, I hold.
Bolugha, a Crown.
Burkuch, a Crane, *(or Bird ſo called.)*
Bydun, a Lapwing.
Borſch, Lime.
Bitzechan, little, ſmall.

C.

CEge poy, *Tzegmündæbel* } a Waſtcoat.
Camandu, to thee.
Ciny, thine.
Cicke, the Ears.
Chamtatata, together, at once.
Chutien, ſtale Meat.
Chormantzchi, a Cheat, or cheating Perſon.
Chorba, Deceit, or Cheating.
Chuduck, or *Kuduck*, a Fountain.
Charachorgælſi, Lead.
Choćto, I mix.
Chankayla, I cover.
Chælgidgi, I pardon.
Chordſa, Scum.

Bæli, Gloves.
Büſdebell, a *Kitajan* Coat.
Bytzychan abdara, a little Box.
Bolaga, a Sable.
Boro, Blue.
Bulgari, a Hide, or Skin.
Byceſen, to write.
Bolos, Steel.
Bu or *Bob*, a Gun.
Bucha, a Dove.
Bække, an Inkhorn.
Beadenai, *Bultzick*, a Sparrow.
Bayan, great and eminent.
Budutus, a great great Grandfather.
Bytziganongzo, a Boat.
Burgas, a Broom.
Beſſige, a Fever.
Buſſe, a Belt.
Biciganzoer, a Haſel-Hen.
Belen, ready.
Burunkuy, dark.
Burchan, God.
Buda, Oatmeal.
Bayſchin a Houſe.
Bayſay, Colworts.
Budſieger, curled.
Bugu, a Hart or Stag.
Bula, Burial.
Bigia, the Body.
Budal, Linnen Cloths.
Boeſſun, or *Boſſu*, a Louſe.
Bultzani, the Camp.
Boſs, I let in.
Burchatzchi, a Painter.
Batayan, a Fly.
Bal, Mead.
Bulack, Moraſs, Fenny.
Belen, I prepare.
Badſchi, I tolerate, or I approve.
Banildu, I return.
Budſchiger, a Cravat.
Baruldugi, I turn off, avert or hinder.
Burchuch, the Navel.
Bydun, peeled, or Pearl-Barley.
Biluda, I make ſharp.
Byſdæbel, a Coat.
Boelſchioergenæ, Raiſins.
Bolun, horned Cattle.
Bitziatzchi, a Writer.
Bilu, a Grindſtone.
Bitzſigachai, a Pig.
Batælgæ, a Table-Cloth.
Bitziachan, a Plate.
Budungchutzchu, a Tyger.
Bojas, *Tartarian* Onions.
Bolgaura, eſpouſing.
Biſkuhs, a Fidler.
Buhral, a Fiddle, or Violin.
Buru, the Evening.
Bahri, I propoſe, produce.
Bodzar, I defile.
Borludſchi, I marry.
Batula, I Eſpouſe.
Balgus, Wax.
Boll, or *Kitat*, a Servant.
Budhun, I grow thicker.
Baienæ, I have been.
Boro, Tile-Colour.
Billran, I work in Timber.
Baſſa, yet.
By, I.
Boerenkuy, round.
Burgaſu, Fir.

Buric,

Buric, a Trumpet.
Boro, Rain.
Baigan, rich.
Baga, little, few.
Bida, We.
Baitaria, Wheat.
Baſan, a Retreat.
Bydoenæ, a Partridge.
Bugædæ, every where.
Bontzioch, a Broom.
Budura, Beans.
Boelgioergænæ, a Bear.
Beæ, I work.
Boroota ſſun, Blue.
Bidſchicu, a Letter.
Bulægi, I ty faſt.
Boro, Steel.
Budun, an Adjutant of the Artillery.
Buſlur, a Screw.
Bitſchi, Print.
Biludæ, a Turner.
Baroltuajaga, an Iron Frying-Pan.
Burtzak, Peaſe.
Baidgigi, I live.
Bajehr, I rejoyce.
Barudgi, I finiſh.
Baiehu, I live beyond a certain Time mention'd.
Bitgirtui, glad.
Buduchtzichi, a Dyer.
Biſguhr, a Flute.
Bari, I faſt.
Bajarladie, *Bajehr*, I rejoyce.
Baliydh, I am miſtaken.
Bilachan, a Muſician.
Batur, *Oloen*, I ſay.
Ba, I commit Sin.
Bidſchigi, I write.
Bulugartzchi, a Tanner.
Buſſe, a Girdle.
Boloſanmacha, boil'd Meat.
Bitſchæker, Goſlings.
Bæletzchi, a Glover.
Bortoga, a Wooden Diſh.
Bæli, a Glove.
Bolgi, I call to Mind.
Bidnaidu, here, hither.
Barri, I hold.
Bolugha, a Crown.
Burkuch, a Crane, *(or Bird ſo called.)*
Bydun, a Lapwing.
Borſch, Lime.
Bitzechan, little, ſmall.

C.

CEge poy
Tzegmündæbel } a Waſtcoat.
Camandu, to thee.
Ciny, thine.
Cicke, the Ears.
Chamtatata, together, at once.
Chutien, ſtale Meat.
Chormantzchi, a Cheat, or cheating Perſon.
Chorba, Deceit, or Cheating.
Chuduck, or *Kuduck*, a Fountain.
Charachorgælſi, Lead.
Choćto, I mix.
Chankayla, I cover.
Chælgidgi, I pardon.
Chordſa, Scum.

Chorkoi, an Earth-Worm.
Choin, Strawberries.
Chachoda, I load.
Chul, or *Kull*, the Foot.
Chopki, a Flatterer.
Chaara, *Nonaci*, I curſe.
Chagahl, I protect, or preſerve.
Chwa, I die.
Chodala, a Boaſter.
Choſpoſa, Gracious Lady, Your Ladyſhip.
Chaptziur, a Fork.
Chæskær, a Grave, Pit, or Hole.
Chugaſt, half an Hour.
Chudſchuptzchi, a Cravat.
Chalagaitoſſu, having a Handful.
Chalon, Ginger.
Chalalouge, unpoliſh'd.
Choblone, I make known, manifeſt.
Chadruga, a Halter.
Chanadic, I haſten.
Chajarladie, I help.
Charbudgi, I leave behind.
Chukun, Children.
Chadultazochi, a Merchant.
Chon, a Crow.
Chiro, Garden-Seed.
Choboda, a Lantern.
Choraga, Lamb.
Choragan, a Lamb.
Chæbnech, a Cloak.
Choluguna, a Mouſe.
Chulo, with this.
Chodaldo, I ſell.
Chaceldiunuchtſchi, I accuſe.
Cherubtzchi, fooliſh.
Charongo ſunitucht, the Night-time.
Charbugdi, I leave off, or deſiſt.
Chorongoi, cloudy.
Chuſchukamodo, a Plum-tree.
Condzyla, a Blanket, Quilt, or Coverlet.
Chogir, both Hands.
Choy, a Sheep.
Chaytſchi, Sciſſars.
Choi, a Sheath.
Chun, *Chuan*, } a Swan.
Chalangir, a Bagnio.
Caſcha, the Hay-Loft.
Chabur, the Spring, Spring-time.
Chome-machan, Mutton.
Chaſion, Pepper.
Chabotſchi, I ſwell.
Chinei, I commit to my Memory.
Chi, I draw Water.
Chatukuna, I adviſe to it.
Chana, a Sieve.
Chulbo, Garters.
Captaya, a Pocket.
Choinamacha, Mutton.
Chaifutzchi, a Potter.
Chodgi, I chaſe, drive away.
Chitagi, I dry.
Chodulakelene, wrong.
Chai, paſt.
Chairelne, I hinder, prevent, or avert.
Chatuohr, I hinder, balk, or diſappoint.

Chelaga, the Way, Road.
Cha, where?
Chaiedgi, I throw away.
Chultſchi, I warm.
Chatko, I work.
Choro, the Teeth.
Chotgolſchi, Pewter.
Chatka, to prepare.
Cadba, I am ſatiated.

D.

DEbell, a ſhort Coat with Fur.
Dolowri, the fore Finger.
Dunto tochoro, the middle Finger.
D-Gir, or *Gerr*, a Houſe.
Debesker, Bed-Cloaths.
Dziraſſu, a Bream.
Debeeſſenmodu, an Ell.
Daſmack, a Flaſk.
Dalai, the Sea.
Doboel, the Mobb, or common People.
Duracine, wilt thou?
Dolondur, a Week.
Daibla, Alarm.
Duriſſon, a Boar.
Dahn, Troopers, a Company.
Dſchuſſan, I deign, vouchſafe.
Doræ, a Horſe's Girth.
Durba, a Thunder-clap.
Dæræ, the Roof.
Dalda, at that Time.
Duitſchi, I fulfil.
Dziulgu, I extend.
Diaro, the Flame.
Dulgha, a Standard, or Colours.
Daredſchæ, I am cold.
Dzugi, I bite.
Dſalga, I ſtay behind.
Duhrgæ, I charge, or load.
Dabutſche, I petition.
Dohla, I ſing.
Dhalalh, I ſmeer.
Delbega, Leaſhes, or Couples for Dogs.
Dzalo, a Bond or Note.
Dagholohu, I limp.
Dadaghi, I command.
Debſi, the Pannels of a Saddle.
Daldalghi, I forget.
Demeughe, uſeleſs.
Dſada, *Dſaſa*, I order, diſpatch.
Dgodætzchi, a Pike-Man.
Dugo, a Horſe-Collar.
Deliſs, I ſwoon, I am dizzy.
Dudha, I call, cry out.
Dabuſtai, ſalt Meat.
Dzudzantorgo, Taffaty.
Dohla, I give to drink.
Dolgo, Waves.
Duge, why?
Dodadghi, I revoke.
Deſſu, a Cord, Rope.
Dſoge, the Hyena.
Dhyrbo, between, betwixt.

E.

ELleſun, Sand.
Eme, or *Æme*, a Woman.
Ebell, Winter.
Eſchö, Strife.

Ere, or *Ære*, a Man.
Endoegoe, Eggs.
Ebeſu, Hay.
Endur, to day.
Ell, Peace.
Emecie, to put on.
Endegozor, ſtay here.
Eacholl, the Beard.
Emell, a Saddle.
Emæ Taxa, a Hen.
Eremari, a young Horſe.
Eme-my, a Cat.
Etka, I cut.
Erul, Wheat.
Erenei, I break in Pieces.
Erka, a Bruſh.

G.

GAra, the Hand.
Goduſſan, Boots.
Giama, a Buck, or He-Goat.
Goli, Copper.
Galla, a grey Gooſe.
Giabu, go out.
Gachai, a Swine.
Gachai machan, Pork.
Gadzur-cahgal, to plough.
Ganſa, a Tobacco-Pipe.
Gaſchun, or *Kaſchun*, bitter.
Gaſun, a Bone.
Gagcar, alone.
Goll, a Brook, Stream.
Guſſeldzege, Strawberries.
Galo, or *Gælon*, a Gooſe.
Gorſu, a Feather.
Gadzær, the Land.
Goralie, to fiſh.
Geſkon, Joy.
Gurill, Meal, Flour.
Gole, Braſs.
Gabuge, to ride a Horſeback.
Gamat, Goats.
Gama, a Goat.
Galkakilina, Lightning.
Gorgol, *Gulachari*, } a wild or Wood-cock.
Gou, Cucumbers.
Gegan, always.
Glaitaigantzchi, a Beggar.
Giski, I begin, enter upon.
Gola, the Mountain.
Gurbæ, therefore.
Gujuhn, hard by, next to it.
Gadzar, the Earth.
Gadzariabe, the Surface of the Earth.
Guſſægi, I overtake.
Göröt ſchi, I reach, or obtain.
Garſſu, Feathers.
Göduzun, the Bowels or Guts.
Galotzchi, a Herd, or Keeper of Geeſe.
Galo, Gooſe-Fleſh.
Gaou, the Boundary, or Confines.
Gar, the Hand.
Gerr, or *Girr*, the Houſe, or Room.
Guluga, a young Dog.
Gihl, the Year.
Goſchi, July.

Gorgol, Turky-Hens.
Gaduſſun, Linnen-Cloth.
Gorba, Wedneſday.
Gurilh, Meal, Flour.
Gorſak, Nutmeg.
Gædſchi, I looſe.
Giſkele, I knock.
Gatzar kaghal, ploughing.
Goth-Ojadſch, a Shoemaker.
Gubſcharlakuwiſchi, I do not manifeſt it.
Gaſſion, Radiſh.
Guja, a Gammon of Bacon.
Guu, a Mare.
Gachai, a Swine.
Gændu, a Greyhound.
Giſgitzchi, Stairs.
Giobo, Slippers.
Gintolotzchi, a Watchmaker.
Gonaſch, I diſunite, or ſow Difference.
Ghed, I looſe.
Goilga, I languiſh.
Gardugaku, a Water-pot.
Gædæſu, a Pudding, or Sauſſage.
Guruſſun, a Wild Beaſt.
Galon, a Wild Gooſe.
Gerky, a Candleſtick.

I.

IRrekei, the Thumb.
Idam, the Ring-Finger.
Itmuc, Bread.
Ike, or *Yke*, great.
Idee, to eat.
Ideydue, hungry.
Ire, come hither.
Irgin, ſteep, high.
Illa, or *Ilia*, flat, even.
Ikekuitun, Froſt.
Jakalai, an Owl.
Ikoretkil, proud, ſtout.
Ike-ulus, Dominion.
Ilga, a Hawk.
Jarlutſchi, I give Earneſt.
Itagenei, I believe.
Irrene, I go.
Inedge, I give.
Illanzæchan, I embrace.
Ilgetſchi, a Furrier.
Ita, a Chafer, Bug, or Beetle.
Inædſchi, I laugh.
Inach, I love.
Irre, or *Ere*, a Man.
Idoſſun, Mace.
Itæ, Noon.
Ildu, a Mortar to pound in.
Ilægi, I forbear, ſuffer, or reconcile.
Illanzæchan, the Palpitation of the Heart.
Jamanmodo, a Nut-Tree.
Jæran, October.
Irre, or
Ikæ-udæ, the Gate.
Jæran, inconſiderate.
Jalulu, I take Mony on Security.
Igæ, or *Oetzege*, the Father.
Iredgi, I ſhall come, or I come.
Ikæalahko, the Tongs.

Jama,

Jama, Goats-Fleſh.
Iſkuhl, I kick.
Ilſychutok, God's Omnipotency.
Irmis, a Tyger.

K.

Komuſſu, the Nails on the Fingers.
Kul, the Foot.
Kaiſſun, a Pot.
Kgu, a Mare.
Kirma, a Squirrel.
Koho, green.
Kara, black.
Korgoldzy, Pewter.
Kara korgoldzy, Lead.
Korgol Sſumu, or *Moenderoe*, a Bullet.
Kobun, a Child.
Kitat, a Servant.
Kologuna, a Mouſe.
Kammat, the Noſe.
Kelle, the Tongue.
Kumuſka, the Eyebrows.
Kudſun, the Nape of the Neck.
Kolloi, the Neck.
Kite, a Steel to ſtrike Fire with.
Kuhn, or *Chun*, a Man, (*Homo.*)
Kirai, a Raven.
Kuitun-dgir, a Cellar.
Kalloon, hot.
Kuitun, cold, *(Subſt. & Adj.)*
Kubin, Cotton.
Kæpthe, I ly.
Kire, a Crow.
Kedigne, Bees.
Kuiluc, a Shirt.
Kalbaga, a Spoon.
Kadu, to think, to cut off.
Kurcierebe, the Arrival.
Kacar, to bake.
Kalungir, a Bagnio.
Kara-goreſu, a Bear.
Kriuck, Images.
Kundula murgolne, I pardon.
Kaſſion, Saffron.
Kihlin, Velvet.
Kara, or *Chara*, black.
Kadzar, a Seam or Hem.
Kidjam, a Saddle-Cloth.
Kellemartzchi, an Interpreter.
Ka, I dance.
Kaſchun, Vinegar.
Kuleie, I expect.
Kelelſæ, I obtain by Entreaty.
Kuro, the Finger.
Kajurzara, February.
Karuptzchi, a Thimble.
Kætæ, a Steel to ſtrike Fire with.
Karagai, Fir, green Wood.
Kabuhr, the Spring Seaſon.
Kaptaga, the Flint of a Gun.
Kahra, I curſe.
Karga, I conduct, or accompany.
Kagahr, I burſt.
Kudſa, I bark.
Kyryhn, the Shadow.
Kahna, I ſee.
Kehr, I ſeek for.
Kaieldgi, I ſleep.
Kirtægi, I die.
Kolagati, patient.
Kuſchugu, Glaſs.

Kochſchin,

Kochſchin, a Glaſs Bottle.
Kotziermachan, ſmoaked Fleſh.
Kutzu, the Neck.
Kurihon, a Wedding.
Kuſzur, a Joyner's Plane.
Kutſchluck, a Shirt.
Kuræ, an Iſland.
Kumene, yours.
Kanai, their.
Kuja, I pardon, or ſhew Mercy.
Koko, gray.
Kinei, I remember.
Kumælack, Hop, Hops.
Kindſchur, *Kalagai*, } Hemp.
Kotſcopſchi, the Cock of a Gun.
Kadholdanæi, I trade or deal.
Kagahldghi, I hack or hew in Pieces.
Kubun, *Chukun*, Children.
Kriſu, prudent.
Kirſu, Prudence.
Kaſkuhr, the Rammer of a Gun.
Kamjuhr, a Ruler.
Kinſchir dæſſun, a Line.
Kuludgi, I ſuffer.
Kun, or *Chun*, Man, *(Homo.)*
Kibis, Matts made of Baſt.
Kaniwi, with us.
Kungæn, I diminiſh.
Ki, I lay together.
Kipzuhr, a little Meſſenger. I rather believe the *German* is miſ-ſpelt, and that the Author's Meaning is a little Boat.
Kadabdotzſchi, I buy.
Kamar, the Noſe.
Kamaranuſſu, the Noſtrils.
Kumuſun, the Nails.
Kuiſu, the Navel.
Kadſs, the Nails.
Kura, I ſow together.
Ko, I take in Exchange.
Katſarla, I take ill.
Kula, I take amiſs.
Kængærga, a Kettle-Drummer.
Kirſu, a Horſe.
Kahla, a Powder-Horn.
Kelæna, I ſpeak.
Kajorladgi, I bleſs.
Kuwadgi, I ſeparate.
Kandagai, a Rain-Deer.
Kunoi, Red Lime, Clay.
Konadgi, I reſt.
Kukænæ, I clean.
Karon, a Rake, Harrow.
Koitzchi, a Sheepfold.
Kukuhr, Brimſtone.
Kutuſun, Boots.
Kutſchim, a Night-Gown.
Kelemurtzel, a Tranſlator.
Kabirgal, Fuſtian.
Konodzchi, I treat.
Kahro, a Joyner.
Kuluſun, under.
Kutſchi, I overcome.
Koſchögön, a Curtain.
Kagatzun, I hinder.
Kelenæ, I forbear, ſuffer or endure.
Kelene, I promiſe.
Kuleine, I tarry.
Karadſchi, I condemn.

Kaſcha,

Kaſcha, the Wall.
Kurinæ, a wild Goat.
Kitath, Bugs.
Kuſſo, a Wilderneſs.
Kokultzchiganæ, Water-Colours.
Kolæ, when?
Kulla, far.
Kulugadſchi, I reproach him for it.
Kuradſchæ, I waſh.
Kagahl, I cut.
Kudierlegi, I glue.
Kirkæredgi, I tremble.
Kara toguta, } Lead.
Korgolſchi, }
Kuckſin, old.
Kentecte, bad, or wicked.
Körge, a Bridge.
Krime, a Squirrel.
Kandagay, an Elk.
Kabur, the Spring-Seaſon.
Köll, Foxes.
Konock, Crutches.
Kuſuni bultu, a Cravat.
Korro, a Finger.
Katun, a Woman.
Keleſen, talk'd, or ſpoken.
Kuſſu, the Neck.
Koeringe, to hope.
Koeken, or *Okyn*, a Virgin.
Kojor, *Tueſday*.
Kalon, the Heat.
Koino, after.
Kadaſu, a Nail.
Kutaga, a Knife.
Kerecte, neceſſary.
Karſſu, Paper.
Konkre, a Raven.
Kelete, the Speech.
Kalio, an Otter.
Karazoer, a Wild or Wood-Cock.
Kendu, or *Kembe*, when.
Kaſar, a Bridle.
Kurah, the Toes.
Kereckugegoma, needleſs.
Kele, the Tongue.
Kereleckuge, unneceſſary.
Kiſan, done, performed.
Koloh, far.
Koko, the Breaſts.
Kamiſcha, the Eyebrows.
Kutalſchi, knaviſh, deceitful.
Kibh, Sattin.
Kajertzeck, the Axel-tree,
Kuduhl, I work.
Kopſchi, I diſſwade.
Konoch ſaninoi, I turn up, or over.
Katha, I dry.
Kujeli, amorous.
Koſſu, Birchen-wood.
Kaloo, a Beaver.
Kukuturum, a Snafle for Horſes.
Kaſchio, or *Ariki*, Brandy.
Kundiölæ, a Blanket.
Kabærga, Camlet.
Kunduligi, I lift, or take up.
Kuboahr, Cotton.
Kaja, I pardon.
Kartſchi, I deceive, or cheat.
Kulene, I am concern'd or troubled.
Kuhrga, I accompany.

Kighi,

Kighi, *ki*, I water, ſprinkle with Water.
Kopzulu, I cover.
Karra, I view, regard.

L.

Lapp, yet, and yet.

M.

Myraldzu, a Carpet for a Table.
Madonijaja, a Tankard.
Modun Tabac, a wooden Platter.
Modun-Ukic, a wooden Cheſt.
Modun-Schira, a Bench.
Mori, a Horſe.
Munguu, Silver.
Mocklai, a Maid-Servant.
My, a Cat.
Mogoi, a Serpent.
Machan, *machai*, Fleſh, Meat.
Mendu, well in Health.
Muru, the Shoulder.
Moile, the Compound Word *Faulbaum*, which our Author has put here, I never met with in the *German* Tongue, *faul* ſignifies *putrid*, and likewiſe *lazy*, *Baum*, in *German*, is a *Tree*, perhaps his Meaning is a rotten Tree.
Mungu, Mony.
Malo, a Cough.
Miny, mine.
Mongadur, the Morning.
Malachay, a Cap.
Muru, Wheels.
Mundu, us.
Munay, our.
Mon, yet, however.
Madontoff, Oyl.
Morintzirch, Cavalry.
Medini, I explain.
Machtanei, I praiſe.
Mungu, Silver.
Mungonulſch, Cloth of Silver, Brocade.
Murgu, a Petition.
Murdu, What our Author means by *Siehlenzeug*, I am at a Loſs to determine. *Siel* ſignifies a *Sink*, or *Sewer*. *Sielen* is *to wallow*, and *Zeng* is *Stuff*. Of which compounded, I can make nothing; unleſs he means the Filth of a Sink or Sewer.
Mochlau, a Servant.
Mogoitſalzagai, a Dragon.
Müdena, I pity.
Melenie, Frogs.
Matſagwaritſchi, I faſt.
Madæchuwiſch, I keep.
Manai, our.
Manackai, thee.
Medekubiſch, nothing at all.
Muhurun, I go after.
Mondæhr, Hail.
Mal, a Lion.
Mochlaæ, a Girl.
Malaga, a Cap.

My, a Cat.
Mila, a Pipe, a Gun, the Barrel of a Gun.
Mugutzchi a Silver-Smith.
Muruga, unhappy.
Medulne, I examine, likewiſe, I mis-hear.
Martaſchi, I forget.
Mongutarchedſchi, I ſilver over.
Manul, a wild Cat.
Muri, a Gelding.
Machtana, I wonder.

N.

NUdu, the Eye.
Nuku, a Window.
Noohoy, a Dog.
Numu, a Bow, to ſhoot Arrows with.
Noguſſum, a Duck.
Namur, Autumn.
Nuurſu, Coals.
Nogo kadu, to mow Hay.
Nom, a Book.
Nogoduine, other.
Nomochon, good.
Nogon, green.
Naidzy, a Friend.
Nogen, a Lord, or Maſter.
Nogo, Graſs.
Nodo, to me.
Nochoy buda, Rye, Corn.
Noiton, wet.
Nuur, the Face.
Nugul, Buckwheat.
Namuhr, Summer.
Nemædghi, I ſprinkl e
Nale, there, thither.
Nudrogo, the Fiſt.
Numuchan, good.
Nonaei, I curſe.
Nidſchi, I fly.
Nadja, I bring it higher.
Nuken, Port-holes, Loop-holes for Guns and Muſkets.
Nadu, the Play or Game.
Negazara, January.
Neræ, to them.
Nükæ, bleached Linnen.
Nadſchi, I win.
Nichudi, I hear.
Nodrogon, Almonds.
Nurr, the Sea.
Narechan, a Maſt.
Nair, with me.
Nodghi, I hide.
Nu, I keep.
Nutu, I knock, or beat.
Næch debel, a Fur-Coat.
Nevra, I call, name.
Narechan, *China*-Paper.
Nüro, to ſmell.
Nudhur, a Stamp,
Nechta, I tell, count.
Nughul, I go round about.
Nerræ, eminent.
Nagodhur, after to Morrow.
Nomokon, I enter into an Aſſociation.
Noo, *Nonæi*, I keep.
Næmæ, I diminiſh.
Nækæ, white Linnen.
Naſſan, Wool.
Nana, how?
Nuuhr, I grow.

Nunghoe,

Nunghoe, I count.
Nachu karſu, Cards, a Pack of Cards.

O.

OTaga, a Knife.
Oro, the Bed.
Obaduo, the Knee.
Orimiſſun, Stockings.
Omedun or *Amedun*, Breeches.
Okyn, a little Girl.
Oboſu, Hay.
Oo, to drink.
Ola, or *Ula*, *gola*, a Mountain.
Opchu, the Breaſt.
Ocer, a Croſs.
Oeſſeru, an Enemy.
Ocie, go, go thither.
Olſondo, impriſoned.
Oeber, a Horn.
Oeke, the Mother.
Oelen, hungry.
Ochor, ſhort.
Oyro, near.
Olon-ſarnut, Cattle.
Oſſon, to drink.
Okin, the Daughter.
Oetzege, or *Ygæ*, the Father.
Olohn, not much.
Ogaiti, the Arm.
Otkor, Cardemum.
Oethegu, a Bear.
Oeutſhi, I go off.
Oebutſhi, a Scorpion.
Oetkun, Huſks.
Ochtu, I think.
Ochtol, I murder.
Oldſchi, I reach.
Olaielgadſchi, the Colour.
Ona, I fall upon.
Ochtugi, I meet.
Oelch, a Seal.
Oeloen, I ſay.
Ongon, God's Gift.
Orchanu, God's Mercy.
Oræk, curdled Milk.
Oeboetzchi, the Cuckow.
Oekyn, a Virgin.
Otzaguduhr, you.
Oetkun, Lees.
Obuſchadu, a Meadow.
Odſeghui, Dung.
Oedſchogon, it may be.
Ochorichon, by no Means.
Oedurduhnda, not long.
Olon, not much.
Olah, a Spunge.
Oedur, the Day.
Ogatzchi, a Drinker.
Oemos, I carry, or bear.
Onai, I drink.
Ochwadſi, I divide.
Orchaku, God's Pardon.
Onus Ordotſchi, I promiſe.
Oetuu, a Worm.
Orcki, I throw away.
Oetchoen, peeled, or Pearl-Barley.
Oluck Tzyhn, a Bitch.
Ochtugi, I meet.
Ochtzor, a Woman's Waſtcoat, or Jacket.
Ordkedgi, I throw.

P.

POſs, I ſtand.
Pataganna, to fly.
Poſu, a Birch-Tree.
Puſie, a Cedar-Tree.
Pela, a Plate.
Podſalga, I draw (viz. *out of a Barrel.*)
Pael, I open.
Piſbur, a Trumpetter.
Podſahlko, paſt.

S.

SChigitzci, the little Finger.
Sſudur, a Book.
Schara, yellow.
Sſumu, an Arrow.
Schadſagai, a Mag-py.
Suun, Summer.
Sſu, a Seat, or ſet you down.
Sdugui, a Weather-Sheep.
Schumuul, a Midge, or ſmall Fly.
Schara, Beer.
Sſu, Milk.
Saguſſun, Fiſh.
Schiabon, *Schowoon*, } a Bird.
Schiudun, the Teeth.
Schudu, a Tooth.
Salgoige, Departure.
Seleme, a Sword.
Suka, a Hatchet.
Serie, a Bed.
Suh, Vinegar.
Sola, free.
Silie, Glaſs.
Segleſangadſer, Boundaries.
Sann, or *Sogo*, an Elephant.
Sanaigaſſu, Ivory.
Salcho, lazy.
Sæm, good.
Sergene, Raſberries.
Sine, new.
Sorigtag, Need, Neceſſity.
Saroll, clear.
Sunymalachay, a Hat.
Sara, a Mouth.
Schabedzitu, a Whore.
Salo, young.
Sancin, a Cloak.
Seika, an Ear-Ring.
Schorgotago, a Pan.
Sachal abchu, to ſhave, trim.
Sierenidebeſker, a Table-Cloth.
Schar, or *Saar*, an Ox.
Schatu, a Ladder, or Stairs.
Socha, an Oven.
Seliur, the Helm of a Ship.
Siere, a Table.
Sana, Mourning.
Salky, the Wind.
Schikis, or *Zikis*, Sugar.
Schorgolgi, an Ant, or Piſmire.
Sanëi, to ſet down in Writing.
Sanatei, conſiderate.
Soltzagai, a Wood-Hen.
Satican, Cordovan-Leather.
Sayſſan, the Chancellor.
Sorga, I learn perfectly.
Sugaren, I pare.
Saldo, I export.
Schingur, I bind.

Sanuna,

Sanuna, I bite.
Schiæ, I wet, waſh, moiſten.
Schoetoe, I crown.
Saludſchi, I deſire.
Schura, Gun-powder.
Silümæ, a Sabre, or Scimitar.
Sur, a Stirrup.
Sanay, a Maid Servant.
Saptziur, a Cullender.
Samurſchun, Fir.
Salho, *Sabba*, I thraſh.
Saganbogu, an Elk.
Silbi, I preſume, or conjecture.
Schimkidi, I invent.
Serah, I awake.
Sultzaga, Pig Fleſh.
Schyno, freſh Fleſh.
Schylo, Fiſh Soop.
Schamal, a Fly.
Schuragarin, early.
Schiæmkur, I ſqueeze, or preſs together.
Sukyledgi, I feel.
Sleep, a Ship.
Sachſadgi, I ſet, put, or lay down.
Surghaku, God's Puniſhment.
Sana, the Memory.
Sanagai, ungodly.
Sorga, learned.
Salko, happy.
Scharaſan macha, roaſted Meat.
Sclomgo, the Holy Trinity.
Schirbiſun, the Skin.
Scholon, *Tzolon katzcha*, } a Stonehouſe
Schiærſe malegai, a Hat.
Scharai, Oats.
Schara otuſſun, Green.
Schignako, towards, againſt.
Suduhr, one that plays the Harp.
Suli, Oatmeal.
Schapſchicko, I hew in two.
Sonotzchi, I hear.
Skoblui, I plane.
Schygmæ, I hear.
Soloba, I hinder, or put a ſtop to.
Schænaga, a Ladle.
Sam, a Comb.
Sarimſo, a Button-hole.
Schelanæ, a Candle, or Light.
Schibærtka, a Pair of Snuffers.
Schabar, Glue.
Sudels, I learn.
Sara, the Mouth.
Sochſnæci, I ſuffer.
Solodi, I run.
Sargp, I learn.
Schiobatzchi, a Bricklayer.
Sulabi, Mares.
Saba, a Baiting Penny by the Way.
Sa, I milk.
Soglol, I underſtand.
Somortzchi, I cook, or boyl.
Soho, I walk a ſlow Pace.
Sſu, a Needle.
Sarana, a Nightingal.
Sakahr, after this, hereafter.
Saraei, I take care.
Schini, I undertake, I reſolve.
Sanugofschi, I take Priſoner.
Sarohl, Proximity, Nearneſs.

Sachalgan,

Sachalgan, the Chief Angel.
Scharaſchibeco, a Parrot.
Schin, a Plum.
Schida, a Pike or long Spear.
Sula, Paper.
Suki, a Piper.
Salgæ, I poliſh.
Subſchyla, I ſay.
Sanadſchi, I think ſo; It is my Meaning or Deſign.
Schulæ, Soop.
Schytkur, the Devil.
Schiræ, a Table.
Sagantæmæ Turkan: The *German* Word *Schwaben*, ſignifies the Inhabitants of *Swabia*; I rather think it ſhould be *Schwalben*, *Swallows*.
Schiadoku, a Condemn'd Perſon.
Schinæ, much.
Sanate, I underſtand.
Sup, again.
Salki, the Wind.
Sagſa, I ſtay.
Sagadagi, I run away.
Sangina, green Onions, Leeks or Chives.
Schabartzolon, a Tile.
Schirimu, Spelter or Metal.
Saldunei, I cut it in Pieces.
Saptzchilnai, I tap.
Saki, I hew, or cut into Pieces.
Schacha, I ſqueeze, or preſs together.

T.

Tzaroc, Slippers.
Toptzy, Buttons.
Tzaſan or *Tabac*, a Diſh.
Tzabar Tabac, an earthen Diſh.
Tzaſan - Tzaiguzu, a *China* Cup.
Themæ, a Camel.
Tumir, *Temir*, Iron.
Tulai, a Hare.
Tzunno, a Wolf.
Taka, a Hen.
Toulachan, warm.
Tzarimſum, Garlick.
Tzannagu, a baſting Ladle, or Scummer.
Tepchi, a Trough.
Tara, *Tiri*, to ſow Corn.
Tara kadu, to mow Corn.
Tara tata, to grind Corn.
Theremæ, a Mill.
Tzika, the Ear.
Tzakall, or *Zakall*, the Beard.
Toſſum, or *Toſſu*, Butter.
Tologoi, the Head.
Teke, a Buck, or Buck-Goat.
Tergrindo, } Thunder.
Togara, }
Talcha, Bread.
Tabickdaſſan, to exempt, or remit.
Tymuhr, an Anchor.
Tzihikur, an evil Angel.
Tzuka, a Hatchet.
Tzukatſchi, the Heft or Handle of a Hatchet.
Tzingnur, Stilliards.
Temætſchi, a Camelherd.
Tubſchi, Cinnamon.
Tzegmundæbel, a Waſtcoat.

Temæ,

Temæ, a Camel.
Taæt, I unty.
Tæweræ, I put on.
Tzakuhr, of divers Colours.
Toko, the Canon of a Bridle.
Tanges, a Petition or Requeſt.
Tulitzchi, I burn.
Tulkidſchi, I accuſe.
Tulæ, or *Tolo*, I pay.
Tolodghi, I view.
Tzinon, Straw.
Tzolo, or *Tzolon*, a Rock.
Tamma, a ſpinning Wheel.
Torgomutuſan, Silk.
Torgo, Silk-Stuff.
Tumor kuchæ, Wollen and Linnen Goods.
Tawi, a Piece.
Tamagala, a Seal.
Tziargai, a Sledge.
Thumur Kuchu, dark.
Tende, there, thither.
Tataghi, bold, hardy.
Tochoi, the Ellbow.
Taſchalai, a Muſhroom.
Tulgedhie, I remember.
Tſakur, a Flintſtone.
Tſagaſſun, or *Sagaſſun*, a Fiſh.
Tala, a Field.
Taratzchin, Tillage.
Tchitſohi, Fiddleſtrings.
Tabru, for.
Tſitſchiri, I am cold.
Tzagbalgan, Lightning.
Tedſchiæ, the Helm of a Ship.
Tziul, the hind part of a Ship, Stern.
Taiſhi, a Prince's Son.

Toeloekunge, I ſtand before; I preſide over.
Tabinu, I put, ſet, or place.
Tzuſedredſchi, to put on.
Tengri, the Son of God.
Tzejath, a Spirit, Ghoſt.
Tengrinomokon, pious.
Tengrikaiertowo, God's Help.
Taramæ, Squirels.
Tſarama, Barly-Grut or Meal.
Tabaman, a Governor, or Tutor.
Turezu, the hind Leg.
Taratzchi, a Herdſman.
Tullæ, Wood.
Tzurbultu, a Pike-fiſh.
Tzolæn, Haw-thorn.
Tabuſch, a Bee.
Tſchi, thou.
Tera or *Tere*, he.
Teda, ſhe.
Tidene, his.
Tzaiwurkuhr, gray.
Tzapſchiur, Arms.
Tacha, a Horſeſhoe.
Tutarga, Hirſe or Millet.
Tutſchi, I hold.
Tulæ, the Heat.
Togolan, or *Dogolan*, lame.
Tzanagan, Craw-fiſh.
Togul, a Calf.
Tæræmæ, a Grain.
Tarbuſs, Colewort, Cabbage.
Tzichtzichtzchi, a Bailiff or Magiſtrate in the Country.
Tzurbultu, a Salmon.
Taſchilai, Lemons.
Tellul, I let, or leave.

Tatta, I leave behind, I abate, or remit.
Tula, I looſen.
Thermetzchi, the Miller.
Tzara matſchin, a Sea-Cat.
Taraa, Malt.
Termætata, the Mill.
Tochoy, the Elbow.
Tack, a Flag, or Colours.
Turgin, pretty, handſome, briſk.
Tabu, Friday.
Tængri, the Heavens.
Tandu, to him.
Togoru, a Crane.
Turlaky, a Jack-daw.
Togolga, Tin.
Terege, the Cheek.
Tata, I draw or pull.
Tala, I ſettle or adjuſt.
Turbogatſchi, I take.
Tawidghi, I leave behind, abate or remit.
Turubſi, a Piper.
Tazchior, a Whip.
Toelai, *Dziuru*, one that plays the Baſe-viol.
Talantagnai, Parſly.
Tauna, a Pearl.
Taſchior-bu, a Piſtol.
Tzirghenkuhn, the Pan of a Piſtol.
Tzugla, Cartridges.
Tzaſon, Paper.
Tuche, grey Paper.
Tſor, a Pipe.
Tzaſſo, Snow.
Tziſchiriku, *Nuur*, Rye.
Tzagas, the *German* Word, which is here *Rieben*, has no Signification. I believe it ſhould be *Rüben*, Turnips, or *reiben*, to rub.
Thæ, a Reed, or Tube.
Tamagatzchi, a Receiver of Taxes.
Temertzchi, a Smith.
Tulkur, a Lock, or a Caſtle: For the *German* Word ſignifies both.
Tæli, a Looking-glaſs.
Tongruck, a Razor.
Tacha, Shoes.
Tepſch, a Trough.
Tzigme, Cloth.
Tzordo, a Trumpeter.
Tachtochowiſi, impatient.
Teberidſchi, I embrace.
Tyroel, related, akin.
Tzoebyr, the Hyena.
Tachto, formerly.
Tolo, I burn.
Toeloe, I accuſe.
Tulu, I melt.
Tübſchin, I forgive him.
Tægæ, I deny.
Tzagan, the White of an Egg.
Tzionu, a Wolf.
Tzirlik, a Wild Horſe.
Turii, a Weaver's Loom.
Tirgæ, a Waggon.
Tændæ, I dwell.
Togo, a Kettle.

U.

ULmy, the Ball of the Foot.
Ulla, the Sole of the Foot.
Ukic, a Cheſt or Box.
Uker, or *Une*, a Cow.
Uttego, or *Oethegoe*, a Bear.
Unega, a Fox.
Ulan, red.
Ubill, Winter.
Umiki, a Stink, ill Smell.
Unta, to Sleep.
Undaaſua, thirſty.
Ude, a Door, or Gate.
Udeka, ſhut the Door.
Ude-tael, open the Door.
Utaa, rough.
Uneſun, Aſhes.
Ukir-machan, Cow-fleſh.
Utſuo, a Feather.
Udeſſi, the Evening.
Ugote, poor.
Uilaſſu, Alder-wood.
Uwan or *Wann*, a Prince.
Uckuguldur, yeſterday.
Utur, quick.
Uſſu, the Hairs.
Ukrinudu, Garden-currants.
Uſu or *Sui*, Water.
Uir, Cattle.
Undur, great.
Urula, an Anvil.
Udoe, always.
Utziu, the Breaſt.
Udurburi, every Day.
Urun, a Gimlet.
Utaſudæbel, a Countryman's Coat.
Udghi, an Under Waſtcoat.
Undoſſun, Black or foreign dried Currants.
Ulgudi, I keep.
Uſedgi, I give out, or diſtribute.
Ulæhe, I blow.
Uſigi, or *Uaza*, I view, regard.
Uren, Seed.
Unda, ſmall Beer.
Ula, Sole-Leather.
Unuſſu, Velvet.
Utnaſun, dark-brown.
Urta, therefore.
Udzur, the End.
Uuntra, I drown.
Utaan, a Fire-brand.
Umiki, ſtinking, putrid.
Udſum, Figs.
Ukutſchi aſak, I ſwoon.
Uræchatu, I catch.
Uganæ, I preſent one with ſomething.
Urtum, the Prow, Head or Stem of a Ship.
Uturchen, preſently, immediately.
Untaghi, I ſleep.
Ungudgi, I am choaked, or ſuffocated.
Udſchi, I puſh.
Ugontichi, merciful, gracious.

Ulam, Barley.
Uſſu, Hair.
Ürgüt, Wood.
Uja, Ermine or Armelin.
Urtubæ, a *Turkiſk* Gun.
Urtu, enough, much, great, long.
Urghu, *Urga*, I lift up.
Utur, quarrelſom.
Urol, the Lips.
Uchar, a Spoon.
Uzun, the Maſter.
Utaga, a Knife.
Ulan-gholi, Copper.
Urur margaſh, to morrow, if God pleaſe.
Ughu, I moulder away.
Ujæhæ, I can.
Unus, I kiſs.
Uda, in the Afternoon.
Udon, a Feather Bolſter.
Urala, I forge.
Untakabiſchi, I do not Sleep.
Unætzchi, juſt, upright.
Ulakotaſſun, a red Colour.
Ulærbdzi, an Adjutant of the Artillery.
Uran, a Taylor.
Uurha, a Chimney.
Ununæ, Death.
Ubuzu, the Fore-Houſe, or Hall.
Udurdunda, the Forenoon.
Uſchyna, the Evening-Time.
Uhr-Behri, I produce it.
Urtſchi, I forbear, endure, or bear with.
Ur, I bear, carry.
Udun urgu, I make over, tranſfer.
Udeſſu, a Root.
Unadgi, I light, ſet on Fire.
Ubol, Winter.
Untrane, I waſh out.
Ulutſchi, I cry, weep.
Uruptſchi, I bring again.

W.

Waridhgi, I lay hold of, or ſeize.

Z.

Zabu, Glue.
Zaaſſun, Paper.
Zaſſu, Snow.
Zagan, white.
Zaibur, brown.
Zagan-Gir, a Parlour.
Zunginno, Onions.
Zadoba, ſatiated.
Zakkur, a Flintſtone.
Zugar, all.
Zoier, a wild or Wood Hen.
Zuracha, a Pike. (Fiſh.)
Zagangoreſu, a Roe.
Zay, Tea.
Zaganbuda, Rice.
Zuzli, Blood.
Zonaſawnoi, ſorrowful.

Zacha, blind.
Zain, fine, handſom.
Zaintzigma, *Uſbæ*, Crimſon.
Zagutzchi, a Fiſherman.
Zamuhr, I ſalute.
Zagatzchi, the Holy Ghoſt.
Zala, or *Okyn*, a Virgin.
Zaptzchi, I hew, ſtrike.
Zuſarowa, I let out.
Zubæ, a Rib-roaſting.
Zikæ, Ear-Rings.
Zanieduhr, I ſalt.
Zaræ, the Ribs.
Zanadgi, I become accuſtomed.





AN

HISTORI-GEOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION OF THE Ancient and Modern State of the *North*-and *Eaſtern* Part of EUROPE and ASIA; eſpecially of the Empire of *Ruſſia*, being the *Northern* Part thereof.

CHAP. I.

Of the different Names and Denominations of Ruſſia, *and their Derivations.*

SUMMARY.

§. I. *THE Reaſons which induced the Author to write a Deſcription of the* Ruſſian Empire. II. *The ſeveral Ancient and Modern Names of* Ruſſia. *Six of which have been given it by the Inhabitants; And other Six by their Neighbours.* III. *The Author does not deſign to enter into a too nice Diſcuſſion of the Etymology of theſe Names.* IV. *The true Derivation of the*

Name Scythia, *and how* Ruſſia *came by that Name.* V. Ruſſia *has likewiſe been call'd* Sauromatia *or* Sarmatia. *This Name has been pronounced ſix different Ways, and, among the reſt,* Sargatia. *The Signification of the Word* Sourima, *which ſome pretend to be the ſame with* Sarmatia. *The Author doubts of it. Others derive this Name from the Words* Saur, Sör *and* Mader. VI. *The Author induc'd by* Diodorus Siculus *to have a different Opinion of the Names* Sauromatia *and* Sarmatia. *Theſe People had that Name before in* Aſia, *and were therefore properly call'd ſo by the* Greeks, *and not, as ſome have thought,* Sauromatæ, *on Account of their ſmall Eyes, reſembling thoſe of a* Lizard. VII. *The ancient Inhabitants of* Ruſſia *are diſtinguiſh'd among themſelves by their* Red *or* Black Hair. *The firſt Colony of the* Scythians, *who ſettled in* Sarmatia *were red-hair'd, and, as they came out of* Medea *or* Madai, *this is the true Original of the Name* Sarimatia, *or* Saurimatia, *or the red-hair'd* Medians. VIII. *Several Inſtances, that the Ancients were wont to give Names to Nations, according to ſuch, or the like natural Qualities. Exceptions that may be made anſwer'd by other Inſtances.* IX. *Whence the Name* Ruſſia *aroſe? There is a Difference between* Ruſſia *and* Roſſia: *The latter is an Interpretation of the Name* Sarmatia. X. *The Signification of the Name* Roſſiane *or* Roſſia. *It is a* Sclavonian *Primitive, and was not in Uſe in* Ruſſia, *'till about Two Hundred Years ago.* XI. *Of the Name* Roxolania, *which the Author takes to be a* Finnlandian, *and not a* Sclavonian *Word.* XII. *The Author leaves thoſe Names of* Ruſſia, *which were given it by Foreigners, and their Neighbours, to be explained by others.* XIII. *Of all theſe Names, that of* Ruſſia *has been the moſt common. It is a Miſtake of ſome Writers, to call this Country* Muſcovy.

I. AS the natural State of the Countries, on the one Hand, and the political Diviſions thereof, between the ſeveral Powers who govern them, on the other, have given me Occaſion to ſub-divide the *North* and *Eaſtern* Part of *Europe* and *Aſia* again into two Parts, *viz.* the *Northern* and *Southern*; So, according to the ſame Order, it is requiſite that I begin with the *Nor-*

Northern Part, which contains the EMPIRE of RUSSIA; And as this geat and mighty Empire had its Origin, as well as its Name, from *Russia proprie sic dicta* (or properly so called) I shall first mention the several Denominations, by which that Part of the present Empire of *Russia* has formerly been distinguish'd.

II. BUT as is is very evident, that Empires, Countries, Nations, and Cities, have been very liable to a Variation of Names, especially when their Inhabitants have not been constantly one and the same; *e. g. England* was formerly call'd *Britain*, *Persia*, *Elam*, and *Jerusalem*, by the *Jebusites*, *Jebus*; So it has likewise happen'd to *Russia Proper*; For it has been nam'd, (1.) *Scythia*, (2.) *Sarmatia*, (3.) *Roxolania*, (4.) *Ruthenia*, (5.) *Russia*, and, (6.) *Rossiane*. These Denominations have, indeed, all been taken from the Names either of its former, or present Inhabitants; But *Russia Proper*, has also had other very different Names, especially among its neareſt Neighbours, which have been taken from its particular Properties; as, (1.) *Ostregard*, (2.) *Holmgard*, or *Garderyck*, (3.) *Chunigard*, (4.) *Vannama*, (5.) *Uli-ma*, and, (6.) *Creven-Sembla*.

III. NOW, it might, indeed, be very agreable, as well as useful, to shew the Origin of these Names, as well from Etymology as History; But as this would not only be a Matter of great Labour, but would carry me too far, I shall only examine some of them, of the Derivation of which, I believe, I have had an Opportunity of coming at the most likely Conjectures.

IV. RUSSIA was at first comprehended under the Name of *Scythia*, and I have already shewn, in the Introduction, (*Sect.* III. §. VII. *in the second Note*) that the Name *Scythia* had its Origin from the Words *Scyth*, *Sket*, *Tschiut* and *Zeyaht*, &c. This I have always taken to be its most natural Derivation; Especially, when I observed, that several Machines, Creatures, *&c.* have mostly borrow'd their Names from their natural Properties, and sometimes also from their Sound, Tone, or Noise; *e. g.* a Bomb hath certainly its Name from the Noise it makes at Bursting, and from this the Name of Bombardeers is derived. So likewise an Archer, was, no doubt, call'd *Ischud*, *Schud*, *Scyth* and *Zeyaht*, from the hissing Sound we hear when the Arrow leaves the Bow: But as the most natural Names may be corrupted

rupted by a wrong Pronunciation, and the Dialects of different Nations; So it has happened with the Name *Scythian*. It is, likewiſe, undeniable, that this Nation has had new, or Surnames, on Account of the frequent Changes it has been liable to, and other Peculiarities, *e. g.* From gathering themſelves together, at certain Times, into *Turmas*, Troops; Or from their wandering from one Place to another; Or again from their living in Tents. And, therefore, ſome will derive the *Scythian* Name, from the Word *Skitatiſia*, which we find in the moſt ancient *Sclavonian* Writings, and ſignifies *wandering about*; *e. g.* In *Holy Scripture*, it is ſaid of the *Children of Iſrael*, that they wander'd about in the Wilderneſs: In which Paſſage, in the *Sclavonian* Bible, the Word us'd is *Skitatiſia*; Which, however, ſignifies here no more than according to the Way and Manner of the *Scythians*; Who likewiſe wandered from one Place to another; And thus this Word itſelf is derived from the Name of *Scyth*. Juſt as the Word *Judaize* (ſignifying to act in Conformity to the Manners of the *Jews*) comes from the Name *Judah*. In the Introduction, (*Sect.* III. §. VII. *the ſecond Note*,) I ſaid, that the *Greeks* firſt introduc'd the Name of *Scyth*, but this is only to be underſtood of the particular Pronunciation of the *Greeks*; For they had before the Surnames of *Zeyathi* and *Schudi*, with which, at the ſame Time, they had alſo peculiar Proper Names. But why *Ruſſia* had, likewiſe, this Name, the learned Profeſſor *Theoph. Siegfried Beyerus* (1) has given us a pretty good Account. The *Nomadian Scythians*, (ſays he) who, before the Time of *Herodotus*, lived on the *Eaſt* Side of the *Wolga*, and *Northwards* from the *Caſpian* Sea, were driven from thence by the *Maſſagetæ*, and afterwards went to dwell on the *Weſt* Side of the *Wolga*, where they, at Length, ſettled, between the 47th and 55th Degree of Longitude, and the 45th and 57th Degree of Latitude, on the right and left Sides of the River *Boryſthenes*, now called the *Nieper*, or *Dnieper*, where the *Crim-Nogaian*-and *Budziack-Tartars* at preſent inhabit. Among the Deſcendants of theſe *Scythian* Nations, he reckons, (1.) the *Lithuanians*, (2.) the *Finnlandians*, (3.) the *Eſthonians*, (4.) the Ancient *Pruſſians*, (5.) the *Laplanders*, and, (6.) the *Courlanders*, and ſome few others;

(1) *Vid. Comment. Acad. Scient. Petropolit. Tom. I. p.* 389, & 410. *ſeq.*

others; But not the *Sclavonians*, and thoſe Nations, which now are comprehended under the Name of *Sarmatians* and *Tartars*. Whence, then, as this Country, which was thus inhabited by the *Scythians*, contains a Part of *Ruſſia*, it may probably have got the Name of *Scythia*, *in latiori Senſu*. By which Opinion we will likewiſe, at preſent, abide; Though, in the Sequel, I may, here and there, make ſome farther Obſervations concerning this Matter. For Inſtance, when to make it more perſpicuous, I ſhall ſhew, (it being undeniable that this Name, by Degrees, extended farther, from the *Eaſt* to the *Weſt*) how long the Name of *Scythian* was in Vogue in the *Eaſt*? How, and in what Manner it ceaſed, as well in *Europe*, as in *Aſia*: And to what Nations in particular it moſt properly belong'd?

V. SECONDLY, *Ruſſia* has been called *Sarmatia*; And as to this Name, it has been very differently pronounced, by different Nations; As, (1.) *Haſſarmauth*, (2.) *Sauromatia*, (3.) *Surima*, (4.) *Saurmadera*, (5.) *Sargatia*, and, (6.) *Sarmatia*. The *Jews* (according to *Arnold. Montanus*, in his *Apparatus Biblicus*,) call'd it *Haſſarmauht*, which ſignifies a *Room*, or a *Place of Death*, and, in a Metaphorical Senſe, a *terrible* and *dangerous Place*. The *Greeks* call'd it *Sauromatia*, and the Inhabitants of it *Sauromatæ*, which Name, as it is ſaid, is taken from *Sauros*, a *Lizard*, and *Ommata Eyes*. This Compariſon with a *Lizard*, is, perhaps, becauſe that Animal has little Eyes, which we know is a Property belonging to the *Kalmucks*. The *Latins* and *Romans* called it *Sarmatia*, the Reaſon of which I ſhall ſhew below, as likewiſe that it has been call'd *Sargatia*, (2) Of which *Marius Niger* takes Notice, that, The *Aſiatic Sarmatia* was called ſo, only in the Language of that Country.

VI. I COME now to the Name, *Surima*, which ſome derive from the *Finnlandian* Words, *Suori*, *great* and *Ma*, *Land*, and it will then denote as much as now *Great Ruſſia*. And, as it is ſaid, was pronounced, according to the Dialect of other Na-

(2) *Pomp. Mela*, (*L. II. c.* 1.) makes alſo mention of the *Sargatian* Nations, and places them near the *Palus Mæotis*. *Valerius Flaccus* (*L. VI.*) calls them *Flavi crine Satarchæ*: But among the *Hungarian* Nations, which are deſcended from the *Hungarian-Scythians*, *Sarga* and *Sargain* ſignifies *color croceus*, and *flavus*, which is one and the ſame with *Sari* and *Sauri*, as the Word *Crimſon*, (or, as the *Germans* ſay, *Carmoiſin*, which, however, is the *French Cramoiſi*) denotes almoſt the ſame as *Sargaſin* in the *Hungarian* Language.

tions, *Sarima* and *Saurima*. I confeſs this has the Appearance of a good and right Interpretation, and likewiſe, that the *Sarmatians* poſſeſſed a large Tract of Land; But that this is not the proper Origin of the famous Name *Sarmatian*, and *Sauromatian*, will appear below; Neither had the firſt *Sarmatians* conquered ſo great a Territory, that it could, from thence, be call'd *Suorima*; Yet I readily allow, that after it began to be call'd *Great Ruſſia*, it might very well deſerve that Name.

VII. OTHERS are of Opinion, becauſe the *Getæ* were ſuppoſed to be divided into *Northern* and *Southern*, and, in the *Gothick* Language, *Saur* or *Sær*, ſignifies *South*, and *Mader*, a Man, that, therefore, the latter were call'd *Sær* or *Saur Maderi*; (i. e. *Men of the South.*) And to this they add; That, becauſe *Sere* or *Schere*, in the *Finnlandian* Language, denotes *South*, and *Mies* a Man, and the *Scheremæſſi* are ſtill in *Ruſſia*, this is likewiſe a ſynonimous Term with the Word *Saurmaderi*, and of Conſequence, that *Ruſſia* got the Name of *Sarmatia* from theſe Nations. Now this I will indeed allow, that as ſome other Nations got their Names from the *Northern* or *Southern* Situation of their Country, ſo *Sarmatia* may, at the ſame Time, have got this Name, likewiſe, from the *Southern* People, who were Inhabitants of it, eſpecially ſince the *Sarmatians* liv'd on the *Pontus*, and on the *Palus Mæotis*. Thus the *Sarmatians* may alſo have been called *Sarmaderians* or *Southern*; And thoſe who have not diſtinguiſh'd the Pronunciation ſo exactly, may have uſed one for the other. Notwithſtanding all which, I believe, that the Reaſons which I am now going to alledge, concerning the Signification of the Name *Sarmatia*, will appear to have a more ſolid Foundation.

VIII. DIODORUS SICULUS is the Author, who has induced me to lay aſide theſe Etymologies, and has ſuggeſted the following different Opinion: For when he writes of theſe *Sarmatians*, he ſays (3): *A regibus illis cum aliæ tum duæ maximæ coloniæ ex gentibus bello ſubactis deductæ ſunt; quarum altera ab* Aſſyriis *in agrum* Paphlagoniæ & Ponto *interjectum tranſlata, altera ex* Media *ad* Tanaim *collocata fuit, cujus populi* Sauromatæ *nominantur, qui multis poſt annis numero & viribus aucti, magnam* Scythiæ

(3) *Lib. II. Fol.* 127. *Edit. Wechel. Hanov.* 1604.

thiæ *partem devaſtarunt. i. e.* " By theſe Kings (*viz.* the *Scy-*
" *thians*, who firſt invaded the *Leſſer Aſia*) two very large Co-
" lonies, (beſides others,) of thoſe Nations who were overcome
" in War, were carried away Captive; One of which was tran-
" ſported from *Aſſyria* (*or the Region about* Damaſcus) into the
" Country which is between *Paphlagonia* and the *Black Sea*;
" And the other from *Media* to the *Tanais*, The Nations ſprung
" from this latter Colony, were called *Sauromatæ*, who, many
" Years after, becoming very numerous and mighty, laid Waſte
" a great Part of *Scythia*.

IX. If, with this, I examine into the Invaſion of the *Mungal* or *Scythian* Nations, under the Command of *Ogus-Chan*, out of the *Greater* into the *Leſſer Aſia* (4); I find, that the Relation of *Diodorus Siculus*, as well as thoſe of other authentick Writers, corroborate this March, which *Ogus-Chan* made with his People. I ſhall ſtate it in a few Words: He came, with his Army, out of *Sogdiana*, or the Country of the preſent *Coſaci Horda* (5), went from thence *Southward*, to the great Cities of *Buchara* and *Balck*, or *Bactra*, in the Regions of the *Uſbecks*, then continued his March *Weſtward* to *Choraſan*, and, from thence, through *Perſia*, into *Paleſtine* and *Egypt*. After this he rerurned to *Syria* and *Aſſyria*, where, and eſpecially about *Damaſcus*, he ſtayed a conſiderable Time, before he returned into *Scythia* (6); And from hence, (as it is very probable) the two great Colonies of the Nations (which *Diodorus* here mentions) that were overcome, and now incorporated with his Army, went, one to the *Black Sea*, and the other through *Media*, over Mount *Caucaſus*, which latter extended itſelf to the *Tanais*. And the Nations ſprung from theſe Colonies were, by the *Greeks*, call'd *Sauromatæ*; or, according to the Pronunciation of the *Latins* and *Romans*, *Sarmatæ* (both which are right.) But it being very hard to believe, that they ſhould have called themſelves *Lizard Eyes*, from ſo contemptible a Creature, much leſs

(4) Which we muſt ſo far lay down, from the Hiſtories of *Aſia*, as a Foundation; Becauſe it is ſo well known in thoſe Parts, and believ'd, by the *Aſiatick* Nations, to be as true, as we believe the Atchievements of *Alexander the Great* and *Julius Cæſar* to be.

(5) The *Coſaci Horda* live to the *North-Eaſt* of the *Caſpian Sea*.

(6) *Vid. Hiſt. Geneal. des Tart. p.* 58. and compare what I have alledged in the Appendix to my Introduction, (§. VIII.) from *Diodorus Siculus*.

that they ſhould have put up with ſuch an opprobious Name from their Companions, from whom they ſeparated, I ſhall ſhew, on the contrary, that the *Sarmadian*, or *Saurmadian* Name, is not only honourable, but alſo that *Saurmadia* and *Sarmadia* is all one; And that, therefore, the *Greeks* called them by the ſame Name they had before they left *Aſia*.

X. If therefore we conſider, in the firſt Place, the Nations now living in the *Empire* of *Ruſſia*; and thoſe who are partly *Heathens*, and Deſcendants of the Antient Inhabitants thereof; They may be pretty nearly diſtinguiſh'd (7): For ſome of them have *black Hair*, and *little dark grey*, or *grey browniſh Eyes*; and others have *reddiſh Hair* and *large bluiſh Eyes*. The *Baſhkirrs*, *Coſaci Horda*, the *Oby-Oſtiacks*, *Permecki*, *Sireni* and *Wotiacks*, have almoſt all *red Hair* and *bluiſh Eyes*. And the *Scheremiſſi*, *Kalmucks*, *Wogulitzi*, *Morduini*, *Samojedes*, *Laplanders*, and Part of the *Finnlandians* have *black Hair* and little *dark grey* or *browniſh Eyes*. My Deſign will not allow me to examine at large into the Reaſon, why theſe Nations, who have almoſt all one Nutriment, one Dialect, and live all under one Climate, differ ſo much, I leave this to others, and ſhall only prove my Aſſertion by what follows; viz. *Sari* in the *Tartarian* and *Mungalian* Language; *Sor* and *Saur*, in the Ancient *Gothick*, and the old *French* Languages; and *Sarga*, in the *Hungarian*, ſignify *reddiſh yellow* (8). Now ſince among thoſe Colonies, that went out of *Media* from *Ogus-Chan*'s Army, there was ſuch a Difference in their *Hair* and *Eyes* as to this Day is to be found among their Off-ſpring; And *Diodorus* confirms, that one of theſe Colonies ſettled on the *Tanais*; They were probably called on that Account, *Sari-Madai* and *Sauro-Madai*, or the *Red* (hair'd People) from *Media*.

XI. But to alledge nothing without a Proof; It is very evident, from many Inſtances, that formerly, eſpecially in theſe Countries, it has been cuſtomary to give Sur-Names to Nations from ſuch Peculiarities and diſtinguiſhing Marks; Thus thoſe who

(7) The Author of the Remarks on the Tranſlation of the *Hiſtoire Geneal. des Tart.* ſeems not to agree with this. But as he, perhaps, has not been ſo far into theſe Countries himſelf, and may mean, in his Remarks, only the Faces and Stature of the *Tartars*, from which, however, the *Tunguſians* more particularly, and ſome other little *Hords* are to be excepted, he could not be ſo exact in his Diſtinctions.

(8) *Dict. Univerſ. de Trevoux, Tom. III.*

who ſtain'd their Faces, Hands and Bodies, to repreſent certain Figures, (as the *Tunguſians* do, to this Day) were called *Picti* (9). And even in *Ruſſia* itſelf, they to this Hour, call the ancient Inhabitants, who dwelt there before the Arrival of the *Sclavonians*, *Tzudi bieli glaſi*, (*i. e.* white or blue-ey'd *Heathens* or *Scythians.*) Moreover, the Term *Sargatia* ſignifying, in the *Hungarian* Language, *red*, or *reddiſh-yellow*, as has been ſaid before, it is hardly to be doubted, but the Name of the *Saurmadæ* or *Sarmatæ*, muſt have had its true Origin from the Words *Saur*, *Sari*, *Sarga*, and *Madai*; Eſpecially as this may not only be proved, principally by the Hiſtory of the Ancient State both of *Europe* and *Aſia*; But alſo by the Similitude, and Signification, of the Names, and the exteriour Appearances of thoſe Nations, who are yet in the *Ruſſian* Empire, and whoſe Anceſtors were the Ancient Inhabitants thereof. Here, however, the Queſtion may ariſe, why theſe Nations might not have had their Names from ſomething elſe that was peculiar to them, as well as juſt from their *red Hair?*

To

(9) I have already alledged of the *Tunguſians*, that they might, likewiſe, be properly called *Picti*; and I muſt add here, that beſides the *Tunguſian* Nation in *Siberia*, there was another *Horda*, formerly, called *Piegaga* or *Pieſtra*, (i. e. *the ſpotted or ſpeckled Horda*;) But theſe are almoſt extinct, except ſome few of this Kind who are diſperſed here and there. (*Vid. Autor. de l'Hiſtor. des Tart. p.* 494. in the Note.) * I have ſeen a Man of this Kind in *Tobolsky*, whoſe Hair was all ſhav'd off, except about a Finger's Breadth; He had, all over his Head, Spots as white as Snow, and perfectly round, of the Bigneſs of a *Saxon double Groſch*, (or about the Size of a Shilling,) which looked wonderfully odd; Inſomuch that I then thought with myſelf, if this *Tartar* was in *Europe*, he might be ſhewn for a Sight; But the People in *Tobolsky* made ſo little Wonder at all of it, that they only laugh'd at him. His Body was likewiſe ſpotted and ſpeckled, much in the ſame Manner; The white of the Skin was ſoft and ſmooth; But the Spots were blackiſh Brown, and the Skin was ſomewhat coarſer; however, the Spots were not ſo regular as on the Head. In my Travels farther into *Siberia*, I ſaw more of the like People, but ſpeckled in a different Manner, that is, on their Heads, with Spots not like thoſe of a Tiger, but like a py-ball'd, ſpotted Horſe, *viz.* ſome long, ſome oval, and others of another Figure, and the ſame upon their Bodies. Another I ſaw, whoſe Hair was one half of it white as Snow, and the other half black; I asked the *Tartars*, whether they were born ſo? Their Anſwer was; Some were, but that others got it by Sickneſs. Such ſpeckled People are common on the River *Czulim*, and near the City of *Craſnojahr*, on the River *Jeniſei*, among the *Kiſtimian Tartars*.

* The Author here quoted calls theſe People *Peſtraya Orda*, (or *the pied Tribe*) and ſpeaks of them as being naturally ſpeckled, and not render'd ſo by Art, as our Author likewiſe does in the Sequel; But then the former believes all that is ſaid of theſe People to be Fiction: Becauſe, (1.) after the moſt diligent Enquiry, of Perſons who had been in thoſe Parts, he never could hear of any one that had ever ſeen one of them; And (2.) if there were any ſuch very peculiar People in his Dominions, ſo curious a Monarch as *Peter* I. would certainly have had ſome of them at his Court. Our Author, however, not only pretends to ocular Demonſtration, but, likewiſe, ſays, they are very common.

To which may be reply'd: Why do we *(ſc. in Germany)* call thoſe who have *black* or *red Hair*, Black-Head and Red Head? Why are the Off-ſpring of *Eſau* call'd, in the *Hebrew* Tongue, *Edomites*, from their ruddy Colour? And do not the *Coſaci Horda*, to this Day, call the *Baſhkirrs*, *Sari Yſchteck*, (or *red-hair'd Oſtiacks)* as has been mention'd before: Beſides, we muſt know, that, not only with theſe People, but among the *ancient Germans*, *red Hair* was counted a Beauty (10). And the *Pagans* and *Tartars* in *Aſia* and *Siberia* prefer *Red* ſo much before any other Colour, that, when they are about to call, or deſcribe any Thing very beautiful, they call it *Red*. Thus the *Turks* call the City of *Rome*, as being a magnificent Place, *Kiſil-alma*, (i. e. *Red Apple* (11); Which Cuſtom the *Ruſſians* have, likewiſe; as a *beautiful Maid*, they call *Craſna Devitza*; a *fine City*, *Craſnagorod*; which properly ſignify *a red Girl*, *a red City*. The *Aſtracan* and *Turkiſh Tartars* cloath their Children on Holy-Days and high Feſtivals in Red. And the *Jakuhti Oſtiacks*, and other Nations beſides, if they can procure a Suit of ordinary red Cloth, think themſelves as fine, as one in *Europe* would, in Brocade adorn'd with Diamonds. From all which, we may conclude, that the *Sarmatian* Name was, originally, as well honourable, as natural, and that they gave themſelves that Name, on Account of their *Red Hair*.

XII. Thirdly, As to the Name *Ruſſia*, many Opinions might be produced, concerning its Origin. But I ſhall only briefly declare what I have been able to gather of this Matter. And firſt; There is a great Difference between *Ruſſia* and *Roſſia*, or *Roſſianea*; This latter is the Name of the new Inhabitants, and *Sclavonians*, and the former of the ancient Inhabitants; And *Conſtantinus Porphyrogeneta*, (in his Teſtament, and other Writings,) deſcribes both Nations ſeparate (12). *Ruſs* is, therefore, only an Interpretation

(10) *Vid. Wilhelm. Ernſt. Tentzelii Monathliche Unterredung, Anno* 1690. *p.* 50. Likewiſe, *Cimbriſche Holſteiniſche Antiquitæten Remarquen, p.* 198.

(11) *Vid. Philip. Loniceri Turcar. Orig. p.* 206. and compare the above with my *Introduction; Sect. IV. §. XIV.*

(12) *Conſtant. Porphyr. de Adminiſtr. Imper. Cap. IX. p.* 15. Slavi *autem* Ruſſorum *fœderati* Cribetæini *dicti, &* Lentzaneni, *& reliqui* Slavini *in montibus ipſorum tempore hiberno lintres cædunt, eoſque perfectos cum tempore aperto ſoluta eſt glacies, in proximas paludes deducunt, & cum in flumen* Danaprim *immittunt, inde eodem flumine deveniunt* Cioba &

tation of the former Name *Sarga*, *Sauri*, *Sari*, or *Sarmadai*; For firſt, by that Word, which is not *Sclavonian*, but a *Ruſſian* Primitive, or *Radix*, and ſignifies in that Language *red-yellow*, or *red-brown*, nothing elſe can be meant, but a Man's *reddiſh-brown* or *yellow Hair*. Secondly, the *Finnlandians* (who are a Branch of the true ancient Inhabitants of *Ruſſia)* when they uſe the Word *Ruſkia*, (ſignifying likewiſe *red hair'd)* mean, at this Time, only a red, or red-hair'd Cow. Thirdly, the *French* Word *rougeâtre* ſignifies the very ſame, as hath been ſaid above; So that this is a meer Tranſlation of the aforeſaid Name, *Sar*, or *Saurmadians*. Fourthly, if we are inclin'd to go yet farther, the *Latin* Name *Rutheni* from *rutilus*, and likewiſe the *Greek* Word *Rodon*, are conſonant hereunto. And what if the Word *Roſe*, which ſingly uſed always implies *Redneſs*, or a *red Roſe*, ſhould have ſome Connexion with it? Thus it evidently appears, that the aforementioned *Sari*, *Sauri*, *Sarga*, are ſo far one and the ſame with *Ruſs*, becauſe all allude to *Red*, be it *yellowiſh*, *browniſh*, or a *full Red*; And there being a very little Difference in the Pronunciation, between *Ruſs* and *Roſs*, the modern Inhabitants, or *Roſſi*, have alſo been comprehended under the Name of *Ruſſians*, and ancient *Sarmatians*. As for the fifth Name, *Roſſia* or *Roſſiane*, (from whence the *Sclavonians* are call'd *Roſſi*) it is a *Sclavonian Radix*,

& detrahunt ſuſpenduntque ac Ruſſis *vendunt*, (that is, "But the *Sclavonians*, the Confe- "derates of the *Ruſſians*, called *Cribetæini*, and the *Lentzaneni* (*N. B.* There is a Pro- "vince in *Poland* called *Lentzitza*) and the reſt of the *Sclavonians* build their Boats, and "Veſſels, in Winter Time, on the Mountains, and when they are ready, and the Ice "thawed, they carry them down into the neighbouring Lakes, and when they have "brought them into the River *Danapris*, (*Dnieper*, or *Boryſthenes*,) they proceed on this "ſame River to *Cioba*, (or *Kiow*) where they bring them on Shoar, take them upon their "Backs, and ſell them to the *Ruſſians*.") The ſame Author, (*Cap. II. p.* 8.) affirms the *Ruſſians* to be the neareſt Neighbours of the *Pazinnitæ*, and when they are not in Peace with them, are often plunder'd, and robb'd, by them; And, therefore, the *Ruſſians* uſe their utmoſt Endeavours not to fall out with theſe *Pazinnitæ*; Eſpecially as they muſt buy their Oxen, Sheep and Horſes of them, *Ruſſia* not producing them: Whence it appears, 1. That the *Sclavonians* and *Ruſſians* were different Nations. 2. That the *Sclavonians* took upon them the Name of *Ruſſians* and *Sarmatians*, when they came into *Sarmatia* or *Ruſſia*. 3. That *Conſtantinus Porphyrogenetha* deſcribes *Ancient Ruſſia* as a poor Country, which had neither Horſes, Oxen nor Sheep; And this *Tacitus* ſays of the *Finnlandians*, in the following Words: Fennis *mira feritas, fœda paupertas, non arma, non Equi, &c. ſola in ſagittis ſpes.* (That is, *The* Finnlandians *are a very ſavage People, and wretchedly poor, they have neither Arms nor Horſes, &c. but all their Dependance is on their Arrows.*) And theſe, with all others of the like Kind, are the People, who are called at preſent in *Ruſſia*, *Tzudi bieli glaſi*, (i. e. *Pale blue-Ey'd Scythians.*) All which, ſufficiently proves, that the *Ruſſians* and *Sclavonians* have really been different Nations.

Radix, or Primitive, which ſignifies a *Diſperſion*, or a *diſperſed People*; And the Grounds of it may have been, becauſe the *Sclavonians* and the *Antes*, who were formerly one Nation, were call'd *Sporades*, which, in the *Greek* Tongue, likewiſe denotes a *diſperſed People*, or *ſuch as live in Huts or Houſes that ſtand at a Diſtance from one another* (13). For which Reaſon, likewiſe, the Iſlands about *Crete*, and the *Carpathian* Sea, that ly diſperſed, and at a Diſtance from each other, have been call'd *Sporades* (14); But that the Name of *Roſſiane* is more modern, in *Ruſſia* itſelf, than that of *Ruſſian*, is evident, becauſe it was not known till within about Two Hundred Years; For before that, they called themſelves, as well as the ancient Inhabitants, ſince the 9th Century, only *Ruſſians*; And from hence we may obſerve, that in former Times, when a Nation conquer'd a Country, and inhabited it, that Nation took the Name of the Country they had conquer'd. Thus the *Chan* of the *Tartars* in *China* is call'd *Emperour* of *China* only, and the *Tartars*, who at preſent inhabit there, are comprehended under the *Chineſe* or *Kitays:* And much the ſame it is with the *Ruſſians* in *Siberia*, who are generally call'd *Siberiaki*; And the *Greeks*, that liv'd in *Rome*, and were call'd *Romans*.

XIII. THE ſixth and laſt Name is *Roxolania*, or *Roxolani*, which the *Ruſſians* will not allow to be a *Sclavonian* Word, but ſay, the Ancient Inhabitants gave this Name to the New-comers, or *Sclavonians*. I will not enter into a Diſcuſſion of the ſeveral Opinions of Writers about this Name, but only mention this ſingle one, *viz.* that the Ancient Inhabitants were partly of *Finnlandian* Extraction, and the *Finnlandians*, to this Day, call a *German*, *Saxalain*; a *Swede*, *Ruod-Zalain* (15); a *Livonian*, *Wiralain*; and a *Sclavonian*, *Wænnalain*. And the later Inhabitants of *Ruſſia* being alſo of one Extraction with the *Raitzi* or *Rætzi*, the Ancient Inhabitants may alſo probably have called them *Raitzalain*, *Roitzalain*, *Reſſalain*, and *Raſſalain*; which others, as *Ptolemy* and *Pliny*, pronounce *Roxalain*, or *Roxalani*, becauſe *ſ* and *x* are *Literæ ejuſdem Organi*. As to the reſt of the Names,

(13) *Vid. Procop. Cap. II.* §. 3.

(14) *Strabo, Lib. X.*

(15) *Vid. Epit. Comment. Moyſ. Arm. Aſſeſſ. Henr. Bren. p.* 87. And *Thom. Hiarne in his Hiſt. of Eſthonia, Livonia* and *Lettlandia*, is of the ſame Opinion, *viz.* That the *Finnlandians* gave the Name of *Rodſlagen* to the Kingdom of *Sweden*; Whence they call'd a *Swede* by the Name of *Ruodſa'ain*.

Names, by which *Ruſſia* has been call'd by their Neighbours and other Foreigners, the Explication of ſome of them is to be found here and there in other Authors; But *Wænnemma* ſignifies *Vandalia*, becauſe the *Sclavonians* were a Part of the Ancient *Vandals*. *Ulima*, or the Country to the *Eaſt*, or farther upwards, ſo call'd by the *Eſthonians*, is that Diſtrict of Land where *Pleſkau*, *Peitzur* and *Novogrod* are ſituated, which is the ſame as *Oſtregarde*; (*Vid. Introd. Sect. VI. §. V. Note* 1.) And the *Lithuanians* call'd it *Crewen-Sembla* from the *Sclavonian* People call'd *Creweſti* or *Criwiſti*, who were moſt known to them, and their neareſt Neighbours. By this, it is, likewiſe, evident, that among all theſe Names, none has been more common, or is more ancient, eſpecially among the national Inhabitants, than that of *Ruſſia*. Therefore the Name of *Muſcovy*, and *Muſcovites*, under which ſome *German* Writers, as well as thoſe of ſome other Nations, who have given Deſcriptions of this Country, comprehend the whole *Empire*, and all the Inhabitants thereof, cannot properly be given to this *Empire* and *Nation* in general: For *Muſcow*, being but the fifth of the *Czar*'s Palaces of Reſidence (16), which about Four Hundred Years ago was only a private Nobleman's Seat (17); And tho' Inhabitants have ſometimes taken their Names from Cities, as *Hamburghers*, *Leipzickers*, &c. Yet whole *Empires* and Countries generally taking theirs from Nations and Inhabitants, and not from Cities, it is apparently wrong to call the whole *Empire* of *Ruſſia*, *Moſcovy*, from the Name of a ſingle City. And notwithſtanding the Example of *Rome* ſhould be here alledged, the Compariſon will, by no Means hold good; Becauſe that was the very firſt City, and the Beginning of that whole *Empire*, whoſe Inhabitants extended themſelves from thence, ſtill farther and farther. When I come to the Deſcription of the City of *Muſcow*, I ſhall give a farther Account of the Riſe of that Reſidence. And this may ſuffice for the Names of this *Empire*.

(16) *Ladoga* or *Garderyck* was the firſt, *Novogrod* the ſecond, *Kiow* the third, *Wolodimer* the fourth, *Muſcow* the fifth, and *Petersburg* the ſixth.

(17) Compare with this what the very learned *Aſſeſſor Brenners* mentions on this Head, in *Epit. Comment. Moyſ. Arm. p.* 86.

CHAP. II.

Of the Boundaries, Situation and Climat of the Ruſſian Empire, *in general.*

SUMMARY.

§. I. *THE Boundaries of the* Ruſſian Empire *were not very extenſive, in its Primitive State, when it firſt came under the Dominion of Sovereign Princes.* II. *Former Writers have been too General in their Accounts of the Climat of the* Ruſſian Empire. *The Author is more particular, and divides it into four principal Parts.* III. *The firſt Part is from ſeventy to ſixty Degrees of Latitude.* IV. *The ſecond, from ſixty to ſeven and fifty.* V. *The third, from ſeven and fifty to four and fifty: And,* VI. *The fourth from four and fifty to eight and forty.* VII. *Names of the principal Rivers in* Ruſſia. VIII. *Six Projects formed by* Peter I. *to open a Communication between them, by Means of certain Canals; Three of which are finiſhed.* IX. *A Deſcription of theſe Canals; with the Advantages propos'd by them.* X. *Several Circumſtances relating to the Rivers in* Siberia. XI. *The Length of the Days, as likewiſe of Winter and Summer in this* Empire, *may be judg'd of according to the aforemention'd Diſtinction of the Climats, On which Occaſion ſome Obſervations are made on the Soil and Situation.* XII. *What Obſervations the Author made at* Tobolſky *concerning Eclipſes, and the Variation of the Compaſs.*

I. IN the Introduction, *Section* II. I made Mention of the Nations which border upon this vaſt *Empire*, and of the Circumſtances of it; As likewiſe under what Degrees of Latitude and Longitude it is ſituate. If the Reader will be pleaſed

to view the Map belonging to this Deſcription, he will find it agree therewith; And it will give him a clearer Idea of theſe Matters. As to the moſt ancient and firſt Boundaries of this *Empire*, I ſhall refer the Reader to the Writings of *Baron Herberſtein*, and other Ancient Authors, where he will find ſufficient Intelligence thereof. To prove that *Ruſſia*, in its Primitive State, or at the Time when it came under the Sovereignty of a ſingle Perſon, was not a ſixth Part ſo large as it is at preſent, we need only conſider what the State of it was not long ſince. Concerning the firſt State of this *Empire*, I ſhall therefore only give an Extract of the Hiſtory of *Kiow*, written in the *Ruſſian* Language, by a Patriarch, call'd *Conſtantine*, by Birth a *Pole*, *Anno Mundi*, according to the *Ruſſian* Calculation, 7182, whoſe Words are as follows: ', The firſt Princes that ruled over *Kiow*, " were three Brothers of *Ruſſian* Extraction, *viz. Kiew*, *Scheck*, " and *Corew*; who had a Siſter named *Lebed*, (a *Swan*) *Anno* " *Mundi* 6001, or, *Anno Chriſti*, 492; each of theſe Brothers " built a City, and call'd it after his own Name. The Eldeſt " built *Kiow*; The ſecond *Sckowitza*; And the third *Corewitza*; " (now *Vicegrod*;) And their Siſter *Lebed* built likewiſe a City. " But though theſe Brothers left Heirs, yet there can be nothing " ſaid, with any Certainty, of their Succeſſion; Becauſe this " Nation had not, at that Time, the Uſe of Letters. However, " this we know, that their Deſcendants kept up the Rank of " Princes; For two of their Lineage, *Oſchold* and *Idir*, were " educated at the Court of *Rurick*, Prince of *Novogrod*, whi- " ther they were brought, in their Infancy, by ſome unknown " Incidents; And they themſelves did not know their Extraction, " 'till having taken a Journy to *Conſtantinople*, they were there " inform'd of it. At their Return, they, therefore, laid Claim " to this Principality of *Kiow*, the Inhabitants of which were, " at that Time, very much oppreſs'd by the *Corſairs*, who had " made them Tributaries (18). After this they became ſo pow-

 " erful,

(18) *Herodot. Lib. VII.* and *Pliny, Lib. VI. cap.* 17. inform us, that the *Scythians* called the *Perſians*, *Chorſari*; But which of the *Perſians*, they do not tell us: For they neither were altogether, nor at all Times, one Nation: Nay, perhaps, they meant only thoſe *Perſians* who liv'd on the *Caſpian* Sea. The *Spaniards* call *Coſſare*, what the *Italians* call *Corſare*, which probably have one and the ſame Origin with the *Turkiſh* Words *Corſan*

" erful, that, at Length, they ventur'd to attack the *Grecian* " *Emperour*, in *Conſtantinople*, who gave them ſo warm a Re- " ception, that they were forc'd to retreat with great Loſs. " *Rurick*, hearing in *Novogrod*, of their Defeat, haſtned to " *Kiow*, where (finding them weak and diſarm'd) he killed the " two Princes, and took Poſſeſſion of the City of *Kiow*, where " both are buried. In Courſe of Time, when the Princeſs *Olge* " reigned in *Kiow*, and was baptized, ſhe built the Church " there, called Saint *Nicholas*, over *Oſchold*'s Tomb, and encom- " paſs'd *Idir*'s Tomb with the Walls of the Church-Yard. Thus " the ancient Princely Family of *Kiow* had an End, and the " Princes who ſucceeded were of *Rurick*'s Race." Hence we may form ſome Idea in general, how far the Boundaries of *Ruſſia* originally extended; Of which I ſhall have Occaſion to ſay more, when I come to the particular Diviſion of that Country; So will only add here ſomething in general of the Climat of this *Empire*.

II. Of the Climat of *Ruſſia* ſeveral Accounts have been given in Books of Geography and Travels, But as the Ancients depended pretty much, on the Intelligence they got of Foreigners, and moſtly from Hearſay only: And our more modern Writers, in this Point, as in many others, have blindly followed them, without any farther due Examination: *e. g.* When they ſay, in general: *Ruſſia* is very cold, and lies in a raw Climat, has longer Winters than Summers, and is, on Account of the vaſt Foreſts it contains, very little cultivated (19); Such general Accounts muſt not be look'd upon, as applicable to the whole Country: I ſhall, therefore, briefly conſider the Climat, divided into four Parts, from *North* to *South*.

III. The firſt comprehends the *Northern* Provinces, which are ſituated between the 70th and 60th Degrees of Latitude, and which extend, in Length, from *Weſt* to *Eaſt*; Theſe are *Ruſſian-*

Corſan and *Curſanlick*, ſignifying, in that Language, a Pirate, or to commit Piracy, which other Nations, in a metaphorical Senſe, have called *Waragi*, *Curti*, and *Lazi*; (i. e. *Wolves* and *Robbers*;) But, of the *Corſars* mention'd in the Text, the *Ruſſian* Hiſtory ſays, they had, at that Time, one Capital City called *Biallowitz*, and 80 Towns, in *Bulgaria*, near the Mouth of the *Danube*; Whether the Name *Huſſar* has any Connexion with theſe Words, ſince the *Spaniards* pronounce it *Coſar*, I leave to others to judge.

(19) *Vid. Das Veränderte Ruſſland, p.* 33.

Ruſſian-Lapland, *North Carelia*, *Olenetz*, *Hargopol*, *Archangel* or *Kolmogor*, *Petziora*, *Ugoria*, *Obdoria* and *Samojedia*; Likewiſe, in *Siberia*, *Beroſowa*, *Surguth*, *Narimm*, *Mangaſea*, *Jakubtſkoi* and the *Northern* Part of *Kamtſchatki*, or *Jedſo*. All theſe are very cold, or have a raw ſharp Air, their Winter eight or nine Months long, are thinly inhabited, moſt of them full of Moraſſes, Woods and Mountains, ſo that very little or no Corn grows there (20); And thoſe who live in this Climat, have not the Benefit of Trees, nor of none of the common Garden Productions. *e. g.* Cabbages will not thrive there, being ſeldom bigger than one's Fiſt. But this Want is ſupply'd by ſeveral Sorts of Shrubs, and wild Fruits, ſuch as Strawberries, Raſberries, Blackberries, *Juniper* Berries, and black and red Currants, *&c.* which grow naturally there. Liſewiſe Wild-fowl, Beaſts of Chaſe, and Fiſh, which almoſt all theſe Provinces abound in: Of theſe the Inhabitants not only ſubſiſt, but are therewith cloath'd, and enabled to pay their Tribute.

IV. To the ſecond Part belong the Regions and Provinces which ly between the 60th and 57th Degrees of Latitude, as *Novogrod*, *Beloozero*, *Wologda*, *Uſtyug*, *Permia*, and the middle Part of *Siberia*, as *Werchotura*, *Toboll*, *Jeniſei*, and *Ilimſki*; Theſe have a milder, and ſomewhat better Air, are more inhabited, and have, beſides the above-mentioned natural Fruits, and Store of Game, great Plenty of horned Cattle, Goats, Sheep, and Horſes; Likewiſe all Sorts of Fruits, and are not deſtitute of Corn and Garden Productions: However, that Tract of Land which extends from the latter Province, to the *Gulph* of *Lama*, is neither cultivated nor inhabited, and the laſt-mentioned Provinces are often liable to Sterile Crops; But as to the Inhabitants, they are more laborious, and comelier, than thoſe in the *Southern*, and more fruitful Countries, and are of a freſh and ruddy Complexion; So that Induſtry ſupplies them, with what Nature has beſtowed, in greater Plenty, on the latter.

V. For the third Part, I take thoſe Provinces, that ly between the 57th and 54th Degrees, and extend from *Weſt* to *Eaſt*, as

(20) There is ſome Barly ſow'd near *Archangel*, as alſo about the City of *Jakubtskoi*, by the *Ruſſian* Inhabitants, which ſhews, that, in many Places, Men's Induſtry and Labour are capable of ſupplying the Deficiency of Nature.

as *Smolenſko*, *Moſkwa*, *Roſtow*, *Reſan*, *Nyſchni*, *Novogrod*, *Caſan*, *Wiatka*, and the *Southern* Part of *Permia*; Together with the *Southern* Part of *Siberia*, *viz.* the *Iſett* and *Toboll-Slabodes*, *Tara*, *Tomſkoi Craſnoyahr*, and all *Dauria*; Here the Air is pretty temperate and wholſome, and produces all Manner of Fruits and Gardening, as alſo Corn in Abundance. In theſe Provinces, likewiſe, are few Mountains, Foreſts, or Moraſſes; But many Rivers, and Lakes, and all Sorts of Veniſon, Wild-Fowl, and Fiſh, much Hony and Cattle; In ſhort, the Inhabitants are in Want of nothing but Wine.

VI. The fourth Part includes thoſe Provinces that ly between the 54th and 48th Degree, *viz.* *Mala* or *Little Ruſſia*, *Weronitz*, and Part of the Government of *Aſtracan*. Theſe Countries have a very warm and temperate Air, and ſhort Winters. The whole Extent of this Country is flat and even, has little Moraſs, is water'd by many Rivers, and abounds in Fiſh. Here are not, indeed, many Foreſts, but Veniſon ſufficient. In the Deſerts, Plains, or *Steppes*, as the *Ruſſians* call them, very little Snow lies in Winter, it being ſo expos'd to the Wind, that it can ſettle no where; Which is the Cauſe of the Multitude of Game which comes there in Winter, in Search after their Food. Theſe Provinces are more inhabited than the former, abound with all Manner of Fruit, and have Corn Plenty. Near *Aſtracan* are Vines, but tho' the Grapes are large and ſweet, yet the Wine is not good, (occaſion'd probably by the Saline, or Saltpetry Quality of the Soil) neither will it keep: But the Vines that grow farther *Southward*, near the City *Tereck* or *Terki*, likewiſe thoſe on the Rivers *Donn* and *Dnieper*, near *Czerkaſkoy*, *Belgorod*, and *Kiow*, yield a better Wine than that which grows in *Saxony*. And though, near *Aſtracan*, on the *Crim-Tartarian* and *Kubanian* Borders, ſeveral Countries ly uncultivated; Yet it is not by Reaſon of any Sterility, or Deficiency of the Climat, but partly becauſe in Spring the *Wolga* overflows the Country, on both Sides, for many Miles together, towards *Aſtracan*, And partly on Account of the Ravages and Inroads the Inhabitants are expos'd to from the *Tartars*, who are their Neighbours. I might here add the reſt of the Gifts Nature has beſtow'd on the ſeveral Parts of *Ruſſia*. *e. g.* Salt, Copper, *&c.* but I will omit this

this, 'till I give an Account of the Mines and Minerals which are in this Empire.

VII. As for the Rivers in *Ruſſia*, moſt of them are Navigable; The principal are the *Dnieper*, *Donn*, *Wolga*, *Occa*, *Moſca*, *Kama*, *Wiatka*, *Dwina*, *Juga*, *Twertza*, *Wolchowa*, *Wim*, *Nim*, and *Pytziora*; and in *Siberia*, the *Tura*, *Pyſma*, *Iſett*, *Niewa*, *Taſſola*, *Toboll*, *Oby*, *Irtiſch*, *Iſchim*, *Kebt*, *Jeneſei*, *Angara* (21), *Czulim*, *Lena*, *Aldan*, and *Majai*. There are many more, which are likewiſe conſiderable; but it would be too tedious to mention them all. As to the Rivers on the *European*, or *Weſt* Side of the *Kamenipoyas*, and the *Riphæan* Mountains, they are of great Service to the Inhabitants of theſe vaſt Regions, not only for their Commerce, and to keep open a Communication of the Provinces, one with the other; But becauſe, as the Provinces of this Empire ly in different Climats, if their Crops ſhould fail, in ſome one or other of them, they may, by Means of theſe Rivers, eaſily be ſupply'd with Bread and Corn from the Reſt.

VIII. The late Emperour *Peter* I. of glorious Memory, in Order to facilitate this Conveniency the more, and to procure his Subjects a greater Advantage, had form'd ſix Projects for joining theſe Rivers, by Canals, three of which are actually compleated.

IX. The firſt and largeſt Canal is drawn near and on the South ſide of the Lake of *Ladoga*. It begins juſt oppoſite to the Fortreſs of *Schleutelburg*, and runs from thence, *Eaſtward*, into the River *Wolchowa*, near the City of *Nowa-Ladoga*. This Canal, which is 100 Werſts long, is brought to Perfection (22). The ſecond

(21) Theſe two laſt have ſeveral dangerous Cataracts, which often prove fatal to thoſe who paſs them, with their Merchandize.

(22) The Reaſon of making this Canal was as follows: The Lake of *Ladoga* has a very ſandy Bottom, almoſt like that of the *Caſpian* Sea, in both of which, by vehement Storms, Sands are frequently waſhed away from one Place and drove up in others; And Veſſels going from *Ruſſia* to *Petersburg* have often not only been driven, by contrary Winds, upon Sands, in Places where, in former Times, there had been deep Water; But the Banks of this Lake being every where very ſhallow, many have been loſt Yearly, to the great Hindrance of the Commerce from *Ruſſia* to *Petersburg*, to remedy which this Canal was contrived. Some *Ruſſians* have given me another Reaſon for this Shifting of the Sands in the *Ladoga*, which, whether it be ſo or not, I leave undetermin'd. They ſay, this Lake has every three Years a periodical Ebb and Flood, and that it was always in the third Year, when the Water was at the loweſt, that the moſt Miſchief happen'd to Veſſels; And tho', on Account of the ſhallow Ground, the *Ruſſian* Veſſels are flat bottom'd, and without any Keel; Yet, for this very Reaſon, they were ſo much the more unweildy and difficult to manage in ſtormy Weather.

ſecond Canal begins at the River *Twerza*, and falls into the *Wolga*, near the City of *Tweer*. This joins the Rivers *Mſta* and *Twerza*, the latter of which runs into the Lake of *Ilmen*, near the City of *Novogrod*, and thereby a Communication is open'd by Water, from the *Wolga* to *Petersburg*; So that, from this City, there is now a Paſſage by Water to the *Caſpian Sea*; And this is, likewiſe, brought to Perfection. The third Canal begins not far from the Source of the *Wolga*, near the City *Rzewa*, reaches to the River *Moſca*, and makes a Communication by Water between the Cities of *Muſcow*, *Petersburg*, and the River *Occa*; Which latter comes from the *South*, out of the Leſſer *Ruſſia*, from the City and Principality of *Worotin*; And this alſo is perfected. The fourth Canal is between the *Tula* and another ſmall River, which runs into the Lake of *Ivan*, whence the River *Donn* takes its Riſe: But the *Tula* falls into the *Occa*, juſt over-againſt the City of *Caluga*. This Canal was intended for a Communication with the *Black Sea*, but is not finiſhed. The fifth Canal begins at the River *Ilawla*, which falls into the River *Donn*, near the City of *Ilawa*, between which and the River *Kamiſchinka* it is carried into the *Wolga*, near the City of *Kamiſchinka*. This was deſigned for a Communication between the Rivers *Donn* and *Wolga*, but is not brought to Perfection. The ſixth Project was to join the Rivers *Whitigor* and *Koef*, in Order to make a Communication between the Lakes of *Beloozero* and *Onega*: But this Project has not been ſo much as entred upon.

X. As to the Rivers in *Siberia*, they have naturally a pretty good Communication with one another; So that it is eaſy to come from one into the other. However, there are two Places, which might with little Labour be cut thro', by which a great Circuit would be avoided in going to *China*, as well as to *Mungalia*: But few People living on thoſe Spots, and not many coming thither, they have not been obſerved: And beſides, Colonies muſt firſt be eſtabliſh'd there, before ſuch a Work could be undertaken. But were theſe Places in populous Countries, it might eaſily be effected; Eſpecially as the Diſtances are very ſmall. In ſhort, this great *Empire* is ſo ſituated, that it may have a Communication, by Water and by Land, not only throughout itſelf, but with all the four Parts of the World; Tho' it be ſomewhat tedious, on

Account of its great Extent, and becauſe ſometimes, Paſſengers are obliged to go againſt the Stream. For Inſtance, when I ſend Goods from the Capital City of *Tobolsky*, in *Siberia*, to *Muſcow*, the Diſtance is as great, as to bring Goods by Land from *Portugal* to *Hamburg*; Tho' with this Difference, that in Winter-time Journies are performed with greater Expedition in *Ruſſia* than in *Europe*. The Poſt-Boys from *Petersburg* to *Tobolsky* are but 12 or 14 Days on their Journy, and Merchants, with their Goods, often but 5 or 6 Weeks. And as to the Communication with other Parts of the World, it is to be ſeen in the Maps, eſpecially ſuch as have been made ſince the *Ruſſian* Monarchs are become Maſters of *Jedſo* (23). And this is what I thought neceſſary to ſay, in Order to give ſome Idea of the Situation of this *Empire*.

XI. I SHOULD now alſo mention ſomething with Relation to the Heavens, the Length of the Days and Nights, and of the Seaſons; But theſe are eaſily judged of, by the Latitude, as the Countries are ſituated from *North* to *South*. In general it is to be obſerved: That becauſe, the *Northern* Parts of *Ruſſia* eſpecially, ly low, flat, and declining towards the *Mare Glaciale*, (*vid. Introduction, Sect. VI.* §. 17. & 18.) and the fenny and moriſh Lands have more Saltpetre than thoſe that are ſandy, theſe muſt, therefore, be colder than thoſe that ly more *Weſtward*, tho' under one Latitude; and the Snow lies longer here, than in ſandy and ſtony Places; Eſpecially in thoſe Parts which are encompaſs'd with Foreſts.

XII. WITH Regard to the Change of the Moon, I have obſerv'd, that whereas in the Regions towards the *Weſt*, when the Moon is in the Decreaſe, the Weather is commonly cloudy, mild and rainy; And when the Moon is in the Increaſe it is fair, dry and cold, in *Siberia* it is juſt the contrary: Likewiſe, by Eclipſes of the Sun and Moon, it has been obſerved, that between the Cities of *Hamburg* and *Tobolsky* the Difference is four Hours, and ten Minutes: But, in the City of *Tobolsky*, I found, in the Year, 1720. no magnetical Declination, tho' it was otherwiſe in the Places that ly more to the *North* and *Eaſt*. I had wrote down

(23) *Viz.* The Country of *Kamtſchatki*, or *Jedſo*, which the Ancients took to be *Kathay*, a Place the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* often attempted to go to, through the Streight of *Weygatz*.

ſome Particulars of theſe Matters; But by loſing a ſmall Pocket-Journal, of which I made mention in my *Prodrome*, theſe, together with other Remarks, are likewiſe loſt.

CHAP. III.

Of the Ancient and Modern Diviſion of the Ruſſian Empire, *into its ſeveral Diſtricts and Provinces.*

SUMMARY.

§. I. *THE Diviſion of* Ruſſia *has been hitherto very uncertain and confus'd.* II. *The Author confines himſelf here to two Methods, that which was formerly uſed in the Country itſelf, and as it is now divided.* III. *The ancient Method was to divide it into* Ruſſia *itſelf, and into the Conquer'd Provinces.* IV. Ruſſia *itſelf is divided into five Parts; The* Greater, Leſſer, White, Red, *and* Black-Ruſſia. V. *The Conquer'd Countries are, in* Europe, Great Permia. VI. *The Kingdom of* Caſan, *that Part of* Finnland *which devolv'd to* Ruſſia *by the Peace with* Sweden, *and likewiſe* Livonia *and* Ingria. VII. *The Conqueſts in* Aſia *and the Kingdoms of* Aſtracan, Siberia, *and a Part of* Dageſtan *in* Perſia. VIII. *The Modern Diviſion of* Ruſſia *is into Ten Governments; That is, thoſe of,* XI. Muſcovy; X. *St.* Peterſburg; XI. Kiow; XII. Archangel; XIII. Smolenſko; XIV. Woronitz; XV. *Some Account of a Wall or Line of Circumvallation in this Government.* XVI. *The Government of* Siberia; XVII. Caſan; XVIII. Aſtracan; *And,* XIX. Niſchegerode. XX. *The Subdiviſion of each Kingdom, into Provinces;* XXI. *And of each Province into Diſtricts.*

I. IN the Books of Geography, which I have hitherto ſeen, of the *Empire* of *Ruſſia*, the Authors have vary'd very much, in their Diviſions of the ſeveral Diſtricts and Provinces, and

and have uſed no certain Method. *Cellarius* divides the whole Empire into four great Provinces; Others divide it, likewiſe, into four Parts, as into the *South* and *North-Weſt*, and the *North-* and *South-Eaſt* Parts; But aſſign to each of them certain Provinces; Others again have taken different Methods; But in all of them, there are Kingdoms, Principalities and Provinces intermixed, with little, or no Order.

II. THE *Ruſſian Empire* may, according to the Political Diviſion of it, be deſcribed two different Ways; *viz.* According to the Ancient and Modern Method; That is, as it has been formerly, and now is uſual in *Ruſſia*; And not as Geographers have divided it, according to their own Fancies: But ſince, as we find, that the chief Diviſion of other Empires and Countries, has generally been made either conformable to Hiſtory, or according to their Properties; For inſtance, *Turkey*, into the *European* and *Aſiatick-Turky*, *Sweden*, in *Suecia* and *Gothia*, *Poland*, into Little and Great, and *Hungary* into Upper and Lower, *&c.* I ſee no Reaſon, why we ſhould proceed otherwiſe, with Reſpect to the *Ruſſian* Regions, where we find the like Diſtinctions and Properties; Eſpecially ſince Ancient Hiſtory gives us Light enough to go by, and every Diſtrict of this Empire may be preſerved entire.

III. RUSSIA was anciently divided, (1.) into *Ruſſia* itſelf, (or *proprie ſic dicta*) and, (2.) into the conquered or incorporated Provinces.

IV. RUSSIA Proper conſiſts of five Parts, the *Greater*, *Leſſer*, *White*, *Red*, and *Black Ruſſia*, the three firſt of which are under the Subjection of the *Ruſſian*, and the two latter under that of the *Poliſh* Scepter. They are divided into Principalities, and theſe ſubdivided into Diſtricts (24): (I.) The GREATER RUSSIA, or, as the *Ruſſians* ſay, *Welikaja Ruſſia*, conſiſts of the following Principalities, (1.) *Novogrod Weliki*, (2.) *Walodimir*, or *Muſcow*, (3.) *Twer*, (4.) *Reſan*, (5.) *Jariſlawle*, (6.) *Roſtow*, (7.) *Belo Oſero*, (8.) The Lordſhips of *Niſchnei Novogrod* and *Pſkow*, or *Pleſkaw*. (II.) The LESSER RUSSIA, or *Malaja Ruſſia*, comprehends

(24) The *Ruſſian* Monarchs ſtile themſelves, in their Titles, Sovereigns (or Self-Preſervers) of all the *Greater*, *Leſſer*, and *White Ruſſia*; And therefore I cannot conceive 1. why *Ruſſia-Proper* ſhould not be divided in the ſame Manner, eſpecially as that Nation itſelf uſes this Method; And, 2. what ſome Writers mean by calling the *Moſcovian-Ruſſia* only, *White Ruſſia*. (*Vid. Relation von dem gegenwartigen Zuſtande des* Moſcowitiſchen *Reiches*, Frankfort, 1706. *p.* 1.)

hends the Principalities of (1.) *Kiow*, (2.) *Czernikow*, (3.) *Siberia*, or the whole *Ukrain*, under which laſt the *Poles* indeed underſtand all the *Leſſer* and *Red Ruſſia*, but the *Ruſſians*, moſt of the Leſſer, and a good Part of *Great Ruſſia*. (III.) WHITE RUSSIA (25), contains the Principality of *Smolenſko*, of which the Provinces of *Rſchewa* and *Bialla*, as alſo *Mſtziſlaw* and *Polotſko* (which two latter belong to *Poland*) were formerly appennag'd Principalities. To deſcribe RED and BLACK RUSSIA, which belong to *Poland*, would be foreign to my Purpoſe, I have only mentioned them with a View to Order, and Ancient Hiſtory; And becauſe I have obſerved, that ſome Geographers have confounded the Principalities in them with thoſe of the *Greater* and *Leſſer Ruſſia*. For Inſtance; There are two Principalities call'd *Halitz* or *Galitz*, one of which lies in *Red-Ruſſia*, and is a Princely *Poliſh* Reſidence, the other belongs to the *Greater Ruſſia*, and has been an appennag'd Principality. There are likewiſe two Principalities call'd *Wologomir*, one of which is in the *Leſſer Ruſſia*, and belongs to *Poland*, and the other in the *Greater Ruſſia*, belonging to the *Ruſſian Empire*.

V. THE Second Branch of the principal Diviſion of the Ancients, is that of the incorporated and conquer'd Countries, which ly partly in *Europe*, and partly in *Aſia*. In *Europe* is, (1.) *Great Permia*, or, as the *Ruſſians* call it, *Perma Welikie*, which the Ancients call'd *Biarma*, formerly containing a large Tract of Land, of which the Antient *Ruſſian Annals* give us the follow-

(25) In the former Note I have obſerv'd, that ſome Writers call *Ruſſia Proper*, *White Ruſſia*. Whether it has its Riſe from this *White Ruſſia*, of which I am now ſpeaking, I leave undetermin'd; However, it ſeems as if it aroſe from other Reaſons. For, 1. All the *Tartars*, *Kalmucks*, and *Chineſe*, call the *Ruſſian* Monarch *Tzagan Zaar*, i. e. *White Czar*; And, as *Marcus Paulus* (*Lib. I. cap.* 66.) obſerves; *White* was formerly the *Great Chan* of *Tartary*'s favourite Colour, as it is ſtill that of the *Chineſe* Emperours, eſpecially when he appears in State, as *Chan* of *Tartary*; For as Emperour of *China* he wears Lemon Colour. 2. The *Tartars* commonly call all Reſidences *White* Cities: And in *Ruſſia* itſelf they call the Crown Lands, and thoſe of the Nobility that are free from Taxes and Contributions, *White Lands:* On the contrary, all Farms and Grounds in Cities, that pay Taxes, they call *Black* Grounds. They alſo call the Peaſants, and commoner Sort of People, *Czorni Ludi*; (*i. e.* the *black* or meaner Sort of People;) Becauſe Black is a Colour not the moſt eſteem'd in *Ruſſia*. When, therefore, all *Ruſſia* is called *White Ruſſia*, perhaps only that Part of it is meant, in which their Sovereign and the Nobility have principally their Reſidence and Seats; Eſpecially as the conquered and annexed Provinces were formerly inhabited by *Tartars* and *Heathens*, as *Permia*, *Caſan*, *Aſtracan*, and *Siberia*, in which the *Ruſſian* Nobility have no Poſſeſſions.

following Account. " *Anno Christi*, 1343, in the Reign of " *Emanuel* in *Greece*, and *Wasilius Demetrowitz*, in *Russia*, *Per-* " *mia* was converted to the *Christian* Religion, by the following " Persons, *viz. Stephen Permski*, *Hierasim*, *Peterim*; and *Gona*: " In which great Country, the People before worship'd Fire, " Water, and an Idol call'd *Solotta-babba*, (the *Golden Woman.*") And farther, " This great Country comprehended formerly the " following Districts, *viz. Juga*, *Suchna*, *Wolochda*, *Wiatka*, " *Cholmogorod*, *Lop-Corela* (or the *Laplandian Karelia*) *Petf-* " *chora*, *Ugoria* or *Wogulitza*, *Samojedia*, *Pertassi* (26), *Per-* " *mecki*, *Gami*, and *Schussowaja*; And the Rivers which " run through, and encompass this great Tract of Land, are the " *Dwina*, *Petschora*, *Suchna*, *Juga*, *Wim*, and *Nim*, *Witziogda*, " *Wiatka*, and *Kama*; Almost all these Countries were con- " quered and brought under the *Russian* Dominion by *Wasilius* " *Iwanowitz*, Father of the Tyrant *Ivan Wasiliewitz*.

VI. In *Europe* belong, likewise, II. to this Division, the Kingdom of *Casan*, which *Ivan Wasiliewitz*, or *John*, the Son of *Basilius* (Surnamed the *Great*, who was the Grandfather of the Tyrant *Ivan Wasiliewitz*) conquered. He was the first who took the Title of *Czar*, when he was crown'd with the Crown of *Casan*, which is yet to be seen in the Treasury at *Muscow*. To this Kingdom belongs the Province of *Casimow*, which was annex'd to it, in the Time of the *Tartars*. III. To this General Division, were annex'd, by the Treaty of *Newstadt*, those

(26) I have found no People call'd *Pertassi*, either in *Russia* or *Siberia*; Unless the *Ostiacks*, who live on the two Rivers *Purr* and *Tass*, which fall into the *Guba Mangaseiska*, near the *Oby*, may have got that Name from these Rivers; However *Johannes Neuhoff* (in *Legatione Batavica*) mentions this People, in the following Words: *Ab hoc* Turck, *septem gentium originem deducunt scriptores rerum* Persicarum, *&c.* Saclabitarum *sive* Siberorum *& in Zona frigida habitantium* Asiæ *populorum* Kemaritarum, *à quibus* Bulgari, & Purtasitæ *sive ut* Vincentius *appellat* Perositæ *vel* Hunni, Jueuri (*or* Viguri & Hungari) *profecti*, *&c.* And whereas *Vicentius Beluacensis* places these *Perositæ* and *Purtasitæ*, (*Lib.* 32. *Cap.* 15.) next to the *Samojedes*, and some *Samojedes* and *Ostiacks* live, at this Time, intermix'd, on the aforesaid Rivers *Purr* and *Tass*, it has the Appearance as if the *Ostiacks* are meant by this People; But as to the *Kemaritæ*, *Sheringham* (in his *Discept. de Orig. gentis Anglic. cap.* 16. *p.* 432.) gives this Account, quoting, at the same Time, *Eustathius*, *viz.* That the *Cimbri* were call'd by the *Greeks Cameritæ*, *à navibus turbinatis*, *quibus latrocinia exercebant quæ à Græcis Cameræ vocabantur.* Likewise, *Abdalla Beidavæus* (in *Hist. Sin. p.* 70, *&c.* 71.) calls the Country and People, *Kemari*, to which the two fugitive *Mungalian* Princes retired, and is otherwise call'd *Argen-con*, of which Notice has been taken in the Appendix to my Introduction, §. XI. in the Notes.

thoſe Countries which *Ruſſia* conquered, in the War with *Sweden*, in *Finnland*, *Livonia*, and *Ingria*. And all theſe together comprehended, according to the Ancient Diviſion, the *Ruſſian* Countries in *Europe*. (27)

VII. In *Aſia* are the Kingdoms of *Aſtracan* and *Siberia*, which formerly were divided into ſeveral great Countries and Diſtricts, according to the ſeveral Nations inhabiting them; *viz.* The *Czærcaſſians*, *Tartars*, *Oſtiacks*, *Kalmucks*, *Tunguſians*, *Jakuhtians*, *Daurians*, &c. I might likewiſe here deſcribe the Bounds of each Nation; But for that I refer the Reader to the Map, publiſhed with this Work, where he will find them accurately diſtinguiſh'd.

VIII. I need not tell the Reader, that Emperour *Peter* I. made, in his Reign, many Alterations in the *Ruſſian Empire*; one of which was the Diviſion of the Governments. For at firſt there were *Eight*, afterwards *Nine*, and at laſt Ten Governments. The Reaſon of theſe frequent Alterations was, becauſe the Kingdoms of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan* made originally but one Government; But the Conqueſts towards *Perſia* increaſing, that Government was firſt divided into two, and afterwards into three. This Diviſion may be conſidered, 1. generally; 2. particularly; and thirdly, yet more minutely. According to the general Diviſion we have the following Ten Governments, *viz.* 1. Thoſe of *Moſcow*. 2. St. *Petersburg* and *Revel*. 3. *Kiow*, or *Mala Ruſſia*. 4. *Archangel*. 5. *Smolensko* and *Riga*. 6. *Siberia*. 7. *Woronitz*, or *Azowi*. 8. *Caſan*. 9. *Aſtracan*; and 10. *Nieſchnogorod*.

IX. To the firſt, or that of *Moſcow*, belong the following great and ſmaller Principalities; *viz.* *Wolodimir*, or *Muſcow*, *Suſdahl*, *Roſtow*, and *Gariſlawle*; Likewiſe thoſe that have been Appennages, as *Periſlow-Saleski*, *Dmitrow*, *Tula*, *Kaſchira*, *Czerpuchow*, *Klin*, and *Woloklamskoi*. And the Cities in this Government, which contribute to the Cheſt or Treaſury of the *Empire*, are the following, in all 39: *Klin*, *Kaſtroma*, *Jurjew*, *Powolſchkoi*, *Suſdahl*, *Columna*, *Pereſlawle*, *Reſan*, *Pronosk*, *Kaſhira*, *Epiphan*,

(27) In my Introduction (*Sect. I. §. XVIII.*) this Diviſion is deſcribed ſomewhat differing from this; Becauſe there the Kingdom of *Aſtracan* is reckon'd a Part of *Europe*, in Compliance with thoſe who extend the Bounds between *Europe* and *Aſia* to the River *Oby*, in which Caſe it does indeed ly in *Europe*.

phan, *Tula*, *Kropiwna*, *Taruſa*, *Alexin*, *Kaluga*, *Borowesk*, *Zarew*, *Swenigorod*, *Wolock*, *Roſtow*, *Linbim*, *Wolodimir*, *Schujaliſch*, *Sauinsk*, *Michailow*, *Gremazei*, *Pezerniki*, *Wenewa*, *Serpuchow*, *Dedilow*, *Obolensk*, *Jariſlaw-maloi*, *Medin*, *Moſchaisko*, *Wereja*, *Boroſow*, *Ruſa*, and *Lalskoi*.

X. To the ſecond, or that of *St. Petersburg*, belong the following Principalities and Diſtricts: That of *Novogrod*, which is divided into five Parts, call'd *Petina*; viz. *Vodskaja Petinn*, which contains *Ingria*, *Oboneſchkaja*, *Petinn*, in which ly *Laduga* and *Olonetz*; *Bezchetzkaja Petinn*, in which is *Bezcketzkoiverch*; *Dereuskaja Petinn*, in which is *Velikieluki*, and old and new *Ruſa*; And *Schalonskaja Petin*, in which ly the Cities of *Porckow* and *Opoka*; To this Government likewiſe belong the Principalities of *Twer*, *Belooſero*, *Rzewa*, *Galitch*, *Kaſchin*, the Lordſhip of *Pleſkaw*, or *Pſkow*, and *Kargopoll*, as alſo all the reſt of *Ingria*, and the Province of *Revel*. The Cities in this Government, which contributed to the Treaſury of the *Empire*, before the Peace made at *Neuſtadt*, are as follows: *St. Petersburg*, *Narva*, *Weliko*, *Nowogorod*, *Ladoga*, *Gdow*, *Inlbarsk*, *Staraja*, *Ruſa*, *Toropetz*, *Uſtiuſchna*, *Bielvoſero*, *Zernskieujeſdi*, *Peſchechinia*, *Twer*, *Ugli*, *Romanow*, *Schluſſelburg*, *Popkow*, *Tkow*, *Opotzeck*, *Oſtrowsk*, *Luki-Weliki*, *Olonetz*, *Beſchetzko*, *Werck*, *Rſchewa*, *Puſtiniaja*, *Kargopoll*, *Roſchewa-wolod*, *Torſchock*, *Jaroſlawl*, and *Kaſhin*.

XI. The third Government, or that of *Kiow*, contains the Principality of *Kiow*, *Tſchiernikow*, *Siveria*, and the greateſt Part of the *Ukraine*, or the *Ukrain Coſacks* (28), which are divided into four Parts. 1. The *Maloroſiskian*, or *Leſſer Ruſſian*; 2. The *Saporowian*; 3. The *Poliſh*, which does not belong to *Ruſſia*; And, 4. *Belogorodskaja Czerta*, which is dependant on the *Weronitzian* Government. The (1.) *viz.* the *Moloroſiskian* Part, is the largeſt, and is alſo called the *Hetmanskajan*, conſiſting of 10 Diſtricts or Regiments, each of which is named according to its Capital City, as, 1. *Staradub*. 2. *Czernigow*. 3. *Kiow*. 4. *Pereoſlawle*. 5. *Poltawa*. 6. *Myrgorod*. 7. *Lubenka*. 8. *Prilucki*, and, 9. *Hadiatſch*; Theſe 9 are on the Left Side of the River *Dnieper*;

(28) In the *Sclavonian* Tongue, the Word *Ukrain* ſignifies a Country that lies on the Borders, or on the ſide of any other. Formerly ſeveral of the *Ruſſian* Frontier Provinces, were called ſo; But now, tho' a Province be never ſo near the Borders of the *Empire*, they give it no more that Name.

Dnieper; But the 10th, *viz.* the *Bottuſlawian*, is on the Right Side of the ſaid River, towards *Poland*; Beſides theſe, the *Hetmanskajan* Part has 3 particular Regiments, 2 of Foot, and 1 of Horſe, called *Serdinski*, the Number of which formerly amounted together to 100,000 Men. Of theſe I ſhall ſay more, when I come to the Deſcription of the *Coſacks* in particular. The chief City and Reſidence of this Part was formerly *Baturin*. (II.) To this Government belong'd the *Saporowian Coſacks*, who liv'd on the River *Dnieper*, but are now rooted out, and their Capital City *Setſcha*, which ſtood on the Right Side of the ſaid River, towards *Poland*, deſtroy'd. The afore-mention'd and more *Coſack* Cities, were free from Contribution; But the following Cities in this Government pay to the Treaſury; *viz. Kiow, Tzernikow, Agtirka, Murapha, Sennoe, Meziretzi, Mzeneſch, Karajeow, Niſchin, Kamenoi Saton, Buromlaja, Gorodnoe, Sunſchai, Olſchaſca, Liebedin, Sewesk, Obranesk, Pereſlawle, Novogrod, Sevirski, Bagoduckow, Borſchowoi, Kraſnapole, Salozow, Putiwle, Kromi, Sergeow, Rublewka, Belgorod Miropolei, Kuresk, Nowoſil, Rilsk, Orell, Wolnoi, Oſcheſnai, Chotmiſchnoi, Kalantojow, Kolomack, Walki, Karotze, Staroi Oskol, Trubzesk, Bolchow, Karpow, Obojan, Charkow, Saltow, Niſchgolsk, Liwni, Bibelow*, and *Jefremow*.

XII. The fourth Government is that of *Archangelgorod*, to which belong the Lordſhips of *Cholmogorod*, or *Holmogorod*, otherwiſe called *Dwina*; As alſo the Diſtricts of *Mezeen, Juhoria*, and *Puſtoſero*, and the Provinces of *Waga, Wologda*, and *Uſtjuga*. The Cities, in this Government, that contribute to the Treaſury of the *Empire*, are the following 20, *viz. Archangel, Totma, Kewroll, Kolskoi Oſtrow, Zaronda, Wologda, Galiziechloma, Kologrimow, Waga, Uſtjugwelikoi, Solwitzegoskaja, Mezen, Puſtoſero, Unſcha, Sol Salitzkaja, Suda, Kineſchma, Uſtiuſchkaja Woloſt, Pineſkoi*, and *Jarinski*.

XIII. The fifth is the Government of *Smolensko*, to which alſo belongs indeed, the Province of *Riga*, but it is taxed ſeparately. The Principalities which belong to the Government of *Smolensko*, are, *Smolensko, Biela*, and *Worotin*; And the Cities that pay to the Treaſury of the *Empire* are 18, *viz. Smolensko, Bielaja, li Woeſma, Moſalew, Schuptzow, Pogereloe, Staritza, Lichwin*,

win, *Peremuiſchle*, *Odujeow*, *Dorogobuſch*, *Roſlawle*, *Serpeſck*, *Meſchesk*, *Gorodiſche*, *Koſelesk*, *Boriſowogorodiſche*, and *Worotajewk*.

XIV. The ſixth is the *Woronitz* Government, which before the Peace of *Pruth*, was called the *Azowian* Government; To this belong, I. the *Coſacks*, call'd *Belogorodi Czerta*, which are under 5 Diſtributions or Regiments, *viz.* 1. *Ochtirskoi*. 2. *Iſumskoi*. 3. *Sumskoi*. 4. *Charkow*; and 5. *Ribinskoi*; which depend immediately upon the *Ruſſian* Commander at *Belogrod*. II. The *Donn-Coſacks*, whoſe Capital City *Czercaskoi*, lies on the River *Donn*, near the Borders of *Azow*. III. The *Czærkæſſes* call'd *Petigori* and *Cabardini*. The Cities in this Government that contribute to the Treaſury of the *Ruſſian Empire* are 53, *viz.* *Weronitz*, *Paroloskoi*, *Nikonowskoi*, *Worchneloimow*, *Norawſat*, or *Narowziat*, *Kraſna Slabodda*, *Kerensk*, *Schatskoi*, *Pawloskoinowoi*, *Woluki*, *Topol*, *Opal*, *Iſum*, *Zarew*, *Boriſow*, *Liman*, *Kupzinka*, *Powaskoi*, *Dworetskoje*, *Martowitza*, *Smejou*, *Zolnaiskoi*, *Petrowskoi*, or *Medwediza*, *Schetskiewskoi-Oſtrock*, *Petiſchkoi*, or *Penſche*, *Oſtropole*, *Bielo-Wercho*, *Troitzkoi*, *Sergiewskoi*, *Tanbow*, *Niſchneilomow*, *Troitskoi-Oſtrow*, *Saransk*, *Inſara*, *Bitug*, *Polatow*, *Nowoizerskoi*, *Tor*, *Majetskoi*, *Kamenka*, *Sawinskoi-Zindnow*, *Gorochowatka*, *Zugschieff*, *Koſlow*, *Boriſo*, *Chlebskoi*, *Hemor*, *Anzerskoi*, *Temnikow*, *Beſchſein*, *Andriewle*, *Wuleikleia*, and *Woſeſchkoi* (29).

XV. In this Government, between the Cities of *Penſche* and *Inſara*, is a long Wall with *Paliſadoes*, or a Line of Circumvallation, to ſecure the Inhabitants againſt the Invaſion of the *Kuban-Tartars*; Which Line joins to another ſuch old Wall near the City *Inſara*, which was drawn, long ſince, between the Cities of *Tula* and *Simbirski*. *Pens* or *Penſche* is a very large Place, in which the Caſtle is encompaſs'd with a wooden Wall, and the Suburbs ſurrounded with a Work of Timber, inſtead of a Wall. The Inhabitants are Soldiers call'd *Sluſchivi*, which have their

(29) Why there are but ſeventeen Cities nam'd in *Das Veränderte Ruſſland*, as belonging to this Government, I cannot conceive. I procured this Tariff from the *Ruſſian* Chancery, in the Year, 1718. The Difference cannot proceed from the Peace made on the River *Pruth*, when the *Azowian* Diſtrict was given up, for this contain'd only 3 or 4 Cities, which paid Contribution, as *Azow*, *Taganroit*, and *Mius*. Beſides, moſt of the Cities in the *Weronitzian* Government, which I have here ſpecify'd, will be found in my new Map; and if the ſmall Compaſs I was confin'd to for this General Map had allow'd it, I ſhould have put them all in.

own chief Officer, diſtinct from the Governour of the Place, and are kept there to defend the Country againſt the ſaid *Tartars*. Between this Place, *Lamow* and *Tanbow*, inhabit a ſmall Nation call'd *Mochſchiani*, who are of the ſame Sort of *Pagans* as the *Schuwaſchi*.

XVI. The Seventh is the *Siberian* Government, to which belongs the Principality of *Wiatki*, and the Diſtricts of *Solikam* and *Kongur*, together with *Ugoria*, and all the Countries comprehended under the Name of *Siberia*, as *Dauria*, *Kamtſchatki*, &c. Part of which Provinces are ſituate in *Europe*, but the greater Part of them in *Aſia*. (See the Map.) It contains many different Sorts of People, as *Permecki*, *Wotiacki*, and the *Karinski-Mahometan Tartars*, which latter are a ſmall *Tartarian* Race, near the City of *Wiatki* or *Klinow*; Farther, the *Wogulitzi* and the *Oſtiacks*, on the Rivers *Irtiſch*, *Oby*, and *Czulim*; Likewiſe a Part of the *Baſchkirs*, the *Siberian-Mahometan Tartars*, the *Barobintzians* and *Jakuhtians*. As alſo the *Pagan Tartars* call'd *Czulimzi*, *Tzatzkoi*, *Gauſtirozi*, *Arinzi*, *Camazinzi*, *Kiſtim*, *Chotowtzi*, *Sagantzi*, *Tulaſſi*, *Tutaltzi*, *Tubintzi*, *Bratskoi*, and *Tunguſi*; (Of theſe latter there are three Sorts, the *Konni*, *Olenni*, and *Sabatſchi*;) Likewiſe Part of the *Samojedes*, on both Sides of the Mouth of the River *Oby*; and, farther towards the *Eaſt*, the *Jukagri*, *Liutori* and *Tſchucktſchi*, near the Promontory of *Tabin*: And the *Lamuti*, *Koræiki*, *Kamtſchadali*, and *Liutori*; All theſe People are divided into certain Commanderſhips and Provinces, in *Siberia*, which are plainly diſtinguiſh'd in the Map belonging to this Work. They pay their Tribute in Furrs only. The Cities are peopled with *Ruſſians*, they ly far remote from one another, and 30 of them contribute to the Caſh of the *Empire*, viz. *Tobolsky*, *Permia-Weliki*, or *Tzordin*, *Solikamskoi*, *Rog*, *Jeniſeiski*, *Tara*, *Surguht*, *Iwskoje*, *Mangaſeija*, *Kuſnetskoi*, *Narim*, *Jakutskoi*, *Craſnojahr*, *Ketskoi*, *Kaigorod*, *Wiatka*, *Kotelnitz*, *Orlowa*, *Slabocka*, *Ilimſki*, *Tumeen*, *Tomski*, *Gorodiſhei*, *Irkuhtskoi*, *Tarinskoi*, or *Japanzin*, *Werchoturie*, *Nerzinskoi*, *Pelim*, *Kungur* and *Eremsk*. But here we muſt obſerve, that ſome Cities, as well in this Government, as in the former, are call'd and written otherwiſe than the Country People call them. To conclude, the Map diſtinguiſhes plainly by what Boundaries this Government is ſeparated from the

the *Cora-kalpacki*, *Coſaci-Horda*, *Kalmucks*, *Mungals*, and the *Chineſe Eaſtern Tartars.*

XVII. THE Eighth Government is that of *Caſan*; To this belong, firſt the *Caſan-Mahometan*, and *Kaſim-* or *Kaſinowian-Tartars*, then the *Czeremiſſi*, *Nagornaja*, and Part of the *Czuwaſhes*, and *Uſinſkian Baſchkirs.* This Government at firſt included fifty-four Cities that contributed to the Treaſury of the *Empire.* Thoſe that remain of them, ſince the laſt Diviſion, are the following, *viz. Caſan*, *Jaerinſki*, *Czantſchurin*, *Kukarka*, *Malmiſch*, *Urſchum*, *Tzarewkoktſchaiſkoe Rochtſchaga*, *Ziwilſki*, *Simbirſki*, *Swiaſki*, *Sabaxar*, *Kuſmademianſki*, *Sundir*, *Ufa*, *Birr*, *Karakul*, *Sarapul*, *Karmiſch*, *Tetaſch*, *Laiſchew*, *Belojahr*, *Belachija*, *Jadrim*, *Weſniki*, *Alath*, *Starri*, *Temſchin*, *Novoi-Temſchin*, which two latter are alſo call'd *Scheſminſki*, *Arſkoi*, *Menſelinſk*, *Saiſk*, *Maiſk*, which the Country People alſo call *Maina*, *Bulaarſk*, called alſo *Bilark*, *Tiinſk*, *Jeriſinſk*, likewiſe called *Jeriklinſk*, *Togajew*, *Juſchaiſk*, *Tolſkoi*, *Argaſh*, *Solokakulico*, *Caſpir*, *Ribnoi*, and *Emſuga.*

XVIII. THE ninth is the *Aſtracan* Government, to which belong the *Grebinſkian Coſacks*, who live to the *South* of *Aſtracan*, likewiſe the *Jaitzki Coſacks*, on the River *Jayk*, the *Aſuckian Kalmucks*, properly call'd *Torga-uthi*; Likewiſe all the new Conqueſts, and the *Tartars* in *Dageſtan.* The Cities that contribute are: *Aſtracan*, *Tereck*, or *Terki*, *Zaritzin*, *Jayiſkoi*, *Jayk*, *Zernojahr*, *Saratorie*, *Samara*, *Demitrewſki*, otherwiſe call'd *Kamiſchinka*, *Kraſnojahr*, *Juriew*, and *Alexeiſki*, on the River *Samara.*

XIX. THE tenth, and laſt Government, is that of *Nyſegorod*, or *Nyſchegorod*, which is to be reckon'd but as a Vice-Government; To this belong the *Morduini*, *Czeremiſſi Lugowaja*, and Part of the *Czuwaſchi*; The Cities in this Government that contribute are theſe ten; *Niſchnagorod*, *Murom*, *Arſamas*, *Alater*, *Waſsle*, *Kadom*, *Gorochowetz*, *Potzinki*, *Uremeſk*, and *Remſaiſki.*

XX. CONCERNING, II. the particular Diviſion of each Government into certain Provinces, I have not made ſo exact an Enquiry about it; But only endeavour'd to get a true Information of the Boundaries of each; my Deſign, during my Captivity, not being, as I have ſaid already, to give a full Deſcription

of *Ruſſia*, which I expected from ſome of my Fellow-Captives, and others who have been in *Ruſſia* and *Siberia* as long as my ſelf. Though this Particular Diviſion cannot differ much from what I have ſhewn, in ſtating the Principalities, and different People, which are under each Government.

XXI. THE III. or more minute Diviſion of each Province into certain Diſtricts, I leave to Geometricians.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Ancient and Modern Rulers of Ruſſia, *and the Places of their Reſidence.*

SUMMARY.

§. I. *THE* Sclavonians *were not call'd* Ruſſi, *'till after they came to inhabit the Country call'd* Ruſſia; II. *Neither were they originally* Sarmatians. *The Difference between the Names* Ruſs *and* Roſs. *Where* Rurick *firſt reſided.* III. *A Conjecture that* Ladoga *was not the moſt ancient Reſidence of the Rulers of* Ruſſia. IV. Adamus Bremenſis *mentions a Reſidence call'd* Chue. V. *The Opinion of* Helmondus *cencerning the moſt ancient Reſidence.* VI. *His Opinion refuted.* VII. *Other Authors mention an ancient* Pagan *Royal City, call'd* Rotula. VIII. *The Teſtimony of ſome Writers, who believe* Ladoga *to to have been* Rurick's *firſt Reſidence.* IX. *The different Opinions concerning this Matter are not eaſy to be decided, for want of ancient Records, in the* Ruſſian *Hiſtory. What Helps that Hiſtory, however, affords.* X. *The Author propoſes to be brief in his Accounts of the ancient Hiſtory of* Ruſſia. XI. *It is very difficult to come at any Remains of the Ancient Hiſtory, and were, therefore, to be wiſh'd, that the* Ruſſians *themſelves would promote ſuch an Enquiry. The Author profeſſes his Impartiality in his Account of the Lives and Actions of the Modern Rulers of* Ruſſia. XII. *The Form of Government, from* Rurick *to* Waſi-

lius

lius Schuiſki, *was an Abſolute Sovereignty.* XIII. *At what Time, and by whom the* Ruſſian *Laws were introduced.* XIV. *Their Form of Government reduced to certain Articles.* XV. *The Conſequences of Appennages in* Ruſſia. XVI. *Among others, they were the Occaſion of its remaining long under the* Tartarian *Yoke.* XVII. *Of the* Czar Boris Gudenow, *and his Actions.* XVIII. *His Subjects diſſatisfied under his Government.* XIX. *Of the Impoſtor* Demetrius, *and the Names by which he was diſtinguiſh'd.* XX, to XXX. *His Policy, and the Means he uſed to obtain the Crown. His Fote after he obtained it.* XXXI, XXXII. *After the Murder ef* Demetrius, *the* Ruſſians *proceed to the Election of a* Czar; *Articles propos'd, and Reſolutions taken thereupon.* XXXIII, to XXXVI. Waſilius Schuiſki *choſen. His Fate. The* Ruſſians *proceed to a new Election, and chuſe* Wladiſlaus, *King of* Poland; *But are not unanimous; An Ambaſſy ſent on that Account to* Poland. *The Ambaſſadors, among whom was* Theodor Romanow, *arreſted.* XXXVII, to XLII. Romanow *contrives to ſend a Letter to* Ruſſia, *The remarkable Contents of it.* XLIII, to XLV. *This Letter produced in the Senate. The Effect of it.* XLVI, to XLVIII. *They proceed to a new Election.* XLIX, to LVIII. Theodor, Romanow's *Son, propoſed. What happened thereupon. Young* Romanow *elected, and Preparations made for his Coronation.*

I. IN the firſt Chapter, §. IX. I took Notice of the Difference between the two Nations, the *Ruſſians* and *Sclavonians*, and the Reaſon there is to believe, that the latter, after their Arrival in that Country, firſt took the *Ruſſian* Name. This might be farther proved from the *Ruſſian* Annals, which allow that the *Sclavonians*, at firſt, had not the Name of *Ruſs*, but took it either from *Rurick*, the firſt Prince in *Novogrod*, or, as they ſay elſewhere, from the River *Ruſa*, which falls into the Lake of *Ilmen*, near the City of *Stara Ruſa*.

II. BUT as, in the ſame Chapter, I have ſufficiently ſhewn, that the *Sclavonians* originally were no *Sarmatians*; So I have, likewiſe, proved, in the ſame Place, that the Name *Sarmata* and *Ruſs* is all one; And it is, therefore, by no Means probable,

that the whole *Ruſſian* Nation and Empire, ſhould have taken its Name from this little River *Ruſa* (30). It is more likely, that the ancient Inhabitants, after the Name *Sarmata* ceaſed, took the Name of *Ruſſi*, and that the *Sclavonians* had it from them. Here the Reader will be pleaſed to call to Mind what I obſerved in the ſame Chapter, concerning the Difference between the Names *Ruſs* and *Roſs*. I have likewiſe there taken Notice, §. XII. and in the Note belonging to it, of the Name *Uli-ma*, which ſignifies the ſame as *Oſtergard*, in the *Daniſh* Language; and I, at the ſame Time, obſerved, that the ancient City of *Ladoga* (which ſome call'd *Garderyk*) was the firſt Reſidence before *Novogrod*; Likewiſe in the ſecond Chapter, §. XI. the Difference is ſhewn between the firſt Principalities of *Kiow* and *Novogrod*, in which latter Place, as ſome ſay, *Rurick* reſided.

III. I AM obliged to repeat theſe fundamental Particulars, becauſe they will be ſome Help to the better underſtanding of the Sequel. There certainly muſt have been a Reſidence in this Country before *Novogrod*, or *Ladoga* flouriſhed; Which the very Name of this Place intimates; *viz.* *Novogrod*, or *New City*.

IV. AND *Adamus Bremenſis*, *Lib.* II. *cap.* 13. calls the moſt ancient Capital City of the *Ruſſians*, *Chiven*, which *Helmoldus*, (in his *Sclavonian* Chronicle, *Page* 1.) names *Chue* (31). Now as

(30) The Word *Ruſa* is only an *Appellative*, given to ſeveral Rivers, eſpecially to thoſe that are rapid, or make a ruſhing Noiſe, occaſion'd by Cataracts; Which Word, in the *Perſian* Language is *Rudſch*, in the *Tartarian Jakuhtian*, *Ruſs*, and in the *Greek* ῥοῦς, which is almoſt the ſame with the *German* Words *Rauſchen*, *Geræuſch machen* (to make a ruſhing Noiſe,) which the *Ruſſians* call *Buſtra*. The Rivers *Dwina* and *Jayk* were formerly call'd by much the like Names, *viz.* *Rudan* and *Rudon*; and the River *Phaſis*, in *Colchis*, was formerly call'd *Arctu Ruſs*. (See my *Prodrome*.)

(31) Compare what I have already ſaid of this, in my Introduction, Sect. VI. in the Notes. Likewiſe what I have cited, in the foregoing Chapter, from the *Ruſſian Annals*, of the Country of *Biarma* and the *Solotta Babba* (or Golden Woman) and what is inſerted, from the *Finnlandian* Hiſtory, (in the *Swediſh Library*, *Part III. p.* 3. publiſh'd in the Year, 1728.) *viz.* That *Kuſo*, the 14th King of *Finnland*, when he invaded *Biarma*, depopulated the whole Country, and kept it 3 Years in his Poſſeſſion. *Biarma*, which now is call'd *Carelia*, had formerly its own Kings, who were no leſs famous than the Kings of *Finnland*, and other *Northern* Nations. Some Remains of their Names and Actions are to be found in *Roloff*'s Hiſtory. *Jumala* was the God of this Nation (N. B. *Solotta Babba*) for whom they built a ſumptuous Temple. *Saxo*, *Sturleſonius*, and others, teſtify, that they built Cities, and eſtabliſh'd Free Marts. On this Occaſion, I deſire the Reader

as *Novogrod* is the new Reſidence, the Queſtion is, which was the Old one?

V. HELMOLDUS (in the ſame Chronicle, *Page* 33.) thinks it to be the City of *Aldenburgh*, in *Wagria*, near *Lubeck*, which, in the *Sclavonian* Language, was called *Stari-gorod*; And that, becauſe this was the Reſidence of the Ancient *Sclavonian* Kings, the *Sclavonians*, when they conquered *Ruſſia*, call'd this Place *Novogrod*, in Diſtinction to the former.

VI. BUT this is doubtful, not only becauſe of the aforemention'd City *Chue*, but alſo on Account of the following Particulars. For, (1.) I have, in the *Introduction*, *Sect.* VI. §. V. and in the Note thereunto belonging, alledged, what *Peter Dykmann* cites, in his Obſervations on a Part of the *Swediſh Runeſtones*, from the Ancient *Gothick* Books, or *Sagis*, *viz.* That *Holmgarda* and *Garderyk*, is that Tract of Land towards the Lake of *Ladoga* and *Pæipus*, the Capital City of which was *Aldejuſburgh*, (in the *Sclavonian* Language called *Stari-gard*;) But this *Holmogard* muſt have extended far *Eaſtward*, beyond the River *Dwina*, to *Archangel*; Becauſe that Province, which alſo is call'd the Province of *Dwina*, (but improperly, becauſe no one in *Ruſſia* knows of any ſuch Province) is, to this Day, properly called the Province of *Holmogorod* or *Cholmogorod* (32); And, therefore, in the *Daniſh* Hiſtory, as I have obſerved before, it is called *Oſtregard*, and, by the *Eſthonians*, *Ulima*.

VII. (II.) IN old Records, Mention is made of another Ancient City in theſe Parts, called *Rotula*, more towards the *Weſt*; For, as *Thomas Hiærne* obſerves, (in his Manuſcript Hiſtory of

Reader to look into my *Polyglott Table*, in which he will obſerve, that the *Finnlandians*, the *Permecki*, or *Biarmi*, and the *Oſtiacks*, have the ſame Dialect; And the latter call a Capital City *Chue* or *Chuotſche*.

(32) According to the above-mention'd *Swediſh Library*, (*Part I. p.* 170.) *Jocul*, the 7th King of *Finnland*, liv'd in Peace and Unity with his Neighbours, and made an Alliance with the Inhabitants of *Biarma*, who, at that Time, had great Commerce with the *Finnlandians*. Compare *Trofæus* (*in Hiſt. Norweg. Tom. I. Lib. III. Chap.* 25.) who ſays, *Biarma* was ſituated near the River *Dwina* on the *White Sea*; (that is, the above-mention'd *Cholmo-* or *Holmogorod.*) Whoever is curious in Antiquity may compare what has been alledged here, with what *Olaus Verelius* (*chap. I. p.* 5.) mentions, *viz.* That *Saxo-Grammaticus* (*in Vita Frothonis tertii*) reckons the *Ruſſians* and *Hunns* one People; By which, however, *Saxo* does not mean the *Sclavonians*, but the Ancient Inhabitants of *Ruſſia*: As alſo, with what *Verelius* mentions, in the ſame Place, of *Oſtrogard* and *Kajania*.

of *Eſthonia*, *Livonia* and *Lithlandia*, in the firſt Book, from the ancient *Livonian* Annals;) In the Country of *Habſal*, is ſtill a Diſtrict called *Rotalia*, in which was a City of the ſame Name, where the ancient *Pagan* Princes reſided, and muſt be the ſame, of which *Anonymus*, (in his great and mighty Empire of *Muſcovy*, publiſhed at *Nurnberg*, 1687, *p.* 13, and 17.) ſays as follows) " The *Gothick Annals*, of the moſt Ancient Times, " mention only the *Ruſſian* City of *Rotula*, and ſome others " in *Carelia* and *Eſthonia*." Likewiſe, about *A. M.* 2400, Notice is taken in the *Gothick Annals*, of a King of the *Southern Rutheni*, named *Veſpaſian*, who reſided in the City of *Rotula*, and, as it is reported, waged War with the *Suiones*.

VIII. (III.) *Claude Duret*, (in his *Treſor de l'Hiſt. &c. Cologne* 1613. *p.* 864.) remarks, that, after the *Sclavonians* had call'd *Rurich*, and his two Brothers from *Waragia*, to be their Prince, he firſt reſided at *Ladoga*, with which the *Anonymous* Author I mention'd above, (*p.* 13.) agrees; When he ſays: " According to " *Ruſſian* Hiſtorians, that the preſent *Muſcovite Empire* took its " Riſe near *Great Novogrood*, *Bialaoſorsk* and *Iſtorsk* from *Rurich*, " and *Sinau* and *Truvor* his Brothers, who were *Waragi*; Of " whom *Rurich* choſe the City and Lake of *Ladoga*, for his Place " of Reſidence, *&c.*" Which confirms what I have ſaid in the above-mention'd *Chap. I. §. XIII.* of the City of *Muſcow*, viz. that it was the fifth Place of Reſidence, and that, before *Rurich* choſe either *Ladoga* or *Novogrood*, to reſide in, the moſt Ancient *Ruſſian* Kings muſt have had another Place of Reſidence.

IX. SINCE then, for Want of *Ruſſian* Records (the *Sclavonians* having been unacquainted with Letters, till about 900 Years after the Birth of CHRIST) it cannot be determin'd, where that Reſidence, before *Ladoga* and *Novogrod*, was ſituated; And much leſs any Thing can be ſaid with Certainty concerning the Form of Government of the firſt *Ruſſian* Chiefs, nor of the *Sclavonians*, who afterwards came in with *Rurich* and the *Waragi* (33); We are

(33) The Name *Waragi* is an *Appellative*, which was given to certain Nations living on the *Baltick*, and in the neighbouring Iſlands, who formerly were very great Pirats, whence they obtained the Name of *Warg* and *Waragi*, (ſignifying, in the *Gothick* Language, *Wolves*) which Name ſeems to have the ſame Signification and Original with the Ancient *German* Words, *Garw* and *Agarw*, (i. e. *ravenous*.) Monſ. *Chardin*, (in his Travels,

are, therefore, oblig'd to have Recourſe to other Hiſtorians, who take Notice of *Ruſſia*. However, ſo much may be gather'd from the *Ruſſian Annals*, that not long before the Arrival of *Rurick*, *Ruſſia (proprie ſic dicta)* was in a very mean State, divided into

vels, *p.* 196.) tells us, that the *Turks* formerly call'd the *Rovers*, on the *Black Sea*, *Lazi* and likewiſe *Curti* or *Curdi*, from a Sort of Wolves in that Country, which the *Turks* call *Curti*, who were as hurtful to Animals, as the *Lazi* were among Men. He ſays alſo, that the Word *Laz* or *Lazi* ſignifies only (*un Homme de Mer, & dans la Langue figurée, une Perſonne rude, groſſiere & ſauvage*, i. e.) a *Sea Man*, and in a Metaphorical Senſe, *a rude and unpoliſh'd, ſavage Perſon, &c.* I, for my Part, cannot help thinking it probable, that this Name *Lazi* is derived from the *Sclavonian* Tongue, in which *Læz* or *Læſs* ſignifies a *Foreſt* or *Foreſts*; Whence the *Ruſſians* call thoſe People who live in *Foreſts*, or ſuch as rob in *Woods* or *Foreſts*, *Læſſnoi Ludi*; But *Sheringham* (*in Diſcept. de Orig. Gent. Angl. p.* 60, & 349) writes, that the *Greeks* ſay, the Name *Læſſai* ſignifies *Pugiles* and *Palæſtrici*; And the *Cimmerii* were call'd, by the *Ancient Germans*, *Lazi*. Which agrees very well with what has been ſaid before, *viz.* That the *Greeks* call'd them *Camari*, from the Ships in which they uſed to commit their Piracies: But as to the above-mention'd *Waragi*, the Accounts we have from the Ancients do not ſo perfectly agree what Nation they were. The *Ruſſian Annaliſts* take them to be *Boruſſi* or *Pruſſians*, and that *Rurick* was invited from thence. They alſo mention, that the *Waragi* inhabited *Ruſſia* before the Inroads of the *Sclavonians* and *Vandals*, who drove them thence; But that they were recall'd in the Time of *Rurick*. Moreover, they pretend, that Part of theſe *Waragi* likewiſe call'd themſelves *Ruſſi*; and when *Rurick*'s two Brothers, *Sinaus* and *Truvor*, diſagreed, and the latter had engag'd theſe *Waragi*, who were alſo call'd *Ruſſi*, to take Part with him, and by their Help overcome the former, and his *Sclavonians*, the whole Country, and the *Sclavonian* Nation, were, from that Time, call'd *Ruſſia* and *Ruſſi*; Which again confirms what I have ſaid before, *viz.* That the *Sclavonians* were not originally *Ruſſians*. But, in another Place of the *Ruſſian Annals*, it is ſaid, that after the 3 Sons of *Swetoſlaw*, the Son of *Olga*, were fallen together by the Ears, and the youngeſt, *Wolodimir*, was forced to quit the City of *Novogrod*, he fled, for Shelter, to the *Waragi*, N. B. who liv'd on the other ſide of the Sea, where he procured a great Number of Adherents, with whom he return'd, and waging War with his eldeſt Brother, *Jaropolck*, overcame him; Upon which, being thereby become very powerful, he firſt took the Title of *Grand Prince*, in the Year 978. Since by this, it now appears, that the *Waragi* muſt be look'd for, not only on this ſide, but alſo on the other ſide of the Sea (poſſibly in *Finnland*, or even in *Sweden*) the above-mention'd Author, *Claude Duret*, ſays not without Reaſon, that the *Waragi*, from whom *Rurick* deſcended, were *Vandals*, by others call'd *Wends*; (*See my Note, in the Introduction, to Sect.* III. p. 29.) Nay, the above cited *Ruſſian Annals* make mention of a Nation call'd *Wolchowi*, who were ſettled near the *Sclavonians*, towards the *Danube*, but diſagreing, the latter departed from thence, ſome to the River *Viſtula* in *Poland*, and others to *Ruſſia*. Now the Word *Wolck* or *Wolch* in the *Ruſſian*, *Poliſh*, and *Vandalian* Tongues, having the ſame Signification as *Warg* in the *Swediſh* and *Gothick*, (*viz.* a *Wolf*) we might infer from hence, that not only one and the ſame Sort of People are here meant, but alſo, that the *Waragi* and *Sclavonians* were, from Times immemorial, Nations which indeed dwelt near each other, but were continually at War, and could never be reconciled. The Remains of this *Wolchowian* Name, are, to this Day, in *Ruſſia*, *e. g.* The City and Lake of *Wolkowski*; From the latter of which the River *Wolka* or *Wolga* takes its Riſe; Likewiſe the Foreſt of *Wolkowski*; Juſt in the ſame Manner, as the Name *Waragi* obtain'd, farther towards the *North-weſt*, on the *Baltick*, which the *Ruſſians* call *Wargetskoi*, or *Waretskoi-more*; And ſo the Iſlands near *Sweden*, nay, whole *Sweden* itſelf, is call'd *Waragion* or *Wargion*.

many little Dominions, or Lordſhips, and therefore oblig'd to be tributary to its Neighbours, the *Coſares*, *Corſares*, *Chorſares*, or *Chazares*, and the *Waragi*; as we ſee in the Hiſtory of *Kiow*, (*mention'd above in Chap. I.*) where it is expreſly ſaid; "That this "Principality had, at leaſt, for a Time, been tributary to the "*Coſares* (34); And, therefore, the *Sclavonian* Nation in *Ruſſia* "was

(34) *Corſar* or *Chorſar* denotes, as every one knows, a Pirat, or one who robs on the high Seas. They had, as ſome ſay, the Name originally from *Corſica*, of which Iſland *Pliny* makes Mention, (*Lib. III. Cap.* 6.) Whence all Pirats, in the *Mediterranean*, are called *Corſares* (or *Corſairs*,) be they *Corſicans*, or not. According to *Fabius Pictor*, that Iſland had the Name of *Kurios* from *Cyrno*, the Daughter of *Hercules*; But *Strabo* gives us another Account, and ſays it was deriv'd from a certain Woman call'd *Corſica*, who's Ox ſwam from the Continent that lies oppoſite to it, to this Iſland. However, as *Adrian Reland*, (in his ſecond *Diſſert. de Mari rubro, p.* 95. §. *XV.*) and the very learned *Hinckkelman*, in his *Alcoran*, have refuted theſe pretended Derivations of this Name, beyond all Contradiction, we muſt look for its Etymology elſewhere. Some may pretend to derive this Name *Corſare* from the *Latin* Words *Curſus* and *Curſores*, which is not improbable, and then the Iſland has taken its Name from the Inhabitants, and not the Inhabitants from the Iſland; Others may perhaps ſeek for another Origin of this Name; But it being well known, what great Affinity the *Perſian* Tongue has with the *Latin*, I will only obſerve, with Regard to the Nations mention'd in our Text, who, by the *Sclavonians*, were call'd *Corſari*, *Coſari*, and *Choſari*, that *Chuſar*, in the *Perſian* Tongue, ſignifies *Properatio*, *Feſtinatio*, *& Deſertio*, which denote the ſame as the *Latin* Words *Curſus* and *Curſores*; And it is, therefore, not unlikely, but the Word *Huſſar*, which ſignifies, in the *Hungarian* Language a *Rover*, may be related to *Choſar*. I have, moreover, obſerv'd in the *Eaſtern* Hiſtories, that commonly thoſe Nations, who liv'd on the Mouths of great Rivers, were call'd *Choſari*, *Chazari*, or *Chorſari*, (which were generally a Sort of People, not unlike the *Saporowian Coſſacks*, on the Mouth of the River *Dnieper*, who were wont, with their ſmall Boats, to do great Damage to the *Turks*, in the *Black Sea*.) So theſe Nations, of whom I am now diſcourſing, dwelt towards the Mouth of the *Danube*, as I have obſerved above in the Text, and ſeparated from their Brethren, who liv'd on the *Eaſt* Side of the *Wolga* or *Bolga*, to the *North* of the *Caſpian Sea*; The Capital City of which latter, (according to the Account given by the *Arabian* Author *Albergendi*) was ſituated in the Latitude of 46 Degrees 30 Minutes; And muſt have been about the Mouth of the River *Jayk*. Thus when *Herodotus*, (*Lib. VII.*) *Pliny* (*Lib. V. Cap.* 17.) and *Solinus* (*in Polyhiſt. Cap.* 62.) ſay, that the *Scythians* (by which always are underſtood People that live in Woods and Fields, and not near Lakes and Seas) call'd the *Perſians*, *Chorſari*; I cannot be perſuaded, but that, by this, they meant thoſe *Perſian* Vaſſals who liv'd round about the *Caſpian Sea*, on the *Black Sea*, and in the neighbouring Iſlands; Eſpecially it having been uſual among theſe Nations, as I have obſerv'd before, to call whole Empires and Countries, by the Names of thoſe Provinces, that lay neareſt to them; *e. g.* the *Finnlandians* call the whole *Swediſh* Nation *Ruodſalains* from the Province *Rodſlagen*, which lies neareſt them, and all the *Germans Saxalains*, from the *Saxons*, with whom they firſt became acquainted, *&c.* Whence it appears, that there were, in ancient Times, *Chorſari*, or *Coſari*, who were Pirats, as well in the *Eaſt*, as in the *Weſt*; And as the *Turks* call a Pirat *Curſanlick*, why may not this Name as eaſily be derived from the ancient *Perſian Chorſares*, as from the Iſland of *Corſica*? Eſpecially as the *Spaniards* ſay likewiſe *Coſar*, inſtead of *Corſare*, which Pronunciation they probably had from the *Saracens*. This Caſe of the *Scythians* and *Perſians* ſeems to me to be juſt

" was forced, by the Advice of *Gostomisles*, an eminent and pru-
" dent Citizen in *Novogrod*, to have Recourse, among their
" Neighbours, the *Waragi*, to *Rurick*, *Sinaus* and *Truvor*, three
" Lords, famous for their great Exploits, who were proba-
" bly Brothers, and to offer them the Government of their
" Country.

X. It may now be expected, that I should give an Account of the Names, Lineage, Form of Government and Actions of the Ancient Chiefs, from the Time of *Rurick*, reduced to certain Dynasties; But this having already been sufficiently done by other Writers: *Viz. Baron Herberstein*, *Meyberg*, *Paul Oderborn* and *Olearius*; I therefore chuse only to take Notice of so much of the Ancient History of *Russia*, as may serve me for a Foundation to what, during my Stay in *Russia*, I could learn of the Modern History of that *Empire*.

XI. But (as I have already taken Notice) it being very difficult in *Russia*, to get to the Knowledge of any Remains of History which may have been conceal'd from the Time of *Rurick*, in which, perhaps, a more accurate Account might be found, than what we have from the above-mentioned Authors; Especially, as the *Russian* Regents formerly made it a Point of Politicks to forbid their Subjects writing any Thing concerning their own Nation, an Example of which I have given in the Introduction, (*Sect.* VI. §. XI.) in the Case of a *Russian* Nobleman, call'd *Rossladien*; It were to be wished, since such political Maxims are now better seen through, that some great Men, and Publick-spirited Persons, in *Russia*, would promote an Examination into the *Russian* History, as well Ancient as Modern. Which, for Instance, none could better do, than *Baron Oster-*

just the same, as when the modern *Russians* generally call all the *Kathaian* and *Chinese* Vassals, be they either *Tartars* or *Mungals*, who live without the Wall, *Kataici*. Besides, Authors are very apt to vary the Name of this *Cosarian* Nation; Some call them *Chazari*, or *Gazari*, others *Chozari* and *Chosari*. *Gesnerus* (*in Mithrid. Cap. II. p.* 69.) and *Abraham Frencellius* (*de Origin. Ling. Sorab. Tom. I. Præfat.*) are of Opinion that the *Mingrelians* were their Descendants; But *Aboul Faragius*, (in his History,) says the *Georgians* were so; Another *Arabian* Writer, called *Ebn Bratish*, tells us, that the Emperour *Heraclius* obtain'd strong Succours from them, against the *Persians*, and *Constantine Porphyrogeneta*, (in the 39th Chapter *de Administ. Imp.*) mentions, that Emperour *Leo* married a *Chorsarian* King's Daughter; *Marius Niger* divides *Taurica Chersonesus* into two Parts, and calls the *Southern* Part *Gethia*, and the *Northern*, towards the Mouth of the *Donn*, *Chazaria*.

mann, and *Schaferow*, *Macarow*, formerly Cabinet-Counſellour, and *Wolkow*, chief Secretary of War; Eſpecially for the Hiſtory and Life of *Peter* I. of Glorious Memory. Since, therefore, the State of the *Ruſſian* Hiſtory is ſuch as I have hinted, I hope I ſhall not be blamed, if I ſhould not be circumſtantial enough in my Relation of ſome Things, or ſhould touch on ſome, which, in the Opinion of others, might as well be omitted. For I write impartially, what I have been informed of, by Perſons of Veracity and Credit in *Ruſſia*, to the beſt of their Knowledge, and have no Reaſon, on Account of any Prejudice whatſoever, to add, or diminiſh any Thing, to or from their Relations; Eſpecially as, after my Return from *Siberia* to *Muſcow*, I was received very favourably by ſeveral Lords of the higheſt Rank, and particularly by the late Count *Bruſſen*, Grand Maſter of the Ordinance, who was pleaſed to make me ſuch Offers, that if I could have reſolved to ſettle in *Ruſſia*, it might perhaps have been very much to my Advantage.

XII. In the firſt Place, then, by what I have found in ſome Ancient *Ruſſian* Manuſcripts, the Government of that Empire has always been Deſpotick, from the Time of *Ruric*, to that of *Waſilius Schuiſki*; And every Prince governed according to the beſt of his own Judgment, without being tied down by any ſettled Form of Government, or written Laws.

XIII. But *Ivan Baſiliewitz*, or *Czar John* II. call'd the Tyrant, firſt compoſed a Body of Law, collected from many Precedents and Cuſtoms, and delivered it to the Judges. In the *Ruſſian* Tongue it is call'd *Sudenaja Kniga*, (i. e. *the Book of Juſtice*,) which, though never printed before the Reign of Czar *Alexei*, yet was obſerved for a conſtant Rule.

XIV. As to the Form of Government, it at firſt conſiſted of a few Articles only, which were committed to Writing, at the Coronation of *Waſilius Schuiſki*.

XV. During the Reigns of the Lineage of *Ruric*, which continued above Six Hundred Years, the eldeſt Princes always ſucceeded without any Limitation, or Conteſt about the Right of Primogeniture, and the younger had Appennages granted them; which increaſed the Number of petty Princes, every one reigning abſolute in his own Territory; But, at the ſame Time,

weaken'd

weaken'd the Empire; And this was one Reaſon, that the *Tartars* found it eaſy to keep *Ruſſia*, for ſo long a Time, under their Dominion.

XVI. THIS *Tartarian* Yoke lay upon the Neck of the *Ruſſians* 160 Years, 'till *Ivan Baſiliewitz*, or *John* I. call'd the *Great*, ſhook it entirely off, and having ſeized on all the petty Principalities, aboliſhed the Right of Appennages by a Law.

XVII. THIS Lineage becoming extinct, in *Czar Theodore*, and *Boris Gudenow*, the laſt *Czar*'s Wife's Brother, coming to the Crown, which he obtained more by Fraud, than by a free Election, the Subjects deſired no new Conditions of him; But left the former Sovereignty in its full Vigour, being unacquainted with Alterations or Innovations in Government. This Tyrant being ſtung with the Guilt of having deſtroyed the former *Czarian* Family, in a Treacherous Manner, and in particular, of having, as it was generally believed, poiſoned *Czar Theodore*, with which not only others, but alſo his own Siſter, the *Czarina* Dowager, taxed him, and, for that Reaſon, would never ſpeak to him; And, beſides, two Noblemen having, by his Orders, butcher'd the young Prince *Demetrius*, half Brother of the late *Czar Theodore*, with Knives, in the City of *Ugglitz*, he was apprehenſive the neareſt Relations of this Prince would, ſooner or later, revenge this Outrage. His greateſt Fear was of two Brothers, *Nikite* and *Theodore Romanow*, Uncles, by the Mother's Side, of the murdered Prince *Demetrius*, and own Brothers of *Ivan Baſiliewitz*, the Tyrant's Wife, he therefore ſent them, with ſeveral others, under feigned Pretences, to Priſon, in remote Provinces: Nay, this would not ſuffice to aſſwage his Cruelty, but he ſeparated *Theodore Romanow*, and his Wife, againſt their Will, and put them into different Convents, obliging them both, not only to take the Orders, but *Theodore*, according to the Rules of the Convent, to change his Name, and take that of *Philaret*; And, beſides all this, he ordered many others, of great Families, to be put in Priſon, and deprived ſeveral Perſons of Rank of their high Poſts, without any Reaſon. Theſe Things could not but bring the Hatred and Diſaffection of the People upon him, eſpecially when many Perſons were under con-

continual Apprehenſions of being robbed not only of their Eſtates, but alſo of their Lives.

XVIII. AFFAIRS being in this Situation, it happen'd, that a Nobleman, by Name, *Gregory Atrepiew*, who was enter'd into Friar's Orders, fled into *Poland*, by the Advice and Contrivance, as was ſaid, of another old Friar, who bore a great Hatred to *Boris Gudenow*.

XIX. ATREPIEW, being in *Poland*, gave out that himſelf was Prince *Demetrius*, who, by Report, had been murder'd, and inſinuated himſelf by this Means, into the Favour of ſeveral *Grandees* of that Kingdom.

XX. THO' this News at firſt made but little Impreſſion at the *Czar*'s Court, and in the City of *Muſcow*, nobody doubting of the Murder of the true *Demetrius*; Yet Providence, as a juſt Puniſhment on *Boris Gudenow*, work'd on the diſſatisfy'd Minds of many who had ſuffer'd; Inſomuch, that ſeveral *Grandees* reſolved, rather to accept of a falſe Pretender to the Crown, than to pay Allegiance to One they knew to be a Tyrant. They, therefore, wrote privately Letters to *Atrepiew*, in *Poland*, to purſue his Intereſt there, aſſuring him, that when he came, with a *Poliſh* Army to *Muſcow*, they would declare him to be their Sovereign, and the lawful Succeſſor to the *Empire*.

XXI. THE *Poles* gave Credit to theſe Letters; And *Atrepiew*, or the falſe *Demetrius*, having ſtipulated ſeveral Conditions with them, in Return for their Aſſiſting him, they gave him a conſiderable Army, with which he haſten'd to *Ruſſia*.

XXII. *Boris Gudenow* ſent, indeed, a ſtrong Body of Troops againſt him, under the Command of a General; But this Officer, inſtead of employing his Forces againſt *Atrepiew*, join'd him, and complimented him as lawful Czar, in the Name of the whole *Empire*. Nay, ſeveral *Grandees* went from the City of *Muſcow* to meet him, and not one City oppos'd his March thither, but all ſubmitted to him in their Turn.

XXIII. THIS Chain of ill News drove *Boris Gudenow*, at Length, to Deſpair; He took Poiſon, and thus ended his Life.

XXIV. HOWEVER, whilſt the pretended *Demetrius* was on his March, to the City of *Muſcow*, ſome of *Boris Gudenow*'s Party, adhering to his Son, *Theodore*, proclaim'd him *Czar*, and actually

crown'd him; But his Reign did not last long; *Demetrius* came before the City, and sent an Order to the Rest of the Senate, that sided with *Boris*, to deliver up *Theodore* to him; But whilst they were deliberating upon this Matter, *Theodore*, who would not stay the Issue of it, threw himself out of a Window, and broke his Neck.

XXV. Upon this, the whole Senate, and the Body of the Clergy went, the same Day, in a great Procession, to meet *Demetrius*, whom they brought with Pomp and Splendour into the City, and crown'd him without any Conditions.

XXVI. The pretended *Demetrius*, or *Atrepiew*, who, by the common People, was also call'd *Grischka*, but generally *Rostriga*, (which signifies an *expell'd Friar)* was cunning enough to dissemble at first; And sent immediately for his pretended Mother, the old *Czarina*, who, at that Time, resided in a Nunnery, near the City of *Ugglitz*, to come to *Muscow*. The *Czarina* knew well enough, that this was not her true Son, yet, out of Policy, she acknowledg'd him as such, and *Demetrius*, or *Rostriga*, on his side, shew'd her all possible Honour, and desir'd her to remain at Court; But in this she entreated to be excused; Alledging, that as she had once chosen a private Life, she had banish'd all Inclinations to the Manners and Customs of a Court, and would rather continue to live in a Convent. *Demetrius*, moreover, set at Liberty all those which *Boris Gudenow* had imprison'd, made *Theodore Romanow*, or *Philaret*, Archbishop of *Rostow*, and shew'd great Favour to all his pretended Relations; But the whole Family of *Gudenow*, and their Favourites, were partly massacred, and partly put in Prison.

XXVII. This his Dissimulation did not, however, last long; He soon gave open Evidences of his Intention to introduce the *Roman Catholick* Religion; And not Confiding in the Chief Families of *Russia*, who he knew would not favour his View, he endeavour'd to send them out of the Way. Thus he deprived many innocent and well-deserving Persons of their Posts, seized on their Estates, and gave them to the *Poles*.

XXVIII. The *States* seeing this, at first argued the Matter with him, and told him that he was wrong to treat his good Subjects in this Manner; But He, not regarding it; On the con-

contrary, being reſolved to put his Deſign in Execution as ſoon as poſſible, ordered a Banquet, at which he intended to maſſacre the major Part of the Senate and Generals; But they, getting Intelligence of his Deſign, the Night before, went immediately to the old *Czarina*, and entreated her to diſcover the Truth, becauſe many balanc'd in their Belief, whether the pretended *Demetrius* were really her Son. The *Czarina*, at firſt, declined giving any Anſwer; But at Length, being preſs'd, ſhe ſaid: *You know very well that my true Son is dead, but if, by a faithful Confeſſion, I can contribute to the Publick Good of the Empire, I am ready to declare it in Perſon, even before all the People aſſembled in the Church.*

XXIX. THE Senators having this Aſſurance, rode all the Night about the Streets of *Muſcow*, exhorting the People, to ſtand by them, in oppoſing the Impoſtor *Demetrius:* Upon which; the next Morning, he was kill'd, and his Body burnt in the Market-Place of the City. What happen'd farther, and eſpecially in Relation to the *Poles*, would be too tedious to repeat here.

XXX. AFTER this, the Senators proceeded to a free Election, which was the firſt, at leaſt, ſince *Rurick*'s Time, and as long as that Lineage govern'd *Ruſſia*; And it was perform'd in the following Manner.

XXXI. ROSTRIGA, or the falſe *Demetrius*, being dead, and his Adherents depriv'd of all Power, the Senators call'd all the chief Families and ancient Nobility to *Muſcow*, to proceed to an Election. When this Aſſembly came to vote, the Majority fell upon one of the Lineage of the ancient *Ruſſian* Princes, call'd *Baſilius Schuiſki*, and upon Prince *John Galizin*, of the Royal *Corobuthian* Line: But both having equal Votes, the Aſſembly deſired theſe two Princes to retire, and to give them Time to conſider.

XXXII. WHEN they were retired, Prince *Worotinſki* made a Speech to the Aſſembly, repreſenting to them the Neceſſity of Conſidering ſome Circumſtances, in ſo weighty an Affair; For, I. They ought to be cautious of chooſing one of a Family that had many Relations and Adherents in the Country, which afterwards might be prejudicial to others. II. That it was neceſſary to preſcribe certain Conditions to him who ſhould be choſen;

viz.

viz. (1.) If he had been at Variance with any Perſon before, that every Thing ſhould be forgotten; and laid aſide. (2.) That he ſhould make no Pretenſions to any Mony or Eſtates of any Perſon whomſoever, nor commence Suit againſt any one, on that Account; But ſhould renounce all Demands whatſoever, in Order to avoid the Exerciſe of unlawful Power, or the Occaſion of new Troubles in the *Empire*. (3.) That no new Laws ſhould be made, or old ones alter'd; Nor no Taxes or Contribution impos'd upon the Publick, without the Knowledge and Conſent of the Senat. All this the Convention thought Right and Juſt, and made no Scruple to conſent thereunto. At laſt, he repreſented, that thoſe, who had given their Votes to Prince *Gallizin*, as an honeſt and prudent Man, had done well; But that his Family being too great, and of too high a Reputation, he deſired them to conſider better, and give their Opinion of it. Upon this one in the Aſſembly anſwered: *Theſe Lords are of equal Merit; and we have already done what our Duty requires: But to decide this Matter, let us conſult the People, to the End, that no body may have juſt Cauſe to blame us*; And with this the whole Aſſembly concurr'd. In the mean Time *Worotinſki* ſent a Perſon privately among the People, to give out, that *Schuiſki* was choſen, and that as ſoon as the *Bojares* (or rather *Bolares)* came out, they ſhould proclaim him. When, therefore, the *Bojares* came into the Church, to conſult the People, they all cry'd out, God ſave the *Czar, Baſilius Schuiſki*. This ſo ſurprized the *Bojares*, that they thought it a Miracle; For they knew that none of their Body had left the Aſſembly. Thus was *Schuiski* declared *Czar*, and having engaged to obſerve the above-mention'd Conditions, he was crown'd.

XXXIII. This *Schuiski* was a good General, but a bad Politician; For he no ſooner came to the Crown, than he began to oppreſs his Enemies, gave great Uneaſineſs to *Gallizin*, and ſeveral other Nobles, and put the Land under Contribution, without the Conſent of the Senat. This cauſed new Troubles, to which the *Poliſh* War, at that Time, contributed not a little: For Prince *Gallizin*, who commanded the Army, made a Truce with the *Poles*, without the *Czar*'s Conſent, and offer'd the *Ruſſian* Crown to Prince *Wladiſlaus*, Son of King *Sigiſmund:* Whereupon *Waſilius Waſielewitz, Gallizin, Knies Daniel Iwanowitz,*

Mitſcheski, and *Thomas Lugoroski*, together with *Theodore Romanow*, Archbiſhop of *Roſtow*, who carried the Crown with him, were ordered to go in Ambaſſy, to *Poland*, to crown Prince *Wladiſlaus*.

XXXIV. WLADISLAUS, hereupon, ſent an Army to *Muſcow*, under the Command of General *Zolkowski*, whom that Prince authorized to receive Homage from the *Ruſſians*; Becauſe he himſelf could not be there in Perſon ſo ſoon. In the mean Time, *Gallizin* took the Czar *Baſilius Schuiski* Priſoner, and deliver'd him as a Security to *Wladiſlaus*, by the aforeſaid Ambaſſy.

XXXV. BUT this not being done with the Conſent of the whole Senat, *Gallizin* was declar'd a Rebel, and it was reſolved, not to accept of the *Poliſh* Prince; Becauſe they rather choſe to have one, who was not ſo powerful, nor of a Religion contrary to the *Ruſſian*, whereby the whole *Empire* might eaſily come under a foreign Power. During this Diviſion of the Grandees and the Senat, another Party ſent Ambaſſadors to *Sweden*, to deſire one of the two Princes, the Sons of King *Charles* IX. to be their *Czar*. But the *Ruſſians*, being now divided into three Parties, could not agree in the laſt mention'd Reſolution, which was the Occaſion, that, for ſome Time, Things were in a ſtrange Confuſion, to the almoſt entire Ruin of the Country, till *Poſcharski*, of *Caſan*, *Scheremetow* of *Jareſlawle*, and *Schuiski* of *Novogrod* united, and, with a conſiderable Number of Troops, forced the *Poles* to quit the Realm. After which they made a Truce with the *Swedes*, and ſo, by fair Means, having no more Occaſion for their Aſſiſtance, got rid of them.

XXXVI. THE *Poles* being now deprived of all Hopes, and *Baſilius Schuiski* dying, as ſome ſay, of Grief, or, according to others, by Poiſon, the *Ruſſians* began to think of a new Election.

XXXVII. BUT the *Poles* had impriſon'd the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſy, particularly the Archbiſhop *Theodore Romanow*, who was in Priſon at *Marienburg* in *Pruſſia*, from whence he found Means to ſend a Letter to *Ruſſia*, to his Wife's Brother *Scheremetow*, wherein he exhorted him, as a General and Senator, earneſtly to conſider the Good of the Empire, and to perſuade the Reſt of the Senat to do the ſame. This Letter, as it is ſaid, inſpired the Aſſembly with new Reſolutions at the Election which enſued.

The

The Original thereof, which contain'd ſeveral remarkable things, was in the Hands of the late Marſhal *Scheremetow*, and one who had read it, told me the following Contents of it.

XXXVIII. (I.) ROMANOW proves, that *Gallizin* had done right in dethroning *Baſilius Schuiski*, who himſelf had been the Occaſion of it, by Acting contrary to the Conditions he had agreed to.

XXXIX. (II.) As for *Wladiſlaus*, *Gallizin* had been in the wrong in Chooſing and Crowning him, againſt the Conſent of the Reſt of the *Senators*, *Bojares*, and *Weywodes*; And that Party which had deſired the *Swediſh* Prince, was as much to blame.

XL. (III.) SINCE *Wladiſlaus* demanded the former Right, and Sovereignty, which is not ſo abſolute in any other Country, as it had been in *Ruſſia*, he would rather chuſe to dy in Priſon, than enjoy his Liberty, to be an Eye-witneſs of the Ruin of his Country,

XLI. (IV.) HE deſires *Scheremetow*, by all Means, to promote an Unanimity in the Senat, and uſe his Endeavours, that a Native of *Ruſſia* might be choſen.

XLII. (V.) HE lays before him the Conditions, that he who ſhould be choſen ought to agree to, and earneſtly engage to obſerve them; Which are very copious, and moſtly grounded upon the *Poliſh* Laws.

XLIII. SCHEREMETOW laying this Letter before the Senators and Generals, it was immediately reſolved to proceed to another Election, to which alſo, among others, *Gallizin*, and all thoſe who had been declared Rebels, or had been guilty of any Publick or Private Crimes, were invited to come to *Muſcow*, with Aſſurance, that all former Enmity ſhould be buried in Oblivion.

XLIV. THIS being done, in the firſt Aſſembly, ſome of the Members admoniſh'd the Reſt, above all Things, to have a Regard to the Welfare of their Country, in diſpenſing their Votes, that new Troubles might be avoided; And farther, that though the Intention of thoſe who were for promoting the Intereſt of a foreign Prince might be good, and they believe it to be for the Advantage of the Empire; Yet they might be miſtaken, and foreign Power and Pretenſions might rather bring about the Ruin of the Country. That in chuſing one of their own Body, they

ſhould take Care, not to give their Vote to any that had too great a Family and Relations, or who had been inſtrumental in the late unhappy Troubles, by which ſeveral had made themſelves Friends, and others Enemies, and therefore might eaſily be the Cauſe of new Diſturbances.

XLV. LASTLY, that he who was choſen, ſhould agree to the Conditions drawn up by the Aſſembly, and not be Crowned before he had ſolemnly promiſed to obſerve them.

XLVI. UPON this they proceeded to the Election, and the Votes being gathered, it appeared that the three principal Generals, *viz. Gallizin*, *Worotinſki* and *Schuiſki*, had the moſt; which Choice the Senators diſapproved of, by Reaſon the two firſt had before been concern'd in the Intrigues, which had occaſion'd the late Troubles, and it was, therefore, contrary to the Admonition given to the Aſſembly before-hand.

XLVII. THEY allow'd them all three to be Noblemen of great Merit, and of Princely Deſcent, yet it was to be conſider'd, that *Gallizin* had not only the greateſt Family, and the moſt Relations, but had as many, if not more, Enemies.

XLVIII. As to *Worotinſki*, he was a Man advanced in Years, who could not live long, and having no Heir qualified for a Succeſſor, it would neceſſarily cauſe a new Election, and new Troubles. *Schuiſki* was a dangerous Perſon, becauſe his Couſin had been deprived of the *Empire*, which it would be impoſſible for him to forget; They therefore deſired the Aſſembly to think of a farther Choice.

XLIX. UPON this, one of the Aſſembly propos'd young *Romanow*, Son of the Archbiſhop of *Roſtow*, who was Priſoner in *Poland*, a Youth of fifteen Years of Age, who was with his Mother, at *Caſtroma*, in a Convent. This Propoſal ſoon gained the Approbation of many; For in him were center'd all the Circumſtances above-mentioned, and as there were but three Males of his Family living, there was no Room for any Oppoſition on that Account: Neither was he concern'd in the late Troubles. His Father was a Clergyman, wno would rather adviſe to Peace, than excite Diviſions; Of which he had given ſufficient Proof, in ſhewing how much he was affected with the unſettled State of the *Empire*. However, there were none preſent, who could ſay

any Thing of the Qualifications of this young Nobleman. The *Caſtrowian* Noblemen, who were then in the Aſſembly, had, indeed, ſeen him, But all they could ſay was, that they look'd upon him, to be diſcreet for his Age. The Aſſembly was neither willing to ſet him aſide, on Account of his Youth, nor able to determine the Election in his Favour, 'till the aforeſaid Circumſtances were examin'd, and they had ſeen him: They, therefore, ſent two Noblemen with a Letter to his Mother, deſiring ſhe would ſend her Son, with theſe two Deputies, to *Muſcow*.

L. She had no ſooner read the Letter, than ſhe began to weep bitterly, and lament her Misfortune, which, ſhe ſaid, did not ceaſe to perſecute her, even in her Retirement; *Six Czars* (added ſhe) *have been already miſerably ſlaughter'd, and now you deſire that my only Son, whom I would not part with, for all the World, ſhould be the Seventh.*

LI. She, therefore, wrote a Letter to her Brother *Scheremetow*, earneſtly deſiring him to uſe his Endeavours, with the Senat, that her Son might be exempted; Becauſe he was too young, and incapable of ſo high a Dignity; Neither had he Relations capable of aſſiſting him, with their good Advice, for the Benefit of the *Empire*, as he himſelf, as well as they, would find, but perhaps too late: For which Reaſons ſhe entreated him, to prevail on the Nobility to caſt their Thoughts upon another Perſon, more capable to govern both himſelf and the *Empire*.

LII. This Letter, and the Report of the Deputies, cauſed a great Diſpute in the Aſſembly. Some took it amiſs of his Mother, and thought it very unbecoming her, to oppoſe the Will of the whole Aſſembly.

LIII. Others conſidering her Reaſons, and that ſhe was not ambitious of having her Son promoted to ſo high a Dignity, were the more confirm'd in their Opinion for the young *Romanow*.

LIV. Scheremetow, though he underſtood the Matter better than his Siſter, diſſembled, and pretended he would not concern himſelf in the Matter; And, moreover, approved of his Siſter's Objections: But, under Hand, he worked effectually

to

to bring the Affair to the wiſh'd for Iſſue; and to effectuate this the better, he perſuaded the Metropolitan of *Moſcow* to inſiſt, in the Aſſembly, upon the chuſing of *Romanow*.

LV. THIS *Metropolitan*, who, likewiſe, might expect to advance his Intereſt by it, came one Day early into the Aſſembly, and declar'd with a ſolemn Aſſeveration, that he had had a Revelation, and that if the Aſſembly was deſirous to have a proſperous Prince to rule over them, they could have none better than young *Romanow*.

LVI. THIS pretended Revelation, back'd by ſo ſolemn a Speech, had ſuch an Effect, that the whole Aſſembly deſired *Scheremetow* to write once more to his Siſter, to let her Son come to *Muſcow*. *Scheremetow* was afraid, that if young *Romanow* ſhould come to *Muſcow*, many might diſapprove of him, on Account of his Youth, or that, by his Anſwers, and Diſcourſe, he might give Occaſion to the oppoſite Party to raiſe new Objections, which, by his Abſence, might be avoided; Since no one there could give an Account of his Capacity; He therefore anſwer'd, with a feigned Humility: I muſt not oppoſe the Will of GOD, nor the Opinion of the Aſſembly.

LVII. HOWEVER, I think, it ought to be taken into Conſideration, that his Mother endeavours, with Tears, to avert it. I, for my Part, will be neutral in this Caſe, leſt any Body ſhould think, I have more Regard for my Relations, than for the Good of the *Empire*, and that I may have a clear Conſcience before GOD, and this Aſſembly, in Caſe any Misfortune ſhould happen, on Account of his Youth.

LVIII. THIS Speech, accompanied with many Tears, had ſuch an Effect, that even thoſe who before had been moſt againſt it, ſaid: Why ſhould we uſe ſo many Entreaties in this Caſe, ſince we have ſo full Power from the ALMIGHTY. As to his Youth, GOD, who has choſen him. will alſo protect him: Let us, therefore, no longer debate the Matter, but acknowledge him our Sovereign, to which all agreed. Hereupon they went to the Church, and proclaimed him, to the great Satisfaction and Joy of all who were preſent, eſpecially the Common People, who were mightily taken with the pretended Revelation. This was no ſooner done, than they ſent ſome of the Senators to

the Young *Czar*, to entreat him to come to *Muſcow* with all Expedition, in Order for his Coronation: And thus the illuſtrious Family of *Romanow*, obtained the *Imperial* Crown of *Ruſſia*.

CHAP. V.

The Beginning and Progreſs of the Reigns of the Family and Lineage of Romanow.

SUMMARY.

§ I. *YOung* Romanow's *Mother attempts to invalidate the Election.* II. *The Senators and Deputies promiſe to be his Guardians. Articles ſubſcrib'd to by the* Czar *before his Coronation.* III. *Ambaſſadors ſent to Foreign Courts after the Coronation.* IV. *A Council appointed the Young* Czar. V. *His Father made Patriarch. The young* Czar *chuſes a* Czarina-*Conſort.* VI. *to* X. *The Ceremonies and Cuſtoms of* Ruſſia *at the Choice of a* Czarina-*Conſort. The* Ruſſian Czars *ſeldom take Foreign Princeſſes for their Conſorts. They declare their Intention of marrying to the Senate. Whereupon they aſſemble the moſt beautiful young Ladies of the Kingdom. The Manner of chuſing the Bride.* XI. *to* XV. *The Family of* Czar Michael's *Conſort. The* Czar *ſends for her Father to* Muſcow. *In what Manner he receives the Meſſage. He is made a* Bojar. XVI. XVII. *This* Czarina *poſſeſs'd of every good Quality both of Body and Mind. She bore the* Czar *three Princeſſes and a Prince.* XVIII. *to* XX. *After the Death of* Czar Michael, *his Son* Alexius *ſucceeds. He marries the Daughter of* Miloſlawſki; *Who bears him four Sons and four Daughters.* XXI. *He marries a ſecond* Czarina. XXII. *to* XXXVI. *The Life and Actions of* Alexius. XXXVII. *His Revenue. The State of the Nobility of* Ruſſia *during his Reign.* XXXVIII. XXXIX. *The Amours of this* Czar. XL. XLI. *He left, at his Death, a* Czarina-*Dowager, three Princes and five*

five Princeſſes. XLII. *to* L. Czar Theodore, *or* Fœdor, *ſucceeds. Some Account of his Reign.* LI. LII. *He marries into the* Poliſh *Family of* Gruſchetſki; *But does not enjoy his* Czarina *long. He marries, a ſecond Time, into the Family of* Apraxin. *Dies ſoon after.* LIII. *to* LVI. *After his Death, the Senat elect his Youngeſt Brother,* Peter, *and paſs by the Elder,* John; *A Rebellion enſues; Of which their Siſter, the Princeſs* Sophia, *is the Ring-leader. The Circumſtances of this Inſurrection.* LVII. LVIII. *This Inſurrection being appeas'd, the* Czarina-*Dowager convenes the Nobility, in the Name of both the Young* Czars, *to aſſemble at the Convent of* Troitza. *They ſend to the City of* Muſcow, *and demand the Chiefs of the Faction. They voluntarily prepare for Death. The Concluſion of this Tragedy.* LIX. *to* LXIV. *The two young* Czars, *and their Siſter* Sophia, *have the joint Adminiſtration of the Government. A Character of the Princeſs* Sophia, *with an Account of her Conduct. Her Care to procure a Wife for her Brother* John. *Some Obſervations concerning* Czar John. *The Princeſs* Sophia *excluded the Co-Adminiſtration. The Death of* Czar John; *With an Account of his Family.*

I. THE Election and Proclamation of the new *Czar* at *Muſcow* being over, and the Senators and Deputies, with a great Number of the Officers of the Court, and all Neceſſaries for a magnificent Proceſſion, come to *Ugglitz*, Notice was given of it to the young *Czar*, *Michael Romanow*, and his Mother. His Mother deſired to ſpeak with the Senators and Deputies, before the Offer was made to her Son; Which was granted her; But when they met together in the Church for that Purpoſe, She only deſired once more, that her Son might be eas'd of this heavy Burthen: The Anſwer was; It is already done, and cannot be alter'd. She then begg'd, that ſince it muſt be ſo, they would be his Guardians; and added, that in Caſe he ſhould commit any Fault, by Reaſon of his Youth, and not having had an Education ſuitable to ſo high a Dignity, they would be anſwerable for it to GOD.

II. THIS Speech ſo moved the Senators, and all who were preſent, that they promiſed her before the Altar, to comply with her Deſire, and confirmed it with an Oath: Upon which the young

young *Czar* ſet out for *Muſcow*, where, ſoon after, He was crowned. Before the Coronation, He agreed to the following Conditions, and ſigned them, *viz.* (I.) To maintain and protect the Religion of the Country. (II.) To forget and forgive all that had happen'd to His Father, and not to think farther on any Perſonal Enmity whatſoever. (III.) To make no new Laws, nor to alter the old ones. In high and weighty Cauſes, not to judge for Himſelf, but according to the Law, by ordinary and uſual Proceſs. (IV.) To make no Peace, nor War, with His Neighbours, of His own Head. (V.) To reſign His Eſtates to His Family, or to incorporate them with thoſe belonging to the Crown, as a Proof of His Juſtice, and to avoid all Manner of Proceſs with private Perſons.

III. Soon after His Coronation, He notified his Acceſſion to all the Courts of *Europe*, and among others to the King of *Poland*, who all congratulated Him, ſome by Ambaſſadors, and others by Letters. The King of *Poland*, in order to ſhew His Inclination for Peace, diſcharg'd the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſy, which had been ſo long impriſon'd, (with whom, likewiſe, was the young *Czar*'s Father, the Archbiſhop *Philaret Romanow*) and ſent them immediately back to *Muſcow*.

IV. The Senators, inſtead of Guardians, appointed four Perſons to aſſiſt the *Czar* with their Counſel, and to be conſtantly about His Perſon. *Viz.* I. His *Father*; II. *Moroſow*; III. *Worotinſki*; And, III. *Scheremetow*.

V. After the Death of the *Muſcovite* Metropolitan, the *Czar* made His Father Patriarch of all *Ruſſia*, and not long after he married a young Lady, of Noble Birth, called *Eudocia*, whoſe Father's Name was *Lucojan Streſchnew*.

VI. It being cuſtomary in *Ruſſia* for Princes to marry their Subjects; A Thing now out of Uſe every-where elſe in *Europe*; It will not, I believe, be diſagreeable to the Reader, if I give an Account of the particular Ceremonies obſerved on Occaſion of ſuch a Marriage.

VII. It is well known, that the *Ruſſian* Monarchs ſeldom marry Foreign Princeſſes; But, on the contrary, chuſe one of their own Subjects; And that the *Ruſſian* Princeſſes have been generally married to *Ruſſian Knieſes*; Occaſion'd partly on Ac-

count of Religion, and partly becauſe they have had no great Correſpondence with other Courts. Nay, theſe mighty Princes have ſeldom married into a great Family; As well out of Policy, that by ſuch Marriages, the Rich might not have an Opportunity to increaſe their Wealth; As alſo, becauſe the *Czar* wants neither Riches nor great Relations, but a beautiful and virtuous Conſort only: An Inſtance of which we have in the Perſon of *Eudocia*.

VIII. THE *Czar* having declared his Intention of marrying, to the Senate, the *Bojars* look'd out for the moſt beautiful Ladies that were to be found, and ſent them to Court; They were received by the Grande Gouvernante of the Court, and each of them had an Apartment provided ſuitable to their reſpective Quality, till the Time of the Election. During this Interval, they all din'd together at one Table, where the *Czar* had an Opportunity of ſeeing them in Publick, and *incognito*, in Order the better to direct his Choice to one of this beautiful Company. However, Recommendation has uſually had no ſmall Share in this Matter; Becauſe, in ſo ſhort a Time, it was impoſſible for the *Czar* perfectly to judge of their Humours and Paſſions. And tho' he often diſguis'd himſelf, and waited, among others, at Table; Yet, in all Probability, this could not be done with ſo much Privacy, but every one might have a Hint to be upon her Guard, and artfully to conceal her natural Temper.

IX. AS ſoon as the *Czar* was determin'd in his Choice, the Grande Gouvernante only was made acquainted with it, and order'd to get Cloaths made for them all, and for the Bride a Wedding-Suit.

X. IN the mean Time, a Day for the Solemnization of the Nuptials was appointed, tho' none of them knew who was to be the Bride; And that Day being come, the new Cloaths were diſtributed, and the Bride then receiv'd her Nuptial Robes. Which made it known on whom the Choice was fallen. They then all paid their congratulatory Compliments to the Bride, and as ſoon as ſhe was proclaim'd, the Reſt were ſent home.

XI. EUDOCIA, *Czar Michael*'s Conſort, was Maid of Honour at the Senator *Scheremetow*'s Court. Her Father was a poor Nobleman,

bleman, who living privately upon his ſmall Eſtate, about 200 Werſts from the City of *Muſcow*, was not ſo ſoon inform'd of his Daughter's good Fortune.

XII. SOON after the Nuptials were celebrated, the *Czar* ſent one of the Lords of his Bedchamber to him, with ſuitable wearing Apparel, Servants, Coaches and Horſes, and every Thing neceſſary to convey him and his whole Family to *Muſcow*.

XIII. WHEN this Lord came to his Seat, he found *Streſchnew* in the Fields, where he himſelf, with others, were at the Plough; And after he had ſaluted him, in the Name of the *Czar* and the *Czarina*, his Daughter, he acquainted him it was their Deſire he ſhould come to *Muſcow*.

XIV. THIS Compliment very much ſurprized honeſt *Streſchnew*, who thought the Lord only jeſted with him; His Anſwer, therefore, was: My Lord, I do not know you; however, I ſee you are one of our Great *Czar*'s Court; I am but a poor Nobleman, and think it no Shame to maintain myſelf and Family in the Manner you ſee; Therefore I beg you would not hinder me from taking the Advantage of the fair Weather.

XV. BUT the Lord delivering him a Letter from his Daughter, the *Czarina*, which he deſired him to read, and to go home, and accept of the Preſents he had left for him there, he was, at Length, convinc'd it was no Jeſt: Upon which he ſet out for *Muſcow*, where he was created *Bojar* before his Arrival, and his Family is to this Day in good Eſteem.

XVI. THIS *Czarina* was as Virtuous and Gracious as ſhe was fair, and, by her prudent Conduct, ſhe gain'd the Love of the whole Nation. In the firſt Year ſhe had a Daughter, and afterwards ſucceſſively three more. The *Czar*, who took it very much to Heart, that ſhe had not bore him a Son, had ſome Thoughts of being divorc'd from her; But his Mother prevail'd upon the Senate to endeavour to divert him from ſuch a Reſolution; And they ſucceeded ſo well, that he alter'd his Mind; The *Czarina* bringing forth Prince *Alexius*, the very next Year after, ſecured the *Czar*'s Affection to his Conſort, which continu'd mutually till Death parted them.

XVII. THEY left this Prince and two Princeſſes, one of whom was named *Tatiana*, and the other *Anna* (35).

XVIII. AFTER the Death of *Czar Michael*, in whoſe Reign the *Empire* was much improved, during a long Peace, his Son *Alexius* was ſoon crown'd, without any Election; Yet he was obliged to promiſe to keep the above-mention'd Conditions, which he confirm'd with an Oath at the Altar.

XIX. SOON after his Coronation he marry'd a young Lady, nam'd *Maria Ilychna*, the Daughter of a poor Nobleman, call'd *Ilia Miloſlawſki*.

XX. BY this *Czarina*, *Alexius* had 4 Sons, *viz. Simon*, *Alexius*, *Theodore*, and *John:* And four Daughters, *Catharina*, *Theodoſia*, *Maria*, and *Sophia*. The firſt two Princes died before their Father.

XXI. AFTER the Death of this *Czarina*, *Alexius* married a Lady, by Name *Natalia*. Her Father, who was nam'd *Nariſchkin*, was Captain of the *Huſſars*. By her he had two Children, *viz.* Prince *Peter*, and the Princeſs *Natalia*. At his Death he left this *Czarina*, 3 Princes, 4 Princeſſes, and 2 Siſters: But the Females died unmarried.

XXII. CZAR *Alexius* was a Man of great Underſtanding; And tho' he was a Stranger to foreign Languages, yet he cauſed an Epitome of ſeveral Sciences to be tranſlated out of divers Languages into the *Ruſſian* Tongue; which He himſelf diligently read. In the Beginning of his Reign, he could not apply himſelf much to Oeconomy, being engaged in War, for which Purpoſe, he firſt raiſed a regular Army, *viz.* Troopers, Huſſars, Pikemen, and 8 Regiments of Foot, which latter had all foreign Officers; And the *Strelitzes*, his Life-guards only, had *Ruſſian* Officers, which was the Reaſon they were not ſo well diſciplin'd as the Reſt of the Foot.

XXIII. HE had, at one and the ſame Time, War with the *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Poles*; But over the latter he gain'd the moſt Advantage: At Length, he made Peace with all his Neighbours. From the *Poles*, he took the Cities of *Kiow*, *Czernigow*, *Smolenſko*, *Belaja*, and the *Ukrain*; and having, during the War, had in his

(35) *Hubner*, by a wrong Information, makes theſe two Princeſſes to be Daughters of *Alexius*, whereas they were his Siſters, and both died unmarried, long after him.

his Poſſeſſion the greateſt Part of *Lithuania* and *Volhinia*, he added the two latter to his Title; But no Potentate being willing to allow it him, he ſurrender'd them again to *Poland*, and gave up the Title, after the Peace was concluded.

XXIV. From the *Tartars* he took a large Territory towards the *Crim*, which he kept.

XXV. The *Perſians*, *Chineſe*, and other *Aſiatick* Neighbours, ſent him great Preſents. He quell'd three great Rebellions in his own Dominions. I. That of the *Don-Coſacks*, whoſe Leader was the famous *Stenko Razin*, who had an Army of 50,000 Men, whom he totally defeated; And when, by the Perſuaſion of a crafty Secretary, *Stenko* was decoy'd to *Muſcow*, on Pretence of an Accommodation, he was there impriſon'd, and then carried thro' the City on a Triumphant Chariot, upon which ſtood a Gallows; And, at Length, was hang'd on another high and coſtly Gibbet; Becauſe his Deſign was to have uſurp'd the Kingdom of *Aſtracan*, and to aſſume the Title of King (36).

XXVI. The II[d] Rebellion was at the Inſtigation of the Patriarch *Niconi*; But it was ſoon appeas'd. The III[d] was cauſed by the Citizens of *Muſcow*, who had gather'd together about 30000 Men, near *Kolominſki*, ſeven Werſts from *Muſcow*, where the *Czar* then was. Their Demand was to have ſome *Bojares* delivered into their Hands, who, as Evil Counſellours had interfered in their Commerce, and by Monopolizing the Salt, had raiſed it to an exceſſive Price. The *Czar* was obliged to promiſe them Satisfaction; But he kept his Promiſe no longer than till the *Militia* came from *Muſcow*, to his Aſſiſtance, which happen'd the very ſame Day; And then this Affair coſt the Heads of ſome Hundreds of Citizens.

XXVII. However, the *Czar* was forced to aboliſh the Monopoly, and to remove theſe Counſellours for a while from Court.

XXVIII. He was very ſevere, and a great Protector of Juſtice; He cauſed the Laws of the ſeveral Provinces to be collected and printed together, in one Body, which, in the *Ruſſian* Language, was call'd *Ulogenie*; But for want of a good Lawyer to digeſt

(36) In *Das Veränderte Ruſſland*, *p.* 323. it is ſaid he was quarter'd: But this may poſſibly have been the Fate of one or more of his Comrades.

digeſt them into Order, it is an imperfect and confus'd Collection.

XXIX. He introduced ſeveral Manufactures, eſpecially thoſe of Silk and Linnen.

XXX. He alſo intended to have had Fleets in the *Caſpian* and *Black Seas*, for which Purpoſe he ſent for Maſter-Builders and Shipwrights from *Holland*, and other Places; But his ſudden Death put a Stop to this Deſign.

XXXI. He endeavour'd, indeed, to make himſelf more Arbitrary, and to graſp more Power into his Hands; But with great Circumſpection; And when the Senate complain'd of the tedious War, and made Peace with *Poland*, ſooner than he was willing, he conſented to it, eſpecially when he found it was for the Advantage and Welfare of the *Empire*.

XXXII. He was the firſt, who erected the Privy Court of Chancery, where Cauſes concerning his Perſon were heard. When he ſuſpected any Body, he proceeded very cautiouſly, as well in adminiſtring the Torture, as in Executions. But when any one was found guilty, he cauſed him to be privately executed, as it happen'd to many, and no body ever knew what became of them, except ſome few, who were tortur'd to Death, and ſo found in the Streets. This Method his Daughter *Sophia* is likewiſe ſaid to have learn'd of him.

XXXIII. He was the firſt who made a Diſtinction among the *Bojares*, by calling the chief and eldeſt of them *Kommatnye Bojari*, of which his Privy-Council, for Foreign Affairs, conſiſted.

XXXIV. Under this Pretence, he took, at Length, his Favourites for this Purpoſe; One of which, call'd *Artemon Matheow*, was of a mean Extraction. Beſides, being a great Lover of Hunting, and more particularly of Hawking, he gave the higheſt Rank to his Chief Falconer, and to the common *Falconers*, the Title of *Trabanten*, or Yeomen of the Guards, whom he generally employ'd in private Executions.

XXXV. He at Length, became a great Oeconomiſt, and very much improved his Dominions. Great Deſarts he converted into Colonies, peopling them with the Priſoners taken from the *Poles* and other Nations (37). In the City of *Muſcow* he built two Suburbs,

(37) The Inhabitants of the Cities on the Rivers *Kama*, *Wolga*, and *Bialla*, as: *Simbirſki*, *Tetuſch-Bulansk*, *Tiginsk*, *Jaziklinski*, *Zergioſ*, *Skarminski*, *Manſelinsk*, *Birr*, *Saraſul*, *Korakul*, and *Ufa*, who were all *Poles*, taken Priſoners near *Smolenſco*.

Suburbs, *viz.* the new and old *Meſchanſkoja*, and alſo ſeveral great Market-Towns; Such as, *Wolday*, and others; all which were wholly peopled in that Manner by *Lithuanians* and *Poles*. And there is hardly a noble Family in *Ruſſia*, in which there are not ſome *Poliſh* Servants.

XXXVI. By this Manner of Proceeding, many Deſarts became habitable in His Time. He likewiſe made great Attempts for the Improvement of Mines: But the ſlow Advances, and ſmall Profit of them, diſcourag'd Him; In ſo much that thoſe Works fell to decay, and the Perſons who had the Direction of them, died (38). Under his Reign Trade alſo began to flouriſh, as far as Opportunity would allow, and He provided good Laws for the Encouragement of it.

XXXVII. His Revenues were no more than five Millions (of *Rubles*, I ſuppoſe, ſomething above a Million Sterling) and yet He kept a Magnificent Court, and a great Army on Foot; And, at His Death He left large Sums of Money in the Treaſury; Which is not, however, to be wonder'd at. For Firſt, He levied large Sums by Contribution, during the *Poliſh* War. Secondly, He pay'd only the Foreign Officers, and regular Troops, no Nobleman, in what Employment ſoever, ſerving for Salary, which they reckon'd to be a Diſgrace (39): Beſides, the Noblemen were obliged to ſerve as long as they were able, and in a Condition. But when any Perſon was grown incapable of Service, or had a Son at full Growth, to place in his Room, he was freed: And ſome were allowed to be relieved by their Relations who had not ſerved; As a Reward for their long Service, (I.) Some got ſuch Villages as fell to the Crown, either by Confiſcation, or by the Extinction of Families. (II.) Others obtained Grants of uncultivated Lands, and the Royalty of Lakes. (III.) Others

(38) His Son *Peter* I. repair'd them, and ſent for Men, ſkill'd in the working of Mines from foreign Parts.

(39) Here it may be worth Enquiring, ſince the Word *Caſaki* or *Gaſaki* denotes in *Ruſſia*, not only People who agree to ſerve a certain Time in the Wars, for Pay, but alſo ſuch of the lower Sort of People, who ſerve Noblemen or others for Wages; Whether, in Ancient Times, there has not been the ſame Diſtinction in the Armies of the *Germans*, *Vandals*, and other Nations? And as *Gaza* and *Gazack* (which have ſome Affinity with the *German* Word, *Schatz*, Treaſure, and *Caſſa*, *Caſſirer*, Caſh, Caſhier,) ſignify, in the *Perſian*, *Mungalian*, and *Ruſſian* Tongues, *Treaſure*, *Taxes*, *Contribution*; Whether *Gazaki* may not denote ſuch Soldiers as are paid out of the Caſh of the *Empire*?

(III.) Others again were created *Weywodes*, or Governors of certain Provinces. Theſe Poſts they enjoy'd for two Years, and afterwards they were removed to ſucceed each other, from Place to Place. (*Vid. Das Veraenderte Ruſsland, p.* 15. and *l' Hiſtoire Genealog. des Tartars à Leyde* 1726, *p.* 725.) It was in former Times, cuſtomary, that if a Nobleman was found guilty of imbezzling the Effects belonging to the Crown, ſuch Deficiency was, in ſome Meaſure, demanded of the whole Family. *e.g.* If ſuch a Perſon was condemned to be beheaded, the Family loſt twelve Degrees in Nobility, and their Eſtates. This obliged the Families to watch each others Conduct; Whence a poor and honeſt Man was aſſiſted with Mony; But a Spendthrift and Libertine, was deprived of all Opportunity of Undertaking any Thing of Moment. Nay the Family itſelf, if they diſliked a Perſon's Management, who had a Publick Employment, would proteſt againſt his Conduct, after which they were not made anſwerable for any Deficiency; And their Eſtates, which otherwiſe would be liable to Confiſcation, remained in the Family.

XXXVIII. BEFORE I conclude this Prince's Character, I muſt juſt mention one of his amorous Adventures; Becauſe, even in this Point, there appears a particular Circumſtance, wherein this Prince differed from the Cuſtoms of his Predeceſſors.

XXXIX. FOR though the Czars were never wont to viſit their Subjects, in particular, nor even their neareſt Relations: Yet *Czar Alexius* uſed often to viſit divers Noble Families in private. Theſe frequent Viſits gave Occaſion to His falling in Love, among others, with a Lady of Quality, who, in due Time, brought forth an Evidence of the *Czar*'s Affection. This Lady He married to a Nobleman call'd *Muſchin Puſchkin*, and the Son this Prince had by Her was created *Knieſe*; But it happening ſhortly after, that the *Czar* married, a ſecond Time, a Lady call'd *Nariſchkin*, the Wife of *Muſchin Puſchkin*, animated, perhaps, by Jealouſy, dropt ſome injurious Expreſſions, againſt Her, and the Matter being Examined into, both ſhe and her Son were ſent to *Aſtracan*, though not altogether with the *Czar*'s Conſent, where ſhe ſoon after died.

XL. At His Death, He left his laſt Conſort *Nariſchkin*, a Siſter, three Princes, *viz. Feodor*, *John*, and *Peter*, and the above-mentioned five Princeſſes.

XLI. Before His Death he made Peace with all His Neighbours, except with the *Turks*, with whom there yet ſubſiſted a Diſpute about the City of *Czigerim* or *Czenchrim*.

XLII. His Son *Feodor* or *Theodore* ſucceeded Him, who was a Prince of a weak Conſtitution, and peaceable Diſpoſition, which made Him not much concern Himſelf with Affairs of Importance. He was a Lover of Poetry, vocal Muſick, Building, and fine Horſes.

XLIII. In His Time, the Clergy began firſt to preach without Book, which His Preceptor, a Fryar, *Simon Petotſki*, uſed frequently to do, as Opportunity ſerved: His Sermons are printed in large *Folio*; But by Report, this Man was a better Orator and Poet, than Divine, becauſe both his Poetical and Theological Books were ſtuff'd with Fables, and ſupported by very weak Arguments.

XLIV. This *Czar* convened the Nobility, and ordered them to bring their Patents, and Charters of Privileges, to Court, in Order to have them confirm'd. And when He had the Papers together, He threw the whole Heap into the Fire, and declared, that, for the future, their Liberties and Prerogatives ſhould be grounded only upon Merit, and not upon Birth (40).

XLV. He introduced Vocal Muſick in Churches, according to the *Roman* Notes. He alſo began to improve the Schools, and to endow them with Revenues.

XLVI. He embelliſhed the City of *Muſcow* with Stone-Buildings, and took great Pains to have other Cities repair'd; For the publick Buildings that were of Wood, or Brick, He cauſed to be pull'd down, and new Stone-ones to be built in their Room.

XLVII. He lent Money out of His Treaſury, and furniſh'd Materials to private People, who were not in a Capacity to build ſuch Houſes, to be repaid in ten Years. This good Regulation would have made the City of *Muſcow* very Magnificent, if His ſudden Death had not prevented it.

(40) Compare *Das Veränderte Rußland*, *p.* 253. §. 363.

XLVIII. His being a Lover of Horſes prov'd very advantageous to the *Empire*. For he ſent for good Stone-Horſes and Mares from *Pruſſia*, and ſet up ſeveral Studs, in convenient Places, whence, in a ſhort Time, there was a Breed raiſed, ſufficient, in ſome Meaſure, to ſupply the Occaſions of the Court, as well as of the Army. But after his Death, that Matter was neglected. The Officers of His Stables were highly eſteem'd by Him.

XLIX. Among other good Regulations, He alſo introduced a new Polity, for the better Government of the City of *Muſcow*, and commanded the Streets of that City to be ſhut up at Night, and a Watch to be kept.

L. 'Till His Time, the *Tartarian* Cuſtoms to ſhave the Head, and to wear Calottes or Scull-Caps, was in Uſe, which, as well as the *Tartarian* Habit, He aboliſhed, and introduced the *Poliſh* Dreſs, which was chiefly occaſioned by the long War His Father had with the *Poles*; And He Himſelf often uſed to be dreſſed in a *Poliſh* Habit, eſpecially when He went a Hunting.

LI. His firſt Wife was a Lady, named *Agaphia Simionowa*; ſhe was of a *Poliſh* Family, call'd *Gruſchetſki*, but did not live long.

LII. Notwithstanding His weak Conſtitution, His chief Favourite, and Privy-Counſellour, *Jaſykow*, perſuaded Him to marry one *Martha* or *Marvea Matweowna*, almoſt on his Death's-Bed, meerly to hinder the Succeſſion of His half Brother, *Peter*. Her Father was a new created Nobleman, the Son of a Scrivener, *Mathias Apraxin*, by Name. But it ſeems the *Czar* was already reduced to ſo weak a Condition, that He never touched Her, and ſoon after died without Heirs.

LIII. After the Death of *Feodor*, or *Theodore*, there were two Brothers left, *John* and *Peter*, the firſt thirteen, and the other ten Years of Age. *John* being but weak in Underſtanding, as well as Sight, the Senators ſet Him aſide, and declared *Peter Czar*, which occaſioned a Rebellion. For the Princeſs *Sophia*, *John*'s own Siſter, and *Peter*'s half Siſter, with her Mother's Brother, *Miloſlawſki*, endeavour'd to bring her own Brother upon the Throne, and herſelf to the Regency, during the Prince's Minority. They perſuaded the Preſident of the

Council of War, Prince *Chowanſki*, an old General, but otherwiſe not a Man of any extraordinary Parts, to aſſiſt the rightful Succeſſor, and exterminate the Opponents; They gained alſo the chief of the *Strelitzes*, who lived in *Muſcow*, to ſide with them.

LIV. To execute this Deſign, they appointed a certain Day, on which the Princeſs ordered ſome of the moſt crafty of the *Strelitzes*, of each Regiment, to publiſh abroad, early in the Morning, before the Soldiers were up, that the *Czarina Nariſchkin*, had ſmother'd Prince *John*, with a Cuſhion. The Soldiers hearing of this horrid Action, went to the Court in a great Fury. In the mean while, the Princeſs had caus'd the Alarum-Bell to be rung, which made the whole City cry out, the *Nariſchkins* have murdered Prince *John*. But when ſome of the Senators, and eſpecially Prince *Odewſki*, for whom the People had ſome Reſpect, came, and told them, that it was a falſe Report, and that both Princes were alive; And therefore deſired them to make no Tumult, that might frighten the Princes in their Sleep, *Odewſki* adding, that he would go and ſhew them the Princes alive, this appeaſed the *Strelitzes*. But before the Princes were dreſſed, the Princeſs ſent down ſome Caſks of Brandy to the Rebels, under Pretence of quieting them. After this the *Czarina* Dowager *Natalia* came out, with her own Son, *Peter*, and her Step-Son, *John*, and ſhewed them both to the People, and the Princes themſelves exhorted them to be quiet; Whereupon they were about to ſeparate, and to return every Man to his own Home. Notwithſtanding this, the Princeſs *Sophia* ſent them Word, that if they did not this Day make an End of the Rebels, of whom ſhe had given them a Liſt, they would find the Conſequence of it, the next Day, to their Sorrow.

LV. Upon this the People, who were now warmed with Brandy, immediately laid hold of *Ivan Nariſchkin*, the *Czarina*'s eldeſt Brother, who was leading his Siſter by the Hand, tore him from her, and threw him down from the Gallery upon the Pikes. They then went in Queſt of the Reſt, who were in the Liſt, and in their Fury, or thro' Ignorance, murder'd a great Number of them; Which Tumult laſted three Days and three Nights. Among others were kill'd *Theodore Soltikow*, who reſembled another Bro-

ther of the *Czarina*'s, *Anaſtaſius Nariſchkin*, which latter was accus'd of Perjury; Prince *George Dolgorucki* and his Son, the Chancellor *Jaſykow*, the Secretary of State *Larionow*, and *Matheow* Phyſician in ordinary, with ſeveral more. The *Czarina*'s Father *Kiril Nariſchkin*, an old harmleſs and quiet Man, and his Wife, they thruſt into a Convent, obliging him to become a Fryar, and her a Nun; And becauſe they could not find *Anaſtaſius Nariſchkin*, who had hid himſelf in a Church, under the Altar, they tortured ſome to confeſs where he was. Nay, they even threaten'd the *Czarina*, they would lay Hands on her, if ſhe did not deliver him into their Hands. The Princeſs *Sophia* perſuaded the *Czarina* to a Compliance, pretending ſhe would intercede for him; But notwithſtanding the *Czarina* and the Princeſs led him to them, and begg'd for his Life, with Tears (That the Princeſs, who was the Author of all this Miſchief, made this Interceſſion from her Heart, is hard to believe) they tore him from them, carried him firſt into the Chancery, before the Preſident of War, the Lord *Chowanſki*, where, under Pretence of many Accuſations, he was ſeverely tortured, and afterwards brought to the Market-Place, and cut to Pieces.

LVI. AFTER this they crown'd both Princes, and declar'd the Princeſs Regent, which at Length, put an End to this Rebellion.

LVII. SOON after this, the *Czarina Natalia* went, under Pretence of Devotion, with both the *Czars*, and ſome of the Senators, to a Convent call'd *Troitza*, whither ſhe immediately ſummon'd the whole Nobility, and moſt of the Senators, from *Muſcow*; When theſe were together, they ſent to the Rebels in *Muſcow* to deliver the Authors of this Inſurrection, who immediately, without any Heſitation, ſought for thoſe, whom they knew to be guilty, and ſent them, together with the tenth Man in each Regiment, amounting to above 2000 Men, to the Convent. All theſe, before they departed, receiv'd the Sacrament, took Leave of their Wives and Children, and prepared themſelves willingly, to dy rather than to bear the Name of Rebels. Before they came to the Convent, every two Men carried a Block, and the third a Hatchet, and the Ring-leaders had Halters about their Necks, as an Acknowledgment, that they thought they deſerv'd Death. In

this Poſture, they preſented themſelves in the Court of the Convent, before the Window, where the two *Czars* were, laid down their Necks upon the Blocks, ſaying only; We all are guilty, and it depends alone upon the Pleaſure of the *Czars* to puniſh not only us, but alſo all our Families; we wait for nothing but our Sentence. Thus theſe 2000 Men lay above three Hours, before a Reſolution was taken. In the mean Time, the Preſident, Prince *Chowanſki*, and his Son, were ſent for, and were taken in Cuſtody before they could reach the Convent. The Senators would have examin'd the Caſe according to the ordinary Form of Proceſs; But *Miloſlawſki* (who had his particular Reaſons for it) addreſſing himſelf to the *Czars*, ſaid: Since *Chowanſki* and the other Ring-leaders acknowledge themſelves to be guilty, to what End any further Examination? To which moſt of the others agreed, none of them having any Inclination to ſtay there longer. Whereupon the Prince *Chowanſki*, his Son, and about 30 of the Chief of the Rebels, were beheaded; and the Reſt diſmiſſed.

LVIII. The Reaſon *Miloſlawſki* had for proceeding ſo precipitately, and to haſten *Chowanſki*'s Death, he kept very ſecret, and the Truth thereof was never known till after his Death.

LIX. This Tragedy being at an End, both *Czars* reign'd, in Conjunction with the Princeſs. She had her Image ſtamp'd upon the Coin, together with thoſe of the two Brothers, and ſign'd all Writings, not only in the *Empire*, but alſo to Foreign Courts; She frequented the Senate diligently, and put the Members of the Senate in Mind of their Duty, with harſh as well as mild Expreſſions; She govern'd with great Prudence, and ſhew'd a great Zeal for the Welfare of the Empire (41).

LX. As to her Perſon, ſhe was of a noble Preſence, and a beautiful Countenance. By the Laws and Regulations ſhe made, and the Intrigues ſhe carried on, ſhe may reaſonably be judg'd to have been of a great Capacity and Penetration, and of a Cholerick-Sanguine Complexion. Which appears on the one Hand, by her great Paſſion for Rule, and the Enmity and Hatred ſhe bore againſt her half Brother *Peter*. And, on the other, by the Affection ſhe had for Prince *Gallizin*, and after him for *Scheglowitow*, Secre-

(41) Compare *Das Veränderte Ruſſland, p.* 143.

Secretary of State. Perhaps I ſhall have an Opportunity to ſay more of this Matter in another Place.

LXI. Her Love to her Brother *John*, and Hatred to *Peter* (42), made her ſpare no Pains to procure a Wife for the former. Among others ſhe propoſed *Paraſkowia*, Daughter to *Alexander Soltikow* (43), who was counted the moſt beautiful Woman in the whole *Empire*. She had been choſen before, for the deceaſed Brother *Theodore*, or *Feodor*, but the Match was prevented by the above-mention'd *Jaſikow*, for his private Intereſt, who perſuaded the *Czar* to marry the Lady *Apraxin*, and managed Matters ſo, that *Soltikow* was ſent to *Jeniſeiſki*, in *Siberia*, as Governour and *Weywode*, whither his beautiful Daughter was obliged to follow him.

LXII. The Princeſs *Sophia* order'd *Soltikow* to ſend his Daughter immediately to *Muſcow*, and himſelf to come ſoon after: Accordingly, he ſent her in a diſguis'd Habit, with one of his Relations, and another Woman with her, ſo privately, from *Siberia* to *Muſcow*, that no Body knew any Thing of it; And three Days after her Arrival, ſhe was declared *Czarina*, and the Nuptials conſummated.

LXIII. It was obſervable in *Czar John*, that tho' his Underſtanding was but weak, yet he was very haughty and ſevere. However, he had a great Regard for the Welfare of the *Empire*; And notwithſtanding he lov'd his Siſter very much, yet her reigning jointly with him and his Brother did not pleaſe him; and he, upon all Occaſions, rather ſided with his Brother than with her. He alſo often declared: That when once his Brother was of Age he would reign no longer (44).

LXVI. What

(42) Compare *Das Veränderte Ruſſland*, *p.* 26. §. 136.

(43) This *Soltikow* was afterwards named *Theodore*, becauſe the *Czar* did not like the Name of *Alexander*.

(44) Czar *John* would never ſuffer any Body to ſpeak to the Prejudice of his Brother; And it is reported of his Widow, that ſhe herſelf declared, When once ſhe told him that *Czar Peter* ſlighted the Princeſs *Sophia* too much, his Anſwer was, *Sophia* is my own Siſter, but ſhe has offended *Peter* ſo much, that ſhe does not deſerve We ſhould look upon her; And if you ſpeak ill of him, I muſt look upon you as his ſecond Enemy. The Welfare of the whole *Empire* depends upon him, which I am bound to ſet a greater Value upon, than even upon you, my deareſt Wife. When his Brother went with the Army to *Azow*, he ordered Prayers to be put up for him throughout the whole *Empire*, and made a Vow, That if his Brother return'd in Health, he would go on Foot to *Troitza*, a Con-

vent

LXIV. WHAT afterwards occasion'd the Sister's Jealousy of both her Brothers, and how she came to be depriv'd of her Part in the Regency, would be too tedious to mention here. *Czar John*, at his Death, left a Widow and three Princesses, the eldest of which was afterwards married to the Duke of *Mecklenburg*; the second to the Prince of *Courland*, (who is the present *Czarina*) and the third died unmarried. Order calls me now to the Life and Reign of *Peter the First*.

CHAP. VI.

The Reign of Emperour Peter I.

SUMMARY.

§. I. II. III. *TO write a History of the Life and Actions of* Peter I. *might be a very diffusive Undertaking, and would require great Assistances.* IV. *The Author does not propose to treat of any of the Actions and Undertakings of this Monarch, which are already made publick.* V. VI. *The Political Maxims of Great Men and Rulers are liable to be censur'd by the Publick.* VII. *The* Russians *are divided in their Opinions as to the Reign of* Peter I. VIII. *to* XXII. *Those who extol his Administration of the Government, exaggerate his Virtues under twelve general Heads.* XXIII. *From which they infer, that his Reign was very advantageous to the* Russian Empire. XXIV. *to* XXVI. *Those who condemn his Administration oppose twelve other Articles, by which they pretend to prove, that* Russia *labour'd under many Hardships during his Reign, and rather suffer'd than was better'd by him. Among these they reckon the Debaucheries of his younger Years;*

vent 10 Miles from *Muscow*. In the mean Time, he visited the Convents diligently, and distributed Alms plentifully. But when *Czar Peter* return'd, *John* was in so ill a State of Health, that he was obliged to keep his Bed. And the first Time he saw his Brother, he embraced him, saying, Now I thank GOD, I can die in Peace; And, indeed, he did not live long after.

Years; XXVII. *And particularly his* Slavlenie, *or* Christmass *Gambols.* XXVIII. *to* XXXIII. *A Description of them.* XXXIV. *to* XXXVIII. *They likewise censure his Institution of the* Preobrasinskian *Inquisition.* XXXIX. *to* XLI. *His slighting the ancient Counsellors, and Employing new Favorites only.* XLII. *to* XLV. *Instances of their sinister Counsels*; XLVI. *And, among others, that of letting out the Government to Farm.* XLVII. *to* XLIX. *The evil Consequences of it shewn in the Instance of the Government of* Siberia *farm'd to* Knees Gagarin. L. *to* LII. *Farther Instances in the other Governments.* LIII. LIV. *The Decay of the landed Interest, occasion'd by his forcing such Numbers of the Nobility into the Military Service.* LV. LVI. *The evil Consequences of his extending the Absolute Sovereignty to a higher Pitch than it had been exercis'd formerly.* LVII. *to* LXI. *The Disadvantages which accru'd by his sending young Noblemen into Foreign Parts.* LXII. LXIII. *Damages sustain'd by the Trade of* Russia. LXIV. *to* LXVIII. *Inconveniences which arose from the Introduction of new Laws and Customs.* LXIX. LXX. *Disadvantages which accru'd to the* Empire *by his changing his Residence, and the tedious Wars.* LXXI. *to* LXXXIV. *What occasioned so many Rebellions during the Reign of* Peter I. LXXXV. *to* LXXXIX. *A Discovery of the Intrigues of* Knees Gagarin, *Governour of* Siberia, *and his private Designs.* XC. *to* XCII. *An Account of the Conspiracy of the* Czarian *Prince* Alexewitz, *and his Adherents.* XCIII. *Some Reflections on the new Order of Succession.* XCIV. XCV. *The Author's Impartiality in these Relations.* XCVI. *to* CVIII. *The Observations of a* Russian *Vassal, on Reading these Relations.* CIX. *to* CXIV. *A particular Account of the great Aversion and Dread, which* Peter I. *had for Water, in his Youth*; *By what Means he was cur'd of it, and this Dread turn'd into a Pleasure.*

I. IT is easy to conceive that the Life, Reign and Actions of this great Monarch, cannot be set forth in a small Treatise, much less in one single Chapter; Nay, it is absolutely impossible for a Stranger, and a Foreigner, to pen his History, with all its Circumstances.

II. FOR, besides that this would require an able Historian, well vers'd in Politicks, who has had the Opportunity of search-

ſearching into Records: It would, likewiſe, be neceſſary, that ſome one, or more Perſons, who were let into the Secret of Things, and, from the Beginning, continually accompanied this Prince, both at Home and Abroad, ſhould ſupply ſuch a Writer with the real Circumſtances of many Things, and help to clear up the Truth of ſome Matters, which are yet dubious.

III. It cannot, therefore, be expected of me, that I ſhould give a full Account of the Actions of ſo great a Monarch, much leſs that I ſhould accompany them with ſo proper Reflections, in ſo few Pages as I am here confined to.

IV. And ſince a ſufficient Account of the Wars He was engaged in, His Travels into Foreign Countries, and the great Alterations he made in the Government of his Dominions, have already been communicated to the Publick by ſeveral Writers, I think it would be ſuperfluous to repeat them here; I will, therefore, confine my ſelf wholly to ſome Events, which, in other Authors, are either not circumſtantially enough related, or wholly omitted: To which I ſhall add, the different Opinions of the *Ruſſians* themſelves, concerning the Life and Actions of this their Sovereign, as far as I have been able to gather them, during my Stay in thoſe Regions.

V. But as no Man, in this World, can pretend to be wholly free from Cenſure, ſo eminent Perſons are, in a more eſpecial Manner, liable to it; They have, indeed, like other Men, their Paſſions and Affections, on one Hand, and their ſuperior Endowments, on the other. The Matter is, therefore, how they have made Uſe of the latter, and ſubdued, or at leaſt, reſiſted the former,

VI. And as there are many Modern Maxims of State laid down as Standard-Rules, which are, without any fundamental Examination, put in Practice, to accompliſh this or that Deſign, the Juſtice and Probity of which Maxims are conteſted by many Divines and Philoſophers; I ſhall ty myſelf down to a bare Relation of Facts, and leave every one to judge of them for himſelf.

VII. In the Introduction, *Sect.* II. §. VIII. I have already obſerved, that the great Alteration which this Monarch made

in His Dominions, has been differently judged of by His Subjects.

VIII. THE Opinion of that Party, which approves of his Views and Enterprizes, and exaggerates His Virtues, is as follows.

IX. (I.) THEY ſay, that this Prince was very circumſpect, always firſt duly weighed every Thing He was about to undertake, conſidered every Circumſtance, and then reſolved either to proceed, or to drop it. This would have appear'd more evidently, if this Party had ſhewn us the Motives which induced Him to undertake many Things, and the Views He had in purſuing ſome of His Enterprizes.

X. (II.) HIS great Courage and Intrepidity, (ſay they) by which He, from His Infancy, overcame all His Enemies, at home and abroad, was evident to the whole World. But according to the Proverb: No Prince can have Peace longer than his Neighbours will let him; It would, therefore, have been a great Help, in directing the Judgment of thoſe who are unacquainted with theſe Affairs, if they had cleared the Grounds from whence all theſe Animoſities proceeded.

XI. (III.) BY His Wars with the *Chineſe*, *Turks*, *Swedes*, *Perſians* and *Kalmucks*, in which His Glory far ſurpaſs'd that of all His Anceſtors, He not only acquired great Fame, but procured conſiderable Advantages to the whole Empire. Among theſe they reckon; (1.) That He had formed an Army, according to the Manner of the moſt polite and experienced Nations. (2.) That He had fitted out Fleets, in all the four Seas, which border upon *Ruſſia*; *viz.* in the *Baltick*, the *White Sea*, the *Palus Moeotis*, and the *Caſpian Sea*; To all which the *Ruſſians* were formerly Strangers; eſpecially, the Keeping of Fleets of War, in the two latter, was a Thing never before heard of. (3.) That He left an Army behind him, not only ſufficient for the Defence of *Ruſſia* itſelf; But capable of rendering Aſſiſtance to her Friends and Allies. And Experience has ſhewn, that thoſe Potentates who formerly ſlighted the Power of *Ruſſia*, now courted her Alliance.

XII. (4.) WITH great Labour, and prudent Foreſight, He cauſed many great and ſtrong Fortreſſes to be erected, according to the beſt and neweſt Plans, and by the Direction of the ableſt

Engineers; And furniſhed them with good Artillery, and Garriſons, for the Defence of his Country, And, for the Security of his Fleets, made very convenient Harbours; In ſo much that *Ruſſia* need not, at leaſt for ſome Time, fear any Enemy,

XIII. (IV.) THEY extol him for having introduced the liberal Arts and Sciences, of which the *Ruſſians* knew little or nothing; For when, formerly, any one underſtood but never ſo little of Arithmetick only, he was accounted a learned Man; A Knowledge of *Foreign Languages* was accounted *Hereſy*, and the *Mathematicks*, *Phyſicks* and *Aſtronomy*, were reputed *Witchcraft*. All which, *Peter* I. cauſed his Subjects, who lived before in Darkneſs, to be inſtructed in, and to enjoy the Benefit of. To this End, he travell'd almoſt all *Europe* over, contrary to the Cuſtoms of former *Czars*, and not only learned himſelf what he thought might be beneficial to his Country, but alſo obliged young Noblemen to viſit foreign Countries, in order to learn the Arts and Sciences, as well as the Maxims of State in other Countries, for their own Advantage, and for the Benefit of their Country: And, whereas, formerly, the *Ruſſians* knew no more of other Nations, than Others of them, in this *Czar*'s Reign, both conceived a very different Idea of each other. 'Till this Century, Foreigners look'd upon the *Ruſſians* to be a *Pagan* and *Barbarous* Nation, like the *Tartars*, hardly ſuſceptible of Knowledge; Nor had they, 'till then, any Information of the Extent, Power and Riches of that Country. On the contrary, whereas the *Ruſſians* had fed themſelves up with the blind Imagination that their Country was the beſt, richeſt, and moſt fruitful in the whole World; and that all the *Nemei* (45), (whom they reckoned to be *Heathens*, or, at beſt, ignorant and obſtinate Hereticks, and themſelves the beſt and moſt *Orthodox Chriſtians*;) muſt ſtarve, if they did not ſupply them with Proviſions; All theſe groundleſs Opinions, and falſe Ideas, were rooted out, by the Prudence and good Conduct of this Monarch.

(45) Under this Name, the *Ruſſians* formerly comprehended all the *European* Nations, who did not underſtand the *Sclavonian* or *Ruſſian* Language; But now only the *Germans* are underſtood by it. The Word ſignifies dumb, or thoſe who cannot talk the Vulgar Tongue: And they call themſelves *Slavi* (*i. e.* talking, ſpeaking People) which is deriv'd from the Word *Slava*, Utterance.

XIV. (V.) He freed Religion from many ſuperſtitious Ceremonies that had crept into it; Aboliſhed the Patriarchat, which had always been prejudicial to the *Empire*; And, for the Advancement of true Religion, ordered the Printing of the Bible, and many other good and valuable Books; and introduced many other ſalutary Regulations.

XV. (VI.) His Inclination for Juſtice was evident and viſible from the Laws and Inſtitutions he had made, in framing of which, he was ſo ſollicitous, that he ſeldom allow'd himſelf above four Hours Sleep; He made many Extracts with his own Hands from the chief Laws of *Europe*, read them often, or cauſed them to be read to him, and to be tranſlated into the *Ruſſian* Tongue, the better to judge of the Difference, and to take his Meaſures accordingly. He accuſtom'd himſelf to walk every Day through the Streets, to the End that ſuch of his Subjects as were oppreſs'd might have an Opportunity to give him Petitions, which he always received in a moſt gracious manner, and was as ready in doing them Juſtice.

XVI. (VII.) For the Encouragement of Trade, which flouriſh'd more in his Reign, than in former Times, he built new and large Cities; And for the more convenient Tranſportation of Merchandize, he cauſed Canals to be cut, and a direct Road to be made between the Cities of *Muſcow* and *Peterſburg*; for the effecting of which, neither Labour nor Coſt were ſpared.

XVII. (VIII.) By his great Care, in Searching for Mines, and Introducing ſeveral Manufacturies, of which *Ruſſia* had formerly little or no Knowledge, but ſent their raw Goods to *England*, *Holland*, and other Countries, to be ſold at a low Price, and afterwards, when manufactured, bought them again at a ten Times dearer Rate; By theſe Means, I ſay, he raiſed his Revenues near five or ſix Times higher than they were before (46); And was thereby enabled duly to pay his Miniſters, Houſhold, and Army.

XVIII. (IX.) He generouſly rewarded all his faithful and loyal Servants, of which the Princes *Menſchicow* (or *Menzikoff*) *Cantimir*, *Apraxin*, the Generals *Renn*, *Baur*, *Bruſs*, *Weide*, and the Miniſters

(46) I have already obſerved, in the foregoing Chapter, that the Revenue, in his Father's Reign, amounted to five Millions, and, therefore, according to this Account, it muſt now be about twice as much.

Miniſters of State, *Jaguſinſki*, *Oſterman*, *Schaſirow*, and others, were Inſtances; All of whom, from mean Extraction, became great and rich Men. On the other hand, he puniſh'd his treacherous and diſloyal Subjects, without Regard to Perſon, according to the Severity of the Law; Some corporally, ſome capitally, and others by pecuniary Mulcts. Such as were negligent, and would not apply to, and qualify themſelves, for uſeful Employments, he had ever an Averſion to; Examples of which were his firſt Conſort, his own Son, and Siſters: Without, however, exceeding the Bounds of Decency.

XIX. (X.) His Integrity and Fidelity to his Friends and Allies, appear'd ſufficiently by his inviolable Attachment to the King and the Republick of *Poland*; He would never give his Conſent to any Projects prejudicial to that Republick: And when Propoſals were laid before him in Favour of the Duke of *Holſtein* (his Son in Law) with Regard to the Crown of *Sweden*, he is ſaid to have given this Anſwer: *I love my Children, and am oblig'd to aſſiſt them: But, in this Caſe, I muſt have more Regard to my former Engagements than to my preſent Intereſt.*

XX. (XI.) As to his Perſonal Diſpoſitions, he was beneficent, friendly, laborious, and without Pride; He would accept of Invitations to Dine or Sup with his Subjects, and be ſatisfied with their uſual Table. He would ſpeak to High and Low, and graciouſly give all poſſible Aſſiſtance to the Meaneſt. He was no Lover of the great and pompous Delicacies of a Court; And for ſplendid, gay Apparel, it was ſo much his Averſion, that he not only diſſuaded others from the Uſe of it, but publiſh'd an Edict to curb the Exorbitancy of Dreſs, and all manner of Luxury. He was ſo laborious, that he would frequently viſit his Docks and Yards, where Ships were Building, and with his own Hands perform the Work of a common Shipwright. He was ſo dextrous at Turning, that he was own'd to be one of the greateſt Maſters in that Art: And beſides, was ſo well ſkill'd in Naval, Civil, and Military Architecture and Gunnery, that he ſurpaſs'd many profeſs'd Maſters.

XXI. (XII.) His laſt Regulation of the Succeſſion was a Step of very great Moment; For he thereby aboliſhed the Right of Primogeniture, to the End, that the eldeſt Princes might not, by think-

thinking themſelves inconteſtably ſecure of ſucceeding, nouriſh a too early Pride, and, neglecting to improve themſelves by Study and Application, ſhould endanger the Welfare of the whole *Empire* by their own evil Conduct.

XXII. By theſe, and other Inſtances, they prove, that *Peter* I. procured almoſt incredible Advantages to the *Ruſſian Empire*, and immortaliz'd his own Name.

XXIII. I shall now proceed to give the Reader the Opinion of the oppoſite Party, who, in many Points, contradict the former, and think the *Empire* labour'd under many Hardſhips during the Reign of *Peter* I. And theſe alledge, in general, that whilſt the others are fondly pleaſing themſelves with the Acquiſitions, and Extenſion of the Borders, of *Ruſſia*, they turn away their Eyes from the far greater Ruin of the *Empire* within. And here,

XXIV. 1. They reckon as one Cauſe of theſe Evils, the irregular Courſe of Life and Debaucheries into which the *Czar* was plunged, in his moſt early Years, not only to the great Detriment of the *Empire*, but the ſhortening of his own Days. Among other Reaſons, they aſcribe this his diſorderly Life to his Mother, who being a young Widow, and of a gay and wanton Diſpoſition, neglected his Education, and gave him too early and too large a Scope of Liberty: And tho' Prince *Boris Gallizin*, his Governour, was a Man of fine Underſtanding; Yet being young himſelf, and greatly addicted to his Pleaſures, he paſſed the greateſt Part of his Time, with the young *Czar*, in the *German Slabodda*, or Suburbs, among Women and Drunkards, ſuch as *Monſ. la Fort*, and his Companions: By which Manner of Proceeding a Foundation was laid for many evil Conſequences which enſu'd. Beſides, his then Tutor, *Satow*, was an ignorant, as well as mean Perſon, who had nothing to recommend him but a Method in teaching to Read and Write; But whoſe evil Conduct was of ten Times more Prejudice to the young *Czar*; For he not only introduc'd diſorderly and ill-bred Perſons to the Prince's Converſation and Intimacy; But he was thereby depriv'd of the Advantages he might have reap'd from Perſons of a more polite and refin'd Underſtanding; Who when they paid their Court to their Prince, were not only coldly received, but affronted and abuſed.

XXV. The

XXV. THE moſt ancient of the Senators, and thoſe who were in the higheſt Poſts in the Adminiſtration, being diſpleas'd at this, endeavour'd to prevent the like for the future, by remonſtrating to the *Czar*, that this Courſe of Life was not only prejudicial to his own Honour, and Health, but to the Welfare of the whole *Empire*; But this rather made the Caſe worſe than better: Eſpecially as his Mother urged him more and more to ſtand upon his abſolute Sovereignty, and, the better to effect it, encourag'd him in theſe Debaucheries. This had, at Length, ſo bad a Tendency, that he could not endure any Body near him, who had his Welfare at Heart; And it was but too well known, that theſe, and the like Irregularities, were the Cauſes of his Divorce from his firſt Conſort. And that this evil Conduct might be the better conceal'd, he took up his Reſidence at *Preobraſenſkæ*, five *Werſts* from the uſual Court or Palace. Here he held Council with his Favourites and Soldiers only, and no Perſon durſt preſume to come thither, without Permiſſion, by which Means, Men of Rank and Quality were excluded from approaching his Perſon.

XXVI. ALL this while, the young *Czar* was increaſing the Number of his Soldiers. He admitted the moſt Vulgar of the People to his Table, with whom he converſed very familiarly. This made them ſo arrogant, that they not only ſhew'd very little Reſpect to Perſons of the higheſt Quality, but treated ſome of the Senators and Generals with great Inſolence. They frequently complain'd of this Uſage to one another, ſome out of Love to the *Czar*'s Perſon, and others by way of Reſentment. They alſo admoniſh'd theſe Favourites, to reflect on the Conſequences of ſuch a Behaviour; But this, inſtead of working any good Effect upon them, did but excite them to puſh on their private Views, by aggravating theſe Remonſtrances of the Lords, with the Addition of many Falſities, which drew the *Czar*'s greater Hatred upon them; He even reproach'd ſome of them with it; But as he could not puniſh them openly, for the Reflections they had caſt upon his Conduct, he was thoughtful of other Means to be reveng'd; And theſe his Favourites ſoon contrived. Their firſt Attempt was to introduce a general Corruption of Manners, and this they did under the Pretence of celebrating what they call the *Slavlenie*. This is a Cuſtom in *Ruſſia*, where the Prieſts, and all the Clergy,

at

at *Chriſtmas* Time, go from Houſe to Houſe, in their reſpective Pariſhes, ſinging Hymns on the Birth of CHRIST, and congratulating the Houſe-keepers on Occaſion of the Feſtival, who are wont to treat them in Return, and make them Preſents, every one according to their Ability.

XXVII. SOME Noblemen and Citizens uſed, likewiſe, to divert their Families, in the ſame manner, by viſiting their Friends in the Holidays, by which Means their Children had an Opportunity of exerciſing themſelves in Converſation, and Congratulating their Relations, for which they had uſually ſome trifling Preſents made them.

XXVIII. THE *Czar*, likewiſe, began this *Slavlemie*, and at firſt took only his Domeſticks with him, amongſt whom his Tutor, *Satow*, repreſented the Prieſt, as Director; And they went into ſuch Houſes only where they knew they ſhould be welcome.

XXIX. BUT this Matter ſoon ran a greater Length; For the *Czar* perſuaded ſome Senators, and other Perſons of Diſtinction, to go with him, who looking upon it as an innocent Diverſion, invited the *Czar*, with his Retinue, to their Houſes, and made them welcome.

XXX. THIS Diverſion, at firſt, conſiſted in nothing but Drinking, and ſome other leſs Indecencies, which might have been born with, had it ſtopt there; But theſe Proceſſions, and this unuſual Conduct of the *Czar*'s, being liable to Cenſure, and occaſioning ſome Reflections, he endeavour'd to draw in as many as he could of the firſt Diſtinction; He therefore invited all his Courtiers, Miniſters of State, and Officers of the Army to it, who together made a Company of more than 300 Perſons. This Company being too great and eminent to be headed by a common Prieſt (which was the Character *Satow* repreſented) it was thought proper to give him a Name of more Diſtinction, and to dignify the Aſſembly by ſome great Title.

XXXI. SATOW was therefore call'd *the Patriarch of Bacchus*, and under him were appointed 12 Archi-Epiſcopal *Bacchanalian*-Aſſiſtants, who had their common Prieſts, Deacons, Clerks, *&c.* ſubſervient to them; And the whole Aſſembly bore the Name of *Bacchus's Eccleſiaſtical State*. The *Czar*'s Jeſters were made Maſters of the Ceremonies, and Treaſurers, or Almoners; Bottles were

were uſed inſtead of *Cenſers*; Wine and Brandy ſupply'd the place of *Holy-water*, and *Alms* were diſtributed with Cudgels, *&c.*

XXXII. THIS Train went from Houſe to Houſe, in Sledges, 12 or 20 in each Sledge, the Maſters of the Ceremonies rank'd them in Order with great Clubs in their Hands; and if any one committed a Fault, eſpecially if he was ſuſpected of being a falſe Brother, he receiv'd the Sacerdotal Bleſſing with the Club's End; But if Deacons or Prieſts were guilty of any Errour, their Puniſhment was to drink off a Quart of common Malt Spirits.

XXXIII. THUS theſe Proceſſions cauſed many ſober People to get a Habit of Drunkenneſs, and ſome, who were treated in that Manner, died, the ſame Night, almoſt before they could reach their own Habitations. He likewiſe put the Inhabitants of *Muſcow* under ſuch Apprehenſions, that no body durſt to ſpeak publickly any Thing againſt the *Czar*, or his Favourites; And when any Perſon was informed againſt, he was treated with the utmoſt Cruelty, and the Informer rewarded. Orders were moreover, iſſued, that no one, under pain of Death, ſhould dare to caſt any indecent Reflection on the *Czar*; And that whoever had an Information to bring againſt any Perſon, ſhould be admitted to the *Czar*'s Preſence, or be allow'd to make it before the *Preobraſenſkian* Inquiſition, and the Informer have one half of the Criminal's Eſtate. This put People in Fear of their own Servants, becauſe it might eaſily happen, that a Word might eſcape, which any wicked Perſon might take an Advantage of.

XXXIV. PRINCE *Ramodanowſki*, who was Preſident of this Inquiſition, with the Title of *Arch-Emperour*, was a Man of cruel Temper, and ſtrong Conſtitution; Of the latter he gave Proofs, by drinking Brandy by Quarts, as he did of the former, by Hanging, Beheading, and Torturing, ſeveral innocent Perſons, without Examination. And when he was aſked, (as it often happen'd) why he tortured ſuch or ſuch a Perſon, his Anſwer was, he muſt needs be guilty, or he would not have been impriſoned.

XXXV. THE *Czar* coming once, when he had juſt tortured a Perſon, in this Manner, and aſking him what was his Crime, he gave His Majeſty the ſame Anſwer: And upon Examination

of the Caſe, the *Czar* found the tortur'd Perſon guilty of nothing deſerving ſuch Treatment, he having been accuſed by his Neighbours only, on a trifling Account.

XXXVI. YET this Edict was not reverſed; But, on the contrary, Orders were renewed to all the Governours of Provinces, that ſuch as might be informed againſt, either for High-Treaſon, or for ſpeaking againſt the *Czar*, ſhould immediately be ſent fetter'd to *Preobraſenſkoe*; Which coſt many Perſons, either wholly innocent, or guilty of ſmall Crimes, their Honour, Eſtates, and Lives.

XXXVII. WHEN a Thief, or other Criminal was condemn'd, and brought to the Place of Execution, if he there gave an Information of Crimes, whether true or forged, committed by any Governour, or General, though only in Hopes of a Pardon, or at leaſt a Reprieve, his Execution was immediately reſpited, and he, together with the Perſon accuſed, immediately ſent to *Proebraſenſkoe*, to the Ruin of many Perſons, as I have ſaid before.

XXXVIII. THIS *Slavlenie*, was continued to the *Czar*'s Death. However, the Confederacy in *Aſtracan*, having, among other Reaſons for their Revolt, complained, that the *Czar*, to the Scandal of the Church, had given the Titles of Patriarch and Biſhops, to Fools and Ideots, they were altered, and *Satow* had the Title of *Arch-Pope*, and his twelve Biſhops that of *Cardinals*, given them: This ſo offended all the *Roman-Catholick* Princes, and, in a particular Manner, the *Roman Emperour*, and the *Electors*, by the *Czar*'s miſuſing the Title of *Arch-Emperour*; That if, at that Time, there had not been ſome Particular Views, with Regard to *Ruſſia*, it might have been the Occaſion of great Troubles.

XXXIX. THE third Reaſon alledg'd by this Party, why the *Ruſſian Empire*, during this Reign, received more Damage than Benefit, is what I have already mentioned; *viz.* that the chief Families being become diſaffected, on Account of theſe great Irregularities, had withdrawn their Loyalty from the *Czar*, and choſe rather to live in Retirement, abſent from the Court, than in the Service of the *Empire*: This gave an Opportunity to the Favourites, to fix themſelves in the high Poſts, and to raiſe the

the Fortunes of their Families and Relations. At firſt there were above twenty of theſe Favourites, ſome Noblemen, and others of mean Extraction, but all wild and extravagant Youths, who look'd no farther than the preſent Time. Among theſe, the Chief were the following, *Gregorius Lukin*, to whom Prince *Menſchikow* had been a Servant, but after *Lukin*'s Death, became Favourite of the *Czar*; Prince *Czereaſkoy*, and *Troecurow*, *Wolodimerow*, *Koſchret*, *Dubrowinartica*, *Tſcherbatſchow-gawril*, *Menſchikow*, *Sclajew*, *Alexander Menſchikow*, with ſome others; Some, ſuch as *Dubaſow*, *Sczepalow* and *Tettiſchow*; became Favourites long after, and moſt of them came to a miſerable End, or, at preſent, are of no Conſideration, but hated by every body. The laſt and greateſt Favourite of all was *Poſpelow*, a Man of no great Genius, and of mean Extraction; yet deſerved the Character of a good-natur'd honeſt Perſon, whom afterwards the *Czarina* Dowager made a Gentleman of the Bed-Chamber.

XL. Among the *Czar*'s Jeſters, who led a Profligate Life, and gave the greateſt Offence to the Nobility, were the abovemention'd *Satow*, His Tutor, *Turgenaw Schanſkoy*, *Lenni*, *Schachowſkoi*, *Taracanow*, *Kirſantievitz* and *Uſchakow*. The latter had the Character of being the beſt, and never gave Offence to any Man, without expreſs Orders. His Endeavours were only to divert the *Czar* with his Jokes and Geſtures; and, at the ſame Time, he did much Good to the People; by which Means he amaſs'd great Riches, and yet was beloved.

XLI. Among the Foreign Favourites, the firſt and greateſt was *Monſ. la Fort*, who had a great Share in Debauching the *Czar*; Next to him was *Jaguſinſki*, a Man of great Capacity, whom the *Czar* had Reaſon to value, for his good Services, and no one could, with Juſtice, complain of him.

XLII. But the Damage the Country farther ſuffered, by the others, was: They begg'd the greateſt and moſt important Offices, for their Friends and Relations, from whom, however, they exacted a Retaliation; And finding this Method very profitable, they begun to ſell the Governments and Waywodſhips, to the Higheſt Bidder, without Regard of Perſon. Theſe, having bought them dear, made uſe of every Method, not only to get

their Money back, but to make ten, or ſometimes twenty *per Cent.* of it, which brought inexpreſſible Hardſhips upon the Country.

XLIII. And though Complaints had often been made about theſe Extortions; yet the Favourites had always taken Care to play their Cards ſo, that the Truth never came before the *Czar*; And the Petitioners were forced to return Home, after a great Expence of Time and Mony, to no Purpoſe: Nay, ſome Complainants were puniſhed as Malecontents and Rebels.

XLIV. This encouraged thoſe avaricious Governours and *Waiwods*, to oppreſs the Subjects ſtill the more; Eſpecially as the *Czar* was ſeldom preſent, but ſpent moſt of His Time in His Travels: Or when He came to *Muſcow*, He took up His Reſidence at *Preobraſenſkoe*, whither no body was allowed to come, without ſpecial Permiſſion; And when he drove through the Streets, it was with ſo much Swiftneſs, that it was impoſſible to come near Him with a Petition: This, ſay they, cauſed a greater Devaſtation and Ruin to the Country, than an Enemy would have done.

XLV. To this they add, as a farther Grievance, that all Noblemen, under thirty Years of Age, were obliged to be Foot-Soldiers, Dragoons, or Sailors. On the other Hand, the very Dregs of the People, through Recommendation of the Favourites, had got into the moſt important Offices, as thoſe of Country-Judges, Chamberlains, Commmiſſioners, *Waiwods*, Deputy-Governours, and Governours, who had found out Methods, not only to enrich themſelves, but to make the *Czar* large Preſents of the Mony extorted from His Subjects; By which they obtained his Conſent to the new Projects they deviſed, to ſqueeze more out of them. This fix'd them more in his Eſteem, than the moſt faithful of his Senators; Nay (ſay they) it is certain, that no Method of extorting Mony pleaſed the *Czar* better than that of the *Turks*, which made no Noiſe among the common People, and gave them no Cauſe to complain. For this Reaſon, in the Year 1710, He compos'd a new Senate, partly of the former, and partly of other Perſons of a mean Extraction, to which latter, eſpecially, He alſo entruſted the Inſpection of the Mint and Magazines.

XLVI. And

XLVI. AND the *Czar* having, at firſt, divided the *Empire* into eight Governments, and in each of them ordered a Governour-General, to whom he had let the Government, with this Condition, that they themſelves ſhould find out Ways and Means that the Mony they were taxed at, ſhould be delivered into the Treaſury, in due Time, and gave them the Liberty to chuſe Deputy-Governours, Counſellours, and other Officers, according to their Pleaſure. It was eaſy to judge, how greatly the Country muſt have ſuffered by this; Of which there was a flagrant Inſtance, in the Government of *Siberia*, to which *Knies Gagarin*, the Governor-General, had cauſed inexpreſſible Damages, in the following Manner.

XLVII. WHEN the *Czar* had let out the other Governments, and found that of *Siberia* was rated too low, in Proportion to the Extent of it, he taxed it 200,000 Rubels higher, and then made an Offer of it.

XLVIII. IT was firſt propoſed to *Stroganow* (47), but he declin'd

(47) The *Stroganowian* Family came from *Solowitſchigoſchkaja* to *Permia*, above 200 Years ago, and eſtabliſhed Salt Works near the Place where now *Solkamskaja* is ſituated; They, in Time, bought of the Heathen *Permiacks* a Place on the River *Schuſſowaja*, where they built a City, and erected Salt-Works, called *Schuſowskoy*. This Family afterwards got more Land from the ſaid Heathens, partly for Mony, partly by Force of Arms, on the Rivers *Schuſſowaja* and *Silwa*, where they raiſed ſeveral Fortreſſes. And when, in the Time of *Czar Iwan* the Tyrant, many Deſerters, and others of the *Ruſſian* Army (which was, at that Time, encamped on the River *Kama*) retired to the *Stroganowian* Family, who received them, they raiſed an Army of 6000 Men, and ſent them, under the Command of a *Donn-Coſack* Deſerter, call'd *Jermakow*, who had been a great Robber, againſt the *Wogulitzi*, in *Ugoria*, where they were ſo lucky to beat theſe *Heathens*, wherever they came. Upon this he broke thro' the *Werchoturian* or *Urallian* Mountains, and intrench'd himſelf on the River *Tura*, at the Place where now the City of *Werchotura* is built, and where the Violence of the Winter-Seaſon oblig'd him to remain. The next Spring, *Stroganow* having ſent, to his Aſſiſtance, Proviſions, Arms and Ammunition, he caus'd a great Number of Boats to be built, with which he went down the *Tura*, into the River *Toboll*, and to the City of *Sibirr*, where the *Tartarian* King, *Kutſchium Chan*, reſided, with whom *Jermakow* had ſeveral fortunate Engagements, and, at Length, took the whole Royal Family Priſoners, whom he ſent to *Stroganow*, with many other Preſents, of great Value. *Stroganow*, who out of Love to his Country, would not enjoy this happy Turn of Fortune alone, ſent his Son, with his Priſoners, to *Muſcow*, to the *Czar*, to give him an Account of his Progreſs, and to deſire his Majeſty to ſend an Army, capable of taking Poſſeſſion of the whole Country; For which, Preparations were immediately made, and from this Beginning *Siberia*, by degrees, fell into the Hands of the *Ruſſian* Monarchs. Beſides all this, the Family of *Stroganow* twice aſſiſted the *Empire*, when under the greateſt Streights, with a Sum of 1,470,000 Ducats, not to mention many other Services and Aſſiſtances with which they were, upon all Occaſions, ready to ſupport and relieve

clin'd it, with Thanks for the Favour deſign'd him, and, at the ſame Time, gave to underſtand, that he deſir'd only to preſerve what his Anceſtors had got with great Difficulty and Labour for his Family: Nevertheleſs, he would not fail to aſſiſt the *Czar*, and the *Empire*, when required, with ſome Hundred Thouſands of *Rubels:* And no body would accept of the *Siberian* Government at the Rate it was taxed at, 'till a Nobleman, afterwards (*Knies*) *Gagarin*, offered his Service on thoſe hard Conditions.

XLIX. THIS *Gagarin*, I ſay, who had formerly been *Waywood* of a Province called *Irkuhtski* in *Siberia*, and had already experienc'd the Art of extorting Mony from the *Siberians*, agreed to the Articles propos'd. And notwithſtanding he had formerly been condemn'd to the Gallows, for Male Practices, in the Adminiſtration of his *Waiwodeſhip*, and obtained a Pardon by Means of a great Sum of Mony which he had raiſed in *Irkuhtski*; Yet this Government was entruſted to him; But how he adminiſtred it, the Sequel ſhew'd.

L. MUCH the ſame was the Fate of the other Governments. For no ſooner had theſe new Governors, or Farmers, taken Poſſeſſion of their Poſts, than they invented many new Stratagems to impoveriſh the Country, and fill their own Coffers. Among ſeveral others, the following was one. They ſent the Commiſſioners, Clerks, *&c.* to receive the Contributions, at ſuch Times, as they knew the Peaſants had the moſt Buſineſs in the Fields, and the leaſt Mony; Theſe poor Wretches were then obliged to ſell their Cattel and Corn for half the Value, to ſatisfy theſe Cormorants, or make Preſents to the Commiſſioners for a little Reſpite of Payment. This frequently obliged the Peaſants to ſell the poor Remains of their Cattle, to fly from Houſe and Home. And as they could not be ſecure in their own Country, no Nobleman daring to harbour them, above One Hundred Thouſand

relieve their Country: For Inſtance, among many, *Gregory Stroganow*, during the laſt War, fitted out two Men of War, each of 64 Guns, with Men, Ammunition, and all Neceſſaries, to ſerve againſt the *Turks*, and, in the *Swediſh* War, aſſiſted the State, with very large Sums of Mony. This Family, however, always declined accepting of any Employs, or Titles of Honour, till in the Year 1722. *Emperour Peter* I. made the three young Brothers Barons, and Gentlemen of the Bed-Chamber, at the Coronation of the Empreſs. This Family ſhew'd great Favours to the *Swediſh* Officers, during their Captivity, in thoſe Parts.

Thouſand of them removed into *Poland*, *Lithuania*, *Turky* and *Tartary*, where they built Villages, and enjoyed more Freedom than they had found in their own Country.

LI. BUT, when on Account of this, and on other Occaſions, great Complaints were made, the *Czar*, in the Year 1715, appointed a Commiſſion to examine the Affair; Upon which, moſt of the Governors were ejected, their Eſtates confiſcated, and ſome were puniſhed corporally, and capitally; Among which, two Senators had their Tongues burnt out with a hot Iron, for their Perjury. Others who were concern'd in the ſame Villanies, as Prince *Menſchicow*, the two Brothers, *Apraxin*, *Kikin*, and ſeveral more, bought themſelves off with great Sums of Mony, and kept their Poſts. The Petitioners, in the mean Time, had no Satisfaction, but that of having other Governors put into the vacant Places, who were no better than the former, and who took the ſame Advantages. All this was, through Ignorance, look'd upon, by the common People, as a great Act of Juſtice in the *Czar*, while he only drew conſiderable Sums of Mony into his Coffers, by theſe Proceedings, without relieving the Oppreſſions of his Subjects.

LII. THE Inquiſition was, in all ſuch, and the like Caſes, ſo ordered, that thoſe who were ſo unhappy to be accuſed, though innocent, could have no Hopes of eſcaping; Becauſe the Commiſſioners had all been Officers of the Guards, who knew no other but the Martial Law, according to which, every ſmall Crime is Corporally or Capitally puniſh'd; And the *Czar* had, beſides, given to them all the Effects of the Condemned, excepting their Ready Mony, Gold, Silver, and Jewels, which were delivered into the Treaſury.

LIII. ANOTHER Thing, which had contributed to the Ruin of the Country was, that the Noblemen, as I have hinted before, had been obliged to live remote from their Eſtates, and ſome had not ſeen them for twenty Years together; By which Opportunity, their Servants had made great Gains for themſelves, but had not endeavoured to improve their Lands, Meadows, and other Appurtenances under their Care: They rather ſuffered them to decay, if not to run into total Ruin: And thus theſe Noblemen's Eſtates, that formerly brought the greateſt Quantities

ties of Corn to Market, and into the Magazines, lay waſte; Which not only occaſion'd a terrible Famine in the Land, but was the Cauſe of new Taxes, for Proviſion for the Army.

LIV. In the mean Time, the Noblemen did not receive the tenth Part of their uſual Revenues, and ſome nothing at all; Nay, they were obliged to be contented, if they could but maintain their Peaſants; many of which could not have ſubſiſted, had they not been ſupported by the Noblemen, with what they got in the War: For this Reaſon, many of thoſe, to whom the *Czar* would have conferr'd the confiſcated Eſtates, either refus'd them, or if they did accept of them, ſold them again immediately, for a Trifle; Becauſe they could make nothing of them, and were obliged to build coſtly Houſes, and lay out more upon them, than the Eſtates could produce.

LV. (IV.) That the *Czar*, from his Infancy, had ſought to make himſelf more abſolute than his Anceſtors, ſufficiently appears by what has been ſaid above; *viz.* that he had ſhew'd no Eſteem for the wiſe, prudent, and ancient Miniſters of State, but, on the contrary, had treated them like common Servants; For which Reaſon, it was no Wonder, if he could not confide in them. In the very Beginning of his Reign, he aboliſh'd the ancient Cuſtom of uſing, in Proclamations of Council, and Mandates, the Words, *Bolare* (or *Bojare) prigovarili*, i. e. *the Senate commands*; and iſſued out Orders only in his own Name. This Miſtruſt of the Senate was often the Occaſion of his Rejecting the beſt Councils and Opinions, leſt there ſhould be ſome private Views conceal'd under them. He conſtantly endeavour'd to breed Enmity between the Senators; and when, either at his Table, or in other Aſſemblies, they fell into Controverſies, it was his greateſt Pleaſure to hear them, and to ſet them more at Variance. Nay, if they came ſo far as to abuſive Language, he would ſeem not to hear it, and begin to diſcourſe with other Perſons. And no Example was ever known that he endeavour'd to reconcile Enemies; But for Inſtances of his ſowing and fomenting Diſſenſions, almoſt every Day produced new Ones.

LVI. The greater his Miſtruſt was of Perſons of Diſtinction, and good Senſe, the more Confidence he placed in mean and ignorant Wretches; ſome of whom would dare to tell him ſome-

times the Truth, and to propoſe ſuch Queſtions to him, as would have coſt another Man his Head, tho' theſe did not incur the leaſt of his Diſpleaſure by it. However, by this pretended Simplicity, he was often deceived, and, many Times, Things came thereby to Light which might better have been conceal'd. This Miſtruſt of his Miniſters was, beſides, the Cauſe that none of the Senators had any real Affection for him, nor would give him their unfeign'd and ſincere Advice; Every one endeavouring, rather, to keep his Diſtance, in Order to be out of Harm's Way.

LVII. (V.) MOREOVER, they reckon, that the Corruption of Youth had not a little contributed to the Ruin of their Country; It had, in former Reigns, been cuſtomary for young Noblemen to appear daily at the *Czar*'s Levee, which gave them an Opportunity of being acquainted with wiſe and prudent Men, to partake of advantageous Converſation, and to recommend themſelves by their good Conduct; But this good Cuſtom was aboliſhed, by the young *Czar*'s Retirement to *Preobraſenſkoe*, whither none durſt preſume to come without Permiſſion, and where nothing was to be ſeen beſides viſiting from one Houſe or Apartment to another, irregular Aſſemblies in a Morning, where not only Tea and Coffee, but Wine and ſtrong Liquors laid the Ground to the Days Debauchery; And, in thoſe Aſſemblies, Cards, Tables and Dice were not wanting; In ſhort, ſuch a ſcandalous Courſe of Life was led there, that Youth was inſenſibly led into all Manner of Luxury.

LVIII. To this they add the Edict, by which Youth was obliged to be ſent to *Muſcow*, and from thence to travel into foreign Countries; Where no due Care was taken to keep them from Lewdneſs and Debauchery. Their Parents, being ignorant of the Cuſtoms and Manners of thoſe Foreign Countries, knew nothing what Proviſion it was neceſſary to make for them there; They only took Care that their Children might not want, in which they knew no Meaſure, but allow'd them to the utmoſt of what their Eſtates could afford.

LIX. WHEN theſe young Gentlemen came to *Holland*, ſix, eight, or ten of them lodg'd in one Houſe, and as they hardly knew their Mother Tongue, and leſs any foreign Language, much Time was loſt before they could attempt to learn any Thing. In

the mean Time, being under no Diſcipline, they fell into all manner of Vice. But what was worſt of all, they were not inſtructed in any Sciences proper for Gentlemen, as Juriſprudence, Politicks, Mathematicks, and the like; but were forced to apply themſelves only to Ship-building, Navigation, and Handicraft-Trades; And as they were diſguſted at, or aſhamed of the latter; So the Ignorance, in which they were educated, was a Bar to their attaining to any Perfection in the former.

LX. FURTHERMORE, the Sons of the beſt Families were forced to do the Duty of Soldiers, and common Sailors, to labour, and mount the Guard, with the meaneſt Peaſants, by which they contracted thoſe vicious Habits ſo natural in the Vulgar, which were not eaſily ſhaken off again, and conſequently no Good could be expected from ſuch Diſcipline.

LXI. JUST the ſame Caſe it was *(according to them)* with the Academy at *Petersburg*, whither the Children of the beſt Families were ſent from all Parts of the *Empire*, from Ten Years old and upwards: Here they were placed, and had Converſation with common Peoples Children, among whom they learned very little of the Sciences, but advanc'd the more in Wickedneſs; Eſpecially as they were ſo far from their Parents and Friends, who could not daily aſſiſt them, either as to the Neceſſaries of Life, or a proper Inſpection into their Learning. In ſhort, this Party of the *Ruſſians* believe all theſe Circumſtances have concurr'd to the Corruption and Ruin of their Youth.

LXII. (VI.) As to their Commerce, the Tranſporting of their Trade from *Archangel* to *Petersburg*, and the Monopolies erected there, were, in their Opinion, more pernicious than profitable to the *Empire*; For, (1.) as their Goods were to be carried ſo far, by Water and by Land, from ſome Provinces, it took up two whole Years before they could be brought to *Petersburg*; Which (2.) made the Charges ſo great, that the Goods, when they came to Market, could not be ſold without Loſs; And therefore, (3.) the Merchants in the Provinces towards *Archangel*, as *Siberia*, *Permia*, *Wiatka*, *Jaroſlawle*, &c. who formerly carried on a conſiderable Trade thither, were oblig'd to leave off Trading, and were ruin'd; And, (4.) the Produce of thoſe Countries conſequently lay dead and uſeleſs.

LXIII. AND

LXIII. And as to the Monopolies, ſince the General Trade to *China* was prohibited, the beſt Sables, black Fox-ſkins, and other precious Commodities, were privately ſent to *Poland*, *Turky*, *Tartary*, and *China*, whereby the *Czar* ſuffer'd as great Loſs in the Duty, as he had Profit by the Monopolies; To which private Practices the Merchants were, in a Manner, conſtrain'd; Since hardly any Thing was left them to trade openly withal; And they were therefore oblig'd to run all Hazards, tho' often to the endangering of their Lives and Fortunes. The Trade of Tar, Pot-Aſhes, Caviar, Stock-Fiſh, and the like Commodities, which was carried on by the *Czar* himſelf, by Means of his Farmers, had prov'd the total Ruin as well of the Foreign as Inland Merchants, and the poor Peaſant was, likewiſe, thereby depriv'd of his Livelihood: For being greatly wrong'd by the Commiſſioners, when they brought their Goods to them, they were diſcourag'd from carrying any more. The Monopoly of Salt was the Ruin of moſt of the Inhabitants in the Cities; And the Proprietors of the Salt-Works, who formerly had conſiderable Incomes, and, in Caſes of Neceſſity, could ſupply the *Empire* with large Sums of Mony, were now reduc'd to a State of Inſolvency, and oblig'd to let moſt of their Works ly waſte; Which occaſion'd ſo great a Want of Salt, that now they were oblig'd to buy *Spaniſh* Salt, whereas formerly they could ſend Salt to *Poland*; All which was of great Prejudice to the *Empire* (48).

LXIV. The Aboliſhing of the old, and Introducing of new Laws, cauſed ſuch a Confuſion among the Judges, that they often pronounc'd the moſt abſurd Sentences, and thereby brought many Hundred Perſons into the greateſt Misfortunes: Of this, particularly, a glaring Inſtance was the New Regulation of the Succeſſion, publiſhed in the Year 1714, wherein it was ordain'd, that, not the Firſt-born always, but whom the Father, by Will, ſhould nominate and appoint his Heir, ſhould inherit his Eſtates.

LXV. And although this Regulation was compriz'd in a few Words; Yet it was ſo obſcure, that no Body could come at the true Senſe and Meaning of it, which had been the Cauſe of great Diſputes. The College of Juſtice had, indeed, made ſome Re-

(48) Compare *Veränderte Ruſſland*, *p.* 37. §. 180. & *p.* 54 & 57. §. 218. & *ſeq.*

marks upon what they could not comprehend, and added ſome Articles, which ſeem'd to have been omitted; Theſe they deliver'd to the *Czar*, and intreated him to favour them with a plainer Explication of it: But the *Czar* would not come to a Determination, before the Senators had given him their Opinion; And theſe, being apprehenſive that there was a Snake in the Graſs, and that giving their Opinion might be prejudicial to themſelves, could not be brought to any Reſolution. No one would give his private Opinion; Either not to ſpeak againſt his own Conſcience, and better Knowledge; Or out of Fear of ſaying any Thing that might claſh with the Succeſſion; On which Account it remain'd undecided, and the Diſſenſions about it rather increaſed than diminiſhed.

LXVI. When ſome of the Senators aſked him, how he would have it take Place, with Regard to his Daughters, the Act or Regulation of Succeſſion being obſcure in that Point; whether, in want of Male-Iſſue, they ſhould ſucceed? He (as it is ſaid) only anſwer'd, *The Circumſtances of the Perſon muſt be conſider'd.* Which Anſwer gave them very little Satisfaction.

LXVII. As for others, as well Civil as Military Laws, they were much upon the ſame Footing; There being very few Paſſages, but what were capable of being explain'd, and interpreted in different Meanings.

LXVIII. It was very difficult to comprehend, what might be the *Reaſons of State* which induced the *Czar* to proceed in this Manner; However, He had open'd Himſelf ſo far to ſome Perſons, as to ſignify his Opinion; That a Sovereign Prince ought always to endeavour to divide the Minds of His Subjects, for which He could have no better Means, than by keeping the Explanation of ſhort and obſcure Laws to Himſelf. This, with the Anſwer I have mentioned above, concerning His Daughters, made ſome Perſons imagine, that the Reaſons why he would not declare himſelf more plainly in Point of the Succeſſion, was; becauſe it might occaſion many Perſons of Diſtinction to fall under the Imputation of tranſgreſſing the Laws, and thereby lay their Eſtates open to a Separation, if not a total Confiſcation.

LXIX. (VII.) As

LXIX. (VII.) As to the *Czar*'s having chang'd His Reſidence, He may, indeed, have had ſome Reaſons for it: Among which may be reckon'd, His inſatiable Inclination for Sea-Affairs, and equipping of Fleets; His Ambition to enlarge the Boundaries of His Empire; But more eſpecially, becauſe no Conſpiracy could be ſo eaſily form'd againſt Him, in a Place but juſt erected, where it was neceſſary to keep a ſtrong Garriſon, as being on the Frontiers; And conſequently he would be more ſecure there; To this End, likewiſe, He always careſs'd his Guards, and took particular Notice, whether their Generals were beloved by them; Which, if He perceived, He immediately removed them. The Truth of this was ſeen in the Example of Prince *Dolgorucki*, who, for Cauſes hardly worth mentioning, was diveſted of his Office, Honour and Eſtates, and ſent to *Siberia*. And, in caſe a Conſpiracy might have happen'd in any of the diſtant Provinces, he would have had Time to uſe Means to quell, and bring the Conſpirators to Reaſon. On the other Hand, the whole *Empire* ſuffer'd, and the Nobility were ruin'd by it; For, (1.) Proviſions were brought to *Peterſburg* from remote Places, at a Great Expence; Which (2.) might have been brought to *Muſcow*, as lying in the middle of the *Empire*, for a quarter of the Charges. (3.) The Correſpondence between the Senate and the ſeveral Governments, was ſlow and inconvenient. (4.) Thoſe, who, through Oppreſſion, were under a Neceſſity of petitioning the Court, inſtead of a Remedy, ruin'd themſelves by travelling ſo far, and by the dear living at *Peterſburg*; And, (5.) For this Reaſon, no due Inſpection could be had over the Commiſſioners, and other Officers of the Crown, and other petty Tyrants, who took the Advantage of their Sovereign's Abſence.

LXX. If the Number of Men, and Sums of Money, which the Building of this Reſidence coſt, and that during a tedious War, were to be exactly computed, they would exceed even all Belief. But to mention a few Particulars; Some pretend, (1.) That above One Hundred Thouſand Peaſants, who were, every Year, driven thither, like Cattle, periſhed, through hard Labour, and Want of Proviſions. (2.) This Place being a Frontier-Town, there was a Neceſſity of keeping a Garriſon

there of Ten Thouſand Men, which was a very great Charge for the Country to maintain. (3.) The Place could not well be fortified, on Account of its Situation, and the Inundations of Water, which did, every Year, conſiderable Damage. It, therefore, requir'd a great Annual Charge to keep them in Repair, or they would have fallen to Ruin. (4.) After the Inhabitants had built large Houſes of Stone, according to the Draughts firſt given them, they were conſtrain'd to pull them down again, and rebuild them twice or thrice, and were not then ſecure, that the laſt might give Satisfaction. And though, with Regard to the great Damage the *Empire* had ſuſtain'd, the Building of this City might make ſome Amends; Yet the following Projects were, without the leaſt Advantage. As (1.) the Works at *Azow*, and the Fortreſs at *Taganrock*. (2.) The Havens made on the *Baltick*; And, (3.) the many Canals, eſpecially the two laſt, near *Kamiſchinka*, and *Iwanoſero*; All which coſt many a Hundred Thouſand Men's Lives, who periſh'd by Hunger and Cold; And many Thouſands were killed by the Ground falling in upon them, and burying them alive. The Wars with the *Swedes*, *Turks* and *Perſians*, had ſwept away above Three Hundred Thouſand Men, ſo that from the Beginning of the firſt War with the *Turks*, in twenty-eight Years, a Million of Men might have been more in the Country, which was a Loſs of above 120000 Rubels, yearly Revenue. All which might have been prevented by a good Management, which was impoſſible in ſuch precipitate Proceedings; And tho' the *Empire* gain'd by the War with *Sweden*, yet it was unadviſeable to open a War again ſo ſoon, with the *Perſians*, when the Country was impoveriſh'd; Eſpecially, as it was very difficult to maintain thoſe Conqueſts, where many Thouſands of Men muſt neceſſarily periſh by an Intemperature of Heat and Air, which they were not uſed to.

LXXI. (VIII.) THIS Party, moreover, condemns the *Czar*'s Severity, and haſty Introducing of ſo many foreign Cuſtoms, which had been the Cauſe of many Rebellions, and of much Bloodſhed. The firſt of theſe happen'd in the Year 1682. by the Inſtigation of the Princeſs *Sophia*, of which I have given ſome Account above; The Occaſion of which (ſay they) was as follows: The Princeſs had perceived that the young Prince, at Ten Years of Age, treated

ſome

ſome of the moſt ancient and honourable Men of the Court, in a very unpolite and unbecoming Manner. The *Nariſchkin* Family was grown ſo proud and haughty, that they neither valued the Princeſs, nor Prince *Iwan*; and had, beſides, affronted many ancient Families and Senators. To this was added the ill Conduct of the *Czarina*-Mother, and her Favourite, a Singer, nam'd *Sergey*. And when the Princeſs talk'd about theſe Matters to the *Czar*, it frequently occaſion'd high Words; So that there was a great deal of ill Blood bred between them, and the Minds of the People were divided; But the Princeſſes Party grew the ſtrongeſt. After this, Factions increaſed daily; And in the Year 1689 the Conſpiracy of the *Ocolniſchzei*, or Miniſter of State, *Scheglowitow*; In the Year 1696 that of *Sokaonin*, Miniſter of State; *Puſchkin*, a Lord of the Bed-Chamber, and Colonel *Sinckler*; And in the Year 1698 that of Six Regiments of Soldiers broke out. About the Time that this latter took Place, the *Czar* began to ſhew his great Strength of Body and Severity, in the Execution of many Thouſands of Perſons, moſt of them innocently, and partly with his own Hands. However, the latter Part of this Report is contradicted by many.

LXXII. In the Year 1703 the *Caſan* and *Uſim Tartars* rebell'd, kill'd and took Priſoners many Thouſands, and ſold the Priſoners to the *Turks*. The Reaſon of this Rebellion was the *Czar*'s ſending a common Clerk, one *Sawin*, a ſavage, brutiſh Perſon, to *Caſan*, in Order to raiſe ſome Thouſands of Recruits, among the *Ruſſians*, to exact a great Number of Horſes from the *Tartars*, and to ſend them both to the Army. According to the Orders he had, the Governour was to obey him in all his Demands; and in Caſe he refus'd, he was to put him in Irons. This young Man, who was but about 25 Years of Age, and had never been a Soldier, or bore any other Title but that of Commiſſary, behav'd in a very Tyrannical Manner. He compell'd every one to liſt in the Service whom he could come at, without any Diſtinction, whether Noblemen, Citizens, or Peaſants: The Governour himſelf was forced to pay him a great Deference. Having no Coat of Arms, he put his own Name on the Colours and Standards of the new-rais'd Regiments. He made Officers according to his own Pleaſure, and kept a whole Company, with Colours and

Muſick, in his Houſe, becauſe he had ſeen the Field-Marſhal do ſo. When he paſſed by the Guards, or review'd the Regiments, he obliged them to ſalute him with their Colours. He violated the Privileges of the *Tartars*, and made them pay new Contributions, took away their Horſes, and pay'd but juſt what he pleas'd for them; and many more Exceſſes he committed, ſuch as would hardly bear the Relation.

LXXIII. MANY of the *Ruſſians*, who had, likewiſe, ſuffer'd, in the ſame Manner, bore it with Patience; But the *Tartars*, who reſolv'd not to bear with it, firſt ſent a Deputation, and repreſented to him how unjuſt, and contrary to their Privileges it was, to take that from them by Force, which they were ready to find Ways and Means to pay voluntarily, if Neceſſity, and the Service of the Country, required it, and the *Czar* would be graciouſly pleas'd to let them know by a written Order what was the *Quota* he expected from them. This enrag'd *Sawin*, and to be reveng'd, tho' after this Declaration, he could not publickly ſhew his Diſpleaſure, he diſſembled, made himſelf familiar with them, and invited the chief of them to a Feaſt; Where, knowing they would drink neither Beer nor Brandy, he had had a particular Sort of Mead prepar'd, with which he intoxicated them in ſuch Manner, that Eleven Perſons of them died the ſame Night, and the Reſt lay ſick a long Time, and narrowly eſcap'd with their Lives. Notwithſtanding this, they would not attempt any Thing, before they acquainted the Court with theſe Proceedings; To this End, they ſent a Petition to the *Czar*, but the Deputies were ſent back, not only without Redreſs, but even with Contempt. They, hereupon, reſolved, to revenge their Sufferings, with Fire and Sword, and march'd with 50000 Men into the Kingdom of *Caſan*, burnt ſeveral Hundred of Villages, kill'd (as I have ſaid above) many Thouſands of Men, and ſold the Priſoners to the *Turks* and *Tartars*. This obliged the *Czar* to make them a Promiſe of maintaining them in their Privileges, and to order a Committee to enquire into this Affair. However, *Sawin*'s Puniſhment was no more than being deprived of his Office (49).

LXXIV. IN

(49) This *Sawin* in the Year 1716. was again made Chief Clerk of the Chancery, in the City of *Tobolsky*; But at Length, as I have been ſince inform'd, was rewarded with the *Knut*, and the Gallows.

LXXIV. In the Year, 1701, a Printer, called *Gregory Talitzkoy*, cauſed a Rebellion, by diſperſing certain printed Libels, which he likewiſe poſted up in the Markets and Streets, and, in which, he ſtiled the *Czar* the real *Anti-Chriſt*, and endeavour'd to prove, that His Extraction, Birth and Conduct, agreed with the Prophecies of *Anti-Chriſt*, in the Bible. Some of the Prieſts, and moſt common of the People, gave Countenance to this idle and wicked Prophecy. The Author, however, when he found he could be no longer in Safety at *Muſcow*, attempted to eſcape into *Siberia*. But the *Czar* having offered a Reward of a Thouſand Ducats, which were expoſed to View in the great Market, in *Muſcow*, in an open Lanthorn, for whomever ſhould bring him to Juſtice; He was ſoon taken. This *Talitzkoy*, and his Adherents, being put to the Torture, were convicted, and he, with two of his Accomplices, were brought to the great Market, upon a Scaffold erected for that Purpoſe, where they were ſmoaked with a Corroſive Matter, 'till, in a ſhort Time, all the Hair fell from their Heads and Beards, and their Bodies melted away like Wax; which exquiſite Torture they endured for eight Hours before they died: After which the Scaffold, together with their Bones, were burnt.

LXXV. In the Year 1721, a Fryar, in the Government of *Caſan*, preſumed to preach the ſame Prophecy, in the Market-Place; But he was immediately taken up, try'd and beheaded.

LXXVI. In the Year 1704, the City of *Aſtracan*, and other ſmaller Places adjacent, rebell'd, on Account of the new Ordinance to oblige every one to change their Apparel, and cut off their Beards. When the Governour, by Order of the *Czar*, publiſhed this Ordinance, by which it was declared, that if the Nobility, Citizens or Garriſon, ſhould refuſe to comply therewith, they ſhould pay a Penalty of a *Rubel* for the wearing of a *Ruſſian* Coat; and, for their Beards, ten *Copeiks*, (or about Sixpence) as often as they appear'd with them, in the Streets; the Citizens firſt began to complain of this Innovation, to the Governour, alledging, that they could not believe it to be the *Czar*'s Order; Becauſe of the Impoſſibility of making ſuch an Alteration, ſo ſuddenly, in thoſe remote Countries: And, be-

ſides, that it would be too hard upon them, among their other Taxes, to be obliged to the great Expence of providing the Requiſites for theſe new-faſhion'd Cloths; They, therefore, entreated him that they might be left to their Liberty, in this Caſe, as the *Czar*'s Father had left them, when He aboliſh'd the *Tartarian* Apparel; Not forcing the *Ruſſian* Habit upon any one; But the Court beginning to wear it firſt, the whole *Empire* followed afterwards, by Degrees.

LXXVII. BUT the Governour, who could not condeſcend to their Deſire, put the *Czar*'s Order in Execution, and puniſh'd ſeveral of the Citizens, for Diſobedience. Upon this, they, together with the whole Garriſon, made an Inſurrection, cut off the Governour's Head, and gave his Houſe and Furniture a Prize to the Populace. After this, they made ſome of the Citizens their Chief Commanders, and ſent Proclamations to the *Coſacks*, *Calmucks* and *Tartars*; In which they vilified the *Czar* with the Name of Tyrant, and Heretick. Among other Articles laid to his Charge, they accuſed the *Czar* of having, to the Scandal of the Church, converted the *Slavlenie*, which had been inſtituted to the Honour of the ALMIGHTY, into a Prophane Maſquerade, and of having given his Jeſter the Title of Patriarch, and twelve of his Comrades that of Archbiſhops. By this Proclamation they drew over ſeveral to their Alliance, and got together an Army of above Twenty Thouſand Men. However, they did not pretend to act offenſively, but only ſtood upon the defenſive, in order for an Accommodation, and to obtain a Repeal of this Ordinance. But, to the *Czar*'s good Fortune, they had no General, to bring them into Diſcipline, and Order.

LXXVIII. THE *Czar*, hearing this diſagreable News, which gave him freſh Uneaſineſs, was at firſt at a Stand what to do in this Caſe; For to ſend a few Men thither was not adviſeable, and a great Army he could not ſpare, becauſe of the War with the *Swedes*; Neither was it proper to give the Rebels Time to increaſe their Body. At Length, he reſolved to ſend the General, Count *Soberemetow*, with two Regiments of Infantry, and his own Life-Guard, conſiſting of 320 Gentlemen, with which he had Orders to join the *Militia* and the Garriſon of *Caſan*; Well knowing, that

that *Scheremetow*, being belov'd and eſteem'd by the Populace, on Account of many Victories he had obtain'd, and as being a Mild, Prudent, and Eloquent Man, would do more by his Preſence than ſome others with a much larger Force. This Propoſal was not only approved of by his Friends, but was a ſecret Satisfaction to his Enemies, who were in Hopes, as he was ſent thither with ſo ſmall a Number of Men, if he ſhould be cut off, there would be the better Chance for them to advance their Fortunes. *Scheremetow*, without ſhewing any Diſlike to the Expedition, march'd thither, with all poſſible Diligence, and the Troops propoſed.

LXXIX. When he came to the Diſtrict of *Aſtracan*, one City after another ſubmitted to him: But the Capital itſelf, tho' under great Apprehenſions, would not ſurrender before they had made, at leaſt, one Puſh for it. *Scheremetow* was, therefore, no ſooner come before the City, than 5000 of the Rebels ſallied out upon the new-rais'd Regiment, which was poſted very near the City, and routed it. But other Regiments coming up, ſeconded by a Body of Dragoons, the Rebels were brought into Confuſion, and forced to retire into the City. *Scheremetow* follow'd them ſo cloſely, that he got Maſter of the firſt Fort, entring it with them; Upon which, ſhortly after, the City ſurrender'd at Diſcretion, and the chief of the Citizens, with the whole Gariſon, were beheaded.

LXXX. In the Year 1707. the *Donn-Coſacks* rebelled, who being all Vagrant *Ruſſians* (50), that had ſettled on the River *Donn*, and other Rivers that fall into the ſame, and having very little Agriculture, were wont to live upon plundering the *Turks* and *Tartars*; This People had formerly done great Service to *Ruſſia*, in keeping that Side ſecure from the *Turks*; For which they had only receiv'd an annual Recompence of a certain Quantity of Lead, Gun-Powder, and Cannon-Balls: But after *Aſow* was taken, and, according to the Stipulation, they were ſtrictly forbidden to commit any ſuch Outrages as formerly; And, on the other Hand, they were ordered to till the Ground, and to apply themſelves to Trade, over which the Governour of *Azow*

(50) Compare *das Veränderte Ruſſland*, *p.* 62. §. 241. *ſeq.*

was to have the Inſpection, and had given them a great deal of Trouble on that Account: The Czar having alſo forbid them to exerciſe their former Privilege of depoſing and chooſing the *Woiſkowoy Attaman*, and commanded them not to preſume to do the ſame for the future, without giving him previous Notice of it; And having, likewiſe, order'd them to receive no more Deſerters, whereby their Number, according to the Liberty, which they had before enjoy'd, might be increaſed; That out of the Produce of their Lands, they ſhould deliver yearly a certain Quantity of Corn to *Azow*, and work like other Peaſants at the Fortifications, and on board the Veſſels, that went down from *Weronitz*, with Proviſion and Ammunition; Theſe People, I ſay, being thus provok'd, grew, at Length, diſcontented, and thought on Ways and Means to get rid of this Yoke; And a great Number of Peaſants, on Account of the heavy Taxes, and Soldiers of the Army, being gone over to, and received by them, the *Czar* ſent Prince *Dolgorucki*, Major of the Life-Guards, thither, in Order to bring back all the People who had join'd them, after the Conqueſt of the City of *Azow*.

LXXXI. THIS Major, being arrived in their capital City, *Czerkaſkoy*, and having delivered his Orders, they anſwer'd him, that tho' it was contrary to their Agreement, and, therefore, they could not execute the Orders themſelves; Yet they would allow him to ſeek for them, and for that Purpoſe would give him a good Convoy. He, agreing to this, was, in the Night-time, ſet upon and maſſacred, by a private Party. They immediately acquainted the *Czar* with it, and excuſed themſelves, pretending it was done by a Rover, whom they had already puniſh'd according to his Deſerts. But the *Czar* being convinced of their Wiles, ſent thither the Brother of this *Dolgorucky*, Captain of the Life-Guards, with 15000 Men, who revenged his Brother's Death, with the Slaughter of 20000 Men, partly kill'd in Skirmiſhes, and partly by the Hands of the Executioner, in all their Cities. This put an End to the Rebellion; But above 10000 of them, afterwards, retired into *Turky*, where they remain to this Hour.

LXXXII. IN the Year 1708, the *Maloucſian Hettman*, *Mazeppa* rebelled; For the following Reaſons, and upon the following Occaſion.

LXXXIII.

LXXXIII. MAZEPPA perceiving that the *Czar* was not to be bound by any Contract or Privileges granted; That He forced the Nobility in *Ruſſia*, to be Soldiers and Sailors; and laid burthenſome Taxes upon their Eſtates; Had deprived the *Donn Coſacks* and *Tartars* of their Privileges: Had forced the Wearing of a Foreign Apparel upon the Nation, and made Alterations in their Religion: He, and his *Coſacks*, began to apprehend, that if the *Czar* ſhould become more powerful, by the War, they might be the next to be treated in the ſame Manner, and, therefore, it was high Time for them to conſider how to prevent it.

LXXXIV. FOR this Purpoſe, *Mazeppa* made Uſe of a Stratagem, and went himſelf to *Muſcow*; Where, by Means of great Preſents, he made himſelf familiar with Prince *Menſchikof*, which gave him an Opportunity to be often in the *Czar*'s Company, and diſcourſe with Him of Publick Affairs. Among other Converſation, he repreſented to the *Czar*, how eaſy it would be to make the *Coſacks* Soldiers and Dragoons. Upon this Occaſion he extoll'd the new Method of exerciſing the Soldiers, and their Cloathing; And knowing that the *Czar* was pleaſed with the *German* Habit, he himſelf wore Cloths of that Faſhion, and perſuaded the *Czar* to command the *Coſacks* to do the like. All which the *Czar* highly approved, but told him that Matters were not yet ripe for ſuch a Change: However, for this pretended Loyalty, the *Czar* honoured him with the Order of *St. Andrew*. When *Mazeppa* returned, he declar'd the *Czar*'s Intentions to the Chief of the *Coſacks*, and therefore perſuaded them to take Part with the *Swedes*; But his real Intention was to convert his Country into a ſeparate Principality. Three Colonels of the *Coſacks*, who would not concur in *Mazeppa*'s Intrigues, diſcovered them to the *Czar*; But bringing no ſufficient Proof, two of them were beheaded, and the third, on Account of his extraordinary Merit, was ſent to *Siberia*. However, the *Czar* afterwards too ſufficiently experienced the Truth of their Report, to His great Mortification. and conſiderable Damage to His *Empire*.

LXXXV. IN the Year 1715, *Knies Gagarin*, the Governour of *Siberia*, projected an Alteration in his Government; And, if the Deſign, which ſoon after was concerted in *Muſcow* againſt

the *Czar*, had been brought to Execution, he would have turned it into a ſeparate Kingdom; For as he had this Government in Farm, and had amaſs'd conſiderable Sums of Mony by it, he, by Means of large Preſents, made the Senators his Friends, and thereby got the Power into his Hands, of doing juſt what hepleaſed. He put his Relations and Friends into all the Civil and Military Offices, who dared not to be againſt him, though he taxed and oppreſſed the People, at his Pleaſure: When the common People complained to him of the heavy Taxes, he ſhewed an outward Compaſſion for their Miſery; But told them, he had ſtrict Orders for it from the *Czar*, which it was not for him to oppoſe. He had, indeed, often informed His Majeſty of their Hardſhips, by which he had incurr'd the *Czar*'s Diſpleaſure, and had very near brought Trouble upon himſelf. In the mean while, he ſometimes diſtributed Mony among the common People, under Pretence of relieving their Neceſſities: Which perſuaded many to believe him to be a charitable and publick-ſpirited Man. When he had Orders to furniſh Recruits, out of his Government, he took the greater Part of them, out of thoſe Provinces which lay near the *Ruſſian* Borders, as *Permia*, *Wiatka* and *Petſchora*, and ſpared other Places; But, at the ſame Time, he took Care to be well paid for it. When Opportunity offered, he gave Hints to ſome of the Inhabitants, of the Alterations in Religion, which were intended, and inſinuated, that the Church was in great Danger: In *Siberia*, he wore Part *Ruſſian* and Part Foreign Cloathing, and no Peruke; He appeared very devout, went daily to Church, and kept *Lent* very ſtrictly; In going in and out of the Church, he ſpoke, in a friendly Manner, to the Peaſants, and gave them Hopes of better Times; He gave a ſpeedy Anſwer to Petitioners, and fed them up with Aſſurances of all poſſible Redreſs. He was very good to the *Swediſh* Priſoners, and connived at them, when, in their Miſery, they endeavour'd to get their Living. He kept up a great Familarity with the *Siberian* Metropolitan, *Philotæus*: For though this Man had laid down the Adminiſtration of his Arch-Epiſcopal Function, and had taken a Reſolution to retire to the Cloiſter of *Kiow*; yet he conſtantly reſided in *Siberia*, in the City of *Tumeen*, under the Holy Pretence of building a Church, and

Converting the *Oſtiaks* (51); But it was ſaid, that he and the *Knies* had a good Underſtanding.

LXXXVI. MOREOVER, *Gagarin* took good Care to prevent any Reports of his Conduct being made, either in Writing, or by Word of Mouth, from *Siberia:* For which Purpoſe, he beſet all the Roads between *Ruſſia* and *Siberia*, and forbid Travellers, under Penalty of Death, to paſs any Way, but through that called the *Werchoturian* Paſſage; where he placed a near Relation of his, a faithful Inſtrument of performing his Commands, call'd *Trachaniotow*, who took Care that no Perſon came through without a Paſs from the Governour, and Letters to Perſons of Diſtinction. And when any Perſons took Notice of his Behaviour, and told him what would be the Conſequences of it, he ſent them into the moſt remote Provinces, where no one could ever hear what became of them.

LXXXVII. HAVING brought all this to bear, and knowing perfectly well, how to ſecure his Friends, and to ſtop the Mouths of his Enemies, with that Sovereign Remedy, Gold, he reſolved to bring the *Siberian Militia* upon a better Foot. To this End, he firſt made a great many young Citizens *Synbojarſkoy* (which are a Sort of Gentlemen-Volunteers, who maintain themſelves, from the Revenues of their own Eſtates, when they ſerve in the Field.) Inſtead of one eſtabliſhed Regiment of the Land-Dragoons, he made two, who were obliged to live upon the Salary, which formerly had been allow'd for one Regiment, pretending he had Orders for ſo doing; As for the Infantry, he was ſecure of them, at any Time, under Pretence of Recruits, and upon Occaſion could make a good Number of the *Swediſh* Priſoners Officers: But Arms and Gun-Powder would have been wanting; Canons and Bullets there were enough ready made, and making at the *Siberian* Iron-Works: And becauſe he could get neither ſmall Arms nor Gun-Powder, without Permiſſion of the Senate, and having no ſubſtantial Reaſon for demanding it, all his Neighbours, on that Side, being in Peace, he made Uſe of the following Stratagem.

LXXXVIII. HE ſent ſome People to *Buchary* (where there are ſome Rivers which give a ſmall Quantity of Gold-Duſt) in Order

(51) Compare *das Veränderte Ruſſland, p.* 212. §. 8.

Order to buy up as much of this Gold-Duſt, as could be had (52); And when he had got about 10 Pound of it together, he went with it to *Peterſburg*, and diſcover'd it to the *Czar*; But told him that it was to be found much nearer than really it was. He remonſtrated, however, that tho' it was eaſy to come at, the *Kalmucks* would not ſuffer it to be carried away, but by Force: That, therefore, he would take this Place, if the *Czar* would but furniſh him with Arms and Ammunition for 10000 Men, and with ſome Armourers and Makers of Gun-Powder. The Reſt he would find in *Siberia*.

LXXXIX. THE *Czar*, who was, indeed, pleaſed with this Propoſal, ſhew'd him great Marks of his Favour, and promiſed to

(52) Here appears the true Grounds of the Report of the Gold Duſt, of which I made ſome Mention, in my Introduction, *Sect. I.* §. *XXIX.* in the Note, and *Sect. II.* §. *X.* And in *das Veränderte Rußland*, *p.* 71. §. 273. and *p.* 233. §. 346. it is mention'd what ſeduced the *Czar*, to ſend *Alexander Beckewitz* to the River *Daria*, on the *Caſpian Sea*. In ſome Reſpects it is true of the River *Daria*, but in others not: For as the Word *Daria*, in the *Perſian* Language, is an Appellative, and denotes nothing but a River, ſo that one may ſay *Oby-Daria*, *Toboll-Daria*, *Amu*, or *Oxus-Daria*; So it is true, that in little *Buchary*, or the *Empire* of *Caſchkar*, there is a certain River call'd *Kaptzack-Daria*, which produces yearly about 20 Pounds of Gold-Duſt, which the Stream brings along with it, when, in the Spring, the Water comes out of the Mountains; Of which Rivers, as it is ſaid, there are two others, more towards *China*, and in the *Eaſt*; Whither *Knies Gagarin* ſent; Of which, among all the Accounts, that I have read about it, the *Allerneueſte Staat von Caſan, Aſtracan*, &c. (*the neweſt State of* Caſan, Aſtracan, *&c.*) printed at *Nurenberg*, (1723. *p.* 126. §. 29.) gives the beſt. For this River belongs to the *Kalmuck Kontaiſch*, who has the Juriſdiction of the City of *Jerkeen*, in *Buchary*; But that *Cheſell Daria*, or *Jaxartes*, as the Ancients call it, whither the before mention'd *Beckewitz* was ſent, lies above 120 *German* Miles from *Kaptzack Daria*; The Reader may now judge, whether *Knees Gagarin* deſerved his Puniſhment or not; For beſides the Damage which, the Text ſays, *Siberia* ſuffered, by this Buſineſs, *Alexander Beckewitz*, and his People, were cut to Pieces, near the *Caſpian Sea*; Colonel *Buchholtz*, of whom the Text makes Mention, was ſent the firſt Time, and Major-General *Lycharow*, the ſecond Time, in the Year 1720. from *Tobolsky* to the River *Irtiſch*, almoſt to the Source of it, and yet found no Gold-Sand; (See my Introduction, *Sect. I.* §. *XXIX.*) The Place being diſtant from thence a Hundred and more (*German*) Miles, thro' vaſt Wilderneſſes, where neither Water nor Proviſions were to be had. But the true Mountains which produce this Gold-Sand, are far to the *Eaſt*, beyond this *Kaptzack-Daria*, near the City of *Dobba-Selin*, or *Senin*, at the Source of the River *Croceus*, and the *Chineſe* Wall. (See my Map;) Of which, likewiſe *Martinus Martini* (in his *Atlantica*, *p.* 47. & 50.) Alſo *Kircherus*, (*p.* 64.) make Mention; The latter of which calls this City *Sining-Fu*, and the former *Kinti*; But the *Tartars* call it *Dobba Selin*; The Reader may alſo judge, whether this *Kaptzack-Daria* may not be the ſame of which *Lucanus* (Lib. III.) makes Mention, tho' confuſedly; in the following Words: *Arimaſpus*, *Fluvius eſt Scythiæ*, *ad Septentrionem*, *aureis arenis abundans*. (*Arimaſpus* is a River of *Scythia*, towards the *North*, abounding with Gold-Sand.) Perhaps he had heard ſome blind Account of it; But nothing of a Certainty. However, if any Body can inform me of any other River in *Scythia*, that has Gold-Sand, I will retract my Opinion.

to ſend him every Thing, according to his Deſire; However, he would not ſo entirely confide in him, but choſe another Perſon, for this Purpoſe, one *Buchholtz*, a Colonel, whom *Gagarin* was to furniſh with all Neceſſaries, out of his Government, for this Expedition. This was ſad and unexpected News for *Gagarin*, yet he was obliged to ſubmit to it, and to ſee the ſaid Colonel, ſoon after, march, with 3000 Men, from *Tobolſky*, in Order to take a Poſt on the River *Irtiſch*. By which Means, from Time to Time, all *Knies Gagarin*'s Intrigues were diſcover'd, and he, after having been put ſeven Times to the Torture, was condemn'd to the Gallows. What *Siberia* ſuffered, and how he brought Ruin upon that Country, by his Farming of it, was evident to every one.

XC. In the Year 1717. the Prince Royal, *Alexius*, together with his Mother, and his Father's half Siſter, *Mary*, conſpired againſt the *Czar* (53). But in what Manner this happen'd, would be too tedious to relate here; I therefore refer the Reader to the *Verændertes* Ruſland *(the preſent State of* Ruſſia) where *(p. 257. and ſeq.)* he may ſee it at large. Nevertheleſs, ſince thoſe Perſons who ſecretly favour'd the Prince, judged more moderately of this Conſpiracy, I will here briefly relate what they ſay to extenuate it.

XCI. They will not allow the Blame to have been wholly on the Prince's Side; But ſay, (1.) That his Father had been the Cauſe of his bad Education; Prince *Menſchikof* having been his Tutor, whoſe Extraction, Education and Qualities being well known, it was eaſy to judge what Methods he could uſe for the Education of a Prince, who was himſelf, but of a mean *Genius*. Beſides, *Menſchikow*, (*ſay they*) did not viſit the Prince above twice or thrice a Year, and whenever he reproved him for any Thing, it was in very harſh and unbecoming Language. As an Inſtance of which, they report, that he once told the Prince, to his Face, *Thou muſt not expect the Crown*; *For I am as near to it as thou* (54), and more of the like Kind of Expreſſions; Which the Prince took ſo to Heart, that he loſt all Taſte of

(53) *Vid. das Verænderte Ruſſland, p.* 142, & 315.

(54) The *Ruſſians* in their Language, ſpeak familiarly, in the Second Perſon, as they do in *Latin*.

applying himſelf to any Thing that could be beneficial to him. (2.) The Prince was obliged to reſide conſtantly at *Preobraſenſkoi*, where he had no Converſation, but that of common People and Prieſts, who had been ſo indiſcreet to talk with him of the new Cuſtoms introduced by his Father, as the Ruin of the Country, and which, ſoon or late, ought to be aboliſhed; His Father, likewiſe, never ſpoke in a friendly Manner to him, but, when the Prince came to viſit Him, He uſed him more like a Stranger than a Son; All which contributed to his Puſillanimity; Inſomuch that he avoided every Opportunity of ſeeing his Father. Beſides, under theſe Circumſtances, he had not the beſt Counſellors about him; But on the contrary, ſuch as *Kikin*, Archbiſhop of *Roſtow*, *Bojar Glelow*, *Zarewitſch* of *Siberia* (55), and others, who were of Opinion that he would, ſoon or late, come to the Crown, notwithſtanding theſe evil Appearances.

XCII. AND

(55) This *Zarewitſch* of *Siberia* deſcends from *Kutzium Chan*, who reſided in the City of *Tura*, or *Tobolsky*, when the *Ruſſians*, by Means of *Stroganow* and *Jermakow*, conquered *Siberia* and this City; Of which I have made Mention above, §. 48. in the Notes. *Kutzium-Chan*'s Father's Name was *Murtaſa*, who was Son of *Mamudack Chan*; and his Anceſtors were, 1. *Itadſim*, or *Hadſim Mahomet-Chan*. 2. *Ali Oglan*. 3. *Beckondi*. 4. *Kutluck Mengutimur*. 5. *Badakul*. 6. *Zuzi-buga*. 7. *Bagadur Chan*. 8. *Scheybani Chan*. This latter was Brother to *Batti*, or *Battu-Zagin-Chan*, ſo well known in the *European* Hiſtory, who ravaged *Ruſſia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Sileſia*; He was a Son of *Zuzi*, or *Jugi-Chan*, eldeſt Son of the *Great Zingis-Chan*, the Founder of the *Tartarian* Monarchy. When *Battus* return'd from the above-mentioned Countries, he gave his Brother *Scheybani Chan* that Country which lies *North-Eaſt* of the *Caſpian Sea*, where now the *Turkomanni* dwell, between the River *Jayk* and the *Arallian* Lake, where alſo his Deſcendants dwelt till the Time of *Kutzium-Chan*; But he went, with his *Hordes*, into the Country *Northwards* from thence, and took from the *Heathen* Nations call'd *Gauſchta*, or *Gauſchſtintzi*, the City of *Sibirr*, or *Tura*, not far from the preſent City of *Toboll*; Which People are doubtleſs thoſe *Getæ* of whom *la Croix*, (in his *Timur Beck*,) and likewiſe *Herbelot*, with others who have follow'd them, have wrote ſo much; And who, as they ſay, lived in *Tamerlane*'s Time. But I cannot be perſuaded, that the Word *Geth*, according to our Pronunciation of the Letters, has been found in the *Arabick*, *Perſian*, and *Turkiſh* Text; But am rather of Opinion, that inſtead thereof, it muſt have been *Schuth*, *Sghuth*, or *Gazuht*; The Poſterity, or ſmall Remainder of this *Gauſchſtintzian* Nation live ſtill, in little Huts, near the City of *Tomskoi*, about 2 or 300 Men, and are *Heathens*, who uſe ſuch Drums as the *Laplandians* and *Oſtiaks* do. They themſelves have told me, that they were the ancient Inhabitants of the true *Siberia*, where, however, I never heard any thing of a Name, pronounced *Geth*, which could not have been quite extinct, if, according to *la Croix*'s Opinion, it had been pronounc'd in that Manner. Therefore, I believe, that, by this, either theſe People, or, in general, the *Sguhti*, *Tzudi*, or *Getſchudi*, muſt be underſtood, which Name is known, by Hiſtory, to all the Inhabitants of *Siberia*, tho' no Nation, of that Name, is now in being; But thoſe Inhabitants of *Siberia*, who came thither with *Kutzium-Chan*, are thoſe *Tartars* who dwell near the Cities of *Toboll* and *Tumen*; Likewiſe the *Tzatskian Tartars*, near *Tomskoi*, the *Czulimian Tartars*, &c.

XCII. AND as to the Signing of the Prince's Sentence, the greateſt Part of thoſe who ſign'd it, might probably not have ſeen the whole and true Record, becauſe only a ſmall Extract of it was publickly produced (56).

XCIII. (IX.) THIS Party, which (as I have ſaid) diſagrees with the firſt I mention'd, reckon the new Order of Succeſſion a Prejudice to the *Empire*; And ſay, in ſuch vaſt Dominions, it may be the Cauſe of a Rebellion; As it happen'd, before the Reign of the *Czars Iwan* and *Peter*; Notwithſtanding, at that Time, the Senators had weighty Reaſons for excluding *Czar Iwan*. And when, in the Year 1721, the Subjects were to do Homage, according to this Order of Succeſſion, and to ſwear Allegiance to a Succeſſor not named, but whom the *Czar* ſhould, at any Time, declare for his Succeſſor, many Cities in *Siberia* revolted, the Inhabitants of the City *Tara*, who oppoſed this Order, were ruin'd by it, and in ſome ſmall Towns, the People gathered themſelves together, like Perſons in Deſpair, by Hundreds, and by Thouſands, in a Houſe or Barn, ſet it on Fire, and burnt themſelves alive.

XCIV. THESE then are the different Opinions and Reaſonings which, after my Return from *Siberia*, I heard in *Muſcow*, from *Ruſſian* Vaſſals of Credit and Reputation, on either Side, concerning the Life and Reign of *Peter the Firſt*, which I thought proper to relate here with the greateſt Exactitude, to the End that an impartial Hiſtorian may, for the future, ſeparate the Good from the Bad, and judge rightly of the Atchievements of this great Monarch. For as there are ſome Writers, who, for certain Reaſons, blame the Actions of a Prince, and put the worſt Conſtruction upon them; So there are others, who, for Intereſt Sake, extol them to the Sky, and praiſe, what in Reality, ought to be blamed.

XCV. I HAVE alſo, ſince my Return from Captivity, ſhewn theſe Accounts to ſome *Ruſſian* Noblemen, and deſired them to give me their Opinions on them; Upon which, one of them communicated to me the following Remarks, eſpecially on the Opinion of the latter.

(56) *Vid. Verændertes Ruſſland, p.* 300.

XCVI. (1.) WHAT has been ſaid of the *Czar*'s irregular Courſe of Life, and Debaucheries in His youthful Days, could not be deny'd; Which certainly was the Cauſe of much Miſchief to Himſelf, as well as others, and particularly of His Premature Death; However, thoſe who allowed Him too much Liberty, in His Youth, and ordered Him ſuch mean Perſons for his Education and Attendance, were the principal Cauſes of it; eſpecially ſince, afterwards, when they ſaw the incongruous Beginnings, they did not lay hold of proper Means to ſtop the Career of it. To this His own Mother, in a great Meaſure, contributed, thinking, by conniving at this His Way of Living, to get the Common People on her Side, and thereby to be more able to oppoſe the Party of the Princeſs *Sophia*. Prince *Boris Gallizin* is, likewiſe, not excuſable; ſince he adminiſter'd to him more Occaſions to follow ſuch a Courſe of Life, than to hinder him from it; And as for Monſieur *la Fort*, he was no leſs a Promoter of it; But having, in other Reſpects, done great Services to *Ruſſia*, it was not thought proper to diſguſt him. The Senators, on their Side, were alſo, in ſo far, to blame, becauſe they might, by a diſcreet Behaviour, have diverted him from it, had there been a Harmony among themſelves: For when any of them ſaw, that the *Czar* affronted one or other of them, the reſt made a Jeſt of it, which encouraged him to take the greater Liberty, and was the Occaſion that they ſuffered, in like Manner, in their Turns.

XCVII. (2.) As for His Converſation with common People, the Conſpiracy fomented by the Princeſs *Sophia*, was the Cauſe of it (57). For being continually in Danger of his Life, or of meeting with ſome Vexation at Court, he was obliged to retire to another Place, for which Purpoſe he thought *Preobraſenſkoi* to be the moſt convenient. And becauſe he could not truſt himſelf to the *Strelitzes*, without Danger, he levy'd, at firſt, a ſmall Guard, conſiſting only of One Hundred and Twenty Men, who were call'd *Peteſchny*, i. e. *Pleaſure-Fire-Workers*, with whom he had his chiefeſt Paſtime (58). Theſe, and other Reaſons above-mentioned, deprived him of the Converſation with People of Diſtinction, not knowing whom to truſt; And thoſe He could

(57) Compare *das Veränderte Ruſſland*, *p.* 26. §. 137.
(58) Compare *das Veränderte Ruſſland*, *p.* 27. §. 142.

could truſt to, being too far off, to ſee him often, He was obliged to converſe, and paſs his Time, with His petty Guard.

XCVIII. (3.) As for the ſelling of Places, it was more than probable that the *Czar* knew nothing of the Matter; And if he had known it, it would have been impoſſible for him to ſee beforehand the Inconvenience the Country would thereby be liable to; Eſpecially ſince the Senators themſelves could diſcover very little of it, 'till Experience made the Damages, which accrued from thence, evident.

XCIX. (4.) In making Dragoons, Soldiers, and Mariners, of his Noblemen, the *Czar*'s Intentions were for the Good of the *Empire*, as well as for their own Benefit; But that this Matter was carried too far, was owing to his earneſt Deſire to proſecute the War, and his abſolute Power in Command; For which, conſidering his Deſign, he was not to be blamed. Beſides, being the moſt Time abſent, and in Foreign Countries, he could not ſo ſoon perceive the Inconveniences which accrued to his Country from thence; And the Senators for their Parts, let it paſs without Notice. Neither could the *Czar* ſee before-hand the bad Conſequences of the Projects for the Augmentation of the *Imperial* Treaſury, cauſed by the Avarice of thoſe who had the Adminiſtration of it: But as ſoon as he was at Leiſure to examine into their Management, to which Prince *Jacob Dolgorucki*, who eſcaped from his Captivity in *Sweden*, a prudent and loyal Patriot, very much Contributed, by laying a true State of the Empire before his Majeſty, a Committee of Enquiry was conſtituted, in the Year 1715, and the Tranſgreſſors were ſeverely puniſhed, according to their Deſerts (59). When, after this, the *Czar* had conſidered of a better Regulation, he ordered it ſo, 1. That when a Place was vacant, the Governour, or the ſeveral Colleges, ſhould preſent three Perſons to the Senate, of which one was to be return'd, And, 2. Whenever Offices, immediately depending upon the Senate, were vacant, that three Perſons ſhould be preſented to his Majeſty; which Conſtitution was alſo introduced in the Army.

C. He

(59) Compare *das Veränderte Rußland*, *p.* 32. §. 167. *ſeq.* & *p.* 139. §. 185, & 186.

I

C. He, moreover, commanded, that the Noblemen, in every Diſtrict, ſhould aſſemble, every Year, a little before *Chriſtmas*, in Order to examine into the Adminiſtration of the Commiſſioners, and to turn them out, and chuſe new ones, as they ſhould think proper. There was likewiſe a Project upon the Carpet, that, out of the Diſtrict of every Province, ſhould be choſen four Provincial Counſellours; Out of the Provinces of every Government, four Counſellours of the Regency to aſſiſt the Governour; And out of every Government two Oeconomical Counſellors to aſſiſt the Senate, at the Board of Oeconomy. All theſe, as well as the Provincial Judges, were to be choſen by the Gentry, from among themſelves, and every Year new ones to be elected in their Room; By this Means, thoſe at the Helm would always be acquainted with the State of the *Empire*, and a Way would be opened to Men of Ability, living in remote Parts of the *Empire*, to be employ'd in the Service of their Country, and to be promoted to advantageous Poſts; This alſo would be a great Eaſe to the Senators and Governours; For whilſt Affairs of ſmall Moment were determined by the Gentry, thoſe great Officers would have the more Time for the Management of Affairs of greater Importance; But the Czar's premature Death put a Stop to the Execution of this Project, and it was believ'd, that now it would hardly be brought to bear; Becauſe the Governours, perhaps, would not care to ſhare the Government with others.

CI. (5.) Concerning his Abſolute and Rigid Government, it was a Thing natural to every Man to be inclinable to rule over others; And as no Man is of himſelf capable to enſlave ſo many Thouſands, unleſs they themſelves give him the Power, they ought to bear with what proceeds from that Arbitrary Power, to which they have once ſubmitted without any Condition or Law; And no Man could be deem'd a Tranſgreſſor of the Law, to whom no Law or Contract was preſcribed (60).

CII. (6.) As to the Corruption of Youth, it would be doing the *Czar* Injuſtice to tax him with it; His Intentions were good; And tho', in the Beginning, no adequate Method was, or could be

(60) Doubtleſs the Meaning muſt be, that this may be ſuppos'd in a Political Senſe, but not in a Moral Senſe, grounded upon the Laws of God, where it is ſaid: *Quod tibi non vis fieri, alteri ne facias.* Do unto others as thou wouldeſt be done unto thy ſelf.

be fix'd, for Regulating their Education; Yet the Conſequence ſhew'd, that notwithſtanding this, many had profited by it; Of which diverſe Circumſtances could be alledg'd *pro* and *con*, were it not too tedious for this Place; Nay, if ſome Parents had not been conſtrained to give their Children Learning, many would, to this Day, have remained in their former Stupidity. This Benefit has, however, ariſen from the firſt Foundation laid down by Czar *Peter*; That there is, at preſent, a Regulation to erect a College in every Government, and to maintain the ſame out of the Revenues belonging to the ſeveral Monaſteries; For, when an old Monk dies, it is ſo ordered, that no other is to come in his Room.

CIII. (7.) Tho' the Transferring of the Trade from *Archangel* to *Peterſburg* had, indeed, done Hurt to ſome Provinces; Yet, on the other Hand, in ſome other Reſpects, it had been very advantageous to the whole *Empire*.

CIV. (8.) The Changing of the *Imperial* Reſidence had, indeed, been occaſion'd by the *Czar*'s great Propenſity to Navigation, which Satisfaction he could not have in *Muſcow*; And he was often heard to ſay; That if the City of *Muſcow* was ſituated on the Sea, or near a River that had Communication with the Sea, he would refuſe the beſt Reſidence in the World for it; As well on Account of its agreeable Situation, fertile Soil, wholſome Air, and being placed in the very Center of *Ruſſia*. That the Building of the new Reſidence had been ſo very chargeable, and coſt ſo many Mens Lives, was not the Czar's Fault; But that of thoſe who had the Inſpection over the Works, and had taken no better Care. The *Czar* had given the beſt Orders imaginable for every Thing; But as he was ſeldom preſent, he could not have a Knowledge of every Thing that had happen'd; But when he was informed how Things went, he ſeverely puniſh'd thoſe, who had enrich'd themſelves by it, and gave the Inſpection to Perſons more worthy of it.

CV. (9.) And tho' it was ſaid, that the long Wars were continued, more for the *Czar*'s Glory, than for the Advantage of the *Empire*; And that as well from thence, as from the numerous new Buildings, the *Ruſſian Empire* had received more Hurt than Good, both in its Revenues, and the Number of Inhabitants; Yet

the conquer'd Provinces would, in Time, make amends for all; And the *Empire* had obtain'd ſuch Barriers by the War, that, if it remain'd in the Condition in which the late *Czar* left it, *Ruſſia* would have no Reaſon to fear her Neighbours, nor to complain of the Reign of *Peter* I. A War was at firſt neceſſary, to recover the Provinces which were formerly loſt: And when it was once begun, it was not in the *Czar*'s Power to make an End of it, without the Conſent of *Sweden*, and therefore he had been oblig'd to continue it againſt his Will (61), till a Pacification enſu'd.

CVI. (10.) THE true Grounds and Reaſons of ſo many Rebellions were (the *Czar* being but Ten Years of Age when he came to the Crown, and, with Reſpect to the *Empire*, incapable of doing Good or Harm) the Diſharmony between his Mother and her Adherents, and the Princeſs *Sophia* and her Party, by which of Conſequence the *Czar* became odious to the Princeſs, and ſhe being ambitious and artful, had uſed all the Ways and Means poſſible, to render his Name odious to the People; Inſomuch that no Body could believe any Good of him; Which was afterwards the Occaſion, that all his Endeavours for the Good of the *Empire* were put a wrong Conſtruction on, and thence ſo many Factions enſued.

CVII. (11.) CONCERNING the Order of Succeſſion, *Ruſſia* had no Reaſon to complain of it; Becauſe it reſtrain'd the Princes from relying alone upon their Birthright, and encourag'd them to make themſelves the more qualify'd for Governing. And much leſs was a Revolution to be feared here than in Elective Kingdoms, where it frequently happen'd, that by the different Views of various People, at an Election, the moſt pernicious Effects have been cauſed to a Country. An Inſtance of this Difference has been ſeen by the late *Czarina*, who, to the Admiration of the whole World, mounted the Throne without any Trouble, and rul'd in ſuch Manner, that *Ruſſia* can never deſire a better Government; Since her conſtant Endeavours were for the Welfare of the *Empire*, and to ſhew herſelf gracious to her Subjects; And if any one ſhould object: That it was a Thing unheard of, for a Woman

(61) Many Counter-Remarks might be made to theſe Obſervations; But I leave that to others. This Point might have been inſerted in the foregoing fifth Article, but I refer the Reader to *das Verænderte Ruſſland* (*p.* 340.) where he will find a ſhort Diſcuſſion of the former Differences between *Sweden* and *Ruſſia*.

Woman to be entruſted with an *Empire*, of ſo abſolute a Form of Government; Let him but look 700 Years back, into the Hiſtory of this *Empire*; And he will find, that the *Czarina Olgha* reign'd many Years, very happily, laid the Foundation of the *Chriſtian* Religion in *Ruſſia*, and procured great Advantages for the *Empire*. Thus far theſe Remarks.

CVIII. THIS is what Information concerning the Life and Reign of *Peter* the Firſt, of bleſſed Memory, I have had an Opportunity to procure, and have thought neceſſary to add to the Accounts we already have of the Life and Actions of this Monarch. And here I cannot help adding a farther Account of what has been mentioned, in the Introduction, (*Sect.* II. §. IX.) with Relation to the Dread of Water He had conceived in his Infancy, the Circumſtances whereof are the following.

CIX. WHEN He was about five Years of Age, His Mother went with Him in a Coach, in the Spring-Seaſon, and paſſing over a Damm, where there was a Waterfall, or Cataract, which made a great Noiſe, and He lying in His Mother's Lap aſleep, He was ſo frighten'd by the Ruſhing of the Water, that it brought a Fever upon Him: And though He ſoon recovered this; Yet He retained ſuch a Dread of Water, that He could never bear to ſee any ſtanding, much leſs to hear any running Water, without the greateſt Uneaſineſs. This continuing, 'till He was fourteen Years of Age, was a great Grief to His Mother, as well as His Brother *Iwan*, who fear'd it would be a great Prejudice to Him, when, ſoon or late, He ſhould come to the Crown. But Prince *Boris Gallizin*, who was his chief Governour, invented this happy Cure: He perſuaded the Prince, it being fine Weather, to go with him into the Country, to partake of a Hunting-Match, which he had appointed there; But the young *Czar* did not know that there was a Brook near the Place. After a little Diverſion in Hunting, *Gallizin* ſaid; It is very hot Weather, I wiſh there was a Brook in the Neighbourhood, I would go in and bath. The young *Czar* replied: What! will you kill your ſelf? The Prince anſwer'd: I have frequently bathed with your late Father, and nevertheleſs I am alive ſtill: Adding, that it was very wholeſome to bath in hot Weather. The young *Czar* was ſurprized, and ſaid, He had

heard that People were frequently drown'd. The Prince anſwer'd: How can a Man be drown'd, when the Water is not deeper than his Knees? If it pleaſes your Majeſty, I will ſend ſome Body to find out a Brook, and you ſhall ſee that it is poſſible to bath, without Drowning. Accordingly he ſent a Gentleman of the Bed-Chamber, who being return'd, ſaid, that not far from thence, there was a Brook. The *Czar* went thither, but approached with Fear and Trembling, and ſtopp'd His Horſe at a good Diſtance from the Brook. Prince *Gallizin* ſent ſome Men thither, and ordered them to croſs the Water on Horſeback, forwards and backwards, and then to return, to ſhew themſelves, that they were alive. After this the *Czar* ventured to ride nearer. Then Prince *Gallizin*, with his Horſe, croſs'd the Water himſelf, and ordered ſome of his People to alight from their Horſes, and go barefooted through the Water, which the *Czar* admired at, and, at laſt, had the Courage to go through it Himſelf, with His Horſe, to the great Admiration of thoſe who were preſent.

CX. AFTER this Cure, He return'd to His Palace, well pleas'd, and told it to His Mother, and His Brother *Iwan*, who hardly could believe it, ſo great was their Joy.

CXI. SOME Days after, *Czar Iwan* went, with His Brother *Peter*, to a Summer-Palace, call'd *Izmælowa*, where there are a great many Fiſh-ponds; And after they had diverted themſelves in the Garden, He ordered ſome of His Servants to bath in a Pond, and They would look on. But *Czar Peter* forbid it; However, *Czar Iwan* perſuaded Him, at Length, to conſent. The young Men being very merry and frolickſome, in the Water, it pleaſed *Czar Peter* ſo well, that He had a Mind to try it Himſelf, to which *Czar Iwan* encouraged Him, and by that Means He got rid, at once, of all the Fear of Water, with which He had before been poſſeſs'd.

CXII. THIS Alteration, and the great Pleaſure this Monarch afterwards took in Navigation, is to be admired; I cannot, therefore, forbear mentioning, in this Place, what gave the firſt Occaſion to that, which afterwards enſued.

CXIII. AFTER

CXIII. AFTER the *Czar* was thus freed from His Fear of Water, He went often to the aforeſaid Palace of *Izmælowa*, and bathed there, in Summer-Time.

CXIV. WALKING once, in the Court, He went into a Stable, where he found an old Boat, almoſt fallen to Pieces, which a *Dutchman* had built, in His Grandfather's Time, at *Muſcow*, to uſe in the Ponds, at which the *Czar* was ſurprized; Becauſe it was built in a different Manner from thoſe that are uſed on the Lakes and Rivers in *Ruſſia:* It was long before He could get a true Information concerning this old Boat, 'till, at Length, an ancient Man related, that a Foreigner had built it, that there had been Sails upon it, and that it would advance upon the Water, either before, or againſt the Wind. The *Czar* wondring at this, ordered Monſieur *le Fort* to look out for a Man who could repair it, and bring it into Order again. After long Search, a *Dutchman* was found, who had been a Sail-maker, and who brought the Boat into ſo good Order, that the *Czar* made the firſt Tryal with it upon the Water. But this Boat gave Occaſion for the *Czar* to order Monſieur *la Fort* to write to *Holland*, for ſome Ship-Carpenters. Theſe being arrived, and finding no Lake near *Muſcow* fit for Sailing, the Lake near the City of *Pereſlawle* was choſen for that Purpoſe, being about One Hundred and Twenty Werſts, or Eighteen *German* Miles from *Muſcow*. This Lake being of a good Depth, and about a League long, and a Quarter broad, they there built two ſmall Frigats, with which the *Czar* diverted himſelf, two Summers ſucceſſively. But theſe People talking continually of the Difference between this Manner of Sailing, and that which was perform'd with large Ships, in great Seas; The *Czar* took a Journey to *Archangel*, where he found above Three Hundred Foreign Merchant Ships, and ſome large *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Convoys. And He taking a great Delight in them, the Commanders of the Foreign Convoys allow'd the *Czar*, for His Pleaſure and Exerciſe, to go ſundry Times into Sea with them. This gave Occaſion to His Mother and Brother to complain, that He now ventured Himſelf too much upon the Water, But after the *Czar* had conquer'd *Azow*, He began immediately to build great Ships. near the City *Woronetſch*, and, in a ſhort Time, brought a pretty large

Fleet into the *Palus Mæotis*; And for this Reaſon, he afterwards made the Harbour at *Taganrock*.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Difference between the Titles CZAR *and* GRAND PRINCE, *and of the* RUSSIAN *Seal.*

SUMMARY.

§. I. *to* III. *HOW the Titles* Czar *and* Grand Prince *are promiſcuouſly uſed by ſome Writers, and wherein the Difference conſiſts.* IV. *What the Signification is of the Word* Zaar, Czar, *or* Tzar. V. *When it was introduced into* Ruſſia. VI. *How it came to be converted into* Emperour. VII. *An Account of a new erected Convent, in the Form of an* Eagle.

I. SINCE ſeveral Authors make no Diſtinction between the Titles *Czar* and *Grand Prince*, but take them both to be one and the ſame; Stiling the *Ruſſian* Monarch *Czar*, or *Grand Prince*, I find it neceſſary, in this Place, to take ſome Notice of this Error,

II. IT ought to be *Czar* and *Grand Prince*, or *Czar* only; For the two Titles are full as different, as *Roman Emperour* and *Arch-Duke* of *Auſtria*; Or, as King of *Poland* and *Grand Prince* of *Lithuania*; Or, King of *Sweden* and *Grand Prince* of *Finnland*; Or, finally, King of *Pruſſia*, and *Elector* of *Brandenburg*.

III. BUT in what the Difference of theſe Titles properly conſiſts, and when they came firſt in Uſe, will be ſeen by what follows.

IV. THE Title *Czar*, in the *Sclavonian* Tongue, ſignifies *King*; And alſo, ſometimes, *Emperour*; Becauſe, in all *Sclavonian* Books, as well ſacred as profane, all Kings are call'd *Czar*; As in the *Scla-*

Sclavonian Bible, which was tranſlated from the *Greek* about 700 Years ago, long before the *Ruſſian Grand Princes* took the Title of *Czar*, the Kings, *Pharao*, *Saul*, *David*, *Solomon*, and *Alexander the Great*, are called *Czars*; And, in this Language, there is no Difference between the Title of *Emperour* and *King*; For when, in the Bible, *Matth.* xxii. it is written: *Give unto* CÆSAR *the Things that are* CÆSAR's, *and unto* GOD *the Things that are* GOD's; in the *Sclavonian* it is, *Daſch'd Zariu Zariewo a Bogu Boſchie.* But when, in the ſame Chapter, the Queſtion is: Whoſe is this Image? And the Anſwer is, *Cæſar's*; then, in the *Sclavonian*, it is ſaid *Cæſar.* Likewiſe, in another Place, we find *W'zarſtwo, Auguſta Cæſarea*, or in the Reign of *Cæſar Auguſtus:* Whereby we may ſee, that, in the *Sclavonian* Tongue the Name *Cæſar* is taken for a Proper or Family Name.

V. THIS Title *Czar* was firſt aſſumed, by *Iwan Waſielewitz*, ſurnam'd *the Great*, Grand-Father of *Iwan Baſilowitz* the *Tyrant*, after he had conquer'd the City of *Caſan*, was crown'd there, with the Crown of *Caſan*, and had alſo ſeiz'd upon all the Principalities that were Appennages: For notwithſtanding the *Ruſſian* Princes often chang'd their Reſidence, they formerly ſtyled themſelves only *Grand Princes* of *Ruſſia.* This *Iwan Waſielewitz* ſoon after dying, his Son *Baſilius*, by Means of Civil Diſſentions, loſt the Kingdom of *Caſan*, together with the Title of *Czar*, and ſuffer'd, beſides, very much by the *Tartars*; But his Son *Iwan Baſilowitz* the *Second*, ſurnam'd *Groſnoy*, i. e. *Tyrant*, recover'd all, conquer'd the two Kingdoms of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, and reſumed the Title of his Grand-Father; Styling himſelf *Czar* of *Caſan*, *Aſtracan*, and *Siberia*, *Grand Prince* of *Muſcow*, *Wolodimir*, and *Novogrod*, *Lord* of *Pleſcaw*, *&c.* Likewiſe *Powelitel* and *Samoderſchetz* of all the *Ruſſians*; The former ſignifies as much as *Imperator*, *Commander*; And the latter, *Self-Preſerver*, or *Sovereign*; and theſe Titles have been allow'd him and his Succeſſors by moſt Potentates; And by that it remain'd, till in the Year 1721, when *Czar Peter* made Peace with *Sweden*, the Senate, Synod, and Generals, deſired the *Czar*, in the Name of the *States* of *Ruſſia*, to ſtyle himſelf the *Great*, and *Father of his Country*, for an eternal Remembrance of his *Great Actions.*

VI. BUT

VI. But one of the Clergy, *viz.* the Archbiſhop of *Novogrod*, who thought himſelf wiſer than his Brethren, and in Order to beſpeak his Prince's Favour, perſuaded the *Czar* he might change the *Ruſſian* Title *Powelitel*, into *Latin*, and call himſelf *Imperator*, which, tho' other Potentates had formerly allow'd him to uſe ths Title in the *Ruſſian* Language, yet it being turn'd into *Latin*, cauſed many Diſputes in *Europe*; For, notwithſtanding, in Reality, it is all one, whether he be called, in the *Ruſſian* Language, *Powelitel*; in *Engliſh*, *Commander*; or in *Latin*, *Imperator*; the Explication of the Title *Powelitel* has occaſion'd great Difficulties, and will remain in Diſpute, perhaps, as long as the World ſtands, eſpecially on Account of the Ceremonial and Rank. As for the *Ruſſian* Seal, their Princes, in former Times, after they had embrac'd the *Chriſtian* Religion, had three Circles, within a Triangle; In the firſt of which was written: *Our* God, *the* Trinity, *who was before all Time*; *Not three* Gods, *but* One, *in Eſſence.* In the ſecond were written the Titles of Honour of the Prince, to whom the Letters were directed; And, in the third, was the *Czar*'s Title. But, in Time, this came out of Uſe, and inſtead thereof was choſen a Man, on a white Horſe, in a Red Field, which was the Coat of Arms of the Princes who reſided at *Muſcow*; For this being ſituated in the Principality of *Wolodimir*, and by Marriage devolving to the *Grand Prince*, *Andrey*; And the City *Wolodimir* being deſtroy'd by the *Tartars*, the *Grand Princes* choſe the City of *Muſcow* for their Reſidence, and the Arms of *Muſcow* for theirs; The *Dragon*, with which the Man on Horſeback is combating, was added by *Czar Demetrius*, after he had totally defeated the *Tartars*, in the *Rulicowian* Field. As for the two-headed *Eagle*, on the Breaſt of which the Man on Horſeback is placed, it is not repreſented like the *Roman Spread-Eagle*, with Wings extended upwards, but hanging down. *Iwan Baſilowitz* was the firſt, who, in the Year 1540, added it to his Coat of Arms, pretending that the three *Ruſſian* Princes, *Rurick*, *Sinaus*, and *Truvor*, were deſcended from the Poſterity of the *Emperour Auguſtus.*

VII. Czar *Peter* I. of Glorious Memory, built a very fine Convent, call'd *Alexander Monaſtyr*, in the Form of an *Eagle*, five Werſts from *Peterſburg*, on the River *Newa*, in which are

200 Apartments. In the Middle, is a very large Church, built according to the ſtricteſt Rules of Architecture, which repreſents the Body of the *Eagle*, the two Spires are the two Necks and Heads, and the Tops, or Crowns, the *Imperial* Crown. On the Sides are two ſmaller Churches, or Chapels, which repreſent the two Wings.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Religions in Ruſſia.

SUMMARY.

§. I, II. *Reaſons why Authors have not, hitherto, treated fundamentally of the Religions of* Ruſſia. III. *The Account which can now be given of them; According to which, they may be diſtinguiſhed into three principal Claſſes.* IV. *The firſt Claſs is that of the* Chriſtian *Religion; Of which, the* Greek *Church is the Chief, or National Church. How that was firſt brought into* Ruſſia. V. *It is probable, that before the* Ruſſians *were converted, from* Paganiſm, *to the* Chriſtian *Faith, the Foundation of the* Chriſtian *Religion was laid in* Ruſſia, *by ſome other Nations, inhabiting thoſe Regions.* VI. *Which was propagated by the* Grand Princeſs, Olgha, *and Her Succeſſors.* VII, *to* IX. *Of the firſt* Metropolitans *and* Biſhops *of* Ruſſia. X. *The certain Time, from whence it may be ſaid, that the Doctrine of the* Greek *Church has been continued in* Ruſſia, *in one Succeſſion, down to the preſent Time.* XI, XII. *From this Church is ſprung a Diſſenting Sect, call'd the* Greek-Ruſſian. XIII, *to* XVI. *An Account of this Sect.* XVII. *They are accus'd of many Impieties.* XVIII. *Endeavours to convert them by Force.* XIX. *What* Czar Peter *did, in Point of Religion.* XX. *Of the other* Chriſtian *Churches, in* Ruſſia, *and particularly the* Lutheran. XXI. *The* Reformed *or* Calviniſt. XXII, XXIII. *And the* Arminian. XXIV, XXV, *The ſecond principal Claſs of the Religions of* Ruſſia, *or the* Mahometan. XXVI. *The*

XXVI. *The third principal Claſs, or the* Pagan. XXVII, XXVIII. *A general Account of it, as far as regards* Ruſſia. XXIX. *The natural Piety of the* Siberian Pagans. XXX, *to* XXXIII. *The Author's Teſtimony of it.*

I. AUTHORS who have treated of this Matter, have either handled it imperfectly, for Want of due Information, or elſe have ſtuff'd their Accounts with ill-grounded Additions.

II. ALL Religions (except the *Jewiſh*) being tolerated in *Ruſſia*, and there being, likewiſe, ſeveral Schiſms in the National Church, Authors have often confounded one with the other.

III. NO Doubt but it is very difficult for a Foreigner, who has not a perfect Knowledge of the *Sclavonian* and *Ruſſian* Languages, nor has read all Sorts of Books in thoſe Languages, to give a ſufficient and fundamental Account of this Matter. However, in general, this may be ſaid; It holds good in *Ruſſia*, as well as in all other Countries in the World, that there are naturally good and bad People, of all Religions; And in every Nation, he who fears GOD and does *Juſtice* is acceptable to his Maker; But as to the ſeveral Religions, in this Country, they may be divided into three Claſſes; 1. The *Chriſtian*. 2. The *Mahometan*. And, 3. The *Pagan*, Religion.

IV. CONCERNING the firſt, every one knows, that the *Greek* Church is in this Country, the Chief or National Church; Of which the *Grand Princeſs Olgha* laid the Foundation in *Ruſſia*, in the Tenth Century, according to the *Ruſſian* Computation, in the Year 6463, and the Year of our LORD CHRIST 955, or, as ſome will have it, 941. When ſhe was baptized by the Patriarch *Photius*, at *Conſtantinople*, and was named *Helena*, in the Reign of *Johannes Zimeſſes*, who would have married her, but ſhe gave him a civil Denial. This Princeſs lived 14 Years after ſhe was baptized, and died in the 80th Year of her Age. The *Ruſſians* celebrate her Memory annually on the 11th of *July*.

V. BUT this *Olgha*, after the Death of her Huſband *Igor* (who was killed by the *Drewenſes* (62) to whom he went to demand

(62) Theſe People are call'd, in the *Ruſſian* Hiſtory, *Drewliani*, and alſo *Petzenegi*; Whence they have this latter Name, the following Obſervation may probably ſhew; But the

mand Tribute, which happened according to the *Ruſſian* Annals, in the Year 6423 or 952) coming then from *Novogrod* to *Kiow*, and not being baptized until three Years afterwards, as has been already ſaid, it is not to be doubted, but that the *Chriſtian* Religion was received, by ſome, though, perhaps, not fully eſtabliſh'd by all the *South Sclavonians*, the *Ruſſians*, or the *Kiowians*, before that Time; For, according to the Chronicle written by the Metropolitan *Macarius*, in the Time of *Iwan Baſilewitz*, the *Bolgares*, who are alſo call'd *Coſari* (63), living on the Rivers *Dnieper* and *Danube*, and having one and the ſame Language with the *Northern Sclavonians*, or *Ruſſians*, were converted before, (64) by *Methodius* and *Conſtantinus* (afterwards called *Cyrillus*) Sons of *Leo*, the *Theſſalonian*.

the former, according to that Hiſtory, is derived from the Word *Drew*, or *Derew*, which ſignifies a Wood or Foreſt; Becauſe theſe *Drewenſes*, as it is ſaid, dwelt formerly, near, and in great Woods, *viz.* on the Rivers *Deſna* and *Semm*, in the *Ukraine*. Now theſe People bearing alſo the Name of *Petzeneſi*, it may not be amiſs to enquire, whether the People call'd *Peucini*, of whom *Pliny*, (*Lib.* 4. *Cap.* 12.) and *Strabo* (*Lib.* 7.) ſpeak, and who, in the Time of *M. Aurel. Antonin. Philoſoph.* were Allies of the *Marcomanni*, (See *Maſcou's Geſchichte der Teutſchen. Lib. V. p.* 146. *Nota* 13.) are not perhaps the ſame. For as *Cromerus*, and others ſay, the *Baſtarnæ a picearum ſylvarum multitudine* had alſo the Name of *Peucini* given them.

(63) The Signification of the Word *Coſar* and *Chorſar*, and that the Name *Cozar* and *Khozar* is the ſame, has been ſhewn above, Chap. IV. §. IX. Note 34. *Joſephus Jorionides*, (who, however, is not an Author of the beſt Credit,) ſays: That, of the Poſterity of *Thogarma*, 10 Families were deſcended, who lived near the River *Wolga*, among whom were the *Cozares*. And *Herbelot* (in his *Dict. Orient.*) as alſo *Andrew Mull.* (in *Comment. Alph. p.* 42.) relate, from the Hiſtory of *Abdalia Bæidavienſis*, that *Japhet* had 7 Sons, and that the Name of the firſt was *Kozar*, from whom the *Cozari*, who, in Hiſtory, are alſo called *Karari*, had that Name, and are ſuppoſed to have been one Nation with the *Bolgares*, on the *Wolga*; Of this *Kozar*, as *Bochartus* ſays, (in his *Phaleg.*) the *Caſpian* Sea had the Name of *Mare Choſar*. But many Authors will not allow ſuch Derivations of the Names of Nations, as this here mentioned of *Kozar* is, *e. g.* when it is ſaid, that *Hercules* had a Son named *Scytha*, of whom the *Scythian* Name is deriv'd, *&c.* Therefore, it is more credible, not only that this Name is derived from Sea-Rovers, as has been hinted, in the Note above-cited, but that alſo the Iſland of *Corſica* had its Name from ſuch like People. Compare with this what is alledged, concerning this Matter, in the *Bibliotheca Suecica*, in the firſt Piece, *p.* 55. *Note* 9.

(64) In the above mentioned Hiſtory of *Macarius*, it is ſaid, that when the *Bolgares* were engaged in War with Emperour *Michael*, and the Siſter of the *Bolgarian* Prince, *Boris* (whom ſome call alſo *Bogoris*) was taken Priſoner and brought to *Conſtantinople*, ſhe embraced the *Chriſtian* Religion there; And after ſhe was exchanged for a *Conſtantinopolitan* Lady, who had been taken Priſoner by the *Bolgares*; ſhe perſuaded her Brother to embrace the *Chriſtian* Religion alſo. Upon which, he ſent Ambaſſadors to the *Emperour*, deſiring him to ſend him ſome Learned and Godly Men, to inſtruct him, and his People, in that Religion. This *Macarius* mentions, likewiſe, that long before *Wolodimir*'s Time, when

VI. And tho' *Swetoſlaw*, Son of *Olgha*, who, after many great Actions, at Length was killed treacherouſly, by the *Peucingian* Prince, (65), who made a drinking Veſſel of his Skull, (66) would not embrace the *Chriſtian* Religion; yet *Wolodimir*, the third, Son of this *Swetoſlaw*, after he had conquered his Brother *Jaropolck*, with the Help of the *Waragi* (67), killed him, and aſſumed the Government, did introduce the *Greek* Religion, at the End of the tenth Century, in the Reign of the Emperours *Baſilius* and *Conſtantine*, whoſe Siſter, the Princeſs *Ann*, he married, and was baptized, in the Year 987, or as ſome ſay 989, and named *Baſilius*, by *Anaſtaſius*, Biſhop of *Corſun*, who when he catechis'd him, among other Inſtructions, adviſed him to keep only to the ſeven oecumenical Councils, *viz.* to thoſe which were held, (1.) At *Nice*,

when *Rurich*'s two Generals, named *Aſchold* and *Idir*, or *Dirr*, had miſcarried before *Conſtantinople*, it was ſtipulated in the Treaty of Peace, that they ſhould embrace the *Chriſtian* Religion; After which they had ſeveral Learned Men ſent them, from *Conſtantinople*, in Order to inſtruct them, which happen'd long before *Olgha*'s and *Wolodimir*'s Time, and doubtleſs in the Time of the above-mentioned *Cyrillus*.

(65) In the *Ruſſian* Hiſtory, inſtead of *Peucingians*, we find *Petchenegians*, and, in another Place, it obſerves, that the Prince of the *Hunns* had beheaded *Swetoſlaw*, in *Petſchenka Curia*; Here is to be obſerved, that by the Word *Curia*, or *Caura*, the *Kalmucks* and other *Tartars*, denote a Fortreſs or Caſtle, (*vid. l'Hiſtoire de Timur Beck, Tom. II. p.* 222. *Note b.*) which is conformable to the *Latin* Word, *Curia*; It is alſo to be farther obſerved, that becauſe the *Ruſſian* Hiſtory mentions, that the *Petſchenegians*, who alſo are called *Drewenſians*, as has been ſaid above, were *Hunns*, and, in the *Ruſſian* Language, *Petſch*, or *Pietſch*, ſignifies the ſame as in the *German*, *Hund*, (a Dog); by which Name the *Germans* call'd the *Hunns*, in Scorn; The Name *Petſchenegians* is but an Interpretation of the former, and one and the ſame with the Word *Hund*; And if the Name of the *Patzinnacitæ* and *Peucini* are likewiſe the ſame with this, as it is reaſonable to ſuppoſe, they then originally dwelt on the River *Wolga*; For *Conſtantinus Porphirogenetha*, (in the 34th Chapter) ſpeaks thus: *Pazinnacitæ a principio ad Atell, & Geeh Flumina habitabant, &c.* And it is known that the *Atell*, is the River *Wolga*, and *Geeh* the River *Geyk*, both which run parallel to one another into the *Caſpian* Sea; And it is obſervable, that there were two Nations of the *Pazinnacitæ*; *vid. Conſt. Porphir. de Adminiſtor. Imp.* (*Cap. V. & VI*) and *Dict. Car. Steph.* (*p.* 426. & 1799.) ſome of whom did live at the Mouth of the *Danube*, and ſome near the *Cherſoneſus*, which latter are the *Ruſſian Petſchenegians*. I have farther remark'd, that, among the Eight Tribes of the *Pazinnacitæ*, which this Author ſpeaks of, in that Chapter, there are Names, which agree with the Names of ſome Places, near the *Karakalpackian Horda*, on the *Eaſt* Side of the River *Geyk*, as *Talmuſata*, *Curcutata*, &c. (*See my Map.*)

(66) What is mentioned of the Skull of *Swetoſlaw* was alſo cuſtomary among the Anceſtors of the *Mungals* and *Kalmucks* (*vid. l'Hiſtoire des Tartars, p.* 192.) and it is credible, that the *Drewenſians* and *Petſchenegians* were of *Hunnian* Extraction. At Length *Conſtantinus Monomachus* converted them to the Chriſtian Religion.

(67) Of the *Waragi* I have already ſaid (*Chap. IV. §. IX. Note* 33.) that they dwelt on the *Baltick*. *Anna Comena*, in the *Hiſtoria Byzantina*, and in the Life of Emperour *Alexius* (*Lib.* 7. *Cap.* 1.) makes mention of a Nation named *Warangi*, which was a Surname given to the *Engliſh* and *Normans* who ſerved in *Conſtantinople*.

Nice, againſt *Arius*; (2.) At *Conſtantinople*, againſt *Macedonius*; (3.) At *Epheſus*, againſt *Neſtorius*; (4.) At *Chalcedon*, againſt *Eutyches* and *Dioſcorus*; (5.) Another at *Conſtantinople*, againſt *Origin* and *Evagrius*; (6.) A third, at *Conſtantinople*, againſt *Sergius* and *Perus*; And, (7.) the ſecond at *Nice*, againſt thoſe who would not adore the Images of the Saints.

VII. AFTER this, it is ſaid, *Wolodimir*, or *Baſilius*, accepted of *Michael Syra*, or *Cyrus*, (who was ſent to him by the above-mentioned Patriarch, *Photius*, as the firſt Metropolitan of all *Ruſſia*) who, a ſhort Time after, baptized *Wolodimir*'s twelve Sons, and Twenty Thouſand *Ruſſians*, in one Day. This ſome aſcribe to *Cyrillus*; but he, as I have mentioned above, lived long before that Time, and came from *Cherſoneſus* to *Kiow*, in the Time of *Rurich* the Firſt, and the Reigns of Empreſs *Theodora*, and her Son, Emperour *Michael* III. Beſides, it is not improbable, that the *Ruſſian* Tranſlators have miſtaken the Name *Cyrus* for *Cyrillus*.

VIII. AFTER *Wolodimir* had cauſed his twelve Sons, and a great Number of His Subjects to be baptized, He built Churches and Schools, and went, with the aforeſaid *Michael Cyrus*, to the *Crevytzi*, about *Novogrod*, and from thence to *Roſtow*, where he likewiſe converted the Inhabitants to the *Chriſtian* Religion; And, after the Death of *Michael Cyrus*, one named *Leontius*, was regularly ordained Metropolitan of *Kiow*, *Joachim Korſſunaim*, Archbiſhop of *Novogrod*, and *Fædor Grezin* Archbiſhop of *Roſtow*, by *Nicolaus*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*.

IX. WOLODIMIR ſent alſo a learned *Macedonian*, named *Marcus*, to the *Bolgares*, who were *Mahometans*, *Saracens*, *Tartars*, and *Beſſermenes*, in Order to convert them to the *Chriſtian* Religion, but only three or four of the Princes came to *Wolodimir*, and were baptized.

X. FROM this Time, *Ruſſia* has remained conſtant in the *Chriſtian Greek* Religion; Wherefore *Wolodimir* or *Baſilius* is reckoned among the Saints, and the *Ruſſians*, in Honour to his Memory, have ordered the 15th Day of *July* to be celebrated.

XI. BUT, afterwards, a certain Sect ſeparated from the *Ruſſians*, who call themſelves *Staroweiſci* (or *Old Believers*,) But the *Ruſſians* call them *Roſcoloziki*, (or *Hereticks.*)

XII. THEIR total Separation did not happen 'till the ſixteenth Century, in the Time of the Patriarch *Nicon*; Though they diſſented long before. Concerning this Sect, *Demetrius*, Abbot of *Roſtow*, has wrote a Book, entitled, *Roſiſcko Roſcolnitſcheſkoi Brinſki wierie o utſchenniich o dialachich* (*i. e.* Examination of the Belief, Doctrine and Works of the *Briſkienſian Roſcolnicks.*)

XII. VERY few, of this Sect, can write, or read; But moſt of them are ſimple, ignorant People, Citizens or Peaſants, who have no Churches, but aſſemble in private Houſes.

XIV. THE Difference, in Point of Faith, between theſe and the other *Ruſſians*, conſiſts, (1.) In that the former believe it a great Sin to ſay thrice *Halleluja*, which they repeat but twice; (2.) That not five, but ſeven Loaves, ought to be brought into the Church for the Uſe of the Maſs. (3.) The Croſs, which is impreſs'd upon the Maſs-Loaves, or *Proſphora*, muſt not be four, but eight corner'd, becauſe, as they ſay, there was ſuch a croſs Piece of Timber, of eight Corners, placed under the Feet of our Saviour. (4.) In ſigning with the Croſs at Prayers, the three firſt Fingers muſt not be uſed, as the *Ruſſians* do, but the End of the Ring-Finger is to be join'd to the End of the Thumb, and the firſt and middle Finger held ſtreight; The Signification of which, according to their Opinion, is: That the firſt three repreſent the HOLY TRINITY, and the other two CHRIST, in both Natures, as GOD and Man. (5.) New Books printed ſince the Time of the Patriarch *Nicon*, though no Doctrine have been altered therein, and only ſome dark Words are explained, are to be rejected, and the old ones retain'd, and *Nicon* be accounted an Anti-Chriſt. (6.) They account other *Ruſſian* Prieſts unworthy of Adminiſtring the Sacraments of Baptiſm and the Lord's-Supper, becauſe they drink Brandy. (7.) They hold Civil Government to be no *Chriſtian* Inſtitution, but would have all live as Brethren. (8.) They allow, that a Man may kill himſelf for CHRIST's Sake, and that therein conſiſts a higher Degree of Spiritual Happineſs. Now, though none of theſe Articles are eſſentially Theological, yet they believe them to be abſolutely

ſolutely neceſſary to Salvation; Therefore, when they are perſecuted for their Religion, they frequently aſſemble together, by Families, and often Four or Five Hundred Perſons, in their Houſes and Barns, ſet them on Fire, and ſo burn themſelves alive (68). They, alſo, reckon all other *Ruſſians*, and Nations, unclean, or *Pagans*, and do not care to converſe with them, much leſs will they eat and drink with them, out of the ſame Veſſels; and if any one, not of their own Sect, has been in their Houſes, they waſh the Place where he has ſate; Nay, ſometimes they ſweep up the Duſt in the Room, and throw it after him, into the Street.

XV. THESE and other Articles beſides, they pretend to defend by their Ancient Books, written and printed, eſpecially by a Book pretended to be of *Cyrillus Hieroſolymitanus*, in which all their Tenets are explain'd; But it is very difficult to believe this Book genuine; Becauſe the Author writes, among other ſuſpicious Paſſages, many abſurd Stories concerning *Luther* and *Calvin*, and in ſome Places ſays, *We here in Ruſſia*; But the true *Cyrillus* liv'd ſome Hundred Years before *Luther*, and conſequently could not mention him. Wherefore it is reaſonable to think this Book ſpurious, and rather to believe, as ſome will have it, that it was writ by a *Ruſſian* Monk, in the 15th Century.

XVI. BUT theſe *Roſkolſchiks* even differ among themſelves, and are divided into ſeveral Parties; For ſome will allow no Prieſts, the Sacraments and other Church-Offices are adminiſter'd by the Laity, as well Women as Men, and they account Celibacy a neceſſary Article of Chriſtianity; Others have their Miniſters, and marry: In general, they are, to all Appearance, a pious, moral, and quiet People, who will not curſe, ſwear, or hold any vain Converſation. They account Drinking to Exceſs a great Sin; They ſeem to be juſt in their Dealings, do not over-rate nor haggle, and they admit no Perſon into their Aſſembly who drinks either Beer or Brandy.

XVII. THE other *Ruſſians* charge them with abominable Vices, *viz.* 1. That in their Aſſemblies, after putting out the Fire and Lights,

(68) The like happen'd in *Siberia*, in the Year 1722, in two Places, firſt near the City of *Tara*, on the River *Irtiſch*, and afterwards at a ſmall Place on the River *Iſett*, where ſome Hundreds of People were burnt.

Light, they commit Fornication in common. 2. That when thro' ſuch Carnal Copulation a Maiden proves with Child, and brings forth a Girl, they let it live; But if a Boy, they kill it, ſave the Blood, dry it, beat it to Powder, and make Bread of it, which they uſe in their Sacraments; With other Enormities.

XVIII. When this Sect firſt aroſe, the *Ruſſian* Patriarchs endeavour'd to deſtroy it by Force, and many Thouſands were burnt, and otherwiſe put to Death; But this prov'd a great Detriment to the *Empire*. Afterwards Czar *Peter* I. commanded, that, if they did not ſpread their Doctrine among the *Ruſſians*, they ſhould remain unmoleſted, and the Biſhops and Prieſts ſhould endeavour to convert them by pious Exhortations, and their own good Examples. In the mean Time, theſe *Roſkolſchiks* pay double Taxes.

XIX. It being well known, wherein the Tenets of the *Greek* Church differ from thoſe of the *Roman-Catholicks*, and other Denominations of *Chriſtians*, it is unneceſſary to make any Mention thereof here; I ſhall, therefore, only obſerve; That as Czar *Peter* I. took great Care in Temporal Affairs, to reform many Things in *Ruſſia*, and put them upon a better Footing; So likewiſe, he endeavour'd to clear Religion from many ſuperſtitious Ceremonies, and uſeleſs Cuſtoms, which, by Degrees, were crept in; In which the Biſhop of *Pleſkow*, *Theophanes Procopowitſch*, was a faithful Aſſiſtant, by writing and tranſlating many fine Treatiſes; As, 1. A Catechiſm. 2. An Illuſtration of our Saviour's Sermon on the Mount, *Matth.* v. 3. Of Baptiſm, in which he proves that it is all one, and has the ſame Efficacy, whether a Perſon is dipt in the Water, or only ſprinkled with it; For the Ancient *Ruſſians* would allow no Perſon to be a *Chriſtian*, unleſs he had been dipt quite under Water. 4. Of Confeſſion. 5. Of Marriage, wherein he teaches, that thoſe of the *Greek* Church may intermarry with other *Chriſtians*. 6. Of the Office of Prieſts, in which he ſhews, that they ought not to intermeddle with the Civil Government, or Political Affairs. 7. An Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory, in which he ſhews what Ceremonies and Cuſtoms were in Uſe among the Primitive *Chriſtians*, before the Time of *Conſtantine*, and by whom, and at what Time, ſo many ſuperſtitious Ceremonies, which are now held equally binding with God's Commands,

mands, were introduced, *e. g.* The Adoration of the Images of ſo many Saints (69); Reading Maſs for the Deceaſed; The ſumptuous Garments of the Clergy, *&c.* He alſo takes Notice of ſuch Things as the Ancient Fathers inſtituted, and voluntarily embrac'd, with a pious Intention; But were afterwards enforced as Laws by Pride and Avarice, as: A forced monaſtical Life, contrary to the Ordinances of the ALMIGHTY; Offering of Candles; Burning Frankincenſe before Images; All which are now accounted among the pious good Works of a *Chriſtian*; He obſerves, that inſtead of theſe, it would be much better to ſerve GOD with Singing of Pſalms, Praying, and Reading the Word of GOD, and Inſtructing the People by pious Sermons; And not, as now, barely ſpending the Time in ſinging ſo many Litanies and *Kyrie-Eleyſons*, which, together with the Maſſes that are daily read, are only a tedious Repetition, which muſt naturally become irkſome. This Man's Intentions are very good, and commendable; And if GOD ſpares him Life and Health, much Good may be expected from his Writings.

XX. I MUST now make ſome Mention of the other *Chriſtian* Religions in *Ruſſia*. Next to the *Greek* Church, the *Lutheran* is the moſt numerous; For beſides the conquer'd Provinces, as *Livonia*, *Eſthonia*, *Finnland*, and *Carelia*, the *Lutherans* have two Churches in *Peterſburg*, two in *Muſcow*, and one in *Bellgorod*; And the foreign Generals have each their own Miniſters and private Chapels. The *Swediſh* Captives had their own Church in *Tobolſky* (70); And ſince their Return, as I am inform'd, a Church has alſo been built in the City of *Catharinenburg* in *Siberia*, on Account of the Mines, in which a great many *Saxons* and other *Germans* are employ'd. As to the Government of the *Lutheran* Churches, and Schools in *Ruſſia*, they are under the Inſpection of a Superintendent-General in *Muſcow*, and two Superintendents in *Livonia* and *Eſthonia*.

XXI. THE

(69) In the *Verændertes Ruſſland* (*p.* 310.) it is mentioned, that the Introduction of Images into the Church was aſcribed to *Baſilides*, which ſome other *Ruſſians* attribute to *Damaſcenus*; And that, next to our Saviour and the Virgin *Mary*, of all the Saints, *Nicholas* of *Bari*, and *Sergius*, were rever'd the moſt.

(70) Concerning the free Exerciſe of Religion, and the Education of the Children of the *Swediſh* Captives, read *Wahrhafte und umſtændliche Hiſtorie von den Schwediſchen Gefangenen in Ruſſland und Siberien*, (A full and true Hiſtory of the *Swediſh* Captives in *Ruſſia* and *Siberia*) publiſh'd by Capt. *Curt. Frederick van Wreeck*, *Sorau*, 1728.

XXI. The *Calviniſts* and *Roman Catholicks* have, likewiſe, their Churches in *Peterſburg* and *Muſcow*; But the latter are forbid having any Jeſuits among them; Becauſe they having intermeddled in the Affairs of the Prince, were, on that Account, baniſh'd out of *Muſcow*, in the Year 1718.

XXII. The *Arminians* have a Church, and a Biſhop, at *Aſtracan*. Other Chriſtian Sects hold their Divine Service in private Houſes, becauſe they cannot afford to build Churches, which otherwiſe they might.

XXIII. It is alſo to be obſerved, that Perſons of Merit can, without Regard to Religion, obtain the higheſt Poſts, as well in the Army as in the Senat; For Inſtance, Count *Bruſs* was a *Calviniſt*, Baron *Oſterman*, and *Jaguſeniſki*, *Lutherans*, a Thing hardly admitted in any other Country.

XXIV. (2.) Mahometans are likewiſe tolerated in *Ruſſia*, and make up about a 30th Part of the Inhabitants: In *Caſan* and *Kaſimow* are counted 20000 Houſes, beſides the *Aſtracan-Naga-Baſchir-Zerkaſs* and *Siberian Mahometan Tartars*. They have, in all their Cities and Villages where they live, their Meetings and Schools; They travel to their Holy Cities of *Mecca* and *Medina*; And *Polygamy* and the Exerciſe of other Tenets are allow'd them, according to their Law.

XXV. Czar *Alexei* uſed a Stratagem, to bring over many to the *Chriſtian* Religion; That is, he ennobled all thoſe who were baptized, and then they were called *Kniaz* (i. e. *Prince*) which induced many Thouſands to embrace *Chriſtianity*. I have ſeen, in one Village, 18 ſuch noble Families, who all liv'd by Tillage and Huſbandry.

XXVI. (3.) The Pagans in *Ruſſia* are three times as numerous as the *Mahometans*; But they differ very much in their Idolatry and Ceremonies. And it would be too tedious here to give a particular Deſcription of the Superſtition of every Nation; Which may, however, be done hereafter, if I live to publiſh a Deſcription of the *Southern* and other Parts of *Tartary*.

XXVII. In general it may be ſaid of them all, that they believe One eternal Being, who created all Things, and Whom they pretend to worſhip under the Form of many Sorts of ſtrange Things. Some of them have taken a Fancy to many Sorts of

Images; Some, to Animals, Birds and Stars; They ſet apart for their Offerings, which they make to Heaven, certain Places, or Holy Groves, and have Regard to Fire and other Elements.

XXVIII. WHATEVER Pains the *Ruſſian* Clergy has taken to convert theſe People, have hitherto been in vain. 1. Becauſe they live diſperſed in the Woods, and are very ſeldom long in one Place. 2. Becauſe they have no Writings nor Books, and do not underſtand the *Ruſſian* Language; But thoſe who live in Villages, among the *Ruſſians*, are all baptized, and ſpeak the *Ruſſian* Language ſo well, that they are not to be diſtinguiſh'd from the *Ruſſians* themſelves.

XXIX. AND tho' theſe *Heathens* are ſtupid and ignorant in the Knowledge of GOD; Yet they are naturally honeſt, and good moral People, who hardly know what Perjury, Thieving, Fornication, Drunkenneſs, Tricking, and other ſuch Vices, are. And it is very rare to find any of them charged with the like, except thoſe who live among the *Ruſſian Chriſtians*, and learn theſe Vices of them.

XXX. THIS latter I can teſtify on my own Experience. For when in the Year 1722, after I had heard that the Peace was concluded in the *North*, I went from the City of *Craſnoyahr*, on the River *Jeniſei*, and had left Doctor *Meſſerſchmidt*, with whom I went from *Tobolſky*, in *Siberia*, I had, in my Return, no other Companion but a *Swediſh* Boy, about 14 or 15 Years of Age.

XXXI. HOWEVER, the Commanding Officer in *Craſnoyahr* gave me a Guide, who was a *Ruſſian*, in order to conduct me to *Tobolſky*; But he left me on the Road; And I was forc'd to travel, with my young *Swediſh* Companion only, thro' all theſe *Heathenish* Countries. I had ordered a Boat to be built for me on the River *Kentzick*, to go from that River into the River *Czulim*, and from that into the River *Oby*; And the Commanding Officer in *Craſnoyahr* had allotted me five *Tartars*, or *Heathens*, to row the Boat.

XXXII. MY Guide having left me, I ſhew'd my Paſſport to theſe *Heathens*, who, all the Way conducted me, from one *Jurte*, or *Hut*, to another; And I can truly ſay, that they wrong'd me of nothing; Tho' they might eaſily have done it; Becauſe I was alone, and ſlept, in the Night-time, in the Boat; And, in the

Morning, before I was awake, I found they often had, of their own Accord chang'd Men 3 or 4 Times. Such a Voyage I ſhould hardly have hazarded between *Tobolſky* and *Muſcow*, where I queſtion whether the *Ruſſian Roſbonicks* would have ſuffer'd me to paſs in ſo much Safety. And when, for certain Reaſons, I was obliged to ſtay 14 Days on the River *Oby*, among the *Oſtiacks*, all the Baggage I had with me lay openly in a Hut, in which a whole Family dwelt; And yet I did not loſe the leaſt Thing (71).

XXXIII. I SHALL ſay more of this, in my Journal, which I kept during my Voyage, and which I intend to publiſh, if GOD ſpares me Life and Health.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Eccleſiaſtical Government, in Ruſſia.

SUMMARY.

§. I. II. A *Brief Account of the Succeſſion of the* Ruſſian *Patriarchs and Metropolitans.* III. *Some believe* Michael Cyrus, *and others* Leo, *to have been the firſt Metropolitan of* Kiow. IV. *The Succeſſion of the Metropolitans of* Kiow, *from* Leo *to* Maxim. V. *In whoſe Time, the Office of* Archimandrite *was in-*

(71) A *Ruſſian*, in *Tobolsky*, told me the following pleaſant Occurrence. Travelling, at a certain Time, from this Place, to the City of *Bereſſowa* (12 Days Journy from *Tobolsky*, Northward) he ſaid he lodg'd one Night in an *Oſtiack*'s *Jurte* or Hut, and the next Day being gone about a *German* Mile from thence, he miſs'd a Bag with near 100 *Rubels* in it; But the Roads not being ſo full of Travellers, as in *Europe*, the *Oſtiack*'s Son, who had been hunting, found the Bag, which, however, he did not take up, but went home and told his Father of it: The Father order'd the Son to go back again, and cover it with the Branch of a Tree, that the Owner, if he ſhould come thither again, and enquire after it, might take it where he left it. Above 3 Months afterwards, this *Ruſſian*, in his Return, lodg'd again with the ſame *Oſtiack*, (who had forgot him) and telling how unfortunate he had been, after he left that Place, the *Oſtiack* with Joy cry'd; Art thou the Man who loſt that Bag? My Son ſhall go with thee, and ſhew thee where it lies, that thou mayſt take it up again, with thy own Hands. An excellent Leſſon, from a *Heathen* to a *Chriſtian*.

introduced, in Russia. VI. *The Building of two Capital Churches, in* Muscow. VII. *Miracles said to have been perform'd by* Alexei Mirificus, *in the* Tartarian Horda. VIII. *A Dissention about the Succession of the Metropolitans:* Sosimus *ordains* Stephen Perinski *Bishop of* Great Permia. *The* Lithuanians *elect a Metropolitan of their own.* IX. Isiodorus *endeavours to unite the* Roman Catholick *and* Russian *Churches; But is, on that Account, confined to a Convent.* X. *The Election of a new Metropolitan; Who is rejected by the Republick of* Novogrod: *Upon which, the* Grand Prince *wages War with them.* XI. *Some new Ordinances, made with Regard to the Clergy.* XII. *The Deprivation of some Metropolitans, during the Minority of* Iwan Wasiliewitz. Macarius *obtains, at Length, this eminent Dignity; And crowns that* Czar. *A terrible Fire, in* Russia. XIII. *The Succession of the Metropolitans after* Macarius; *Among whom* Hiob *was the first who was consecrated Patriarch of* Russia. *How it went with his Successors.* XIV. XV. XVI. *Of the Patriarch* Nicon, *and the Dissentions on his Account; Which are the Occasion of a* Synod *being convok'd. Decrees of that Synod, as well concerning him, as otherwise.* XVII. XVIII. *The Succession of Patriarchs after him. The Intrigues of the Patriarch* Joachim. XIX. *Of* Adrian, *the last Patriarch after him.* XX. *The Office of Patriarch ceasing, at his Death, a Spiritual College or Synod is ordain'd in the Room of it.* XXI. *An Account wherein, and of what Persons that Synod consists.*

I. IT is well known that the *Russian Church*, as well as the *Greek Church*, from which it owes its Rise, has always been govern'd by a Patriarch, and by the Clergy which depended solely on him, till Czar *Peter* I. after the Death of the last Patriarch *Adrian*, made an Alteration.

II. IT might not be improper to give the Reader, in this Place, the Succession of all the Patriarchs and Metropolitans, from the first Establishment of the *Russian Church*; And to mention all such Things as appear to be Praise-worthy in the Administration of every One who has been possess'd of that eminent Dignity; But this being done already by other Authors, I shall

only mention ſome few Particulars, which have occurr'd to my Obſervation.

III. I HAVE already taken Notice, above, that *Wolodimir*, or *Baſilius* I. being baptized in rhe Year 987, quite aboliſhed *Paganiſm* (72) and embraced the *Greek* Religion; After which *Photius*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, recommended to him *Michael Syrus* (whom others call only *Cyrus* the *Philoſopher*, whom *Emperour Baſilius* had ſent to him) to be the firſt Metropolitan in *Ruſſia*. Some, therefore, reckon this *Cyrus* the firſt who poſſeſs'd that Dignity; But he not having fix'd upon any certain See, but having paſſed the greateſt Part of his Life in travelling with the *Grand Prince Wolodimir*, in Order to convert the Reſt of the *Ruſſians*, eſpecially thoſe of *Novogrod* and *Roſtow*; there are others who will not allow him that Honour; But pretend, that, after the Death of *Michael Syrus*, *Leontei* or *Leo*, was the firſt Metropolitan, whom *Nicholas*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, ordained Archbiſhop of *Kiow*, as he did, likewiſe, *Joachim* of *Korſſun*, Archbiſhop of *Novogrod*, and *Fædor Grezin*, Archbiſhop of *Roſtow*: And afterwards, when *Chriſtianity* encreaſed, in *Ruſſia*, the Number of Archbiſhops was augmented to ſeven.

IV. THE Succeſſors of this *Leo* were, *John*, *George*, *Nicephorus*, *Theopentus*, *Hilarian*, *George* the *Second*, *John* the *Second*, *Eunuchus*, *Ephraim*, *Nicephorus*, *Niceta*, *Michael*, and *Cyrillus*; After whoſe Death, the *Ruſſian* Clergy choſe, for their Metropolitan, one *Clement*, who was the fourteenth in Succeſſion, without aſking the Conſent of the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*; Though he was afterwards confirmed by him. However, his Succeſſors, *Conſtantine*, *Theodorus*, *John*, *Nicephorus*, *Matthew*, *Cyrillus*, *Joſeph* of *Nice*, *Cyrillus* and *Maxim*, were again all ordained by that Patriarch. The latter of theſe was the firſt who, in the Year 1283, was tranſlated, by *George*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, from *Kiow* to *Wolodimir*, and afterwards to *Muſcow*, when the former Place was ruin'd by the *Tartars*, and came into

(72) The *Ruſſian* Annals mention, that *Wolodimir*, before his Converſion, was a zealous Idolater, and among all his Idols he worſhipp'd one call'd *Perun*, with the greateſt Reverence, the Reſt were called *Chars*, *Daſchb*, *Strib*, *Smargel*, and *Mokoſch*; But how he uſed his *God*, *Perun*, at *Novogrod*, when he cauſed him to be dragg'd thro' the River, the Reader may ſee, in other Authors.

into the Poſſeſſion of the *Poles* and *Lithuanians* (73). Nevertheleſs, if we may believe the *Karentinian* Hiſtorians, the Metropolitans of *Wolodimir* had their Vicars at *Kiow*.

V. In the Time of *Maxim*, *Daniel Alexandrowitz*, the fourth Son of *Alexander Nefskoi* reigned, who was a quiet and peaceable Prince, and, therefore, was not moleſted by the *Tartars*, nor any of his other Neighbours. When his Brother *Demetrius*, and his Brother's Son, *Iwan*, died, in *Pereſlaw*, that Principality fell, likewiſe, to the *Grand Prince*, *Daniel*; Who, however, did not much concern himſelf with Worldly Affairs, and is only noted for building the Convent called *Danielowka*, in which he inſtituted the firſt *Archimandrite*, or Abbot, in all *Ruſſia*. Into this Convent, likewiſe, he himſelf retired, and became a Monk; Where dying, in the Year 1302, he left particular Orders, that they ſhould not bury him in the Church, but, among his Brother-Monks, in the Church-Yard of the Convent.

VI. After the afore-mentioned Metropolitan *Maxim*, ſucceeded *Peter*, ſurnamed the *Worker of Miracles*, who was inſtituted by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. In his Time reign'd *Iwan Danielowitz*, *Grand Prince* of *Muſcow*, Who, by *Peter*'s Advice, built in *Muſcow*, the great Cathedral Church, in Honour of the Virgin *Mary*, and the Church of St. *Michael*, where he was buried.

VII. Peter was followed by *Theognoſtus* or *Pheogniſtus*, who, likewiſe, was ordained by *Eſaias*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. *Theognoſtus* was ſucceeded by *Alexei Mirificus*, whom the *Tartarian Zanibeck Chan* entreated to come to the *Horda*, where he reſtored the *Chan*'s Wife, who was blind, to her Sight. He alſo gave his Benediction to the *Great Prince Demetri-Iwanowitz*, in Order for him to build the firſt Wall about the City of *Muſcow*, which was finiſhed in the Year 1527. In his Time, lived the *Igumen* or *Prior Sergius Troitſkoi*, who, as well in his Life-Time,

(73) In the Year 1415, when the *Great Prince* of *Lithuania*, *Witoldt*, or *Witow*, had the Principality of *Kiow* in Poſſeſſion, he ordered the *Ruſſians* in *Kiow*, to chooſe a Metropolitan of their own, in the Church of St. *Sophia*; Becauſe he would not ſuffer the Metropolitans of *Muſcow* to receive the Revenues of *Kiow*. Accordingly, one was choſen, *Gregory Schemiblack* by Name; And thus there were, at that Time, two Metropolitans in *Ruſſia*.

Time, as after his Death, by his Relicks, is ſaid to have wrought great Miracles, and was ſent to *Ruſſia*, by *Athanaſius*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. The Metropolitan *Alexei*, in the eighty-fourth Year of his Age, recommended this *Sergius*, to be his Succeſſor, but he would not accept of it: And when the *Grand Prince* would have promoted one *Mitæi*; *Alexei* refuſed to give him his Benediction.

VIII. THERE being, at this Time, great Troubles in *Ruſſia*, and a Diſunion among the Princes, we find two Succeſſors of *Alexei* mentioned, *viz. Gerontius* and *Soſimus*, the latter of whom, ſome call *Pimen*, and others *Timen*; However, in the true Succeſſion of Metropolitans, *Cyprianus*, who was born in *Servia*, is reckon'd the Seven and twentieth, and *Alexei*'s Succeſſor. Of this *Soſimus*, we find it, nevertheleſs, recorded, that he ordain'd *Stephanus* of *Uſtjug*, to be the firſt Biſhop of *Permia*. This *Stephanus* had obtain'd Leave, and receiv'd the Benediction, of the Biſhop of *Uſtjug*, in Order to go to *Permia*, to convert the *Heathens*, in which he had good Succeſs. He alſo invented a *Permian* Alphabet, and tranſlated ſeveral Books, out of the *Ruſſian* into the *Permian* Language; He died in the Year 1396, and lies buried at *Muſcow*, in the Convent of *Spaſka*. Therefore *Soſimus* or *Timen* ought to be reckon'd the 27th, and *Cyprianus* the 28th Metropolitan. The *Novogrodians* would not, at firſt, accept of *Cyprianus*, but at Length they gave him their Approbation. He tranſlated ſeveral Books, from the *Greek*, into the *Ruſſian* Language; And was ſucceeded by *Photius*, in whoſe Time the *Lithuanians*, as I have ſaid above, choſe a Metropolitan of their own, in the Year 1415.

IX. AFTER the Death of this latter, in the Time of the *Grand Prince Waſilie Waſiliewitz*, one *Iſidorus* came from *Rome*, who by inſinuating himſelf into the *Grand Prince*'s Favour, obtain'd the Metropolitan Dignity; Whence it appears that the Confirmation from *Conſtantinople* was, at that Time, no longer look'd upon as abſolutely requiſite. *Iſiodorus* having given the greateſt Aſſurances of defending the *Greek* Religion, was ſent to the Council of *Ferrara*, where he voluntarily, and without the general Conſent of the *Ruſſian* Clergy, ſign'd the Concluſion concerning the Union of the two Churches, which was, in a manner extorted from the

Grecians. After this, he return'd to *Russia*, and endeavour'd to perſuade the *Grand Prince* to confirm the Union (74) with the *Latin* Church, which the *Grand Prince* refuſed, and confin'd him to the Convent of *Tſchudko*, whence he made his Eſcape, and fled to *Italy*, to Pope *Eugenius*.

X. AFTER this, the ſaid *Great Prince* aſſembled the *Ruſſian* Clergy, in Order to chooſe another Metropolitan, which Office, from the Death of *Photius*, had been vacant 18 Years. At this Election, the Biſhop of *Reſan*, *Jonas* or *Jonathan*, was choſen. After his Death, *Theodoſius*, or *Theodoſii*, Biſhop of *Roſtow*, was choſen, and to him ſucceeded one *Philip*. At this Time, the *Novogrodians* were divided, in the Election of an Archbiſhop, one Party chuſing one *Theophilus* of the *Greek* Church, and the other Party one *Gregorius* of the *Latin* Church. The Conſequence of this Diſunion was, that, the latter Party having brought the former over to them, they both rebelled againſt Czar *Iwan*, and deſired the Prince of *Lithuania* to be their Sovereign. And tho' the Metropolitan *Philip*, as well as the *Grand Prince* himſelf, exhorted them, by Letters, to adhere to their former Religion, and ſubmit to their lawful Prince; Yet by the Inſtigation of one *Martha*, a Rich and Powerful Lady, who aſpired to marry the *Grand Prince* of *Lithuania*, *Michael Alexandrowitz*, they continued in their Obſtinacy, till Czar *Iwan* viſited them, with a large Army, and brought them to their former Obedience, by Force of Arms.

XI. UPON the Death of the Metropolitan *Philip*, one *Jeronti*, and after him one *Soſimus*, ſucceeded; But this latter was depoſed, and one *Simon*, Prior of the Convent of *Sergia*, was choſen in his Place. This Metropolitan, and the Archbiſhop of *Novogrod*, made Canons to oblige thoſe Prieſts, who became Widowers, and were poſſeſs'd of any of the Dignities in the Church, to give them up; Becauſe it was ſuppoſed they had their Time employ'd with their Domeſtick Affairs, and could not ſufficiently attend the Duty of their Office. However, they were allow'd to keep ſome ſmaller Office in the Church, and either to enjoy the 4th Part of the Revenues of their Succeſſors, or elſe to retire into a Convent.

(74) The Project for an Union of the *Roman Catholick* and the *Greek* Churches, which the *Sorbonne*, in the Year 1717, deliver'd to Czar *Peter* I. is to be ſeen in the *Veränderte Ruſſland*.

a Convent. They, likewiſe, ordain'd, that the Monks and Nuns ſhould no longer live in one Convent together, and that the Monks ſhould have an *Archimandrite* or Abbot, and the Nuns a married Prieſt, for Inſpectors.

XII. AFTER the Death of *Simon*, one *Warlam*, *Archimandrite*, or Abbot of the Convent of *Simanſki* ſucceeded. And after him followed *Daniel*, the *Igumen* or Prior of St. *Joſeph*'s Convent: But at that Time, and during the Minority of *Iwan Waſiliewitz*, the Second, after the Death of his Mother *Helena*, who had reign'd four Years, the *Bojares* adminiſtring the Government at their own Pleaſure, and they being divided into two Parties, the moſt powerful of them thruſt the ſaid Metropolitan, *Daniel*, into a Monaſtery, and choſe another in his Room, *Joſeph* by Name, who, three Years after, was, likewiſe, removed, and *Macarius*, Archbiſhop of *Novogrod*, an excellent Man, choſen in his Place. This *Macarius* crown'd *Czar Iwan Waſiliewitz*, in the Year 1546, in which Year, there happen'd a great Fire in the City of *Muſcow*, which conſumed a great many Antiquities, miraculous Relicks, and *Greek* Books. During the Fire, *Macarius* went into the Cathedral Church, where he remained in Prayers, 'till the Roof was conſumed with the Fire, and the Heat obliged him to retire, when he took with him the Image of the Virgin *Mary*, which the Metropolitan *Peter*, ſurnamed the *Worker of Miracles*, had made with his own Hands, and the *Code* of *Eccleſiaſtical* Canons, which *Cyprianus* had brought with him from *Conſtantinople*.

XIII. AFTER him ſucceeded *Aphanaſi*, *Philip*, *Kiril*, *Antonin*, and *Hiob*. In the Time of this latter, and in the Reign of *Czar Foedor Iwanowitz*, came to *Muſcow*, *Jeremias*, the *Conſtantinopolitan* Patriarch over the whole World, who, as *Innocentius Giſiel*, Abbot of *Kiow*, mentions, in his Hiſtory of *Ruſſia*, declared the ſaid Metropolitan *Hiob*, in the Year 7097, the 26th of *January*, according to the *Ruſſian* Reckoning; Or, in the Year of our Lord CHRIST, 1588, Patriarch of all *Ruſſia* (75); And

(75) This *Jeremias* came to *Ruſſia*, in Order to collect Mony, to ſpend at the *Turkiſh* Court, to have the Patriarch *Mitriphan* (who was an *Unitarian*) depoſed; And that he might ſucceed the better in this, he the readier conſented to the Inſtallation of *Hiob*, as Patriarch of *Ruſſia*; Perhaps this is the ſame *Jeremias* who correſponded with the *Lutheran* Divines, eſpecially with thoſe at *Tubingen*, concerning the *Greek* and *Lutheran* Religions; Which Letters, it is ſaid, have been printed, in the *Greek* and *Latin* Tongues, at *Wittenberg*.

And ſince that Time, there have always been Patriarchs in *Ruſſia*, to which the Patriarchs of *Alexandria*, *Antiochia* and *Jeruſalem*, have, by their Letters, conſented, and thereby conferr'd the ſame Honour upon them, as they themſelves enjoy'd. This is repreſented, in a Picture, in the *Ruſſian* Churches, under the Type of the five Senſes, *viz.* (1.) *Conſtantinople*, (2.) *Alexandria*, (3.) *Antiochia*, (4.) *Jeruſalem*, (5.) *Ruſſia*, which is called, in one Word, *Karai*. This *Hiob* was depoſed, and thruſt into a Convent by the Impoſtor *Demetrius*, in the Year 1605, and *Demetrius Ignatius*, who, in the *Ruſſian* Chronicles, is reckoned a *Roman Catholick*, put in his Place. He alſo was put into a Monaſtery, by *Czar Czuiſki*; And *Hiob*, not being willing to quit a Monaſtick Life, *Hermogenes*, Metropolitan of *Caſan*, came in his Room; But he, likewiſe, was depoſed, and died in Priſon. After this, Archbiſhop *Philaret* was choſen Patriarch of *Ruſſia*, and was ſucceeded by *Joſaff*, *Joſeph*, and *Nicon*; From the Patriarch *Hiob*, to this *Nicon*, all the *Ruſſian* Patriarchs had their Confirmation from *Conſtantinople*.

XIV. Nicon, though but of mean Extraction, was very haughty and ambitious; He had not great Learning, but had read much, was a Lover of Books, and cauſed ſeveral *Greek* and *Latin* Authors to be tranſlated; By which he got a great Inſight into the Policy of the *Romiſh* Church, which he intended to introduce in *Ruſſia*. He, therefore, as the firſt Step to this Innovation, repreſented to *Czar Alexei Michaelewitz*, how unneceſſary it was to chuſe a Metropolitan, for the future, with the Suffrage of the Patriarchs of the *Eaſt*, and to have the Confirmation from *Conſtantinople*. And this Propoſal was applauded, partly as it would ſave great Charges, and partly for other Reaſons. Hereupon, (1.) He acquainted the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* by a Letter, that he was called to that Dignity by the immediate Spirit of God, and that therefore it was not proper for one Patriarch to depend on another. (2.) He altered his Title, and inſtead of *Moſt Hollowed*, as the former Patriarchs had ſtyled themſelves, he took the Title of *Moſt Holy*. (3.) He augmented the Number of the Archbiſhops and Biſhops. (4.) He built four large new Convents, and by his artful Eloquence, and

other Intrigues, obtain'd ſeveral Eſtates, and perpetual Revenues, as well of the Crown, as of Private People, which enabled him to maintain the four Metrapolitans, twelve Archbiſhops, twelve Biſhops, twelve *Archimandrites*, or Abbots, and ſeveral other new Eccleſiaſtical Dignities, which he had introduced. (5.) He altered the Canons of the Church, to his own Advantage, under Pretence, that, in the former Tranſlation, many Things were given wrong; This not only cauſed great Diſputes and Schiſm in the Church, but is one Reaſon, why the *Roſkolſchiks* remain ſeparated to this Day. (6.) He claimed a Right to ſit in the Senate with the *Czar*, and to have a Vote in temporal Affairs, eſpecially in Juſticiary Matters, and in making of new Laws, pretending that the Patriarch *Philaret* was allow'd an Inſpection into theſe Matters. (7.) He inſinuated, that the *Czar* had not Power to make Peace or War, with the Neighbouring Potentates, without his Advice; Becauſe, he ſaid, he was bound to take Care of the *Czar*'s Soul, as well as of the Souls of the whole Nation, for which he was accountable to the ALMIGHTY; And that, therefore, he was beſt able to aſſiſt the *Czar*, in ſuch weighty Affairs, with his Holy Counſel. But it afterwards appear'd, that the great Sums of Mony which the King of *Poland* had remitted him for this Purpoſe, and his own exorbitant Ambition, were the true Motives of his pretended Holy Care.

XV. THESE Pretenſions were rejected by the *Czar*, and the Senate, for which they alledg'd ſufficient Reaſons, *viz.* that the Patriarch *Philaret* had been adviſed with, in Temporal Affairs, not becauſe of his Character, as Patriarch, but as the *Czar*'s Father and Guardian; And that *Philaret* himſelf had been a Senator, and employed in the *Poliſh* Embaſſy, whereby he had acquired a greater Knowledge of Foreign Affairs, than the other Senators. Moreover, that ſince *Philaret*, no Patriarch had been adviſed with in Temporal Affairs, nor had ever pretended to it, and that, therefore, his Pretenſions would be of Prejudice to the *Empire*. Nevertheleſs, he would not deſiſt from them, but endeavour'd to gain his Point by Threats: He excommunicated ſome of the Senators, and by his Secret Intrigues, endeavour'd to raiſe a Rebellion among the common People, to which the Fa-

Famine, which reign'd at that Time, in ſome Meaſure, contributed: Inſomuch that a great deal of Blood was ſhed in the Tumult, before it could be appeaſed. The *Czar* and Senate not knowing, by what Means, to bring this turbulent Man to Reaſon; Becauſe he would hear of no Reconcilement; unleſs they conſented to his Demands; And it not being adviſable, at that Time, to uſe Force; Becauſe it might raiſe a new Tumult among the Common People, and it was to be fear'd, that he might get Aſſiſtance from ſome weak Senators, who ſided with him; It was, therefore, at Length, reſolved to debate this Matter by a Synod; For which Purpoſe, the *Czar Alexei* ſent for three Patriarchs, twenty-ſeven Archbiſhops, and One Hundred and ſeventeen other Prelates, from *Greece*, at the Expence of the *Empire*, to which were added One Hundred and Fifty of the *Ruſſian* Clergy.

XVI. THIS Synod having examined the *Czar*'s Complaints againſt the Patriarch, they came to a Concluſion, and Sentence was pronounced; (1.) That the Patriarch *Nicon* ſhould be degraded, and confined to a Convent, with no other Suſtenance, but Bread and Water, during his Life. (2.) That the new Patriarchs of *Ruſſia*, for the Future, ſhould be choſen, not only by the Archbiſhops, Biſhops and Clergy, but alſo jointly by the Senate, under the Preſidency of the *Czar*; and, in Caſe they ſhould not behave themſelves ſuitable to their Characters, or commit any Civil Crimes, they ſhould be tried and condemn'd by the *Czar* and the Senate. (3.) It was confirmed, that the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* ſhould not be acknowledged as the ſole Head of the *Greek* Church, nor ſhould he have the Revenues of the Tithes in *Ruſſia*; But it ſhould be left to the *Czar*'s good Will, what he would allow him. (4.) From that Time, no Man ſhould have the Power, either to ſell, or to give or bequeath his Goods or Eſtates to Convents, or to any other of the Clergy. (5.) That the Patriarch ſhould introduce no new Biſhops, nor other Foundations, without Conſent of the *Czar* and the Senate.

XVII. BY Virtue of this Sentence, *Nicon* was ſent to the Convent of *Woſkreſenſki*, which he himſelf had cauſed to be built after a ſumptuous Manner, where he lived ten Years under Confinement.

XVIII. In his Place was choſen an Archbiſhop, called *Joſeph*, an ancient, pious and quiet Man; After his Death, ſucceeded one *Peſterim*, whoſe Succeſſor was *Joachim*, who, after the Death of *Czar Theodor*, intermeddled in the Affairs of the Princeſs *Sophia*, but with ſo much Art and Cunning, that nothing of it was diſcovered, 'till after his Death; And it is ſaid, that, as ſoon as he had perceived the Rebellion, at that Time, would not fall out, according to his Project, and that the *Czar* would retain his former Sovereignty, he took Poiſon, and thus put an End to his Life.

XIX. These Intrigues occaſion'd, at that Time, a great deal of Diſcourſe about the Authority of Patriarchs, and of the Prejudice they had always been to the *Empire*. However, it was thought neceſſary, as Circumſtances were then, to chuſe another; Becauſe the *Czar* was young, and Princeſs *Sophia* had ſpread abroad ſeveral falſe Reports of him, among the common People, eſpecially that he ſided with the Foreigners. The Choice fell on *Adrian*, the Metropolitan of *Caſan*, in the Room of Patriarch *Joachim*; He was a very poor Genius, and a great Drunkard. He died, in the Year 1699, near *Narva*.

XX. After his Death, the Clergy were for chuſing another; But the *Czar*, being engaged in a War, deferr'd it 'till the Year 1719, when He declared, by a *Manifeſto*, that he intended, inſtead of a Patriarch, to eſtabliſh a Spiritual Court, or Synod, which, He would take Care, ſhould be provided with good Regulations and Inſtructions, and this was accordingly brought to bear. The Orders or Regulations of this Synod are tranſlated into the *German* Tongue, and, if I miſtake not, printed at *Dantzig*.

XXI. This Synod, or Spiritual Court, conſiſts of, (1.) A Preſident, which Office the *Czar* reſerv'd for himſelf. (2.) A Vice-Preſident, who is an Archbiſhop, for which Dignity, the ſeveral Bodies of the Clergy and the Senate nominate two Perſons, of whom the *Czar* confirms one. (3.) Six Counſellours, who are Biſhops; and ſix *Archimandrites* or Abbots, as Aſſeſſors. And when a Vacancy happens, either among the Counſellors, or Aſſeſſors, the Synod chuſes two Perſons, whom they preſent to the *Czar*, who nominates one of them. There are likewiſe

ſome

ſome temporal Perſons in this Synod, as an Attorny-General, one Principal, and ſeveral under Secretaries; Whoſe reſpective Duties are circumſtantially deſcribed in the Synodical Regulations. But when any Affairs of great Importance happen, they muſt be laid before the *Czar*, in the Senate, on which Occaſions, the whole Synod often come into the Senate, and take their Places under the Senators. The Synod have alſo under their Direction ſome other Bodies, as, (1.) The Eccleſiaſtical Court. (2.) The Board of Treaſury. (3.) The Commiſſion for Schools and Printing-Offices. In the Provinces, there are, in every Government, one Archbiſhop, and ſome Biſhops, as, (1.) In the Government of *Muſcow* is the Archbiſhop of *Sara* and *Podon* (which are only Names of two ſmall Rivulets, that run by the Biſhop's Houſe, two *Werſts* from the City.) And under him are the Biſhops of *Reſan*, *Suſdahl*, *Roſtow*, *Colomba* and *Twer*, (2.) In the Government of *Peterſburg* is the Archbiſhop of *Novogrod*, and under him the Biſhops of *Pleſcow*, and *Olonetz*. (3.) In the Government of *Kiow*, the Archbiſhop of *Kiow*, and under him the Biſhops of *Czernicow* and *Pereſlawle*. (4.) In the Government of *Caſan*, the Archbiſhop of that Name, and under him the Biſhops of *Wiatka* and *Permia*. (5.) In the Government of *Aſtracan* is only one Biſhop. (6.) In *Siberia*, the Archbiſhop of that Name, and the Biſhop of *Nertſchinſki*. (7.) In the Government of *Archangelgorod*, the Archbiſhop of *Wologda*, and the Biſhops of *Holmogorod* and of *Uſtjug*. (8.) In the Government of *Woronitz* is only the Biſhop of *Woronitz*. (9.) In the Government of *Smolenſcow*, only the Biſhop of *Smolenſcow*. (10.) In the Government of *Niſegorod*, but one Biſhop: Which make, in all, ſix Archbiſhops, and eighteen Biſhops. The *Archimandrites*, or Abbots, concern themſelves no farther, than with their Convents. Beſides this, almoſt every City has a *Protoprieſt*, and in Great Cities there are more; as, for Inſtance, in *Muſcow*, there are ſeven. This Dignity is much the ſame, as that of *Probſt*, or *Præpoſitus*, among the *Lutherans*, or a *Dean* in other Places.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of the Revenues in Russia.

SUMMARY.

§. I. *THE Difficulty a private Person, or one who has not been employ'd in Affairs of State, meets with, to come at an exact Account of the Revenues of any Country.* II. *What other Authors have reckon'd the Revenues of* Russia *to amount to.* III, IV. *What Account, on the contrary, the Inhabitants, themselves, give of this Matter.* V. *What the Impost and Contribution amounted to, in the Reign of* Czar Alexei, *and what they now amount to.* VI. *What Persons are exempt from paying Head-Mony.*

I. IF it be a difficult Matter to give an exact Account of the Revenues of a *Republick*, it is certainly much more so to determine the Revenues of an *Empire*, under an Absolute Government; Because the Laws vary, according to the Circumstances of the Times, the Increase or Decrease of People, the Melioration or Ruin of the Country, and other Things.

II. ACCORDING to the Calculation set forth in *Das Veränderte Rusland*, (*p.* 34, and 48.) the Revenues, in *Russia*, cannot amount to above eight Millions (of Rubels) with which the Author of the Remarks upon *l' Histoire genealogique des Tartars* (*p.* 724, *in the Note*,) agrees *. And as I have mentioned before,

* THIS vast *Empire* (says that Author) possesses very little Coin, and it is certain, that, every Thing reckon'd, the Revenues of *Russia* do not amount to eight Millions of *Rubels per Ann.* So that it is astonishing, how the late *Emperour* of *Russia* (*Peter* I.) could, with so moderate an Income, maintain so burdensome a War, during so many Years, in Foreign Parts, and, at the same Time, carry on so many vast Enterprizes, within his own Dominions: But we must allow, that a Despotick Government has great Ressources, and can render that possible, which would be impossible to any other.

fore, that in the Time of *Czar Alexei*, the Revenues were five Millions, ſuppoſing, at preſent, that they are raiſed to double what they were then, they do not amount to above ten Millions.

III. YET ſome *Ruſſians* pretend the Revenues of their *Empire* are far more conſiderable. They reckon, for Inſtance, throughout the whole *Empire*, ſeventy-four *Kopeiks* for each Head, which amounts to five Millions. Beſides this, all Citizens and Farmers belonging to the Crown, pay for each Head forty *Kopeiks*, more than thoſe belonging to the Nobility, which, they ſay, amounts to two Millions. They reckon for the greater and leſſer Tolls, and Exciſe, four Millions. The Monopolies, the Trade from *China* and *Perſia*, by the Way of *Aſtracan*, the Duty on Salt and Publick Houſes, the Sale of Tobacco, and ſome other Things, are counted at four Millions. The new conquered Provinces are ſuppoſed to pay two Millions. The Mines, the Privileges of Coinage, the Fees of Colleges, and *Chancery*-Dues, are counted one Million. The Revenues from the *Tartars* and *Pagan* Subjects, which they pay in Furrs, and other Commodities, are computed at two Millions; Which, makes, in all, twenty Millions.

IV. BUT whether this Calculation be juſt, I ſhall not pretend to decide; The Poll-Tax was introduced in the Year 1716. For before that Time, the Contribution was regulated according to the Number of Farm-Houſes.

V. IN the Time of *Czar Alexei*, every Peaſant, belonging to a Nobleman, paid no more than One Hundred and ten *Kopeiks*, and one Buſhel, * of Corn, half Rye, and half Oats. But now, if we add to it the Tax for Recruits, it amounts to five *Rubels* and above; But then the Noblemen have ſo much the leſs to receive of their Peaſants. (76)

VI. ALL who are in Service, either in the Army, or of the State, or that belong to the Court, and the Clergy, from the Higheſt

* THE *German* Word *Scheffel*, which I have here tranſlated *Buſhel*, denotes a Meaſure, which does not hold a great deal more than half a Buſhel *Engliſh*. If I miſtake not, the Weight of a Scheffel of Corn is 36 Pounds.

(76) In the Year 1721, when I travell'd from *Tobolsky*, farther into *Siberia*, the Citizens or Peaſants of the little Town of *Birgamaska*, near the City of *Tara*, told me, that their Contribution amounted to yearly about 7 *Rubels* in Mony.

Higheſt to the Loweſt, are exempt from paying Poll-Tax. Among thoſe who are in Military Employ, are reckoned the *Coſacks*, *Kalmucks* and *Tartars* in Service, all Artificers, Maſters and Men, who conſtantly belong to the Fleet, Ordnance, Manufactury of Arms, and Mines.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Forces of the Ruſſian Empire, *by Land, and by Sea.*

SUMMARY.

§. I, II. THE Ruſſian *Land-Forces are divided into Offenſive and Defenſive Troops. What Account is given of them in other Authors.* III, IV. *The Offenſive Troops conſiſt of Regular and Irregular Infantry*; V. *Cavalry, and* VI. *Artillery.* VII. *to* X. *Of the Command of this Army.* XI. *to* XIII. *Of their Cloathing, Arms, Ammunition and Pay.* XIV. *What Troops more belong to this Offenſive Army.* XV, XVI. *In what Manner the Troops are quarter'd and maintained, in the* Empire, *in Time of Peace.* XVII. *Of the Regular Defenſive Troops.* XVIII. *Of the Irregular Defenſive Troops.* XIX. *Of the* Ruſſian *Sea-Force.* XX. *to* XXII. *Of the Command of their Fleets.* XXIII. *to* XXV. *Of their Fleets in the* Black, Caſpian *and* White Seas. XXVI. XXVII. *Latter Accounts from the Sea of* Japan. XXVIII. *Of the* Ruſſian *Defenſive Sea-Force, conſiſting of their Havens.* XXIX. *A new Haven at* Reval, *and another at* Royerwyk. XXX, XXXI. *Havens on the* Black *and* Lamaian Seas. XXXII. *Of the* Ruſſian *Mariners.* XXXXIII, *to* XXXVI. *A Relation of the Honour ſhewn to the ſmall Boat, which firſt gave Occaſion to the Building of the* Ruſſian *Fleets.*

THE

I. IN Order to give a Brief Account of the *Ruſſian* Forces, it will be neceſſary to divide them into *Regular* and *Irregular Troops*, both of which are again divided into *Offenſive* and *Defenſive*.

II. THE Number of the *Offenſive regular Troops*, as they were in the Year 1717, may be ſeen in the *Verænderte Ruſsland*, (*p.* 377.) Since that Time, they are in ſome Meaſure encreaſed, as I was informed, in *Ruſſia*, at my Return from *Siberia*. And are ſaid to conſiſt of forty-eight Regiments of Infantry. This Encreaſe may perhaps proceed from the new Regiments levy'd in *Siberia*, and other Parts, in the Year, 1720.

III. THE Life-Guard conſiſts of two Regiments, the *Preſbraſinſki* and *Simanowſki*. There are two Regiments called Second-Guards; *viz.* the *Ingermanlandſki* (or *Ingrians*) and *Aſtracanſki*. Theſe four Regiments make twelve Battalions. Each Battalion has four Companies, beſides four Companies of Granadiers, all which are ſuppos'd to contain One Hundred ninety-two Men each. Inſomuch that theſe four Regiments, together with the Company of Bombardiers, conſiſting of Three Hundred and Twenty Men, make above Ten Thouſand Men; without the *prima plana*.

IV. THE reſt of the Infantry is divided into three Diviſions, each of which has one Regiment of Granadiers. Each Regiment has two Battalions, or eight Companies, and each Company conſiſts of One Hundred Men. So that theſe forty-four Regiments make, in all, Sixty-three Thouſand Three Hundred and Sixty Men; Beſides the *prima plana*.

V. THE Horſe is, likewiſe, divided into three Diviſions, *viz.* ten Regiments of Muſketiers, and one Regiment of Grenadiers. Each Regiment conſiſts of ten Companies, and each Company of Ninety-ſix Men. So that theſe thirty-three Regiments make, in all, Thirty-one Thouſand Six Hundred and Eighty Men; Beſides the *prima plana*.

VI. THE Field-Artillery conſiſts in three Regiments, each of which has eight Companies of Cannoniers, one Company of Fireworkers, one Company of Bombardiers, one Company of Engineers, one Company of Miners, and one Company of Pontoneers;

toneers; So that each Regiment has thirteen Companies, which amount in all to Seven Thouſand Ninety-eight Men. If to theſe are added the Artificers, and thoſe who belong to the Carriages, the whole is computed to be about Twelve Thouſand Men; With the *prima plana.*

VII. THERE are two Field-Marſhal-Generals; One commands the whole Army; Whilſt the other preſides in the Council of War, and they exchange their Poſts every three Years.

VIII. THE Infantry is commanded by two Generals, three Lieutenant-Generals, ſix Major-Generals, ſix Brigadiers; Beſides the Life-Guards, where almoſt all the Regimental Officers are, by their Poſts, Generals and Brigadiers.

IX. THE Cavalry is commanded by a Lieutenant-General Field-Marſhal, two Generals, three Lieutenant-Generals, three Major-Generals, and ſix Brigadiers.

X. IN the Artillery-Service, there is one Grand-Maſter of the Ordnance, one Lieutenant-General, and three Major-Generals, *viz.* one of the Artillery, one of Fortifications, and one Quarter-maſter General, and three Colonels, who have the Rank of Brigadiers.

XI. THE Colour of the Regimental Cloaths of the Army is regulated according to the principal Colours of the Arms of the *Empire*; The Life-Guards, for Inſtance, have, (1.) Green, (2.) White, (3.) Blew, (4.) Red Cloaths, inſtead of Yellow; and the Colour of the Facings of the Sleeves, and the Capes, are according to the Diviſions and Brigades, whereby every common Soldier is known, not only to what Regiment, but to what Diviſion and Brigade he belongs.

XII. THE Providing of Cloathing for the Army, is not entruſted with the Officers of the Regiment or Company, but is managed by a particular Commiſſion, ordered for that Purpoſe; Which provides the Cloaths for the Army, and ſends them, at certain Times, to the reſpective Regiments. It is the ſame, with Arms and Ammunition, which the Board of Ordnance takes Care of, and the Officers have nothing to do with it.

XIII. THE Officers and Common Men receive four Months Pay, and one Month's Proviſions, always before-hand: Which is paid them by the Commiſſioners.

XIV. To

XIV. To the Offenſive Irregular Army are reckoned, (1.) The Gentlemen Volunteers. (2.) The *Donn Coſacks.* (3.) The *Malo-Ruſſian Coſacks.* (4.) The *Belgorodian-Coſacks.* (5.) The *Gayck-Coſacks.* (6.) The *Grebenſkian Coſacks.* (7.) The *Kalmucks*; and (8.) The *Tartars*, Sixty Thouſand of which may conſtantly ſerve in the Field. The reſt of theſe are reckoned among the defenſive Troops belonging to each Government, becauſe they cannot be uſed in Wars, in remote Countries, without great Difficulty, and beſides, being frequently annoy'd by their Neighbours, they are obliged almoſt always to be on Duty, to watch their Motions.

XV. The Regular Offenſive Army is, in Time of Peace, quartered in the ſeveral Provinces, where every Company builds their Barracks in empty Places, three ſingle Men, or one that is married, being allowed a Room and a Garden, and the common Soldiers may work for the Country-People for Wages; But no Soldier is ſuffer'd to go into the Villages or Farmers Houſes, without Permiſſion of the Officers. They are exerciſed three Days in every Month, and to keep them from falling into Idleneſs, they are obliged to repair the Canals and Roads, throughout the *Empire*, every three Years.

XVI. The Field-Artillery is divided into three Parts, the firſt of which is in the City of *Muſcow*, and can eaſily be convey'd, by Water, to *Smolenſko*, *Caſan*, and other Places. The ſecond Part is in *Great Novogrod*, on Account of *Livonia*, *Ingria* and *Lithuania*. The third is in the City of *Seoſk* or *Scheoſki*, on Account of *Kiow*, *Crim* and *Azow*. With each of theſe Diviſions there is a Regiment of Artillery; And the Ordnance of each conſiſts of 12 Cannons, 24 Pounders; 24, 18 Pounders; 30, 12 Pounders; 18, ſix Pounders; 120, three Pounders; and ſix Morter-Pieces, of 368 Pounds; 12 of 300 Pounds; 18 of 240 Pounds; 24 of 80 Pounds, and 12 of 40 Pounds; with a proper Proviſion of Waggons and Ammunition, in Caſe of a Neceſſity of breaking up. They have always with them one third Part of the Horſes neceſſary for the Train; And the reſt are diſpoſed up and down among the Country People. To be in a Readineſs, in Caſe of a Siege, or a ſudden Attempt on a Paſs, one third of each Diviſion of Artillery attends the Army; And, beſides

ſides that, each Battalion has always one three Pounder, and a hundred Charges.

XVII. (2.) THE Regular Defenſive Troops are in Gariſon, ſome in the midſt of the *Empire*, to prevent Inſurrections, and Civil Broils, and ſome in the Frontier Towns: They are commonly call'd the Black Regiments. Of theſe there are, in *Muſcow*, three Regiments of Infantry, and five Squadrons of Dragoons; In *Caſan* three Regiments of Infantry, and one of Cavalry; In *Tobolſki*; two Regiments of Infantry, and one of Cavalry; In *Gluchow*, two Regiments of Infantry, and one Squadron of Dragoons; In *Weronitz*, one Regiment of Infantry, and one Squadron of Cavalry. The reſt ly in the Frontier Towns, as; *Kexholm*, *Schluſſelburg*, *Wyburg*, *Peterſburg*, *Cronſtadt*, *Narva*, *Reval*, *Pernau*, *Rogerwych*, *Riga*, *Dunemunda*, *Pleſkow* or *Pſkow*, *Welikie Luki*, *Smolenſkow*, *Czernikow*, *Kiow*, *Petſcherſkaja Krepoſt*, (or Fortreſs) *Poltowa*, *Belgorod*, *Backmath*, *Sered*, *Nowaja Krepoſt*, (or new Fortreſs.) *Czaritzin*, with the Lines between the Rivers *Wolga* and *Donn*, *Aſtracan*, *Tereck*, *Uſa*, *Jamiſchew*, *Tara*, *Zaarev-Keergan*, *Archangel*, *Nova-dwinka*, and *Kolo*. Beſides theſe, there are in the Governments of *Caſan*, *Aſtracan*, and *Siberia*, ſeveral little Fortreſſes, and likewiſe, in *Perſia*, ſome conquered and new built Fortreſſes, beſides ſeveral *Coſack* Palliſadoes and Forts built of Wood, which defend themſelves. Theſe Defenſive Regular Regiments are computed to be 96,000 Men.

XVIII. THE Irregular Defenſive Troops conſiſt, (1.) Of the Nobility throughout the whole *Empire*, with their Servants; (2.) The Country Militia, in every Government; (3.) The *Coſacks*, *Kalmucks*, and all the *Tartars*, that do not go into the Field, as above-mentioned. And theſe have neither Pay, Proviſions, nor Cloaths of the Crown, but only Arms and Ammunition; They have their own Officers, and are dependant on the Governour-General in each Province.

XIX. CONCERNING their Naval Force, every one knows, that before the Reign of *Czar Peter* I. the *Ruſſians* had none. It now conſiſts, on the *Baltick*, of thirty-ſix Ships of the Line, twelve Frigats, nine Yachts, or Snows, and 240 Gallies, ſixty of which are built for the Cavalry, and ly always ready in their Ports.

Ports. The ſame Number of Gallies ly in the Magazines, in Numbred Pieces, ready, upon Occaſion, to be put together, with their Rigging and Stores; And three Ships of the Line, and one Frigat are upon the Stocks; To this End, as much Oak, and other Timber, as is neceſſary for the Fleet, lies in the Salt Water, near *Stara Ruſa*.

XX. THIS whole Fleet, which is divided into three Squadrons, is commanded by an Admiral-General in the *Center*, who bears a *White* Flag, with a *Burgundian* or *Crimſon* Croſs. The *Van* has an Admiral, who bears a *Blue* Flag, with a *White* Croſs. The *Rear* has, likewiſe, an Admiral, who bears a *Red* Flag, with a *White* Croſs. Each of theſe three Squadrons has a Vice-Admiral, a Rear-Admiral, and three Commadores.

XXI. THE Gallies are commanded by an Admiral, two Vice-Admirals, three Rear-Admirals, and three Commadores. Their Flags are of the ſame Colours as thoſe of the Squadrons they belong to, but of a different Form.

XXII. WHEN the *Czar* commands his Fleet in Perſon, his Ship bears the Royal Standard of the *Empire*, which is Yellow, and in the middle of it are the Arms of the *Empire*, with the *Black Eagle*, and a Repreſentation of the four Seas, *viz.* the *White Sea*, the *Caſpian Sea*, the *Black Sea*, and the *Baltick*.

XXIII. RUSSIA had alſo a Fleet in the *Black Sea*; But ſince the *Turks* recover'd *Azow*, ſome of the Ships have been ſold to them, and the Reſt ly yet in *Stavror*, on the River *Donn*, in a dry, cover'd Dock.

XXIV. IN the *Caſpian Sea*, *Ruſſia* has no conſtant Fleet; But only, on Account of the War in *Perſia*, has had ſome Yachts or Snows, with ſome Gallies, and other ſmall Veſſels.

XXV. IN the *White Sea*, near *Archangel*, and towards the Kingdom of *Japan*, *Ruſſia* has hitherto had no Men of War; But of late ſome Sea-Officers and Ship-Carpenters have been ſent thither, as alſo to *Siberia*, in Order to look out for good Havens, and convenient Places to build Ships; And the Governour-General of *Siberia*, *Dolgorucki*, has Orders to aſſiſt them with Men, and all Neceſſaries.

XXVI. IN the common printed News-Papers, of the 20th of *April*, of this inſtant Year 1730, Mention is made, that the Perſons

ſons who were ſent thither, in the Year 1727, were return'd to *Muſcow*, and had given an Account of their Voyage and Succeſs.

XXVII. In my Map, the Reader will find the Names of every one of the Places, where they built any Ships, as, 1. the River *Ochota* and *Kamtſchatki*; 2. the River *Lena*; From the Mouth of which, as they have reported, it will be very difficult to double the Point of *Kamtſchatki*, or Promontory of *Tabin*, as it is call'd; And I know that the ſame Account has been, before this given, upon ſure Grounds. But from *Kamtſchatki* and the Lake of *Lama*, it may be done, if a Want of Wood, and the *Chineſe Eaſtern Tartars*, on the River *Amour*, do not prevent it.

XXVIII. As to the *Ruſſian* Defenſive Sea Force, it conſiſts only in keeping the Havens and Fortreſſes on the Sea-Coaſt in good Order and Repair; Which tho' it be, in ſome meaſure, comprehended under the Land-Defenſe, of which I have given ſome Account above; Yet, as the Havens are not under the Care and Inſpection of the Council of War, as other Fortreſſes are, but under the immediate Direction of the Admiralty, I think it neceſſary to ſay ſomething farther concerning them. In the *Baltick*, the moſt celebrated Harbour is that near *Cronſtadt*, which is taken out of the Sea, and ſecur'd with Piles and Moles. About 300 Ships can ly with Safety there, at their Moorings However, there are three great Inconveniences, which attend it. 1. The Sea is too narrow at the Mouth of the Haven, and is ſurrounded with Rocks, and dangerous Sands; Inſomuch that the Ships cannot go out without a very fair Wind. 2. The Ice remains too long there, the Sea being ſeldom clear of it, before the latter End of *May*. 3. There is too much freſh Water, which occaſions the Ships to rot very ſoon.

XXIX. For theſe Reaſons, Czar *Peter* I. cauſed a Harbour to be made near *Reval*, at a vaſt Expence; But it being too large, and lying too much expos'd to Storms, Ships cannot ly there in Safety; And it has once happen'd, that three large Ships ſunk in the very Haven; The *Czar*, therefore, order'd another to be begun near *Rogerwych*, 7 *German* Miles from *Reval*, towards *Pernau*, on which 10000 Men have, for ſome Time, been conſtantly employ'd. If this ever comes to Perfection, it will be one of the beſt Havens in the *Baltick*. The Stone-Peer, which ſtretches into the

Sea, is about 4000 Geometrical Paces long, 40 or 50 Foot high, and the Top 50 Foot broad, fill'd up with broken Quarry-Stones. In the *White Sea*, and near *Archangel*, there are no other Sea-Ports of Note made. And on the Weſt Side of the *Caſpian* Sea, which partly belongs to *Ruſſia*, it will be very difficult to make any, becauſe of the Flatneſs of the Shoar.

XXX. On the *Black Sea*, near *Taganrock*, *Ruſſia* had the beſt Port in the World; Which, after the Peace concluded on the *Pruht*, the *Turks* entirely ruin'd, and blew up the Fortifications of it.

XXXI. Whether there are any Havens, or Conveniences for Ship-building, at the Mouth of the Lake of *Lama*, or on the *Eaſt* Side of the Country of *Kamtſchatki* (otherwiſe call'd the Iſland of *Jedſo*) towards the *Streight* of *Anian*, Time muſt inform us.

XXXII. Concerning the *Ruſſian* Mariners, they are upon the ſame Footing with the Land-Forces. They are ſummon'd from all Parts of the *Empire*, and are always kept in Places near the Sea-Ports. When they are not at Sea, they are obliged to be upon Guard, two Days, every Week, three Days at Work, and one Day they are allowed to be at their Habitations.

XXXIII. As I am now ſpeaking of the *Ruſſian* Sea-Forces, I cannot forbear mentioning here, what Honour was done to that Boat, which gave *Czar Peter* I. the firſt Hint, and Inclination for Ship-Building, and, was, in ſome Meaſure, the Origine of the *Ruſſian* Fleet. I have already made ſome Mention of this Boat above, at the End of the ſixth Chapter.

XXXIV. In the Year, 1721, after the Peace was concluded with *Sweden*, *Czar Peter* I. cauſed this Boat to be ſheath'd with Copper, and gilt; And then to be brought from *Muſcow* to *Peterſburg*, where, on a certain Day appointed, it was, with great Solemnity, launched, near the *Czar*'s Summer-Palace, and was ſaluted by all the great and ſmall Veſſels then lying at *Peterſburg*.

XXXV. Some Days after the *Czar* went in it to *Cronſtadt*, where the whole Royal Fleet lay, in the Road; The Boat was ſteer'd by the Admiral-General, and row'd by two Admirals, and two Vice-Admirals; Being accompanied by 250 Yachts, and other

other ſmall Veſſels. As ſoon as it came in Sight, all the Guns in the Fleet, and on the Fortreſſes of *Cronſtadt* and *Schlott* were fired; When it came into the Middle of the Fleet; they were fired, the ſecond Time; And, a third Time, when it came to Anchor. Every one of theſe Salutes was anſwered from the Boat, with three Shot, out of ſmall Silver-Guns, as they were, likewiſe, by all the Veſſels, in the *Czar*'s Retinue.

XXXVI. THE ſame Solemnity was obſerved on the *Czar*'s Return to *Peterſburg*, where the Boat was laid up, in the Arſenal, as a Monument to Poſterity.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Chief Families in the RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

SUMMARY.

§. I. *WHat put the Author upon giving an Account of the Chief Families of* Ruſſia. II. *to* IV. *Of the ſeveral Degrees of Nobility, and their Rank.* V. VI. *Of the Diſtinction between the ſeveral Claſſes of* Knieſes. VII. *Of the Gentry.* VIII. IX. *Of ſeveral new Degrees of Nobility and Gentry introduced in* Ruſſia. X. *to* XIII. *Of the* Knieſes, *Nobility and Gentry, which are either deſcended from* Wladimir I. *or from thoſe who were created by him.* XIV. XV. *Noble Families of Foreign Extraction.* XVI. *New created Princes, Counts and Barons.* XVII. *Of Titulary* Knieſes. XVIII. *Of the ancient Noble Families of* Ruſſia. XIX. *Of the Riſe of ſeveral Noble Families, occaſion'd by their* Czar's *marrying into them.* XX. XXI. *Of the Riſe of others, by their Merit only.* XXII. *to* XLI. *An Extract of the* Ruſſian Matricula Nobilitatis.

I. ALTHO' ſeveral eminent Men of the *Ruſſian* Nation are become known to us, in this Century, and the common News Papers have frequently taken Notice of ſome of the principal Families in *Ruſſia*; Yet we find very little Intelligence of this Kind,

Kind, in Authors who give us an Account of *Ruſſia*, except what we have in the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, in which, nevertheleſs, are many Miſtakes; Several of the chiefeſt Families being omitted, and ſome of the meaneſt inſerted as great Ones; For which Reaſon I ſhall give the Reader a brief, but more juſt Account of them.

II. NOTWITHSTANDING there are a great many *Knieſes* and *Dworians*, or Noblemen, in *Ruſſia*, of a very numerous Parentage, even to many Hundred Families; Yet it muſt be obſerv'd, 1. That thoſe differ very much in Point of the Antiquity of their Progenitors. 2. That formerly, and till this laſt Century, the Nobility did not take their Rank, according to the Antiquity of Families, or the Degree of Nobility, but according to the Number of Perſons of Merit and Diſtinction in each Family; Even Senators and Generals have not obſerved their Rank, according to their Offices and Titles, but according as they could produce more or leſs Names of Perſons, in their Families, who had ſerv'd high Offices.

III. FOR which Reaſon, it has often happen'd, that a Noble Family, of no great Antiquity, which has had many *Bojares*, Generals, and Miniſters of State in it, has taken the Rank above an Ancient Princely Family.

IV. BUT becauſe this uſed to occaſion great Diſputes and Inconveniences, Czar *Theodore* II. began to make an Alteration in it; But Czar *Peter* I. entirely aboliſh'd it, and order'd the Precedency to be obſerv'd, according to the Titles, Offices and Merits of each particular Perſon, without any Regard to Family.

V. AS to the Difference, by Birth, the *Knieſes*, (or Princes) as well as other Noblemen, may be divided into ſundry Claſſes; Among the *Knieſes* are:

VI. 1. THOSE deſcended from, or created by the *Great Prince Wolodimir* I. 2. Thoſe who are deſcended from Foreign Kings or Princes, or came from Foreign Parts. And, 3. Thoſe who have been ſince created by the ſeveral *Great Princes*, in their own Dominions.

VII. AND juſt the ſame it is with the Nobility, or *Dworians*, to which they add, in *Ruſſia*, the *Synbojarſkoy*, or Sons of *Bojares*, who hold feodal Tenures, which commonly they inherit from Father to Son; And, therefore, in Time of War, are obliged to appear in the Field, with one or more Servants.

VIII. At preſent, and in the Time of Czar *Peter* I. the *Ruſſian* Monarchs began to create Counts and Barons, Dignities formerly not known, they having none between the Princes and Inferiour Nobility. Neither was there formerly any Order of Knighthood, in *Ruſſia*.

IX. None of theſe Titles, according to the New Regulation, give a Perſon any Rank, unleſs he has, by his Merit and Ability, himſelf acquired a Poſt or Character. This has given an Opportunity to many Foreigners, of mean Extraction, but great Ability, to obtain high Offices, in *Ruſſia*.

The Ist Class.

X. Concerning the firſt Claſs of thoſe Princes, who are deſcended from *Wolodimir* the Firſt, and are in High Eſteem, to this Day, I muſt own, that I have not placed them according to their former Rank, of which not only I am ignorant, but they themſelves have never determin'd it. I have, therefore, plac'd them in Alphabetical Order, and have diſtinguiſh'd them into Great, Midling, and Meaner Families, *viz.*

XI. (I.) (1.) Dolgorucki, a numerous Family. (2.) *Odojewſki*, whereof few are remaining. (3.) *Prozorowſki*, likewiſe but few remaining. (4.) *Ramodanowſki*, of which only one remains, who has no Male-Heir. After his Death, his Son-in-Law, the young Count *Galloukin*, is to take his Name. (5.) The Field-Marſhal, *Repnin*, who has two Sons. (6.) *Trojekurow*, the only one remaining, who has no Male-Heirs. After his Death, his Siſter's Son, Count *Tolſtoy*, is appointed to take the Name. Theſe are the moſt antient of this *Claſs*.

XII. (II.) The midling Families are, (1.) *Borcatinſki*. (2.) *Chilkow*; (3.) *Kozlowſki*; (4.) *Lobanow*; (6.) *Maſalſki*; (7.) *Obolenſki*: (8.) *Sczerbatow*; (9.) *Wadholſki*; (10.) *Saccolinſki*.

XIII. (III.) There are about thirty of the meaner Families, or that have not great Eſtates; But as they are not all known to me, I ſhall only mention thoſe whom I have known, *viz.* (1.) *Belofeſkoi*; (2.) *Czertenſkoy*; (3.) *Daſchkow*; (4.) *Diabrinſkoy*; (5.) *Ga-*

(5.) *Gagarin*) (6.) *Gundorow*; (7.) *Uchtowski*; (8.) *Viazemski*, &c.

The IIᵈ Class,

XIV. Are thoſe Foreign Families, in *Ruſſia*, who, for a long Series of Time have been in equal Eſteem with the former; as, (1.) *Gallizin*, which has been almoſt counted the moſt eminent Family in the whole *Empire*. (2.) *Trubetſkoy*, of which there are five Males remaining. (3.) *Kurakin*, of which two only are Living. (4.) *Chovanſkoy*: Theſe four Families have been in *Ruſſia* upwards of Two Hundred Years, and deſcend from the *Coributian* Royal Family of *Poland*, of whom are likewiſe deſcended the *Wiſniowitzki*, *Czertorinſki* and *Sanguchkaian* Families in *Poland*. (5.) *Militinſki*, from *Mingrelia* and *Georgia*. (6.) *Sibirski*, deſcended from the *Siberian Chans*; Theſe two latter have, inconteſtably, had the firſt Rank before all other Families, with Regard to Antiquity. (7.) *Czerkaſki* from *Cabarda* (77).

XV. The following deſcend from other foreign Princes of leſs Note, as, (1.) *Uruſow*; (2.) *Scheidiakow*; (3.) *Meſczerſki*; (4.) *Juſupow*. The two former had, for a long Time, the Rank above many great Families, but loſt it about One Hundred Years ago.

The IIIᵈ Class.

XVI. The Chief of the Princes who have been created at different Times, are, (1.) *Menſchikow*, who was made Prince of the *Roman Empire*, in the Year 1706, and afterwards Prince of *Ruſſia*, has one Son only. (2.) *Cantimir*, who formerly was *Hoſpodar*, in the *Moldau*, and was made Prince of *Ruſſia*, in the Year 1711, on Account of the good Services he did the *Czar*, on the River *Prutt*. He has four Sons. To theſe we may add the *Wolſkowſkian* Family, though of leſſer Note now, who were

(77) Prince *Sunſalei Jacolowitz Zercaskoi*, from the *Circaſſian Cabarda*, came to Czar *Feodor Iwanowitz*, and aſſiſted him in Conquering the County of *Circaſs*, and the City of *Terki*. It is the chief *Circaſſian* Family, and almoſt the richeſt in *Ruſſia*, having near 70000 Peaſants. There are more Families of that Name, but they are deſcended from *Circaſſian Murſi's* or Generals.

made Princes, One Hundred and Sixty Years ago, on Account of the Merits of *Dolgorucki*, the great Progenitor of this Family, which Prince had one Natural Son, by a favourite Lady.

XVII. BESIDES theſe, there are in *Ruſſia* about Two Hundred Families of Titular *Knieſes*, or Princes of no great Extraction; Among whom we may reckon, more eſpecially, thoſe of the *Caſan* and *Caſimowian Tartars*, which the *Czar Alexei* created, and by this Means induced them to be baptized. However, they are but reckoned among the Inferiour Nobility, and even that not without Conteſt.

THE I^st CLASS OF NOBILITY.

XVIII. THERE are ſome Noble Families, who have, long ſince, been reckoned in the ſame Claſs with the chief Princes, and have preſerved their Eſteem to this Day; Such are, (1.) *Scheremetow*, of which there are eight Perſons living; Some of whom are Counts. (2.) *Romanow*, from which deſcends the preſent *Imperial* Family, and for that Reaſon ought to have the Rank above all others; But becauſe they were Noblemen before they came to the Crown, of the ſame Rank with the *Scheremetowian* Family, I have placed them here together. The Male Line of the *Romanowian* Family is extinct, by the Death of the late Emperor *Peter Petrowitz*. (3.) *Buterling*. (4.) *Wolynſkoi*; and, (5.) *Pleſczew*. Among theſe were alſo the Families of *Morozow*, *Schein* and *Gadunow*, which are all three lately extinct. To this Claſs belong alſo thoſe Families, whoſe Anceſtors were, ſome Hundreds of Years ſince, Generals and Senators, of which there are above fifty Familes; but not knowing all their Names, I can only mention the following: (1.) *Golowin*; (2.) *Tolſtoy*; (3.) *Muſchin Puſchkin*, who are all three made Counts; (4.) *Matinſchkin*; (5.) *Saltikow*; (6.) *Puſchkin*; (7.) *Kwaſinin*; (8.) *Iſmaelow*; (9.) *Tatiſchew*; (10.) *Naledinskoy*; (11.) *Jazykow*; (12.) *Beſtuſchow*; (13.) *Chitrow*; 14.) *Rzchewſkoi*.

THE

THE IIᵈ CLASS,

XIX. THERE are ſome ancient Noble *Ruſſian* Families, into which the *Czars* having married, they thereby came into great Repute; Such are, 1. *Streſchnew*; 2. *Miloſlawſki*; 3. *Nariſchkin*; 4. *Gruſchetſki*, which laſt is extinct; 5. *Apraxin*, are now Counts; 6. *Lopuchin.*

THE IIIᵈ CLASS,

XX. CONSISTS of *Ruſſian* Families, which came into great Repute, by their Merits, in the Reigns of *Peter* I. and his Father; Such are, 1. *Golowkin*, the Great Chancellor, and created a Count, has three Sons; 2. *Ivanow*, who has left two Sons, with very conſiderable Eſtates; 3. *Matheow*, a Privy-Counſellor, and Count of the *Roman Empire*, he has one Male-Heir. Theſe two latter are Sons of Prieſts. 4. *Tolſtoy*, a Privy-Counſellor, and Count. 5. *Stroganow*, three Brothers, Gentlemen of the Bed-Chamber, of whom I have made ſome Mention above. Though this Family has been reputed in *Ruſſia*, for Two Hundred Years, as a very Honourable and Wealthy Family; Yet they would never accept of any Degree of Nobility, but were contented with the Title of *Imenitoy* (*i. e.* noted.) 'Till, in the Year 1724, at the *Czarina Katherine*'s Coronation, the three Brothers were made Barons.

THE IVᵗʰ CLASS,

XXI. ARE the Foreign Families, who came to High Offices, during the Reign of *Czar Peter* I. There are, 1. *Bruce*, Grand Maſter of the Ordnance, and Count; He has no Children of his own, but Nephews in *Scotland*, who are his Heirs. 2. *Baur*, a *German*, General of the Cavalry, has left two Sons behind him. 3. Count *Canteguſe* of *Greece*, was Lieutenant-General, and left three Sons. 4. *Kreutz*, Admiral, born in *Holland*. 5. *Gordon*, a *Scotchman*, was General of the Infantry, and has left two Sons. 6. *Jaguſinſki*: Lieutenant-General and Attorney-General, born

born in *Pruſſia*. 7. *La Fort* was General Field-Marſhal, born in *Switzerland*, he made his Nephews his Heirs. 8. *Oſtermann*, Privy-Counſellor, and Baron, (*ſince Count*) born in *Weſtphalia*. 9. *Renn*, General of the Cavalry, born in *Courland*, has left two Sons. 10. *Schafirow*, Baron and Privy-Counſellor of State, of *Jewiſh* Extraction. 11. *Devier*, Lieutenant-General, and Governour-General of the Policy, born in *Portugal*. Beſides theſe, there are ſeveral other foreign Families in *Ruſſia*; But as they are in no conſiderable Poſts, I omit them.

XXII. I HAVE, beſides, had Information in *Ruſſia*, concerning the Pedigree of the Major Part of the *Ruſſian* Families, from the *Ruſſian matricula Nobilitatis*; But as by that I am not enabled to ſay which of them are extinct, or ſtill in Being, I ſhall only give the Reader a bare Extract from thence.

XXIII. THE Families, for Inſtance, that deſcend from the Princes of *Suſdahl* and *Nuſchnanowogorod* are; 1. *Schuiſkin*; 2. *Skopin*; 3. *Gorbatow*; 4. *Borboſchin*; and, 5. *Nogtiew*.

XXIV. THE Families which deſcend from the Princes of *Roſtow*, are; 1. *Golenin*; 2. *Uchatin*; 3. *Schepin*; 4. *Priimkow*; 5. *Bachtejarow*; 6. *Puſchbalſkin*; 7. *Briuchatin*; 8. *Chocholcow*; 9. *Katirew*; 10. *Buinoſow*, 11. *Temkin*; 12. *Lobanow*; 13. *Laſtkinin* and *Koſatkin*.

XXV. THE Families who reckon themſelves deſcended from the Princes of *Brelo-Ozerki*, are; 1. *Kargopolſki*; 2. *Kemski*; 3. *Uchtowski*; 4. *Schechowski*; 5. *Wſeviatski*; 6. *Schelepanski*; 7. *Ugolski*; 8. *Diabrinski*, and *Baibalski*.

XXVI. FAMILIES deſcending from the Princes of *Twerr*, are; 1. *Holmski*; 2. *Mikulinski*; 3. *Dorogobuſchki*; 4. *Czernatepski*; 5. *Teletewski*; 6. *Uchatski*; 7. *Poraſchinski* and *Kaſchinski*.

XXVII. FAMILIES deſcending from the *Staradubian* Princes, are; 1. *Rapolowski*; 2. *Poſcharski*; 3. *Paletſchki*; 4. *Kriwoborski*; 5. *Romadanowski*; 6. *Golibieſowski*; 7. *Gagarinski*; 8. *Striginski*; 9. *Kowrowski*; 10. *Gundarowski*; 11. *Chilcowski*; 12. *Tatewski*; 13. *Tulopowski*; 14. *Lalouski* and *Neugodkinski*.

XXVIII. FAMILIES deſcending from the Princes of *Smolenſkow*; are, 1. *Waſemſki*. 2. *Phominſki*. 3. *Mortkimſki*. 4. *Kropotkinſki*.

XXIX. FA-

XXIX. FAMILIES deſcending from the Princes of *Jariſlaw*; 1. *Sudski.* 2. *Moloski.* 3. *Sutſchki.* 4. *Proſorowski.* 5. *Uchatinski.* 6. *Penkowski.* 7. *Kurbski.* 8. *Scheſtunowski.* 9. *Saſekinski.* 10. *Schachowski.* 11. *Schetininski.* 12. *Ochliabininski.* 13. *Drewski.* 14. *Chworotinski.* 15. *Mortkinski.* 16. *Lewski.* 17. *Solnitſchowski.*

XXX. FAMILIES deſcending from the Princes of *Obolenski*; 1. *Nogotkowski.* 2. *Curliatewski.* 3. *Striginski.* 4. *Tetepnewski.* 5. *Nemiewski.* 6. *Tureninski.* 7. *Repininski.* 8. *Penkinski.* 9. *Gorenski.* 10. *Solatski.* 11. *Serebrenski.* 12. *Schewirewski.* 13. *Likowski.* 14. *Schepinski.* 15. *Kaſchinski.* 16. *Dolgorukski.* 17. *Scherbatowski.* 18. *Troſtenski.* 19. *Tiuphakinski.* 20. *Koliſchinski.* 21. *Naſdrawatinski.* 22. *Bielewski.* 23. *Boraſchewski*, and *Kumenski.*

XXXI. FAMILIES deſcending from the Princes of *Glinski*; *viz.* A *Tartarian* Prince, call'd *Alexa*, came to the *Grand Prince* of *Lithuania*, *Witow Keſtutiewitz*; This Prince was baptiz'd, and named *Alexander*; He had three Eſtates, call'd *Glinsk*, *Linitza*, and *Podotwa.* His Son, *Iwan*, had three Sons, *viz. Boris*, *Fædor*, and *Senen*, from which deſcend the *Glinskian* Families.

XXXII. THE *Meſcherskian Knieſes* deſcend from the *Tartarian Bolſchoi Orda*; The Head of their Family was *Machmet*, who ſettled on the River *Meſchersk*, his Son *Becklemiſch* was baptized, and nam'd *Michael*, and he had a Son nam'd *Fædor Meſchirskoi.*

XXXIII. THE *Babitzewskian* and *Putatitzewskian* Families are deſcended from *Knies Simon Dmitrowitz*, who had four Sons.

XXXIV. THE *Galitzian* (not *Galitzincian*) Family deſcends from the Grand Prince *Jariſlow Wſewoloditz*, who had nine Sons, the fourth of whom was called *Conſtantine Galitzkoi.*

XXXV. THE *Phominskian*, *Kriukowskian*, *Sabakinskian*, *Trawinskian*, *Piriewskian*, and *Koſlowskian* Families, deſcend from the eldeſt Son of the Grand Prince *Wolodimir*, *Monomachus*, *Muſtiſlaw*, of *Smolenskow.*

XXXVI. THE *Worontzowian* and *Weniaminowſian* Families deſcend from a Foreigner, who was in the Service of the Grand Prince *Jariſlaw Wladimirowitz.*

XXXVII. THE

XXXVII. The *Kwaſchinian*, *Samarininian*, *Dudininian*, *Kaſladinian*, and *Pojarkowian* Families, deſcend from *Rodion Neſterowitz*, of *Kiow*, who had a Son called *Iwan Kwaſchna*.

XXXVIII. The *Saburowian*, *Godunowian*, *Pilemowian*, and *Weljaminowian* Families, deſcend from a *Tartarian* Prince, from *Orda*, who was baptized in the Time of *Iwan Danielowitz*.

XXXIX. The *Pleſchewkian* Family deſcends from a *Bojar* of *Czernikow*, who had five Sons, from the ſecond of which, called *Thephan*, deſcends the *Ignatewi-Schereb-Schowi-Phomin* and *Phefchewian* Families.

XL. The *Chowrin* and *Gollowinskian* Families deſcend from Prince *Stepan Waſiliewitz*, who ſignalized himſelf in the Service of the Grand Prince *Waſilie Dmitrewitz*.

XLI. The *Moroſowian* and *Saltikowian* Families deſcend from Foreigners out of *Pruſſia*, the chief Progenitors of whom were *Michael Praſchenin*, and his Son *Terentei Morom*, who were in the Service of the Grand Prince, *Alexander Jariſlawitz Newskoy*, and *Terentei* ſignalizing himſelf very much, the Grand Prince made him a *Bojar*.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the moſt noted Mercantile and Fair-Towns, as alſo of the Mines, Minerals, Vegetables, Foſſils, Curioſities, Antiquities, Manufactures, Fabricks, &c. in the Russian Empire, *digeſted into Alphabetical Order.*

TO treat fully and circumſtantially of theſe Things, I ought to have divided them into ſo many ſeparate Chapters; But as I have already declared, that it was never my Intention to treat, *ex profeſſo*, of the *Empire* of *Ruſſia*, but only to touch on ſuch

Things, which I have either not met with at all, in other Authors; Or, at leaſt, found imperfectly related; Which will be a good Help to any, who may, hereafter, be deſirous of continuing the Deſcription of that Country; I ſhall content my ſelf, therefore, with giving an Alphabetial Account of the ſeveral Things, which the Title of this Chapter mentions, and ſo, by Way of Concluſion, preſent the Reader with a ſhort Miſcellaneous Hiſtory, chiefly of that Part of the *Ruſſian Empire* called *Siberia*; viz.

ACACIA. There are two Sorts of this, *viz.* the true and *Pſeudo*-or Baſtard-*Acacia*. This latter is found, in great Plenty, in *Siberia*, near the City of *Tomskoi*; The Bloſſom is yellow, and its Pods contain a Kind of ſmall black Pea, or Vetch, which taſtes bitter; And, therefore, they muſt be boiled in two or three Waters, before they are eatable; For which Reaſon, they ſeldom are uſed for Food. The *Ruſſian* Girls ſtring them like Necklaces, and ty them about their Necks and Hands.

ACCOUNTS. All Accounts in *Ruſſia* are kept, in *Rubels*, *Grions* and *Kopeicks*.

AGATE. A precious Stone, which is partly tranſparent, and partly opaque; And of divers Colours, as red, white, black and coral Colour. In *Siberia*, in the Province of *Dauria*, along the Rivers *Amur* and *Argun*, is found a tranſparent Sort. In the River *Tomm*, near the City of *Tomskoi*, and higher up, are found ſmall Stones of a deeper Red, and tranſparent; Which, when they are poliſhed, can hardly be diſtinguiſhed from red Opaque *Agate*; But whether they are really ſo, or not, I leave others to judge.

ACONITUM, or *Doronicum*, (*Wolfsbane*) is found in *Siberia*, near the City of *Craſnoyahr*; The *Ruſſians* mix it with ſome haſhed Meat, make Balls of it, and lay them in the Woods, for the Wolves; Which, when they eat them, makes them vomit 'till they dy, and if other Wolves eat of what has been vomited up, they dy likewiſe.

ADAMAWOI-KOST, of which *Hubner* takes Notice; (in his *Zeitungs Lexicon*, or *Gazetteer*;) But very few of the Inhabitants of *Ruſſia* know either the Name, or the Thing itſelf. In the *German* Tongue, it is called *Adam's Knochen* (*Adam's Bones.*)

However, ſome ſay, that this Mineral is dug out of the Earth, near *Archangel*, and is as hard as a Stone, black as a Coal, and has a Grain like Fir. And though I have not been in that Part of *Ruſſia*; I have found Plenty of it, on the Shoar of the River *Oby*, according to the above Deſcription; Of the Bigneſs of a Man's Head, ſome Pieces larger, ſome ſmaller. The *Oſtiacks*, on the River *Oby*, and the *Ruſſians*, who live thereabouts, make Spindles of it, with which they ſpin Yarn of Nettles, and other Things. They work it like Wood, though it is harder and more compact. I had written down the Name by which the *Oſtiacks* call it; But my Manual being loſt, as I have ſaid above, I have forgot it: Now whether this be the ſame *Adamawoy-Koſt*, of which other Authors make mention, I leave undetermined: However, I do not know that there is any other black petrified Wood, excepting this, to be found in *Ruſſia*. The *Oſtiacks* ſay, that this black Stony-Wood, falls from the high Shoars of the Rivers *Oby*, and *Taſſada*. It is likewiſe to be met with between the Cities of *Tobolſki* and *Tumen*.

ALABASTER; Near the City of *Todma*, at a Place called *Peremegora*, are Alabaſter-Mountains, in which are Wonderful Subterraneous Paſſages, and *Grottos*, formed by Nature, which the *Ruſſians* call *Pitſchorets*. This Subſtance is, however, ſomewhat ſofter than other Alabaſter. Another ſuch wonderful *Grotto*, conſiſting of ſuch ſoft Alabaſter-Stones, is in *Ugoria*, near the City of *Kongar*, of which more hereafter.

ALBATZIN or ALBATSCHIN. A demoliſhed City on the River *Amour*, ſituated in the *Eaſt-Tartarian* Country of *Niuchæa*, which was formerly a *Ruſſian* Barrier Town, againſt the *Eaſt-Tartars*; But in the Year 1689, by a Treaty of Peace, it was ſurrendered to the *Chineſe*, and razed: From the City of *Nertſchinſkoi* thither, is fourteen Days Journey, down the River. Between theſe two Places are caught the very beſt Sables: The Soil, near the City of *Albatzin*, is flat, and ſo fertile, that the Corn grows of itſelf, without being ſowed; For when the *Ruſſians* ſurrendered this Place, which happen'd in Summer-time, they were obliged to leave the Corn, which was not yet ripe, ſtanding; And as there were no Inhabitants left in it, and the whole Coun-

Country became a Wilderneſs; the Corn ſows itſelf, and grows up yearly of itſelf.

ALMONDS, *Bitter Almonds*, grow near the River *Don*, as alſo in the *Beſt-Arabian Deſarts*, between the Rivers *Dnieper* and *Buck*. They grow only on ſmall Shrubs, hardly eighteen or Twenty Inches high.

ALNUS NIGRA, in the *Ruſſian* Tongue, called *Scherumka*, in the *Tartarian Gumuruth*, and *Moyl*, (in *Engliſh Black Alder*,) grows plentifully in *Siberia*; But no *Elder* is found there. The *Ruſſians* dry the *Elder-Berries*, beat them to Powder, and bake them, in white Bread, in the Nature of Tarts.

ALTYN. A Silver Coin in *Ruſſia*, equal to three *Kopeiks*. 33 $\frac{1}{3}$ *Altyns* make a *Rubel*; It is a *Tartarian* Name, and ſignifies ſix, becauſe ſix *Dengas* makes an *Altyn*.

ALUM. Between *Tula* and *Kaluga*, near a Place called *Koſelſki* in *Ruſſia*, is an *Alum Mine*; And, in *Siberia*, is a Lake, the Water of which is clear and freſh; This leaves, in the Heat of the Summer-Seaſon, a certain *Alummy* Salt, on the Shoars; But, it ſeems, it contains more Salt than Acidity, and they are difficult to ſeparate. The *Kamina Maſla*, (or *Stone-Butter*) of which Mention is made in *Das Veränderte Ruſsland*, (*p.* 181.) is a liquid Matter, which ouzes out of a black Slate-Rock, near the City of *Tomſkoi*, of which, in ſome Places they make *Alum*; This *Kamina Maſla* has very much the Quality of Vitriol, is Sour, and of an Aſtringent Taſte.

AMBAR. Thus the *Ruſſians* call a Pantry, or the Room where they keep their Victuals, and all Sorts of Utenſils; *Amber*, with the *Coſacks* and *Czerkaſſians* on the *Black-Sea*, ſignifies a Cave, in which they keep their Corn, or Magazines; and *Amber*, in the *Arabick* Tongue, ſignifies to collect, or gather together.

AMBER. Some Pieces of it have been found, between the Rivers *Chatanga* and *Jeniſei*, towards the *Mare Glaciale*, and likewiſe in the Sandy Deſart between *Mungalia* and *China*.

AMETHIST. This Kind of precious Stone is found in the Mountains, near *Catharinenburg*, and ſometimes in the River *Iſett*.

AMIANTUS, or *Aſbetus.* In *Siberia*, near the River *Iſett*, and *Catherinenburg*, is a Mountain, which was firſt diſcovered about the Year 1720; Where this Mineral is found in Plenty, and as they ſay, Cloth, Gloves, Stockings, *&c.* may be made of it, and are incombuſtible. The Stone is whitiſh Gray, but when it is wrought, it is perfectly ſoft and white, like Cotton. In the News from *Ruſſia*, in the Year 1729, ſome Mention was made of incombuſtible Linnen, which the Reader may compare with this.

AMMONIACUM or *Salmiac* and *Salarmoniac*; The *Ruſſians* call it *Naſchatir*, and the *Arabians*, *Alnuſhader*; taking the Article *al* from this latter Word, it has the ſame Pronunciation with the former; The like Affinity, I have obſerved, of more Words in the *Ruſſian* Tongue, as; *Rhubarb*, they call *Rævæn*; the *Arabians*, *Ruvam*; Alſo *Baſar* and *Bazar*; a Market; ſo likewiſe *Bagadir* and *Bahato*. In *Siberia*, near the River *Jeneſei*, towards the *Mare Glaciale*, a burning Mountain, or *Veſuvius*, throws out a certain ſort of Aſhes, which are taken for *Flores ſalis Ammoniaci*, or *Flores ſulphuris nativi*. The ſame is ſaid to be found near the Mountains *Veſuvius* and *Ætna*; vid. *Inſtit. Pharmaceuticæ*, *Joh. Roſenſtengel*, (*p.* 195.) And is perhaps the ſame, of which *Abulfeda*, *Iſmael*, *Princeps Hamah*, in the Deſcription of his Tables, *London* CIↃIXL, gives the following Account: *In Montibus Albotom* (near Samarcand) *ſpelunca eſt, cujus ſpiraculis occluſis vapor in ea denſus exoritur, noctu ignem interdiu fumum referens, in hoc eſt Alnuſhader.* (*Salarmoniac*) *Nemo poterit cavernam ingredi, niſi veſtimentis craſſis, corporique aſtrictis cooperiatur, & confeſtim inde Almuſhader auferat. Vapor de Loco in locum movetur, quem quoad apparuerit, fodiendo conſequuntur, ſi nullus fuerit fornix, qui dilationi vaporis impedimento ſit, accedentem non lædit.*

ANTIQUITIES; It is moſt certain, that no Country in the World can ſhew more ſcarce, as well as curious, and uſeful Antiquities, ſerving to clear up the Obſcurities of the Hiſtory of the Ancient *Scyths*, than the *Ruſſian Empire:* And it is great Pity, that there was not a Beginning made twenty or thirty Years ago, to furniſh the *Czar*'s Cabinet of Rarities with a Collection of theſe *Scythian* Antiquities. The Author of *Das Verænderte*

Ruſsland juſt hints ſomething concerning them; But the *Idols*, *Minotaurs*, and Ancient Manuſcripts, mention'd by him, were not found near *Samarcand*, nor near the *Caſpian Sea*, as that Author would have it, (*p.* 124, and *p.* 225.) But were brought from the Deſarts of the *Kalmucks*, on each Side of the River *Irtiſch*, upwards, out of the *Pagan* Temples and Tombs; And as to the Manuſcripts, mentioned by that Author, they conſiſt of *Tanguthian*, *Mungalian* and *Kalmuckian* Characters, not upon Parchment, but upon a thick Paper, made of Cotton or Silk, done over with black and blew Verniſh (78); Upon which the Characters or Letters are not wrote, but printed, as we print Linnen or Callico (79); And the Letters are partly of a Yellow or Gold- and partly of a White or Silver-Colour. But as they are already known in *Europe*, having been engraven on Copper, and publiſhed by the learned Mr. *Mencke*, in the *Acta Eruditorum Lipſ.* (though I could have added, at leaſt, ten or twelve Pieces, which to avoid Expences, I made a Preſent of to ſome Friends) I chuſe only to add here another Sort of Ancient Writing, which is not impreſſed, like the former, on broad and long blew *Chineſe* Silk Matts, or Paper, but on curious fine white Linnen-Paper, juſt as it is repreſented in the Copper Plate, *Numb.* I. both as to Length and Breadth, the Original of which I have yet by me. *A.* is the Face, or Right Side, and *B.* the Reverſe. Theſe Writings were found by a *Ruſſian*, born at *Craſnoyahr*, towards the Extremity of the River *Jeniſei*, where a little River, called *Kemtſchyk*, falls into it, in which Place, formerly, an ancient Chapel ſtood. I have ſhewn this Writing to ſeveral *Ruſſians*, *Tartars* and *Kalmucks*; but they did not underſtand it; When I come to the Titles, *Medals*, *Rune*-Stones, Letters and Characters, I ſhall give a farther Account of the like Writings; And as to the *Idols*, *Minotaurs*, &c. of which *Das Verænderte Ruſſ-*

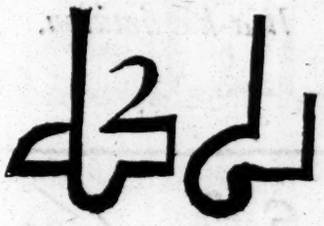
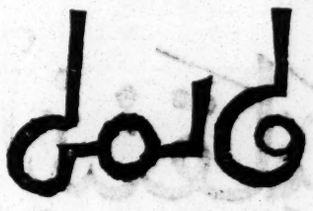
(78) Theſe Papers are roll'd up, according to the Cuſtom of the Ancients, and not bound like our Books; The *Swedes*, at their Return from their Captivity, may have brought about two Hundred of theſe Leaves into *Europe*. But ſince they cannot be interpreted here, it will be ſufficient to ſhew the Publick the Nature of thoſe Characters, in Order to ſee the Difference between the Manner of Writing of this and other Oriental Nations.

(79) In the Year 1723, at *Tobolsky*, I ſaw one of theſe wooden Forms, for printing ſuch *Kalmuck* Letters, in the Governour's Houſe. This Governour, *Knies Czerkaski*, has a fine Collection of Curioſities, of which he is a great Admirer.

Ruſsland ſpeaks, they have been brought not only from the Places and Tombs, above-mentioned; But they, or the like, have alſo been taken from the *Oſtiacks*, on the Rivers *Irtiſch* and *Oby*, when they were baptized; Among which there are ſome of above a Foot high, of Metal, very artificially caſt: The *Oſtiacks* ſay, they inherited them from the Ancient *Aſiatick Scythians* or *Tzudi*, who inhabited thoſe Countries, before they came thither; Which may be true enough, becauſe theſe People, who formerly were one and the ſame Nation with the *Permekes*, *Lapplanders* and *Finnlanders*, are too ſtupid and ſimple to have made any ſuch Work. This appears by their other Idols, which are only rough-hewn Pieces of Wood or Stone, hung over with Rags; and by the Copper Cut, *Tab.* IX. which repreſents a Plate of Metal, that was found among them, and which they worſhipped, for no other Reaſon, but becauſe of the Figures of ſeveral Animals, as Harts, Dogs, *&c.* which are repreſented upon it (80); Theſe they alſo uſed to paint upon their *Lapponian* Drums, and, in their Hunting and Fiſhing, made Uſe of them, in their ſuperſtitious Idolatry; The like Figures of Animals are alſo to be found on Rocks and Stones. (See *Characters.*) *The Learned Profeſſor of the Oriental* Languages, Mr. *Kohr*, of *Leipzig*, has made the following Explication and Remarks upon the above-mentioned Metal, Plate or Medal, to be ſeen (*Tab.* X.) in *Arabick*, and *Roman* Characters, and the *Arabick* Sentence is there ſet down in *Engliſh.*

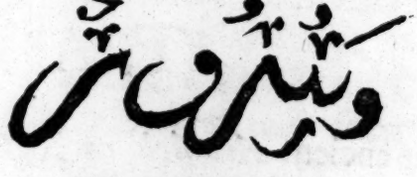
(80) In *Tab. VI.* the Reader will ſee the Repreſentation of ſome ſuch Drums and Idols, which were found among the *Barabintzian Tartars*, who have the ſame ſuperſtitious Cuſtoms as the *Oſtiacks.*

TABLE X.

The ancient *Arabick* or *Kufian* Character.	The modern *Arabick* Character, *Nis'-chi.*
	
There will be given by God (to the Man who seeks him) the following good Gifts, *viz.*	*Lethâlébe-hi.*
	
Blessing, Encrease, Abundance, Prosperity,	*Barákaton.*
	
And Plenty, (of Fruits) great Riches,	*Wa-* { *thsámeron.* *thsómeron.*

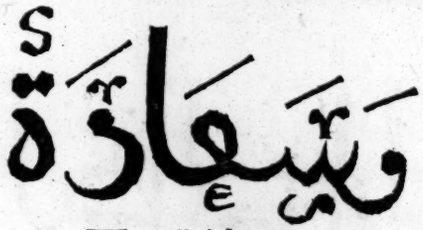
And





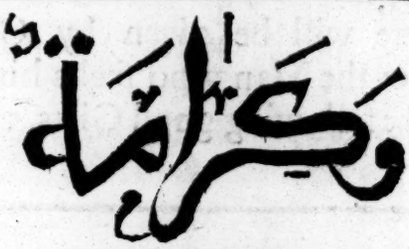
And Joy, *Wa-ſorûron.*



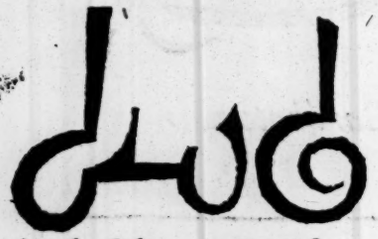


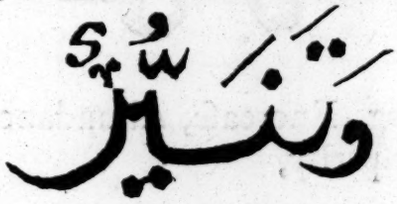
And Grace, Aſſiſtance, Favour: *Wa-ſäâdäton.*





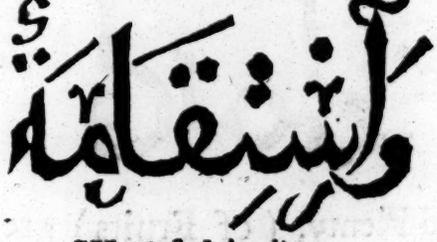
And he ſhall receive Honour, Dignity, Generoſity from others, *Wa-kärâmäton.*





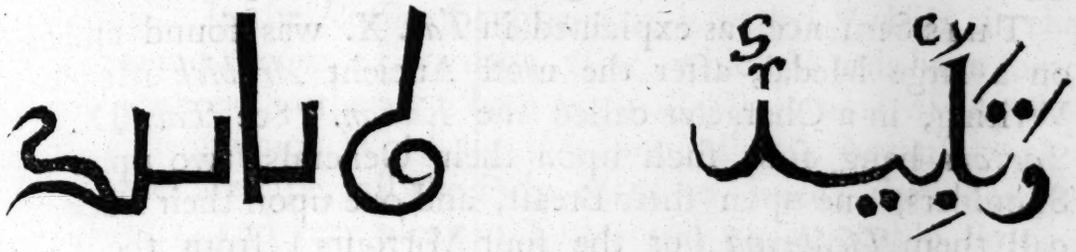
And Glory, Praiſe, *Wa-tanáyjoron.*



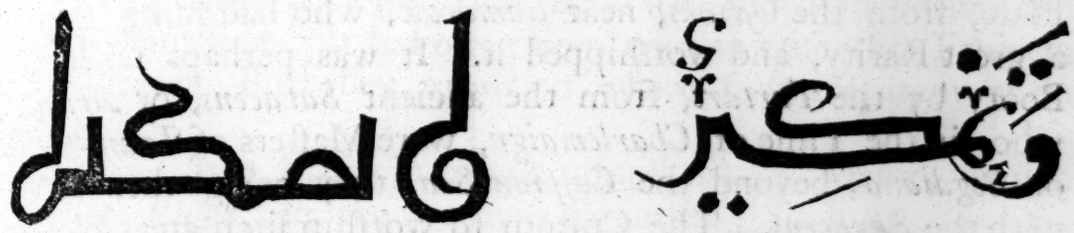


And Stability, Welfare, *Wa-ëſtekâmäton.*

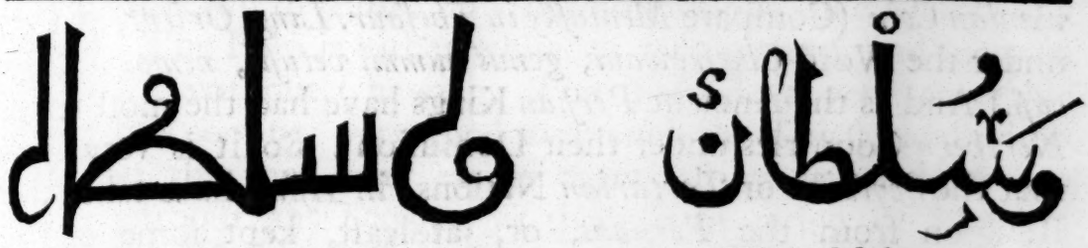
And



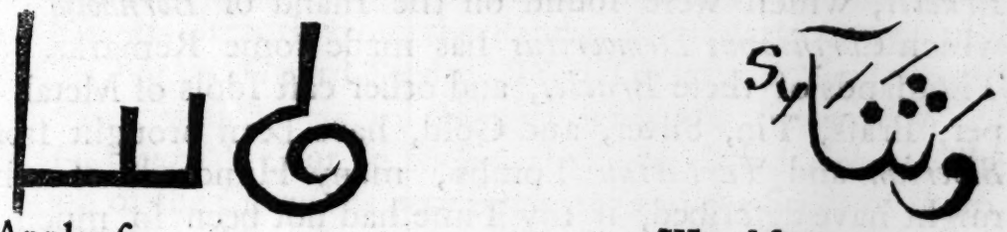
And Eternalizatio n; *Wa-táäbîdon.*



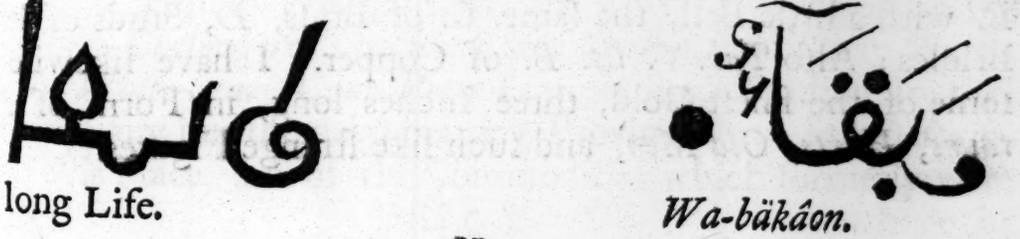
And ſtore of Corn, and other Proviſions, for the Time to come: *Wa-tämkîron.*



And Power, Authority, Strength, to execute a Deſign, *Wa-ſulthânon.*



And Applauſe, *Wa-thſänaon.*



And long Life. *Wa-bäkâon.*

THIS Sentence, as explained in *Tab.* X. was found emboſſed on a large Medal, after the moſt Ancient *Arabick* Manner of Writing, in a Character called the *Kuſian.* See *Tab.* IX. The *Tartars* hang four ſuch upon their Generals, two upon their Shoulders, one upon their Breaſt, and one upon their Back, and call them *Tſcâhrinä* (or the four Mirrours) from the *Perſian* Word *Tſchehâr*, (*i. e.* four) and from the *Turkiſh* Word *Ajna*, or *Ajîne*, a *Mirrour.* The *Ruſſians* took this Medal, or Metal Plate, from the *Oſtiaks*, near *Samarow*, who had hung it up, as a great Rarity, and worſhipped it. It was perhaps taken as a Booty by the *Tartars*, from the ancient *Saracens*, or *Arabians*, who, in the Time of *Charlemaign*, were Maſters of *Trans-Oxana* or *Sogdiana*, beyond the *Caſpian Sea*, they being then at War with the *Saracens.* The Cuſtom to worſhip ſuch great Plates or Medals, may have been propagated among the *Tartars*, by the Ancient *Perſians*, who, in the Time of the Kings *Choſroes*, did alſo Worſhip a certain Medal, called *Chuſrewanî dîrem*, or the *Choſrowanian Coin* (Compare *Meninſky in Theſaur. Ling. Orient*, *p.* 1897, under the Word *Chæſrewanî*, *genus nummi vetuſti*, *nempe a Choſroe cuſi.*) And as the Ancient *Perſian* Kings have had the moſt remote *Northern* Countries under their Dominion; So it is very likely that the *Scythian* or *Tartarian* Nations, in *Aſia*, have taken their Religion from the *Perſians*, or, at leaſt, kept ſome of their Rites. In the Year 1725, Monſ. *Jacob von Melle* publiſhed ſome Sheets, in which he treats of thoſe ſmall golden Idols, call'd *Bractei*, which were found on the Iſland of *Bornholm*; Upon which *Chriſtianus Democritus* has made ſome Remarks. Many Thouſands of theſe *Bractei*, and other caſt Idols of Metal, Copper, Braſs, Tin, Silver, and Gold, have been brought from the *Siberian* and *Tartarian* Tombs, many Hundreds of which I might have deſcribed, if my Time had not been ſo much taken up with my Geographical Work, during my Stay in *Ruſſia*; Some of theſe are to be ſeen in *Tab.* III. *A.* was of Copper, *B.* with a little Bell, the ſame. *C.* of Braſs, *D*, Studs of Horſes Bridles; Alſo *Tab.* V. *lit. B.* of Copper. I have likewiſe ſeen ſome of the fineſt Gold, three Inches long, in Form of *Minotaurs*, *Harts*, *Old Men*, and ſuch like ſtrange Figures.

Apple. In the *Ruſſian* Language it is called *Jabliki*, in the *Tartarian* and *Kalmuck* Language *Alma*, which Words have ſome Affinity with each other. There is, in *Ruſſia*, a Sort of Apples called *Naliv*, which Word ſignifies poured full, becauſe when theſe Apples are ripe, all the Pulp turns to Juice; they have a ſweetiſh-tart, and very pleaſant Taſte, and an agreeable Smell; They are ſo tranſparent, that if they are held againſt the Sun, one may ſee through them, and count almoſt all the Seeds in them; And when they fall from the Tree, the Skin burſts, and the Juice runs out. It has often been tried to raiſe this Fruit in other Places; But they grow no where ſo tranſparent as in *Muſcow*.

Arbus. Is a Fruit in Shape almoſt like a Melon, which grows in *Ruſſia*, in the warmeſt Countries; Such as *Aſtracan*, *Azow*, and *Kiow*. The Fruit is of a dark Green Colour, quite round, and on the Top flat; On the Stalk, there are round Wales, like Hoops, and this Fruit is as big as the largeſt Gourd; Within, it is full of Pulp, and has no Hollow, like Melons and Gourds: The Pulp is either white or red, watery, and melts in the Mouth without Chewing; The Taſte is a very agreeable Sweet; It is cooling, very good to quench the Thirſt, and wholſome; So that one may eat of them faſting as much as one pleaſes, without any Danger, as there is in eating of Melons; The Leaves of this Fruit are very large, deeply indented, and dark Green; The Seed does not ly in the Middle, as in Melons and Gourds, but is here and there buried in the Pulp, 'till within three Fingers Breadth from the Rind; It is dark Gray, and flat, not ſo big as Gourd-Seeds: The *Turks* and *Tartars* call them *Karbus*, which has an Affinity with the *German* Word *Kurbis*, (a *Gourd.*) But in *Ruſſia*, they are called *Arbus*; The Deſcription of the *Citrulli* is very like this, and the Seeds of them, and of the Water-Melons are very like the Seeds of this Fruit.

Archangel. In the *Ruſſian* Language, *Gorod Archangels Koi*, is Five Hundred *Werſts* from the City of *Wologda*, in the Province of *Cholmogorod*, on the River *Dwina*, and thirty Werſts from the *White Sea*. *Czar Peter* I. prohibited Trading to that Place from any but the neighbouring Provinces. A full Deſcription of this Place, and of the Commodities which formerly were

brought thither from *Ruſſia*, may be ſeen in *Das Verænderte Ruſsland*, (*p.* 407.) He that will travel in Winter-Time, from *Archangel* to *Peterſburg*, muſt provide himſelf well againſt Cold and Hunger; Becauſe between *Archangel* and the Lake *Onega*, is almoſt wholly a Wilderneſs, without Houſe or Village to be ſeen, and Travellers are obliged to ly two or three Nights in the open Air.

ARGALI, Are a ſort of wild Goats, in *Siberia*, near the City of *Craſnoyahr*, which have their Horns not upon the Top, but on the Sides of their Heads, and they grow ſo large and heavy, that theſe Animals cannot feed on flat even Ground, like other Sheep and Goats, but with their Heads erect, at the bottom of the Mountains; This is the ſame Animal which the *Tartars* call *Argara*; (vid. *l'Hiſt. Genealog. des Tartars, â Leyden*, 1726, *p.* 72.) and not the *Hyena*, as ſome think.

ARIKI or *Arki*. Thus the *Tartars* and *Kalmucks* call the Brandy which they diſtil from Mare's, or Cow's Milk; They put the Milk in raw Ox-Hides, ſewn into Bags, and there let it grow ſour and thick; They afterwards ſhake it ſo long, 'till a thick Cream ſettles upon it; This they take off, and dry it in the Sun, and treat their Gueſts with it; And the ſour Milk they either drink, or diſtil the ſaid Brandy from it; The ſour Milk which they drink, they call *Kumiſſe*.

ARSCHYN, Is a *Ruſſian* Meaſure, twenty-eight Inches long, and is divided into ſixteen *Werſchock*, or Parts, ſo that each Quarter of this Meaſure contains four *Werſchocks*; three *Arſchyn* make a *Sazohen* or *Ruſſian* Fathom.

ASPHALT. A bituminous Matter, on the River *Irtiſch*, between the Salt Lake *Jamiſchewa*, and the Seven *Palati*, or Houſes; It burns when held to a Candle, and does not ly flat, but ſtands on Edge, like ſo many Leaves of Slate, and is of a browniſh Colour.

ASTRACAN. This City, as well as its Inhabitants, and their Trade, is deſcribed at large, in *Das Verænderte Ruſsland*, (*p.* 431.) And as to the Trade from thence to the *Southern Aſiatick* Countries, it is certain, that from this Place, one may correſpond all over *India*. In the Year 1716, there was a *German* Miniſter in *Aſtracan*, who had wrote to the Miſſionaries in *Tranquebar*,

quebar, by the Ships which went thither from *Europe*, and he received an Anſwer to his Letter in *Aſtracan*, by a *Malabarian* Merchant, who came thither by Land, through *Perſia*. The Merchant was born in *Coromandel*, who after giving the ſaid Miniſter a handſome Entertainment, took Letters back with him again; This Place being, on Account of Trade, viſited by ſo many ſeveral Nations, near thirty Languages are ſpoken there. The *Armenians*, who trade, in the *Eaſtern* Countries, as the *Jews* do in *Europe*, travel backwards and forwards almoſt every where; Particularly to the Cities of *Samarcand*, *Buchara*, *Balk*, *Caſka*, and to the Capital City of *Jerkeen*, in *Little Buchary* (81); But not into *Great Tartary*. When they travel to theſe Places with *Caravans*, they have eight Days Journy through Sandy Deſarts; And the Winds from the *Caſpian Sea* covering the Roads continually with Sand, they direct their Courſe by Means of certain Stars. Upon this Journey they uſe Camels, which, in Caſe of Neceſſity will live eight Days, without Victuals, if they have only a handful of Salt to lick, once in four and twenty Hours. Theſe Camels carry Leather Veſſels with freſh Water, and a Sort of Square Leather Baſkets, one on each Side, in which are Bedding for the Paſſengers to ſit and reſt upon. Thus two Perſons may ſit commodioſly on one *Camel* (82). In the Year 1642, the Plague raged in the City of *Aſtracan*, with ſuch Violence, that about Forty Thouſand People died of it. There are twenty-two Vineyards belonging to the Crown, and ſix to the Convent. The latter

(81) If the *Armenians* were as good *Chriſtians* as they are Traders, they might do a great deal of Good among the *Heathens*; Since a Trade is now carried on again, from the City of *Jercken*, as far as *China*. *Vid. Hornii Neuhoff, pars ult. p.* 78.

(82) As for the Name of *Aſtracan*, ſome ſay it is deriv'd from the Word *Strachan*, which, in the *Ruſſian* Language (according to the *German* Tranſlation) ſignifies *an Artificial Canal between two Rivers*, or the *Section of a Building*. Others ſay, that as this has been a *Tartarian* City, from Time Immemorial, and the *Tartars*, in their Language, call it *Hadſchitarchan*, and add, that *Tarchan* ſignifies *a Perſon who is exempt from all Taxes or Tribute*, and *Hadſchi* a *Chief* or *Commander*; Therefore ſome ſuch Independant Chief, having firſt taken Poſſeſſion of theſe Parts, built a City there, and gave it that Name. This ſeems the more probable, becauſe, in the Ancient *Scythian* Language, the Word *Aſs* ſignifies as much, or rather more than *Hadſchi*, viz. *a Commander in Chief of an Army*, alſo a *Demi-God*. I, therefore, firmly believe, that this Name, in its Original, was *Aſs-Tarchan*, and ſo had the ſame Signification with the *Tartarian Hadſchitarchan*; Eſpecially as the *Tartars*, in *Siberia*, yet call a certain Nation, dwelling between the *Caſpian* and the *Black Sea*, by the Name of *Aſs*, of which I ſhall have Occaſion, in ſpeaking of the *Tartars*, to make ſome farther Mention.

ter ſell their Wine for three *Griffwen*, when that belonging to the Crown is ſold for four *Griffwen*, the half Awm, or twenty Gallons; the *Czerkaſſian* Tobacco, call'd, in that Country, *Zchichir*, is ſold here for four *Griffwen* a Pound, for the Benefit of the Crown.

B.

BADIAN or ANISUM STELLATUM. This the *Ruſſian Caravan* brings, in Abundance, from *China* to *Siberia* and *Muſcow*.

BARABINTZI. A *Heathen* Nation, between the Cities of *Tara* and *Tomſkoi*; They make Uſe of ſuch Drums as the *Laplanders* do, which are deſcribed *Tab.* VI. Letters *C.* and *D.* with a wooden Ladle, which ſerves for a Drum-Stick; *E.* is the Drum-Skin, and *F.* the Handle which turns round, and which the *Schaman* holds in his Left Hand, and the Drum-Stick in his Right. *G.* repreſents Pieces of Iron upon a Croſs-Stick, to make a Rattling Noiſe. An Account of their Manners and Cuſtoms is given in *Das Veränderte Ruſland*; (*p.* 76.) Formerly they were one and the ſame Nation with the *Oſtiacks*, on the River *Oby*, which both they and the *Barabintzi* told me, when I travell'd through their Country; The Diſtrict where they live, the *Ruſſians*, according to their bad Pronunciation of the *Tartarian* Words, call *Barabu*; But the *Tartars* and *Oſtiacks* call it *Barama*. In my Opinion, this muſt be the Country which, in the Hiſtory of *Achmed Arabſiades*, (*p.* 106.) is called *Adſbara*, and in *Herbelot*'s *Biblioth Orient.* (*p.* 383.) *Aſchbara*, *Ville des Getes*; On the Borders of which, *viz.* on the River *Sihon* or *Jaxertes*, *Timur Beck*, or *Tamerlan*, built the Fortreſs of *Scharuchia*, to curb that People. I have aſked the *Barabintzi*, how it came, that as they were formerly one Nation with the *Oſtiacks*, they had now different Names? They anſwered: They had the ſame Name when they and the *Oſtiacks* lived together. Now, as theſe and the former, as I have mentioned above, are of one Extraction with the *Permeki*, or *Biarmi*, it may not be improper to conſider what *Schæfferus*, in his *Lapponia*, alledges, from *Buræus*, of the *Biarmi*, *viz.* That they had their Name from

the *Finnlandian* Word *Warama*, which denotes a Hilly Country; Likewiſe that they and the *Finnlandians* were formerly one Nation. Compare with this my *Polyglott Table*, and you will ſee how far the *Finnlandians* and the *Oſtiacks* agree in their Dialects.

BATH, BATHS, HOT-BATHS. In the Country of *Kamtſchatki*, which belongs to the *Siberian* Government, there are two Hot-Baths, near the Burning Mountain; (See my Map;) And there is another, near the *Kalmuck Chontaiſch*, not far from his Summer Camp, which Bath is called *Iſæch-kull*, or *Kalan-uſun*, for *Iſſæ*, in the *Tartarian* Language, and *Kalen*, in the *Kalmuck*, ſignify *warm* or *hot* (83).

BAZAR. An *Arabian* Word, which is adopted, not only by the *Perſians*, but by the *Ruſſians*; And denotes a long and broad Street, where nothing is to be ſeen but Shops and Warehouſes, like the Markets in all *Ruſſian* Cities; Which Places are not Square as they are in *Germany*. In the *Sclavonian* and *Ruſſian* Languages, a Market is called *Reddi*, and alſo *Torg*, which latter ſignifies likewiſe, in the *Swediſh* Tongue, a *Market*.

BEAVER. In the *Ruſſian* Language, called *Bobri*, and in the *Tartarian*, *Condus*; In the Province of *Kamtſchatki* in *Siberia*, are very large ones: The Skins are about four Foot long, and two and a half Foot broad, the Hair is black, ſhort and ſoft; Theſe Skins are ſold in *China* for about ſixty *Rixdolars* a-piece, and in *Ruſſia*, not for above twenty *Rubels*, and therefore few are brought to *Ruſſia*; But whether theſe are the right Sort of *Beaver*, is yet uncertain. However, they have that Name, becauſe they have a Tail like a *Beaver*, and live in the Water; The true and common Sort of them, are in ſeveral Parts of *Siberia*, on the River *Oby*, *Irtiſch*, *Czulim*, *Kia*, and ſeveral other Rivers, in great Abundance, and are very cheap there; But they ſell them, with good Profit to the *Mungals*, and other *Tartars*, who border, and trim their Cloaths with them (84).

BEA-

(83) The *German* Words *Hitze* and *Heiſs* (*Heat*, *hot*) may have an Affinity with the *Tartarian* Word *Iſſæ* or *Iſſeck*: And the *Latin*, *caleo*, *calidus*, with the *Kalmuckian* Word *Kalen*.

(84) The *Ruſſians* and *Tartars* tell ſeveral ſtrange Things of this Animal: As, 1. They diſtinguiſh them into two different Species, one of which they call *Gulaſchniki*, i. e. *thoſe that*

BEAVER-STONES. They are not properly the Stones of a *Beaver*, but certain Bladders, covered with a thin Skin, in which is contained a Subſtance like Wax, yellow, ſoft, and of a ſtrong Smell. The *Beaver* has two of theſe Bladders, which are cut off, and then well waſhed, cleanſed and dried in a ſhady Place. In *Siberia*, on the River *Jeneiſei*, I have bought this Commodity, pretty dry, for a *Rubel per* Pound, or a *Rubel* and a half; But, at the firſt Hand, of the *Tartars*, one may often buy it cheaper: And at *Muſcow* it will yield three and a half or four Rubels.

BEES or BEEHIVES. In *Lithuania* and *Ruſſia*, the *Bees* are not kept in Hives near Houſes, but in the Woods, upon the higheſt and ſtraiteſt Fir-Trees, near the Top, where the Branches are cut off a good Diſtance below the *Bees* Neſt, and a Scaffold like a Round-Top of a Maſt, is made round the Tree, that neither Men nor Bears can eaſily climb up; Formerly the Peaſants in *Derpt* made a Contract with the Citizens of *Pleſcow*, that they might have their *Beehives* in the Woods, in the Juriſdiction of *Pleſcow*, for which every Peaſant was to pay yearly ſix *Whites*, (a *Livonian* Coin;) But when thoſe Woods were afterwards deſtroy'd, the Contract was void, and yet *Czar Iwan Waſi-*

that are idle, and the other *Robotniki*, i. e. *thoſe that work*; The latter have the worſt Skins, becauſe they do much Labour in gathering their Proviſions for the Winter. Theſe two Species have often War together; For thoſe who are idle often fall upon the other, and rob them of their Proviſions. On the other Hand, thoſe who are idle are more liable to be hunted, becauſe of their fine Skins, and the others, becauſe they feed theſe, are the more ſpar'd: From which, a very apt Application might be made to Human Life. 2. They ſay that the Beavers build Dams, at the Mouths of little Rivers, in which they keep their Fiſh, when, in Summer, the Water decreaſes in the Rivulets; Which Dams are built of Trees, ſet in thoſe Rivers, upright in the Ground, cloſe to each other, and ſo ſtrong, that neither Wind nor Water can throw them down. 3. That they ſet great Trees, with their Branches, in the like manner, in the Water, in which they live like ſo many Families, *viz.* the old Ones in the undermoſt Branches, or firſt Story; The next in the ſecond Branches; The others in the third, and ſo forth. 4. When they cut or gnaw thoſe Trees off, with their Teeth, they work 40, 50, or more together, and commonly chooſe ſuch Trees as ſtand by the Water-ſide, and will naturally fall into it, of themſelves. And when they raiſe a Tree, in Order to fix it, and, during ſuch hard Labour, one of their Company happens to break Wind backwards, or to bewray himſelf, they leave the Tree, and touch it no more. Theſe Things have been told me, not only by *Ruſſians*, but by *Kalmucks*; whether true, or no, I cannot, of my own Knowledge, affirm; But thoſe People being, at certain Times, Night and Day in the Woods, and theſe Animals having more Room and Liberty in thoſe great Wilderneſſes, than in Places more frequented, make them the more probable.

Waſſiliewitz inſiſted upon having it paid by the Peaſants of *Dorpt*, as a Right due to him.

BELAJA RYBIZA. A Fiſh in the River *Wolga*, quite white, of the Size of a large Salmon, is one of the beſt and moſt delicate Fiſhes in *Ruſſia*. The Roe is red, and the Grains are as big as ſmall Peaſe. Many take it to be a white Salmon. In *Siberia*, it is only in the Rivers *Oby* and *Irtiſch*, and is called *Nelma*.

BELGOROD or BIELAGOROD. A fine City in the *Leſſer-Ruſſia*, or the *Ukraine*, for which *Hubner* (in his *Staats und Zeitungs Lexicon*) takes the little City of *Bialogrodko*, near *Kiow*, and places it in *Wolia*. This City was built by *Wolodimir* I. in the Year 6498, according to the *Ruſſian* Calculation, and was formerly the Capital City of the *Ukraine*; In which, in latter Times, a large Garriſon has always been kept to reſiſt the *Turks*. The Governour is a Lieutenant-General, who has under him two Major-Generals, and ten Colonels of Horſe and Foot; For as the General of the *Coſacks* reſides in the City of *Baturin*, ſo the *Ruſſian*-General, in the *Ukraine*, has his Reſidence here. The River *Donez* runs through this City, over which a Wooden Bridge is built, not far from the City. A quarter of a *German* Mile from this City, lies a great Chalk-Hill, where formerly the City ſtood, and whence it has its Name; But now it ſtands in a Valley, between two Mountains. It is divided into the Old and New Town, and has three large Suburbs; The Old Town is fortified with a Rampart and a Ditch; But the New Town only with *Palliſadoes*. It is ſaid that there are neither Mice nor Rats in this City. The Garriſon is commanded chiefly by *German* Officers, who came thither with the *Ruſſian* Regiments, in the Reign of *Czar Alexei*, and have a *Lutheran* Church there. In the Year 1706, there happen'd a Fire, which reduced the greater Part of it to Aſhes.

BELUJA. A Fiſh in *Ruſſia*, in the *Hungarian* Language, called *Hauſſen*. It is caught in the Rivers that flow into the *Caſpian* and *Baltick Seas*; There are ſome alſo caught in the *Baltick*, but very ſeldom, and not ſo large as thoſe in the Rivers *Wolga* and *Donn*. This is one of the largeſt River-Fiſhes in the World, that are eatable. I have ſeen one of fifty-ſix Foot long, and near eighteen Foot thick; The Skin upon the Back is light

Grey, but under the Belly it is White, without Scales, and very like a Sturgeon, but the Snout, in Proportion, ſhorter and thicker. The Fleſh is very white, tender, and of a good Taſte, and wholeſome: This Fiſh has little or no Bones, and but little Griſtle, if you except the Head. The largeſt are cut to Pieces, ſalted, and ſent to *Muſcow*, and other Provinces. The ſmall ones, which weigh not above fifteen Pudes, (or about Six Hundred *Ruſſian* Pounds) when they are caught, in Winter-Time, are ſent whole to other Places. Of this Fiſh they Salt, and Smoak the Fleſh, and give it a Name according to the different Parts of the Fiſh; As, (1.) *Koſiack*, is of the Back; (2.) *Teſcha* of the Belly; (3.) *Tumack*, of the Cheek, which is the beſt; (4.) *Kawardak*, the Liver, Heart, Stomach, and the Fat; (5.) the Tongue and Throat; (6.) *Caviar*; (7.) *Weziga*; and (8.) *Carluck*, or the inward Skin of the Gut, of which they make Iſing-glaſs. The Name of this Fiſh, *Beluja*, ſignifies *White*, becauſe of the white Fleſh; In the Head and Stomach are found large Stones, but I do not know whether they are of any Uſe. The Stones in the Stomach are black and hard, like Touch-Stones. It is more likely, that the Fiſh ſwallows them, than that they grow in the Stomach; And for what they ſay of Stones in the Head, I could never learn the Truth with any Certainty.

Berkowez. Is a *Ruſſian* Weight, of ten *Pudes*, or Four Hundred *Ruſſian* Pounds.

Birch-Tree. In *Siberia*, in the Province of *Dauria*, the Bark of the *Birch-Tree* is black, the Wood brown, and much harder than our *Birch-wood*; But the Leaves and other Properties are the ſame with common *Birch-Trees*.

Biſert. Thus the *Ruſſians* call Beads of Glaſs of all Sorts of Colours; as red, green, white, blew, *&c.* which they buy by the Pound, and ſell them to the *Pagans* and *Tartars* in *Siberia*, who uſe them as an Ornament on their Cloaths. This *Biſert* is one of the moſt profitable Commodities, becauſe it lies in a ſmall Compaſs. The *Mungals* and *Heathens* give, for one Pound and a half of *Biſert*, a whole *Tun* of *Kitaika* or *Cotton Ware*.

Blood-Stone. *Haematites*, the brown-red Sort is found in *Siberia*, on the River *Iſett*.

Boro-

BORANEZ. I enquired among the *Tartars* and *Ruſſians* about this Commodity, but none of them knew any Thing of it, nor of the Skins, that are pretended to be prepared of it, Therefore, ſince, beſides, no credible Author aſſerts it, there is Reaſon to believe all that is ſaid of it to be fabulous.

BRAGA. A Liquor which the *Ruſſians* and *Tartars* brew of Oatmeal and Hops. It is thick and white, yet when it is freſh, it is pleaſant enough to drink, and has a tartiſh vinous Taſte; In Summer it is cooling, and not unwholſome. The Verb *Braga* is the ſame with the *Swediſh* Word *bruggia* (to *brew*). Brown Beer, the *Kalmucks* call *Schara*, which Word ſignifies red, and Brown-yellow; Becauſe the Water is ting'd of that Colour by the Ingredients. The *Uſbeck Tartars* brew *Braga* of *Rice*, and alſo of *Millet*.

C.

CABARDYN. Thus the *Ruſſians* call the *Muſk-Animal* and the *Muſk*, in order to diſtinguiſh it from the true Muſk of *Thibet* and *China*, which the *Tartars* call *Giphar*, and the *Chineſe Xe*. But the Difference, between this and the other, is not in the Animals, for they are perfectly alike, but in the *Muſk*. The Muſk of *Thibet* is of thrice as ſtrong a Smell, and, in Proportion, ſo much dearer than the *Siberian* Muſk. In the City of *Tobolſky*, I can have the *Siberian* Muſk for five or ſix Rubels a Pound, when the other is not to be had under twenty or twenty-five Rubels; The *Siberian Muſk* is whitiſh gray, the other is yellow, and the Bag ſomewhat larger: And there is ſuch a Deceit in it, that if only one Muſk-Bag or Navel, of the *Thibet* Sort, be laid among ten Pounds of *Cabardyn*, it gets as ſtrong a Smell as the other, and, therefore, this Trade requires a good Skill; Eſpecially as the Dealers that Way, have alſo the Art, to give it the true Colour. The *Arabians* call it *Dabahtal Muſk*, i. e. *Thibet Muſk*, and the *Tartars*, as I have ſaid before, call it *Giphar*. As to the *Thibet* Animal itſelf *Martinus Martini* gives us a Deſcription of it, in his *Atlas*, (*p.* 24.) He ſays: If this Animal be brought out of the *Chineſe* Provinces of *Xantum*, and *Thibet*, into other Places, it dies, like a Fiſh when it is taken out of the

Water. Of the ſame Nature are the *Siberian Animals* of this Kind, which are in great Numbers between the Cities of *Craſnoyahr* and *Abakan*; But the Reaſon of their dying, I have been told, by a *Ruſſian* who had caught ſeveral of them with a Snare, which he laid in a Wood between two Trees, where there being a Kind of a Paſſage, he hung ſome white Moſs, which they are very fond of. In Summer, they live in the thickeſt Woods, and never appear but in Winter, and then they are ſo very wild, that they will not eat after they are caught, and that is the Reaſon of their dying. They do not run like other Beaſts, but jump and leap continually. Colonel *Kanifer* (who was ſome Years Priſoner at *Jeneſei* and *Ilimſki*) told me, that if they were caught young (which, however, was very difficult) they might be tamed. When a Wolf or Fox purſues this Animal, it runs up to the Top of the higheſt and ſteepeſt Rocks; and when it is purſued thither, it will jump down upon a Stone or Shelf, on the Declivity of the Rock, tho' it be but two Hands broad, and ſometimes to the Depth of twenty or twenty-four Foot, where it is at once ſafe; For neither Fox, nor Wolf, will venture ſuch a Leap after it. Juſt the ſame this Animal does when it is hunted; But then a Shot will often fetch it down. The *Ruſſians* and *Tartars*, near *Craſnoyahr* and *Abakan*, eat it, as they do Veniſon. I my ſelf have taſted it, but it has a very ſtrong Taſte of the Muſk; But the Fleſh of the Females does not taſte ſo Rank; Becauſe they have no Muſk; Neither do their Teeth project out, like thoſe of the Male. This Animal is not ſo high as our Deer, but full as long, and hath much ſuch Hair, but more harſh, and not a brown Grey, but a white Grey; In other Things, it is juſt like the Deer. The Muſk is not in the Teſticles, but is lodged under the Belly, between the Fleſh and Skin, juſt where the Yard pierces the Skin, As to the Preparation of the Muſk, I refer the Reader to *Kircher*, and other Authors. It is certain that the Muſk in theſe Animals is not always of the ſame Strength, neither in hot nor cold Countries: For it is always beſt, in Summer, in Rutting-Time, and in the Full of the Moon.

CANAL. The Verb to dig or cut through, in the *Sclavonian* Language, is *Perocopeiu*, whence the *Precopensian Tartary* is called *Perecop*, which otherwise is called *Crimm*.

CARAVANS. There goes, every Year, a great *Caravan* from *Russia* to *China*; The Commodities which the Merchants carry thither, consist mostly in Furs, as Sables, Fox-Skins, Grey Squirrels, Ermins, *&c.* Besides Woolen-Cloth, Linnen and Toys; As soon as the *Caravan* comes to the Borders of the *Chinese Mungalia*, the *Chinese* Commissaries receive it, and conduct it to the Capital City of *Peking*, at their Expence; Where, likewise, the *Chinese* maintain both the People and Camels for three Months, within which Time the *Russians* are obliged to Sell or Exchange their Goods. This Time being expired, the *Caravan* is again conveyed to the Borders, at the Charge of the *Chinese*. This Caravan sets out from *Muscow*, in the Winter-Season, and returns within the Space of three Years, bringing back Silk and Cotton-Ware, Gold, Jewels, *China*-Ware, and other Goods, which turn to a very great Advantage to *Russia*. The Merchants have, besides, this Benefit, that in their Journy thither, they can trade also with the *Siberian* Cities under the *Russian* Government, and in their Return with the *Tartars*, with whom they exchange *Chinese* Tobacco (or *Scharr*) for Furs, and other Goods; which as well as the *Chinese* Commodities, they can sell to a good Advantage in *Muscow*. I have been told, that those who advance their Mony for three Years, in this *China*-Trade, frequently make *Cent. per Cent.* thereof. In going from *Russia* to *China*, the Duty upon Goods of the Value of one *Rubel*, is, in the City of *Werchoturia*, one *Griffwen*, in *Toboll* one *Griffwen*, and in *Selinginski* four *Griffwen*; And, on their Return, the Duty is but five *Kopeiks*, for the Value of a *Rubel*, in every Place where they are Barter'd or Sold. Black Sables are not carried to *China*, but only the pale ones; Nor black Fox-Skins, but the red only: Dogs, Soap, all Sorts of *European* Paper, whether white, marbled, painted, or gilt; Also gilt Leather, are all Commodities which go off in *China*; and the *Tartars*, *Ostiacks*, *Tungusians*, and other *Pagans*, consume a great Quantity of Beads of all Colours, Needles, and other Nick-Nacks: The *Mungals* likewise buy Beaver-Skins. Powder and Bullets are not allowed

to be carried to the *Tartars* in *Siberia*; But when they can get it, they pay very dear for it.

CARCHARIA or CARCHARIA PISCIS. Is a *Foſſil*, ſomething like the Bills of Birds, of a blackiſh Colour, and is found on the Banks of the River *Taſſda*.

CATHARINENBURG. A new City, begun in the Year 1721, in the Government of *Siberia*, in the Province of *Ugor*, on the River *Iſett*, between the *Uralcian* Mountains, and had this Name given it, in Honour to the late Empreſs *Catharine*. This Place is Five Hundred and fifty *Werſts* from the City of *Tobolſki*; Three Hundred *Werſts* from the City of *Kongur*, and Three Hundred *Werſts* from *Werchoturia*. The Fortification is Square, and has ſix whole, and four half Baſtions: The River *Iſett* runs through it, along which is a great Dam made, and near it the following Works and Manufactures are ſet on Foot: (1.) Two high Maſt-Ovens *; (2.) Four Mills with Hammers for drawing Iron-Bars; (3.) Three Mills with Hammers for flatting Plate-Iron; (4.) Two Fabricks, for making of Plates for Tin, with a Stone Building where the Plates are tinn'd; (5.) A Fabrick for working rough Steel, containing two ſmall Hammer-Works, and eight Forges; (6.) A Steel Fabrick, with two Hammer-works; (7.) A Wire Fabrick; (8.) Two Machines for making Iron Hoops; (9.) A Machine, for cutting Iron into ſmall Bars for courſe Wire and Nails; (10.) A Mill for hammering of Anchors; (11.) Two Machines for making Sword-Blades; (12.) A Machine for boring and poliſhing Cannon; (13.) Six Furnaces to melt Copper; (14.) A Saw-Mill with three Frames; All theſe Works are kept going by forty-two Water Wheels. The Directors of theſe ſeveral Works are moſtly *Germans*, each of whom has a Houſe to himſelf, all built in a regular and uniform Manner; They have, beſides the *Ruſſian*, a Church of their own, and a *German* Miniſter, who alſo teaches their Children Reading, Writing, and the Languages.

CAVE. (*Spelunca.*) In the *Ruſſian* Tongue, call'd *Pytſchiora*. There are, about two *Werſts* from the City of *Kongur*, in *Ugoria*, wonderful ſubterraneous Paſſages, framed by Nature, in the high

* So my Author calls them, but what he means by the Word Maſt-Oven, I muſt confeſs I am at a Loſs to determine.

high and ſteep Banks of the River *Silva*, in a kind of ſoft Alabaſter Rock, which the *Ruſſians* burn, and make a Sort of Mortar, Stuck or Plaiſter of it. There are many Caverns within theſe Paſſages, which ſeem to have been formerly Habitations for above a Hundred Families. This Cave is, in all, no leſs than ſix Werſts in Length, and about three in Breadth, the Figure of which is repreſented in *Tab.* XIX. where all that appears black, denotes the Alabaſter-Stone covered with Earth, which here and there has Openings to tranſmit Light into the larger Places of this Subterraneous Cavity; And the white Places in the Table denote the Paſſages. Letter A. is the City of *Kongur*. B. The Entrance of the Cave. C. The Kilns where the Plaiſter is burnt. D. Denotes ſome dark Paſſages to the greater open and light Places. E. Stone Steps formed by Nature. F. Pieces of Alabaſter-Stone fallen from the Roof. G. Heaps of Plaiſter. H. Natural Rocks. I. The Image of Saint *Nicolas*, placed there for the Devotion of the *Ruſſians*, who Work in this Place. K. Some Sandy Hills. L. A ſmall round Lake, whence a River proceeds, which afterwards loſes itſelf under Ground. M. A River breaking forth from the Top of a Rock with great Impetuoſity, which in falling occaſions Whirl-pools of Water, with a terrible Noiſe. N. A very large Place, covered with Graſs and Flowers. O. Croſſes erected by the *Ruſſians*. P. A large oblong Lake. Q. ſeveral Pillars to prop up the Stony-Vault. R. Several Vaults fit for Habitations, formed by Nature. S. The high Banks of the River *Silva*. T. The River *Silva*. U. The River *Ireen*. Y. Pillars to ſupport ſome Part of the Stony Roof. There are more ſuch Subterraneous Habitations in *Siberia*: One of which I have already given ſome Account of, under the Title of *Alabaſter*: I am informed, that the like are to be found alſo about the River *Pytſchiora*, which has its Name from thence. Theſe, however, I have not ſeen. Moreover, on the right Side, of the River *Oby*, not far from the Mouth of it, at a Place called *Nadim*, there is a Mountain and Rocks inhabited by the *Oſtiacks* of *Nadim*; By the Help of Ladders they get up almoſt to the very Top of the Rock, and there, through a large Opening, let themſelves down into their Habitations. In the Year 1722, in the Month of *February*, going in a Sledge on the River *Jeniſei*,

I ob-

I obſerved ſuch a Cave between the two Cities of *Abakan* and *Craſnoyahr*. The Banks of the River are in this Place a ſteep Rock, as high as any Church Steeple, in the middle of which there appeared an Opening about forty Fathom above the Surface of the Water. The Entrance into this Cave is about five Fathoms wide, and near fifteen Fathoms in Height. I went into this Place, and advanced upwards into the Rock, as far as I could conveniently, I think about thirty Fathoms; But finding the Paſſage darker and darker, and, notwithſtanding it was in the Depth of the Winter, and that Day being, beſides, a terrible cold one, there came forth from this Cavity ſo warm a Vapour, that it made me ſweat, and diſcouraged me, as well as my Fellow-Traveller, from venturing any farther. We had a great deal of Trouble to come at the Entrance, from the bottom. For this Rock is very ſteep, and was, at that Time, covered near ſix Foot thick with Snow, which being pretty compact, was the only Means we had to get up, by fixing our Feet into it: However, we could not help ſliding ſometimes a good Way down again. The *Swediſh* Boy, whom I have had Occaſion to mention above, was with me in this Place, and he, with the *Tartar* who drove the Sledge, both advanced higher, almoſt to the Top of the Rock, where they met with another Opening, within which they found ſeveral Pieces of old Houſe-hold Goods, and this gave us Room to believe that formerly it muſt have been inhabited. This confirmed the Opinion which my ſelf and my Fellow-Traveller, who was a *Ruſſian* Dragoon, conceived when we were in the Cave; *viz.* That there muſt be a Communication between the Opening we entered into, and ſome other Cavity; Becauſe, ſmoaking a Pipe whilſt we were in it, we did not perceive that the Smoak came back towards the Entrance of the Cave. That which I thought moſt obſervable, in that Part of the Cave I was in, (beſides ſome dead Birds, ſuch as that Sort which the *Germans* call *Silk-Tails*, in *Latin Garrulus Bohemicus*, and two Kind of Bats, with long and narrow Ears) was a vaſt Number of Icicles, about the Top of the Entrance, formed by the Concourſe of the warm Vapours from within, and the external Cold. Theſe Icicles were not round, but hexangular, pretty long, and tapering into a Point. I ſhall

make Mention below, (under the Title *Chryſtal*) that, in ſeveral Rivers, Pieces of Chryſtal of different Sizes, are found of that Form; And though I cannot think that this Kind of Icicles, falling into the Water, are there petrify'd into *Chryſtal*; Yet it is not improbable, but Chryſtals may have been formed after the ſame Manner, as theſe Icicles are form'd, from a Matter fit to produce that Kind of Mineral; With Relation to the People inhabiting theſe ſubterranean Abodes, I refer the Reader to what has been ſaid in the *Appendix* to my Introduction, §. X. in the Note, concerning the *Catuzi* or *Cajahtuzi*, and he may judge, whether theſe Habitations may not have ſuited thoſe People.

Caviar, Is the Fiſh-Roe, which the *Ruſſians* Pickle, and call it *Ikra*. It is made of the Roe of the *Beluja*, as well as of the Roe of Sturgeon; But that of the *Beluja* is the beſt, and is of two Sorts, *Zerniſtaja*, Grainy, and *Pajuſnaja* preſs'd. The firſt is made in *Autumn* and Winter, in the following Manner: As ſoon as the Fiſh is out of the Water, they cut open the Belly, and take out the Roe; Then they lay it in a Cheſt, the Bottom of which is full of Holes, which they cover with Straw; Then they throw Water upon it, and mix it well, take out the Veins and little Skins, 'till it is clean'd of every Thing but the Grains. After this they throw Salt upon it, in Proportion to the Quantity of the Roe; For if it be too ſalt, it does not fetch half the Price, and if it is not ſalt enough, it grows ſour, as ſoon as it begins to thaw. After it is thus prepared, they put it into great Baſkets or Caſks, made of the Bark of Lime-Trees, the Inſide of which is lined with Matts, becauſe of the Smell. This *Caviar* is moſtly conſumed in *Ruſſia*, and but ſmall Quantities of it ſent to Foreign Countries, for Preſents. The other Sort, *Pajuſnaja*, is made in Summer, well ſalted, and the Juice preſſed out afterwards, put into Sacks or Caſks, and ſent abroad; But chiefly into *Italy* and *Spain*. There is alſo Abundance of red *Caviar*, in *Ruſſia*, which is made of a little Fiſh, called *Sig*; *Caviar* is the *Czar*'s Monopoly.

Cedar-Tree. I am not certain; Whether thoſe *Cedars* that grow on Mount *Libanus*, and elſewhere, in *South Aſia*, are of the ſame Kind with thoſe that grow in *Siberia*; The Kernels, at leaſt, that come from the warmer Countries are larger; But the

Trees, themſelves, are not unlike one another: For the *Siberian Cedars* grow, as it were, in a Pyramidal Form, and are, for the moſt Part broader, higher and thicker than Fir-Trees. I have ſeen one ſingle Board of *Cedar* almoſt four Foot * over. The Needles of theſe Trees are like thoſe of the reſt of the Turpentine Trees, only much longer, and near the Length of one's little Finger. The Fruit, or Apple, is like that of the Fir-Tree, except that they are twice or three Times as big, and has a Kernel between every Leaf of it, ſo that one of them often yields forty or fifty Kernels, which, however, (as I have already ſaid) are leſs than thoſe which grow in warmer Countries. The Wood of the *Cedar* is cloſer and finer-grained than that either of Pine or Fir. This Tree appears very beautiful to the Eye, and as its Needles exceed in Length thoſe of the Pine, or Fir, they hang like ſo many Plumes of Feathers, and repreſent as it were a Pyramid. In *Siberia* they preſs an Oyl out of the Kernel, for the Uſe of the better Sort of People; But this will not keep long, and therefore muſt be uſed while freſh. The *Turks* have a pretty Way of taking off the Hulls of theſe Kernels, by Means of a Hand-Mill, with which they grind off the outward Coat, and bring them to Market, where they ſell them by the Pound. Theſe Kernels, beaten up with Sugar and Roſe-Water, ſerve inſtead of Almonds, to make Tarts and Cakes of. Many Trials have been made of Tranſplanting *young Cedars*, as well as ſetting the Kernels, in the *Weſtern* Regions, but they will not thrive there: In the Country called *Kamtſchatki*, *Cedar*-Trees are very ſmall, or rather Shrubs, and do not grow higher than the largeſt *Junipers*, and yet are full of Fruit.

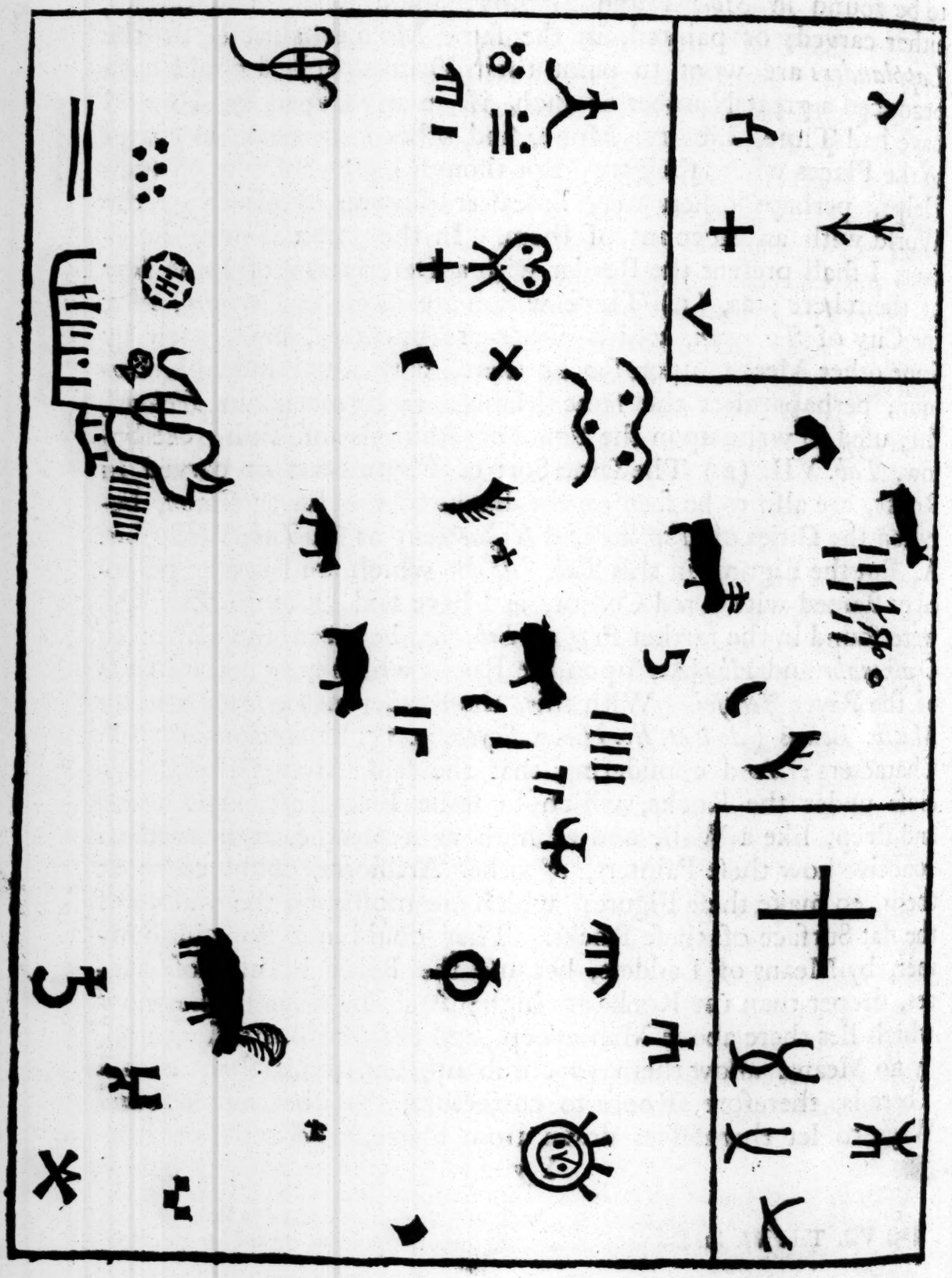
CHARACTERS. Chymiſts, Aſtronomers, and Mathematicians have their peculiar Characters; But this Word, likewiſe, denotes ſuch a kind of Writing, which no one can underſtand but he that hath the Key to it; And beſides this, a certain Sort of Figures carved on Stone, or engraven on Metal, or written on Parchment, or otherwiſe, which are pretended to have a ſecret Signification, and are us'd in Magick, and other ſuperſtitious Cere-

* THIS, I think, is no ſuch great Matter; I have ſeen a round Table of Cedar, at the Duke of *Wolfenbuttle*'s Palace of *Saltzdahl*, near *Brunſwick*, all of one Piece, which I believe (for I never meaſur'd it) muſt be, at leaſt, nine Foot in Diameter.

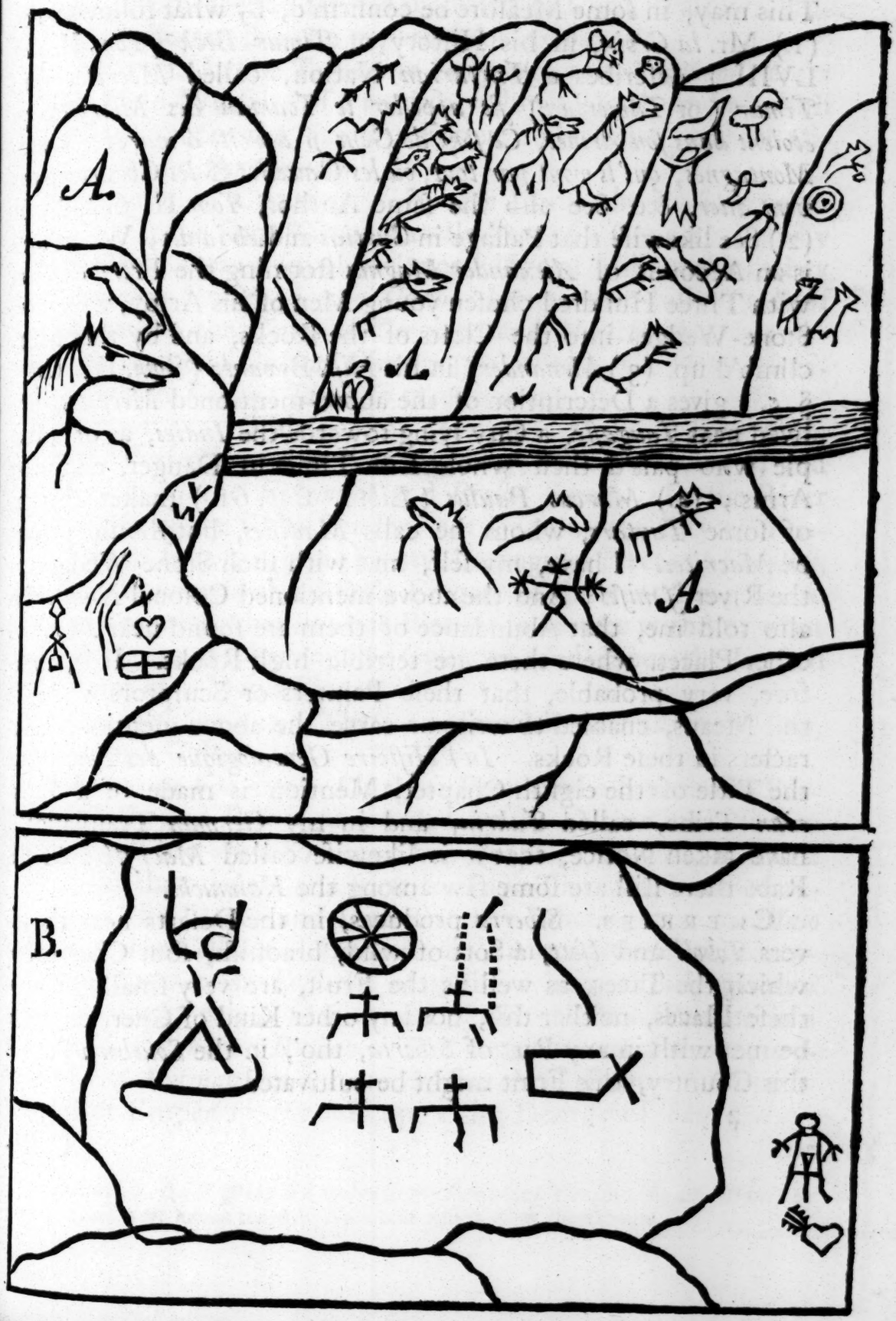
Ceremonies, are called Characters. Of this latter Sort many are to be found in *Siberia* and *Tartary*, upon Rocks and Stones, either carved, or painted, in the ſame Manner almoſt, as the *Lapplanders* are wont to paint their Drums (85); I could have produced a great Number of ſuch, if, in my Captivity, I could have had Time, Liberty, Mony, and other Requiſites, to travel to the Places where they are; But though I was deſtitute of ſuch Helps, perhaps others may hereafter diſcover, and oblige the World with an Account of them. In the mean Time, however, I ſhall preſent the Reader with a Deſcription of ſome few of them here; as, (1.) Thoſe which are in *Great-Permia*, near the City of *Tzerdyn*, which either are burnt in, or written by ſome other Means, upon Rocks there, with a red indelible Colour; perhaps after the ſame Manner as formerly, in *Iceland*, they uſed to write upon the Bones of Animals and Fiſh; See below, *Tab.* VII. (2.) The ſame Sort of Figures cut or carved in Rocks, are alſo to be ſeen on the Banks of the River *Tomm*, between the Cities of *Tomſkoi* and *Kuſnetſkoi*, as in *Tab.* VIII. *Lit.* A. But the Figures in this *Tab. Lit.* B. which are likewiſe painted or ſtained with a red Colour, as I have ſaid above in *Tab.* VII. were found in the farther Part of *Siberia*, between the Cities of *Craſnoyahr* and *Abakan*, upon the Rocks which are on the Banks of the River *Jeniſei*. With this, the Reader may compare what *Matth. Belius* (*de Vet. lit. Hunn. Scyth. p.* 15.) mentions of theſe Characters; And conſidering that the ſaid River *Jeniſei* runs cloſe under the Rocks, which in ſome Places are very ſmooth and ſteep, like a Wall, and as high as a Steeple, it is hard to conceive how theſe Painters, or other Artificers, could come at them, to make theſe Figures, which are moſtly on the middle of the flat Surface of theſe Rocks. They could not do it in Summer, by Means of Ladders, becauſe the River is, in thoſe Places, deeper than the Rocks are high; And, in Winter, the Snow which lies there above Man's deep, and the terrible Froſt, would, by no Means, allow them to climb up, and paint them at all. There is, therefore, Room to conjecture, that they either found Ways to let themſelves down from above, or climb'd up from

(85) Vid. Tab. VI. lit. D.

TAB. VII.



TAB. VIII.



below, by the Help of Stone-Wedges drove into the Rock. This may, in ſome Meaſure be confirm'd, by what follows: For, (1.) Mr. *la Croix*, in his Hiſtory of *Timur Beck* (*Tom.* II. *Cap.* LVIII.) deſcribes a *Tartarian* Nation, called *Mecrites* thus: *Timur* (or *Tamerlan*) *fit appeller le Touman des Mecrites, qui étoient dans ſon Armee, Ce ſont de Gens ſi adroits á marcher dans les Montagnes, qu'ils vont par tout, où les Gazelles & les Chevreuils peuvent aller*, &c. See alſo the ſame Author, *Tom.* II. *Cap.* XLIII. (2.) See likewiſe that Paſſage in *Curtius* and *Arianus*; Where there is an Account of *Alexander Magnus* ſtorming the *Petra Sogdiana* with Three Hundred choſen young Men of his Army, who drove Stone-Wedges into the Clefts of the Rocks, and by that Means climb'd up. (3.) *Menander*, in his *Hiſt. Byzant.* (*Tom.* III. *Cap.* 7. §. 5.) gives a Deſcription of the above-mentioned *Mecrites*, who lived near *Taugaſte*, a City lying towards the *Indies*, as of a People who paſs'd their whole Life-Time in Danger, and under Arms; (4.) *Marcus Paulus* (*Lib.* I. *Cap.* 61.) makes mention of ſome *Tartars*, whom he calls *Madiſtes*, but ſhould perhaps be *Macrites*. I have, my ſelf, met with ſuch Stone-Wedges, on the River *Jeniſei*; And the above-mentioned Colonel *Kanifer* has alſo told me, that Abundance of them are found near *Ilim*, and other Places. where there are terrible high Rocks. It is, therefore, very probable, that theſe Painters or Sculptors were, by this Means, enabled to write or carve the above-mentioned Characters in theſe Rocks. *In l'Hiſtoire Genealogique des Tartars*, in the Title of the eighth Chapter, Mention is made of a *Tartarian* Tribe, called *Takrin*, and in my *German* Tranſlation, I have taken Notice, that it is likewiſe called *Macryth*; Of this Race there ſtill are ſome few among the *Kalmucks*.

CHERRIES. *Siberia* produces, in the Deſarts near the Rivers *Toboll* and *Iſett*, a Sort of wild, braoniſh, ſour Cherries, of which the Trees, as well as the Fruit, are very ſmall. Except theſe Places, neither this, nor any other Kind of Cherries, are to be met with in any Part of *Siberia*, tho', in the *Southern* Parts of this Country, this Fruit might be cultivated.

2

CHLY-

CHLYNOW, or CLINOW, the Capital of the Principality of *Wiatka*. From thence large Quantities of Corn, Tallow, Honey, Wax, Butter, *&c.* are exported for *Archangel*.

CHOROKI, In the *Tartarian* Language called *Kosæhn*, are a Kind of Field-Weasels, of a reddish yellow Colour, and blackish on the Back, about the Size of a Ferret, to be found near the Cities of *Tara* and *Borgamaska*.

CHREBATH, or CHREBIOT. By this Name the *Russians* call a hilly, and, at the same Time, gravelly Part of a Country, by way of Distinction from a small Series or Ridge of Hills, which they call *Greben* or *Griven*, *i. e.* a *Comb*. Hence that hilly Tract of Land, between the Cities of *Gerawna* and *Nerschinskoi*, has obtained the Name of *Gablene Chrebeot* (86), that is, the *Apple Mountain*, of which *Isbrand Ides* also takes notice.

CHRYSTAL. This Sort of Mineral is found in *Siberia*, in very great Perfection, as well as Quantity, of divers Colours, and is preferable to the *Bohemian* and *Bristol* Stones. In the River *Isett*, as also in the River *Tomber*, not far from the City of *Tomskoi*, there are found, in great Plenty, hexangular Pieces of *Chrystal*, about the Thickness of a Man's Finger, of different Lengths, so constantly regular, that not one Piece is to be met with but what is of the Figure of a hexangular Cylinder, and about the Length of the Joint of a Man's Finger.

CORNELIAN STONES. These are found in *Siberia*, very large, and of a high Colour.

COSSAKI, or KOSAKI. All those People who live on the Borders of *Russia* and *Poland*, are called by that Name in those two Countries; They are a Sort of a free People, but will, in Time of War, list themselves, and serve for Pay. They are sirnamed according to the Places and Districts they inhabit; *viz.* 1. *Malo Rossiskia*, or the *Cossacks* of *Little Russia*; Among these are, 2. reckon'd the *Saporowian Cossacks*, of which I have already given a particular Description, CHAP. III. §. XI. Their Tongue is a Mixture of *Polish* and *Russian*. The *Cossacks* were formerly govern'd by a *Hetman*, under an *Aristocratical* Form of Government: But Emperour *Peter* I. upon the Demise of *Skuropatsky*, their

(86) *Gablinki*, in the *Russian*, and *Gabke* in the *Vandalian* Tongues, signify *Apples*, by which I believe were meant the wild Apricocks which grow thereabouts.

their laſt *Hetman*, entirely alter'd the Form of this *Coſſakian* Government, in the Year 1722. And, in the Room of it, erected a Military *Ruſſian* College or Magiſtracy, the Preſident of which is a General, and the Aſſeſſors are Colonels of *Ruſſian* Extraction. On the other Hand, the *Coſſakian* and *Ukranian* Colonels, as well as other Officers, who formerly bore a great Sway, are gradually caſhiering, and their vacant Places filling up with *Ruſſian* Commanders. Beſides, the Revenues which uſed to belong to the Chiefs of the *Coſacks*, are now withdrawn, and paid into the *Imperial* Treaſury. In ſhort, all Things are now managed upon the Footing of the *Ruſſian* Eſtabliſhment. As to the *Saparowians*, they were utterly rooted out, and diſperſed in the late Wars. The origin of their Name may be ſeen in the Book, entitled, *Verændertes Ruſsland*, (*Page* 34. §. 174.) of the *German* Edition. This People was indeed formerly under the *Ukranian Hetmann*, but yet always maintain'd their Right of chuſing a Commander, or Under-*Hetmann* of their own, whom they ſtiled *Koſchevoy*; The true Meaning of this Word I know not, but, in the *Tartarian* Tongue, *Koſch* ſignifies a Camp, or rather the Baggage in a Camp. The third Sort of *Coſſacks* are named *Belogorodoſkaja Czerta*, which have been mentioned above, *Chap.* III. §. XIV. The fourth Kind are the *Donſkian Coſſacks*. Theſe laſt are, indeed, native *Ruſſians*, but then, they are no better than a diſorderly Concourſe of Soldiers, Peaſants, ruin'd Citizens, Servants, *&c.* Nay, there are found among them, a great Number of baptized *Turks*, *Tartars*, and ſuch like Rabble. They call their Commander *Woyſkowoi Ataman*, which ſignifies Captain of War. The next Officer to him is named *Woyſkowoi Jæſſaoul*, Adjutant of War; And he who follows next to him, bears the Title of *Woyſkowoi Pyſſar:* That is, Secretary of War, or, to ſpeak in a higher Stile, Counſellour of War, an Officer of great Eſteem among them. There is annually, and, if Occaſion requires, even weekly, an Aſſembly call'd *Krug*, held in their Capital, *Czerkaſkoy*, in the Market-Place, and in the open Air, where all Caſes are tried, adjuſted and determined, by the *Jæſſaoul* (87), without any formal Proceeding in

(87) The *Barabintzian*, and other *Pagan Tartars*, alſo call their Chief, or the Principal Man of a Village, by the Name of *Jæſſaoul*.

in Writing; When ever this Martial Court is aſſembled, the *Pyſſar* takes down all Sentences and Orders in Writing, but the *Ataman* puts his Sign Manual to it, if he can write, if not, he only puts his Seal inſtead of it. Moreover, before this Court breaks up, all Executions, whether Capital or Corporal, are diſpatch'd, in the Preſence of two *Jæſſaouls*. There are three Sorts of Capital Puniſhments. The firſt is, they put a Shirt filled with Sand upon the Delinquent, and ſo fling him into the Water; The Second, the Condemned Perſon is ty'd to a Stake, and ſhot to Death with Arrows. The third Way is, when the Crime is of an extraordinary Nature, that the Criminal is ty'd to the Tail of a Horſe, and ſo dragg'd to Death. Corporal Puniſhments are the *Podoggi*, and the like; And, in ſuch Caſes, according to the Nature of the Crime, the *Jæſſaoul* orders more or leſs Stripes to be given, and that diſcretionally, by Word of Mouth, without any written Sentence. In former Times, they chiefly lived by Fiſhing, and pillaging among the *Turks* and *Tartars*, which they are now debarr'd from; Nor have they any more their former Liberty of chuſing and depoſing their *Ataman*. They loſt that Priviledge by their laſt Rebellion, in 1706; ſince which they are ſubject to the Government of *Woronitz*; And can, upon Occaſion, bring Fifty Thouſand Men into the Field. When they fight againſt the *Turks* or *Tartars*, they have no Pay, and muſt be contented with what Plunder and Priſoners they make. But if they are employed in a War with any other Nation, they have twenty *Rubels* a Year, and what they can make by ravaging and plundering; Beſides which, to prevent their cutting their Priſoners to Pieces, they receive five *Rubels* for every Priſoner they take: The fifth Sort of *Coſſacks* are the *Jaykian*, near the River *Jayk*. Theſe are much the ſame with the laſt-mention'd, have the ſame Form of Government, and receive the ſame Pay. They live, when they are not in the War, by Fiſhing, of which there is no Want among them, and they ſend yearly vaſt Quantities of *Caviar* and Sturgeon to *Muſcow*, and other Cities, for Sale. The ſixth and laſt Race of *Coſſacks*, are the *Grebinſkian*, near the City and River *Tareck*, much the ſame Kind of People as the two laſt; However, theſe are looked upon to be the moſt Martial of all the *Coſſacks*, and it is

reckoned, that they are ableto march Twelve Thouſand Men into the Field.

COTTON-STUFFS. The *Buchars* and *Kalmucks* trade very conſiderably in this Commodity to *Siberia*. There are various Sorts of theſe Goods; 1. *Daba* is a ſtrong Stuff, of a beautiful red Colour, without Gloſs; It is but narrow, and not unlike our coarſe *Callicoe*. 2. *Faulama* is broader. 3. *Biæſſi* is white, narrow, and without Gloſs. 4. *Tzacitar* is alſo white and narrow, but Gloſſy. There are ſome more ordinary Sorts, as *Kamky*, *Sendyn*, *Kunatſch* and *Wibick*. The *Mahometans* are allow'd to be bury'd in all theſe Sorts of Stuffs, but not in *Kitthaica*, which is manufactur'd by *Pagans*; whereas the others are all made in *Bucharian* Cities, which are inhabited by People of the *Mahometan* Faith, ſuch as *Turphan*, *Chamill*, *Jerken*, *Kutzai*, *Axu*, *Caſchkar*, &c.

CRAWFISH. They are not to be found in any of the Rivers or Brooks of *Siberia*; But there are ſome in the River *Argun*, in the Province of *Dauria*, in which there is a Silver Mine. In this Province, likewiſe, grow Hazle-Nuts, which are not met with in any Part of *Siberia*.

CREMMELIN, or CRIMMELIN; the Name of the Czar's Palace, in the City of *Muſcow*. This is a *Tartarian* Word, and ſignifies a *Fortreſs*; But not a *Flint*, as *Kremm* does in the *Sclavonian* Language. Thus the *Precopenſian Tartary* is call'd, by the *Tartars*, *Crimm* or *Cremm*, on Account of a Rampart and a Mote, which was there in ancient Times, and is call'd in the *Sclavonian* Language *Perecop*. As a Proof of this, the *Chineſe* Wall may ſerve for an Example, which by the Weſt *Tartars* and *Usbecks* is alſo call'd *Zagan Crimm* or *Cremm*, i. e. *The white Fortreſs or Wall*. The Word *Crimm-Tartars* has no other Meaning in the *Ukranian* Tongue, than ſuch *Tartars* as are quarter'd in Gariſons or fortified Places, becauſe the others live in open Fields, and thence receive different Names.

CZEREMISSI, or SCHEREMISSI, are a *Pagan* People, under the Government of *Caſan*. Thoſe who live on the right ſide of the *Wolga* are called *Sanagornya*, and thoſe on the left ſide of that River, *Lugowija*. Theſe People have no Idols of Wood or Stone; But direct their Prayers towards Heaven in the open Air, and near great Trees, to which they pay Honour, and hold their Aſ-

ſemblies

ſemblies round about them. The Hides and Bones of ſuch Cattle as they ſacrifice, they hang about theſe their holy Trees, to rot, by Way of Sacrifice, to the Air. They have no Books nor Writings among them, and if they are ask'd the Reaſon of it, they anſwer, that they had ſuch Things, in ancient Times; But that the great Cow had devour'd them all. There is a great Affinity between their Tongue and that of the *Finlandians*; But it is now very much mix'd both with the *Ruſſian* and *Tartarian*. They call themſelves, in their own Tongue, *More* or *Maire*. I am of Opinion, that *Johannes Magnus* ſpeaks of theſe People, when he quotes out of *Jornandes*, that the *Hunns* had their Original from a Sort of *Hobgoblins*, call'd *Maire* or *Mare*.

CZERKASI, or CZERKASSEN. Thus the *Ruſſians* now call all little *Ruſſia* and the *Ukraine*. There is alſo a City of this Name, which is the Capital of the *Donnian Coſſacks*. The Name *Czerkas* ſignifies in the *Ruſſian* Tongue almoſt the ſame as *Coſſack*, but with this Difference, that *Coſſack* denotes a Horſeman, who ſerves a certain Time, in the Army, for his Pay; But *Czerkas* ſignifies a voluntary Pillager or Maroder. The Name of *Coſſack* is given, in *Ruſſia*, likewiſe, to all hired Servants, in Town and Country, but not to Slaves.

CZETWERICK, Is a *Ruſſian* Dry Meaſure, containing 300 *Cubick Werſchoki*. It weighs, when fill'd with clean dry Rye, a Pud, or 40 *Ruſſian* Pounds. Eight *Czetwericks* make one *Czetwert*, or two *Oſmyns*.

CZETWERT. This Meaſure holds 320 *Ruſſian* Pounds, and ſignifies as much as Quarter; Becauſe formerly they uſed to meaſure their Corn in a Tun, called *Okow*, which being too cumberſome, was afterwards divided into four Quarters.

CZUWASCHI. Theſe are *Pagans*, living in *Ruſſia*; The Place of their Abode ſee CHAP. III. §. XVII. They bury their Dead in Deſarts, where they dreſs the Corpſe in fine Cloth, dig a Pit, the Bottom whereof they cover with Boards, on which they ſpread a Matraſs or Mat, whereon they lay the Corpſe, then put Boards on the Sides, and cover it alſo with Boards; and laſtly, fling the Mould over it. In the Month of *October*, they have a great Feſtival, againſt which they brew Beer, and drink to the *Czar*'s Health, in particular. They offer all their firſt Fruits to their

God *Thor*; And bake, beſides, a certain Loaf, which they ſet before him. It is remarkable, that Horſes are in ſuch Eſteem with them, that they make no other Uſe even of their Hides, but to hang them up upon Trees. They are not quite ſo ignorant as the *Czeremiſſi*, but have ſome Knowledge of the *Chriſtian* Religion; Nevertheleſs *Polygamy* is in Uſe with them. There is but little Difference between the Dreſs of the Men and Women, except only that the latter have the Edges of their Linnen embroider'd round with all Sorts of Silk. The Houſes or Cottages of the *Czuwaſchi* have their Doors towards the *South*.

D.

DAMASKED ARMS. Theſe wrought and inlaid Arms are alſo made in *Ruſſia*; The Compoſition is Steel and Iron mix'd together, and the Figures upon them are etched with Vinegar and Copperaſs.

DAMASK. I have purchas'd the thinner and ſlighter Sort (called, in *Sweden*, *Muſcovite* Damaſk,) of about 12 or 14 Ells * in a Piece, in Barters, for a *Rubel* and a half, or two *Rubels*, in *Siberia*, near the Cities of *Craſnoyahr* and *Kuſnetſkoi*, and the double Damaſk, which hold 16 Ells, for 6 or 8 Rubels a Piece. During my Stay there, I ſpoke with a Merchant, who travell'd and traded by himſelf with the *Sayantzian* or *Sayottian Mungals*, near the River *Kemtſchyk*, which falls into the River *Jeniſei*, near its Head. This Man, for a ſingle Skin of *Ruſſian* Leather purchas'd two *Pottſtaff* of *Damask*, of 12 Ells each, which thoſe People call *Peti Lani*, beſides ſix Pieces of *Kitaika*; For a Pewter Plate ſix Pieces of *Kitaika*; For a ſmall Braſs Ring ſet with red or blue Glaſs, two or three *Kitaika*; For a ſmall Pair of Sciſſars, two *Kitaika*; For a Pound and a half of Glaſs Beads, of different Colours, by the *Ruſſians* called *Biſert*, a whole Caſk of *Kitaika*; For 4 Ells and a half of Red Bays, for a Coat, one Piece of *Damask*, and three Pieces of *Kitaika*.

DATES, As well as other Commodities, are brought, in Abundance, to the City of *Tobolsky*, by the *Bucharian* and *Kalmuckian* Traders.

* (*Our Author, I preſume, means* German *Ells of* 22 ½ Engliſh *Inches.*)

DAURIA,

DAURIA, Is a large Province, in *Siberia*, ſituated towards the Borders of the *Eaſt Tartars*. Dr. *Chriſtian de Hennin*, in his Annotations on *Dobbins*'s *Siberia*, makes Mention of the River *Dawren*, to which this Country is ſaid to owe its Name. But as this Province is called ſo, and there is no River of the like Name, he ſhould have ſet the Lake of *Baikal* inſtead of it. For *Dauria*, with the *Eaſtern Tartars*, has the ſame Signification, as *Daria* with the *Perſians* and *Turks*, and theſe call the *Ocean Dariai Moehit*. This Country, therefore, being full of Water and Rivers, is called *Dauria* or *Daria*, in Compariſon with the *Mungal* and *Kalmuck* Countries, which are very dry and barren. But in the *Kalmuck* Tongue, and that of the *Jakutian Tartars*, a great Lake is called *Baikall*.

DEGOD, Is a Kind of Tar, or greaſy Subſtance, produced from Birch-Trees, which the *Ruſſians* make uſe of in dreſſing their Leather, as alſo to greaſe the Wheels of their Carriages with.

DEGREE OF LATITUDE. A Degree of fifteen *German*, or ſixty *Engliſh* Miles, anſwers to One Hundred and four *Werſts*, and Eighty-four *Sazchen*, or *Ruſſian* Fathoms, which latter the *Ruſſians* meaſure by, in Surveying of Land, as the *Germans* and *Engliſh* do by *Rods*, and the *French* by *Toiſes*. One *Werſt* contains Five Hundred *Sazchen*, and each of theſe three *Archin*, or *Ruſſian* Yards.

DENGA, Is a Sort of ſmall baſe Coin in *Ruſſia*, of half a *Copeik* Value. This was formerly a Silver Coin, with the Name of the Prince on the Throne on one Side, and the Arms on the other Side. Thoſe that were coined in the City of *Moſcow*, bore the Arms of that City: *Viz.* an Equeſtrian Figure, with a Cimeter in his Hand, whence theſe Pieces were diſtinguiſhed by the Name of *Moſkowka*. At preſent *Denga* is a Copper Coin. The *Ruſſians* call them, in the Plural Number, *Dengi*, which is, in *Engliſh*, Money (88); probably becauſe there was no other Coin in *Ruſſia*, Four Hundred Years ago; They, however, always reckon'd by the imaginary Names of *Griffwens* and *Rubels*, as we do by *Pounds*.

DOGS,

(88) The *Usbeck Tartars* have a Sort of Coin, which they call *Tanga*, (See *L'Hiſtore Genealog. des Tartars*, p. 542.) a Word not unlike that of *Denga*.

Dogs, Are very ſcarce in *China*, nor will they thrive there. Wherefore Merchants and Travellers who go from *Ruſſia* thither, commonly carry ſome with them, which turn to a very good Account, eſpecially if they are broke, and have learned ſome Tricks. On the other Hand, as I was informed by an *Indian* who had travelled through the Country of the *Tanguths*, there are at *Thibet* and *Tanguht* Dogs of a vaſt Size: This ſeems to agree with what *Marcus Paulus* relates of the large Dogs in *Tanguhtia*, as alſo with that Paſſage in *Arianus*, and *Quintus Curtius*, where they mention, that King *Porus* made a Preſent of two of theſe large Dogs to *Alexander*. On the *Eaſt* Side of the Country of *Kamtſchatki*, towards the Sea, there lives a People, who keep no other Sorts of Beaſts but Dogs, which though they are but of a common Size, are remarkable, in that they have Hair of Six Inches long. As to thoſe Dogs which the *Oſtiacks* put to their Sledges, and make Uſe of them inſtead of Horſes, the Reader will find an Account of them, in *Page* 191, of *Das Veränderte Ruſsland*, and in other Authors. Theſe put me in Mind of an odd Account, which happened about the Year 1718. A certain *Waiwode* travelling in a Sledge with twelve Dogs, towards the City of *Bereſowa*, got himſelf wrapped up in warm Quilts, and girt faſt in the Sledge, in order to ſecure him from the Severity of the Cold, and to prevent his falling out, in Caſe the Sledge ſhould over-turn; the *Oſtiack*, who was his Guide, ſkaited along Side of him, (according to Cuſtom, in Caſe the Sledge ſhould overturn, to raiſe it up again) and coming on a large Plain, where the Ground is generally covered Man's Depth with Snow, the Dogs (which the *Oſtiacks* alſo uſe for Hunting) eſpying a Fox at a Diſtance, immediately flew in Purſuit of their Game, and run away with the *Waiwode*, with ſuch Swiftneſs, that it was impoſſible for the Guide to keep Pace with them, and they ſoon got out of Sight. The Guide followed the Track, but did not come up to his Paſſenger 'till the next Morning, when he found him in the Sledge overturned, ſtill well wrapp'd up, and tightly girt into it. By good Luck, a ſtump of a Tree, which ſtood out above the Snow, had ſtopped the Sledge, or elſe it might probably have coſt the *Waiwode* his Life. Theſe Dogs are able to draw great Burthens, for, in the

the Year 1718, Governor *Knees Miſchewſki* ordered a whole Pipe of Brandy to be brought from the Convent of *Ketſkoe* to the City of *Boreſowa*, which was done by ſixteen Dogs. People never travel a Nights, but only a Days with Dogs: In the Morning, before they ſet out, each Dog has two frozen Fiſh, which is his Allowance, for the whole Day. At Night, when they come to their Journy's End, theſe poor Creatures are ſo weary, that they cannot eat, but preſently ly down to Sleep. Whenever any Paſſenger comes to a Stage, where he is to have freſh Dogs, all the Dogs of that Village ſet up a moſt terrible Howling, knowing that they are, ſome of them, to have the ſame Fate.

Dolmatschowa, or Dolmaziowa, Is a ſmall Town in *Siberia*, in the *Werchoturian* Diſtrict, 5 *Werſts* diſtant from *Alapaika*. In this Place there is a Hammer-Mill, to make Iron Plates, for the Salt-Pans, at the Salt-Works of *Solikamski*. In order to keep this Mill-Work going, there are 12 Villages employ'd, called *Slabodds*, ſituated in the *Werchoturian* Diſtrict; The Peaſants of theſe Villages carry Coals and Oar thither, for which Labour they have an Allowance made them in their Contribution.

Ducks (*Wild*) As there are a great Number of Rivers which run thro' *Siberia*, there is not only an incredible Plenty of *Wild Ducks* in that Country, but the Number of the different Species, as well as the endleſs Variety of the Colours of their Feathers, are no leſs ſurpriſing. The *Ruſſians* give a different Name to every Sort of them, *e. g.* Some they call *Chorochall*, ſome *Swyſchi*, ſome *Babba*, others *Tolſtochea*, others *Oſtrowoſt*, *&c.* Not far from the City of *Tobolsky*, towards the *North*, near *Damianski* and *Samarow*, they have a pretty Way of catching them with Nets: They cut a Way thro' a Coppice, between two Rivulets, which diſcharge themſelves into the River *Oby*. Now as the Ducks chiefly ſeek their Food in theſe ſmall Streams, they are wont, in Spring, to fly from one Rivulet to the other, through this cut Way; And, in *Autumn*, when they have hatched their Young, and they are fledged, they return the ſame Way; Then the *Ruſſians* ſet Nets in this Paſſage, and light a ſmall Fire, and by this Means they catch three or four Hundred Ducks in a Night. This is very diverting to Paſſengers, it being common for the Owners

Owners to let out the Sport for two or three Nights ſucceſſively.

DUNGING OF LAND. The *Siberian* Huſbandman-Men know very little of Dunging, becauſe the Land is of itſelf black and flat in thoſe Places, which are ſituated near the Rivers *Toboll*, *Iſett*, and ſeveral others, that may properly be called the Store-houſes of *Siberia*, from whence all the Corn and Meal is carried to *Tobolſky*, and other Places. Beſides, there is ſuch Plenty of Land, that the Farmer may ſhift three or four Times. In the Year 1714, I bought a Horſe for the Conveniency of carrying Wood, during the Winter, and in Order to have Forrage, I hired Part of a Meadow, about eight *Werſts* from the City, which I was to get mow'd, my ſelf; For this Piece of Ground I gave ſix *Groſhes*, which is not quite one Shilling *Engliſh* Mony. The Hay being made, I had, for my Mony and Labour, five Hay-Stacks, each containing between twenty and five and twenty Waggon-Loads, for two Horſes. This Meadow would not have been mowed, had I not hired it; And they are obliged, in the Spring, to ſet ſuch Meadows on Fire, leſt the Land ſhould be exhauſted.

E.

EAGLES. There are three Sorts of *Eagles* in *Siberia*; the firſt and largeſt Sort, which almoſt exceeds a Turky-Cock in Size, the *Tartars* call *Burkut*. They are Coal black, and ſo is the very Beak of them; The Skin about the Noſtrils, and the Legs only are of a Lemon-Colour. Theſe live chiefly on high Mountains, and in thick Woods. The ſecond Sort is called, in the *Tartarian* Tongue, *Kutſchugan*, and the third and leaſt Sort *Karakuſch*, in *Latin Aquila Mævia*. The *Tartars* make Uſe of this Sort of Eagles, as they do of Falcons, for Hawking.

EARTH OIL, *Oleum terræ*, is found in *Siberia*, among the *Urallian* Mountains.

ECLIPSES OF THE SUN. The two great Eclipſes of the Sun, in the Years 1712, and 1715, were equally viſible in *Siberia* and *Germany*, and ſome other Parts; On theſe Occaſions it has been obſerved, that the Longitudinal Difference between

the Cities of *Hamburg* and *Tobolſky*, is four Hours and ten Minutes.

EEL. There is hardly any Country in the World more plentifully provided with Rivers than *Siberia*, but no Eel is to be found in any of them. This is alſo affirmed of the River *Danube*, and other Rivers that flow into it.

ELKS-HIDES. There is a Place called *Wilwa*, near the River *Pytſchiora*, to which the People of the City of *Tzordin* repair every Year; It is diſtant from that City, One Hundred and Thirty *Werſts*, and about *Whitſuntide*, the *Wogulitzi*, *Siræni*, *Oſtiacks*, and other *Pagans*, keep a Fair at *Wilwa*, and from them thoſe Citizens buy *Elks-Hides*. Thoſe *Wogulitzi* who live near the River *Wytzera*, and are about thirty Families in Number, generally kill every Year, in that Diſtrict, Four Hundred *Elks*. The *Ruſſians* call this Animal *Loſs*, and the *Tartars Kuyck*.

EMBASSADOR, In the *Ruſſian* Tongue, is called *Poſoll*, and an Envoy *Poſlanick*; Inſtead of which *Hubner*, in his *Curieus-Real-Natur-Staats und Zeitungs Lexicon*, (*p.* 2087,) puts *Goneck*, or *Welikie Goneck*, which only ſignify a Courier or Meſſenger.

ERMIN. There is great Difference in the Fur of Male and Female *Ermins*. For theſe latter are bought, in *Siberia*, at the firſt Hand, for ſix or eight *Rubels*, *per* Hundred, whereas the other, being larger, go at ten or twelve *Rubels*. In Summer they are of a reddiſh brown Colour.

F.

FALCON. In the Province of *Dauria*, and near the River *Amour*, there are a great many Milkwhite *Falcons*, which are ſent, in great Numbers, to *China*. The Antiquity of this Kind of Sport, among the *Tartars*, *Kalmucks*, and other People, inhabiting *Siberia*, appears partly in this, that they were uſed to have a Repreſentation of this Sport painted or etched on the Urns which they put into their Graves. See Table III. Letter E. which was dug out of a Tomb, not far from the City of *Craſnoyahr*; The Deſcription of which the Reader will find under

the Title *Urn*; And partly by their Cuſtom of ſending a fine *Falcon*, whenever they had a Mind to make an extraordinary Preſent to ſome Great Perſon. See *L'Hiſt. des Tart. Cap.* VIII. *p.* 205. Whence *Mezeray*'s Opinion, (in his *Hiſt. Part* I. *additament. Paris* 1685.) ſeems not to be ill-grounded, when he ſuppoſes, that the ancient *Germans* had learned this Sport of the *Scyths*. How common Hawking is, even to this Day, in *Mingrelia* and *Dageſtan*, the above-cited *Author* of the lateſt Account of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, &c. (*p.* 178, and 315,) will ſatisfy the Reader. The *Tartars*, in *Siberia*, make Uſe of three Sorts of *Falcons*; The firſt is called, in their Tongue, *Hkartſchega Aholphei* or *Tzungar*, which is the beſt and moſt beautiful Sort; Theſe *Falcons* are Aſh-coloured, and ſome Speckled-white, and pretty large. The ſecond Sort they call *Ugugindla*. The third *Torackt-ſchin*. Which ever Sort they be, it is neceſſary to make them, whilſt they are young, which is done by theſe People in Manner following: After a *Falcon* has been well fed, and is fat, they give him the Bigneſs of a Pepper-corn of a Root, which they call *Ack-chirgak*, put among ſome Fleſh chopped ſmall; This Root is of an emetick Quality, and has its Effect upon the Birds; in the next Place, they take a piece of Woollen Felt, of the Bigneſs of a ſmall Nut; This they mince among ſome Fleſh, make a little Ball of it, and make the Falcon eat it; This done, they cauſe him to be carried upon a Man's Hand, from Nine to twelve Days together, to prevent his Sleeping; After which Time, they mix ſome *Calmus* among his Meat, and by that Time he is uſed to the Falconer; However, before they venture him at large, they firſt make him ſtart, and return, within a ſmall Compaſs. It is to be obſerved, that the *Tartars* never ſtroke the Falcons over the Head and Back, which they believe makes them ſhy; The ſame Method they alſo take with *Eagles*.

Feather Grass. In the Deſart or *Steppe*, near the River *Iſchim*, towards the Mount *Itick*, in *Siberia*, grows a Sort of Graſs, which exactly reſembles White Plumes of Feathers, and may be dried and preſerved a great while.

FORTIFICATION, in the *Russian* Tongue, is call'd *Ostrock*; But *Ostrow* signifies an Island. The *Russians* have, towards the Borders of the *Tartars* and *Cossacks*, at proper Distances, Places of Defence, *palliſadoed* in, or built of Wood-Work; And the *Barabintzian Tartars*, between *Tara* and *Tomskoi*, have secured most of their Villages with the like Sort of *palliſado'd* Wooden-Forts, to prevent the too frequent Inroads of the *Cossaki-Orda*.

FOXES, Are called, by the *Russians*, *Lytziza*, by the *Tartars*, *Tilgü*. The best black *Foxes* are caught in the most *Northern* Parts of *Siberia*, about *Beresow*, *Surguht*, and *Jeniſi*. These bear a very high Price in *Turkey*, *Persia* and *Tartary*, One single large, black Fox-Skin often yields Four Hundred *Rubels*, and above, though it costs, perhaps, at the first Hand, not above eighty, or one hundred. A Lining of black *Fox* is esteemed in *Russia*, beyond the finest Sable. Other Sorts, as Blue, Red, Cross and white *Foxes*, are found every were in *Siberia*, except the last, which are only met with about the *Mare Glaciale*; They bark like Dogs, and are, for that Reason, called *Petsci*, Dogs,

FUMITORY, Grows in Abundance, near the City of *Tomskoi*.

G.

GALENOK, Is a Wine-Measure in *Russia*. Eight *Galenoks* make a *Wedro*, *Eimer*, or Half *Awm*.

GANESKA. What is related concerning this, is a Fiction, though indeed the Word signifies, among the *Tartars*, a Pouch for Tinder, Steel, and Matches, And the Inhabitants of some Places of *Finnland* use it also in that Sense. Whatever else is said concerning the *Ganeska*, is what this Nation is unacquainted with.

GARLICK, called by the *Russians Tschesnock*. Of this there is a vast Consumption in *Russia*, especially among the Common People, who hardly eat a Meal without it. There are large Towns which trade in nothing else but *Garlick*; *viz. Dmitrow*, *Rostow*, and others, where it is cultivated in large Gardens.

About *Caſan*, *Aſtracan*, and in other warm Provinces, it grows ſpontaneouſly and plentifully in the open Fields.

GLYZYRRHIZA, Grows not only about the *Caſpian Sea*, and the River *Wolga*, but is alſo found, in great Plenty, in the Diſtrict of the *Barabintzian Tartars*, between the Cities of *Tara* and *Tomſkoi*.

GOSI or GOST. This Word ſignifies a Stranger or Gueſt, and is given, in *Ruſſia*, to Merchants who trade in a whole-ſale Way, to Foreign Parts, as to *Germany*, *Perſia*, *Turky*, *China*, &c. But no Perſon durſt aſſume this Name, without being poſſeſſed of peculiar Privileges. They, therefore, take Place of all other Merchants, and are called to Honourable Employments, ſuch as Aſſeſſors at the Board of Trade, Burgermaſters, and Commiſſioners of the Cuſtoms in great Cities, and the like. When any Thing of Moment, relating to Trade, lies before the Senate, or the Board of Trade, their Advice is always aſk'd. They have the ſame Privileges with the inferiour Nobility, may purchaſe Eſtates, and marry into Noble Families. Formerly there were two Claſſes of Merchants in *Ruſſia*, viz. *Goſtinaia Sotnia*, and *Sukonaja Sotnia*, which latter were accounted, in many Things, Superiour to common Merchants; But that Diſtinction is now dropp'd.

GOSTINOY-DWOR, are a kind of large Squares walled in, within which are built, on every Side, convenient Ware-Houſes and Shops, for all Sorts of Commodities; And in the Middle, Room enough is left for Carriages to go in and unload. Theſe Square Places are erected at the Charge of the Government, in all Capital trading Cities, as *Muſcow*, *Peterſburg*, *Archangel*, *Kiow*, *Novogrod*, &c. The Word ſignifies a Store-houſe for *Strangers*.

GRAVES or SEPULCHRES, in *Latin Tumuli Sepulchrales*. The *Ruſſians* call them *Bogri*, as alſo *Mulignii*, of which vaſt Numbers are found in *Siberia*, and in the Deſerts which border on that Government *Southwards*. In theſe Tombs are found all Sorts of Veſſels, Urns, Wearing-Apparel, Ornaments, and Trinkets, Cimetars, Daggers, Horſe-Trappings, Knives, all Sorts of little Idols, Medals, of Gold and Silver, Cheſs-Boards and Cheſs-men of Gold, As alſo large Golden Plates, on which

which the dead Bodies have been laid, (not unlike the *Bractei aurei* of ſome others of the Ancients.) Likewiſe Cloaths folded up, of the ſame Sort as thoſe the Corps were dreſſed in. The Graves of the Poorer Sort have likewiſe ſuch Things in them of Copper, and Braſs, Arrows of Copper, and Iron, Stirrups, large and ſmall poliſhed Plates of Metal or Mirrours, with Characters upon them, eathern Urns of different Sizes, ſome almoſt two Foot high, others more, ſome with, and ſome without Handles. In ſhort, a great many curious Antiquities have been found in theſe Places, of which I have made ſome Mention already, under the Title of *Antiquities*. About twenty or thirty Years ago, before the *Czar*'s of *Ruſſia* were acquainted with this Matter, the Governours of the Cities of *Tara*, *Tomſkoi*, *Craſnoyahr*, *Batſamki*, *Iſetſkoe*, and others, uſed to give Leave to the Inhabitants, to go in voluntary *Caravans*, to theſe Tombs, in Order to ranſack them, on Condition that of whatever they ſhould find of Gold, Silver, Copper, Jewels, and other Things of Value, the Governour ſhould have an Allowance, generally the Tenths. Theſe Caravans, whenever they found any Thing of Value, uſed, for the eaſier dividing of their Booty, to knock to Pieces theſe choice Antiquities, and give to each Perſon his Share, by Weight. A Proof of this their Way of Proceeding is repreſented *Table* V. *Letter* D. which had been an Oblong poliſhed Mirrour, made of Bell-metal, of which only this Piece came to my Sight. As to the Graves themſelves, they are of different Structures; Some are only raiſed up of Earth, as high as Houſes, and placed ſo near together, and in ſuch Numbers, on the ſpacious Plains, that, at a Diſtance, they appear like a Ridge of Hills. Others are ſet round with rough-hewn Stones, and ſome with ſquare Free-Stones, and are either of an oblong, or a triangular Form. In ſome Places theſe Tombs are entirely built of Stone. Hence we find in the ancient Maps of *Tartary the Greater*, a Number of Pyramids, with theſe Words, in *Latin*; viz. *The Pyramidal Sepulchres of the Tartarian Kings*, by which they muſt needs mean theſe Monuments, though they are not ſo properly Pyramids. Colonel *Kaniſer*, who for ſeveral Years of his Captivity, had his Abode, in the City of *Jeniſei*, told me, that the Ambaſſadors of the *Chineſe-Tartars*, (of whom Men-

Mention is made in *Das Verænderte Ruſsland*, (*p.* 9.) and whoſe Expedition to the *Kalmuck Ajucki-Chan*, I ſhall give an Account of, in its proper Place,) in their Return Home, paſſing through that City, deſired Leave of the then Governour, to viſit the Graves of their Anceſtors, but it was refuſed them: Not improbably, becauſe they would have found almoſt all of them open'd, rifled, and demoliſhed. To give the Reader an Idea of a Situation like what I have been diſcourſing above, I have thought fit to annex to this Work, a Map of that which I met with near the little Town of *Abakan*, on the River *Jeniſei:* See *Table* II. where A. repreſents the ſmall Town and Fortreſs of *Abakan*. B. the River *Jeniſei*. C. the *Ruſſian* Village *Torguſchina*. D. The Tents of the *Arintzian Tartars*. E. The River *Sida*. F. The ſmall *Ruſſian* Village called *Bizr*. G. The River *Kocktzaga*. H. The River *Garba*. I. The River *Ktieſch*, which paſſes under and through the Hills. K. A large Hill, on the Top of which is placed a Stone, with the Figure of an Old Man cut in it. L. *Sepulchres* round this Hill. M. *Tombs* at the Foot of the ſeveral diſtant Tracks of Hills. N. A *Ruſſian* Village called *Biellyk*. O. The Place where I and my Companions lodged, at the Time we took a Draught of the Stone, and the Situation of the Country. On this Occaſion, I call to Mind, what Ancient Authors mention of the War between *Cyrus* and the *Scyths*, which latter always retreated; *viz.* That *Cyrus* ordered them to be aſked, what was the Reaſon they would not keep their Ground; To which they anſwered: That there, they loſt nothing by giving Way, but if he ſhould come near the *Sepulchres of their Fathers*, he might then chance to ſee whether they could fight or not. I ſhall treat more at large of this Matter, under the Title of *Urns* and *Medals*. However, I cannot forbear taking Notice here, (1.) Of what *Arnkiel* relates, (*P.* II. *p.* 35.) of his *Funeral Rites of the Cimbrian Pagans*,) *viz.* That the *Cimbri* had not taken the Cuſtom of burning their Dead from the *Greeks*, but from *Othinus*; and, (2.) what *Torſeus* writes, (in his *Ser. Dynaſt. Reg. Dan. cap.* VI. *p.* 130, and 144. in the *Octavo* Edition.) That *Odinus* brought the firſt *Urns* into the *Northern* Regions, introduced there the Cuſtom of burning the Dead, of putting the moſt valuable Things of the Deceaſed, into the Grave,

Grave, with their Aſhes, and to erect Monuments, and lay Stones, over the *Sepulchres* of the moſt Eminent Perſons; He, on this Occaſion, quotes *Stephanus*, in theſe Words, *Primitus namque defunctis juſta ſolvituri in campo plano, juxta Regiam, aut defuncti prædium, circulum miræ magnitudinis lapidibus efformabant, oblongum tamen viginti circiter orgyarum longitudine, latitudine trium. In hoc defuncti cremabant cadaver, cineres collectos urnis includebant ac in circi meditullio locatos, grandibus undique ſtipabant lapidibus, arena glebaque terreſtri replebant, ac in formam monticuli deſuper collem exſtruebant.* In the Place delineated in *Tab.* II. I found every Thing correſpond with this Deſcription, both as to the Stones and the Dimenſions, only with this Difference, that here at each Corner were Stones higher and broader than the others, and had Characters cut in them. See *Tab.* XI. and *Figure* A. B. C. D. It was eaſy to take an exact View of the Sand, the burnt Ground, and the Circles, becauſe the *Ruſſians* had already opened the Graves, and diſcovered the Inſides of them. Theſe Graves are ſo deep in the Ground, that looking down, they appeared to me of as great a Depth, as if I had look'd down from the Top of a high Houſe, to the Bottom of the loweſt Cellar. Had it not been Winter, and ſo exceſſive cold and full of Snow, at the Time, when I viſited this Place, I ſhould have adventured to have been let down into one of theſe Pits. In the mean Time, as I was walking round the Top of the Earth, which was thrown up about one of theſe Graves, with the *Swediſh* Lad, of whom I have ſpoke above, the Wind having pretty well cleared the Snow away, he found, on the Ground, a little Piece of Gold, about one fourth of an Ounce in Weight; Which ſhews, in ſome Meaſure, how careleſsly thoſe who opened theſe Graves went to work with their Gold; Which likewiſe anſwers what has been ſaid above, concerning the opening of theſe *Sepulchres*; And to what I there ſaid about the Things which were taken out of them, made of Metal, Copper, Iron, *&c.* I have here to add, that the Arms, Swords, Arrows, Daggers, and the like, which the *Ruſſians* dug out of theſe Places, were not forged, but caſt, of Copper, eſpecially Swords, which were ſhaped much like like our Bayonets and Hangers. The ſame is affirmed, of the *Cimbrian* Graves, by the Author of *The Re-*

marks

marks on the Cimbrian *Antiquities, in Holſtein,* (printed at *Hamburg*, 1728, *Page* 154, and 155.) As to the modern way of burning the Bodies of the Dead, among the *Chineſe Tartars*, and the Ceremonies that were obſerved by the Embaſſy, at the Funeral of one of their Comrades, who died on the Road, near *Samarow*, not far from *Tobolſky*, I ſhall give an Account thereof, in a proper Place.

GREY FURS. So the Skins of Squirrels, and whatever is made of them, are call'd. The *Siberian* Squirrels, which are dark-gray, are larger, ſtronger, and have longer Hair, than thoſe of other Provinces, which are of light-gray Colour, and are cheaper. The Skin of this little Animal is divided into four Parts: Firſt, The Back cut into two, of which the lower Part is the beſt. (2.) The Upper Part of the Back. (3.) The Belly, which is either white, or elſe chequered, grey and white. (4.) The Head and Ears, which are the worſt of all. Thoſe Squirrels which are caught in *Summer* Time, have thin red Hair, and the Skins of them are not durable.

GRIWNA, Is a *Ruſſian* Silver Coin, equal to ten *Kopeiks* and ten *Griwna*'s go to a *Rubel*. The Signification of the Word is as much as a Locket for the Neck, becauſe in former Times, the People uſed to wear Medals, and Portraitures, about the Neck, which were called *Griwna*.

GUBA-MANGAZEISKO, or TASOWSKAJA, Is a great Lake, of ſix Day's Journey in Length, and one and a half in Breadth, into which the River *Oby* diſcharges itſelf, and was formerly called, by thoſe who uſed to travel to *Weigatz*, *Sinus Dulcis*. It ebbs and flows, and the *Ruſſians* have navigated this Lake, along the *Southern* Coaſt of it, from the Mouth of the River *Nadim*, to that of the River *Taſs*. From the Mouth of this laſt River, upwards, there is ſituated a Town called *Starra Mangazeia*, which 'till lately, was inhabited by *Ruſſians*, who, on Account of the exceſſive Coldneſs of the Climate, were obliged to remove thence to New *Mangazeia*, near the River *Jeniſei*. The Word *Guba* ſignifies properly a Spunge. And the *Ruſſians* have given this Lake that Name, becauſe it receives ſeveral Rivers, (as all Bays and Gulfs do) like a Spunge that ſucks up the Water, it is applied to. The Ice, in this Lake,

never breaks, 'till the Middle of *June*, and ſometimes later; Which is not only confirmed by the ſeveral Accounts of Travellers, but appears plainly by the *Siberian* Rivers, *Tobol*, *Irtiſch*, *Oby*, *Jeniſei*, and others, which, from the Beginning of *May*, to the End of *June*, ſwell extremely high, and overflow their Banks, Inſomuch that the ſmall Brooks, which run through the lower Part of the City of *Tobolſky*, ſome Years, riſe ſo high, that they enter into the Houſes, and the Inhabitants are obliged to make Uſe of Boats to go from one Houſe to another. But as ſoon as the Ice of the Lake, and of the Mouth of the River *Oby* breaks, the Water falls by Degrees, and the Streams grow leſs; And this may be moſt accurately obſerved, near the City of *Tobolſky*, by fixing every Day freſh Marks on the ſhallow Banks of the River *Irtiſch*. What I have ſaid in this Place, may be compared with the *Antient and Modern Hiſtory of Greenland*, by E. G. *Zorgdrager*, (*from Page* 164, *to* 174) where the Author relates, from *Heemſkerk*, that no Ice has been ſeen, in the Month of *March*, in the open Sea, on the *North*-Side of *Nova Zembla*, when, on the *South*-Side, near the Coaſt of *Tartary*, or *Siberia*, the Sea has been all covered with it; Which, according to that Account, is ſaid to be brought thither from the Rivers of *Tartary*, and the Coaſt of *Siberia*.

GULO, in the *Ruſſian* Tongue, *Roſſomack*, Is an Animal, call'd in *England*, by the Name of *Hyena*. They are very common in *Ruſſia*, the Skins which come from *Siberia* are the beſt. The moſt beautiful, which are rather the blackiſh, than the light-brown, may be bought, near the River *Oby*, at the firſt Hand, for a Rixdoller and a half. There goes a Report of this Animal (which is a very greedy one) that when it has overgorg'd itſelf, it gets between two Trees, that ſtand near together, and forces out what it has devour'd.

GUMMANISSUM, or *Scherkeſt*. Theſe are Names for *Manna*, amongſt the *Tartars* and *Bucharians*, who bring it frequently to Market to the City of *Tobolſky*, from the Country of the *Kalmucks* and *Bucharians*. This *Manna* is found upon a certain Graſs, and in particular Places of the large Deſerts, and muſt be gather'd before Sun-riſing; For if the Sun ſhines upon it, it melts away. It likewiſe melts in any one's Mouth, is ſweet, and

has a Taſte like Sugar and Flour mixt together; Of a grayiſh, and ſome of a whitiſh Colour; It is found in Grains, of an irregular Form, ſome bigger, ſome leſs, about the Size of ſmall Peaſe. Probably this is the ſame Sort of *Manna*, which is gather'd from a certain Vegetable in *Perſia* and *Egypt*. This Account of *Manna* is likewiſe given by *Olearius*, in his Appendix to the Travels of *George Anderſon*, (who, with his Companion *Auſtin*, purſu'd his Way from the *Chineſe Tartary*, through the Deſerts, into the Territories of the *Uſbecks*,) where the Reader will find it; But I do not juſt remember the Page. *Taverner* takes, likewiſe, Notice of it, as does *Quintus Curtius*, in his fourth Book (89).

GUN-POWDER. This is deliver'd into the *Czar*'s Magazines, at ſo ſmall a Rate as ſixty *Kopeiks*, *per Pud*, or forty Pound Weight, (*Which is not full a Penny a Pound.*)

H.

HALCYON or *Alcion*, the *King's-Fiſher*, Is a Bird found in *Siberia*, near the Rivers *Jeniſei*, *Oby* and *Tomber*, almoſt of the Size of a *Wheat-Ear*, and has moſt beautiful green Feathers.

HARES. In the *Northern* Countries, as *Norway*, *Sweden*, and *Ruſſia*, the *Hares* are gray in the Summer, and in the Winter white as Snow. The beſt and largeſt are found about *Tomſkoy*, and *Jeniſei*, in *Siberia*. The Skins are ſo cheap, that, at the firſt Hand, a Hundred of them may be purchaſed for a *Rubel* and a half, or leſs. In the Year 1722, I met with a Merchant, in the City of *Jeniſei*, who, on Account of Trade, had taken a Journy into *Siberia*, from the *Ruſſian* City of *Wologda*. This Merchant bought Twenty Thouſand Hare-Skins to carry to *Archangel*, in Order to be tranſported to *Holland*, and other Parts. On the *Eaſt* Side of the River *Wolga*, in the *Kalmuckian* Deſerts, towards the *Caſpian* Sea, are a Species of *Hares*, call'd flying *Hares*; Theſe have, indeed, Heads and Ears like other *Hares*; But their fore Legs do not exceed half the Length of a Finger,

(89) Compare *Adrian. Reland. in Diſſert. I. de Parad.* pag. 29. §. 13.

Finger, whilſt their hind Legs are above four Times ſo long; Their Tails are like the Tail of a Rat, about twelve Inches long, at the End of which, for about the Length of one's Finger, grows long white Hair, turning backwards, like the Beard of an Arrow, or Fiſh-hook, and the tip of their Tails are black; When they run, they raiſe themſelves on their hind Legs, and, with a Spring, jump oftentimes, above ten Yards, and this they continue, with ſo much Swiftneſs, that it is impoſſible for the Eye to diſtinguiſh it from flying. The *Kalmucks* hunt and eat them.

HART. There are in *Siberia*, nine Species of the *Hart*-Kind: 1. *Irbiſch*, the Great Stag. 2. *Iſubriſſin*, the Red Deer. 3. *Coſa*, the *Roebuck*. 4. *Cabarda*, the Muſk Deer. 5. *Sſeiga*, the Fallow Deer. 6. *Tackia*, the Shamoy. 7. *Argali*, the Wild Goat. 8. *Loſs* or *Suchata*, the Elk. 9. *Olen*, the Ren-Deer. Theſe two laſt are found in the *Northern*, the others in the *Southern* Parts of *Siberia*.

HELIOTROPIUM, or *Hellebore*, grows in many Places in *Siberia*, eſpecially near the River *Oby*.

HIEROGLIPHICAL FIGURES are a Kind of Emblematical Characters, bearing a ſecret Meaning; Such were thoſe uſed by the *Egyptians*, in which they wrapt up the Myſteries of their Religion; But as I have already touch'd upon this Matter, under the Titles of *Antiquities* and *Characters*, where I have made Mention of an indelible red Colour, with which the *Icelanders* formerly painted Bones of Animals and Fiſhes, and of the like found upon Rocks in the Province of *Permia*, and farther up in *Siberia*, near the River *Jeneſei*, I ſhall here treat of a different Kind of Characters, ſuch as are found near the Source of the River *Irbyth*, which diſcharges itſelf into the River *Nytza*, as that does into the River *Tura*, between the Cities of *Japantzin* and *Tumen*; But, before I proceed to give a Deſcription of theſe Figures, I cannot forbear taking Notice here of a Curious Stone preſented to me at *Muſcow*, by a worthy Friend. This Stone is a dark-green Marble, or rather a Piece of opaque Jaſper, (the like of which is plentifully found in the Province of *Dauria*, about *Argun*) it is finely poliſh'd, of an Oval Shape, not much bigger than a Crown Piece, and about an Inch thick,

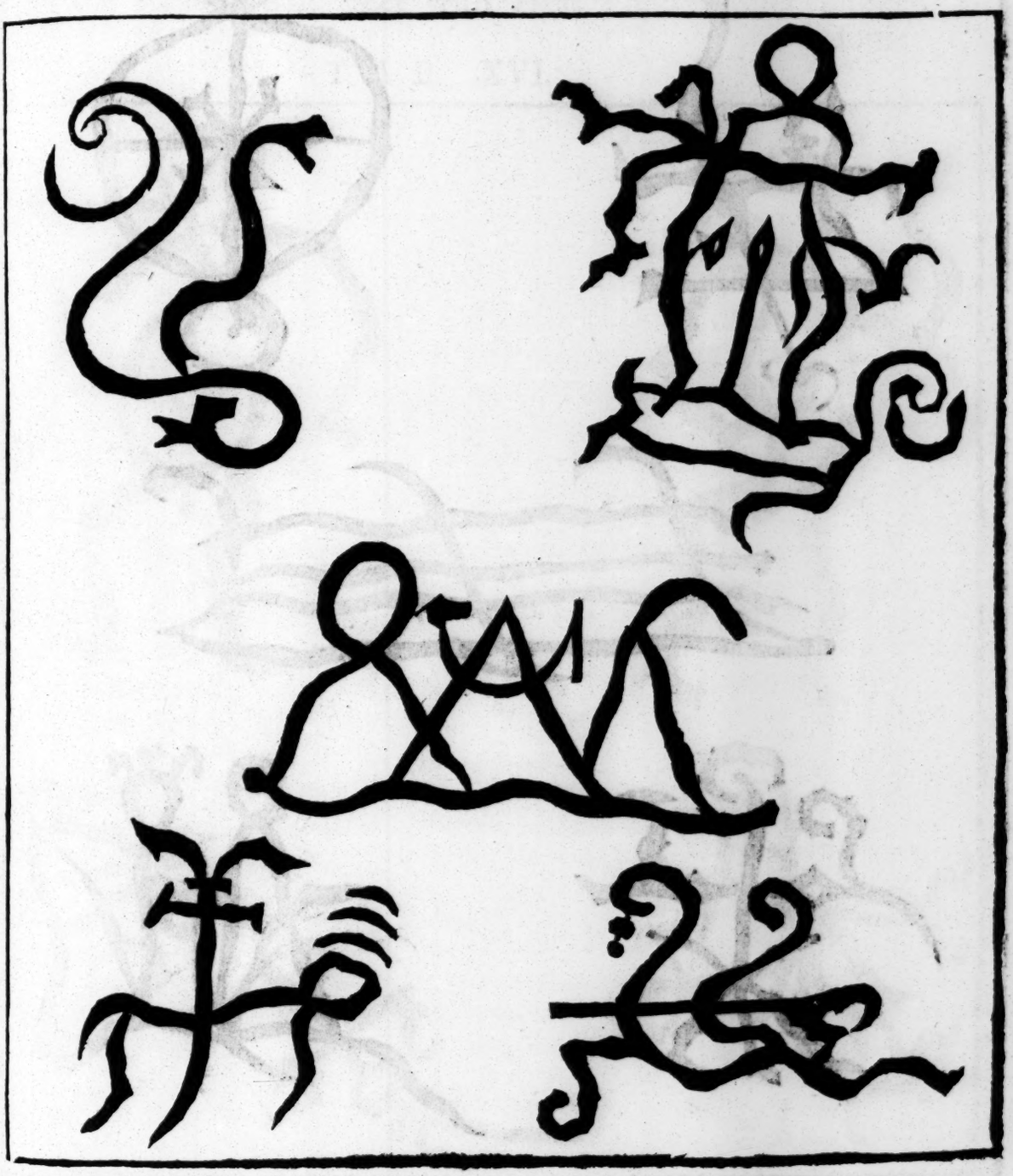
repreſenting a very curious Tortoiſe, on the Belly of which (being flat) there was an Inſcription in *Arabick* Characters; I took this to be an *Arabian* Hieroglyphical Figure: Little thinking, that, at my Return from the *Ruſſian* Captivity, I ſhould commit any Thing, of this Kind, to the Preſs, I made a Preſent of this Piece of Curioſity to the Right Reverend, and Moſt Learned Biſhop, and Doctor, *Bentzelius*, who perhaps may, one Time or other, oblige the Publick with an Account of it, in the *Acta Eruditorum*. As to the *Hieroglyphicks*, which the Country near the River *Irbyth* affords, the Reader may ſee them delineated in *Tab.* XIII, XIV, XV, XVI. Not being Antiquary enough to give the Curious a ſatisfactory Account concerning theſe Figures,

TAB. XIII.

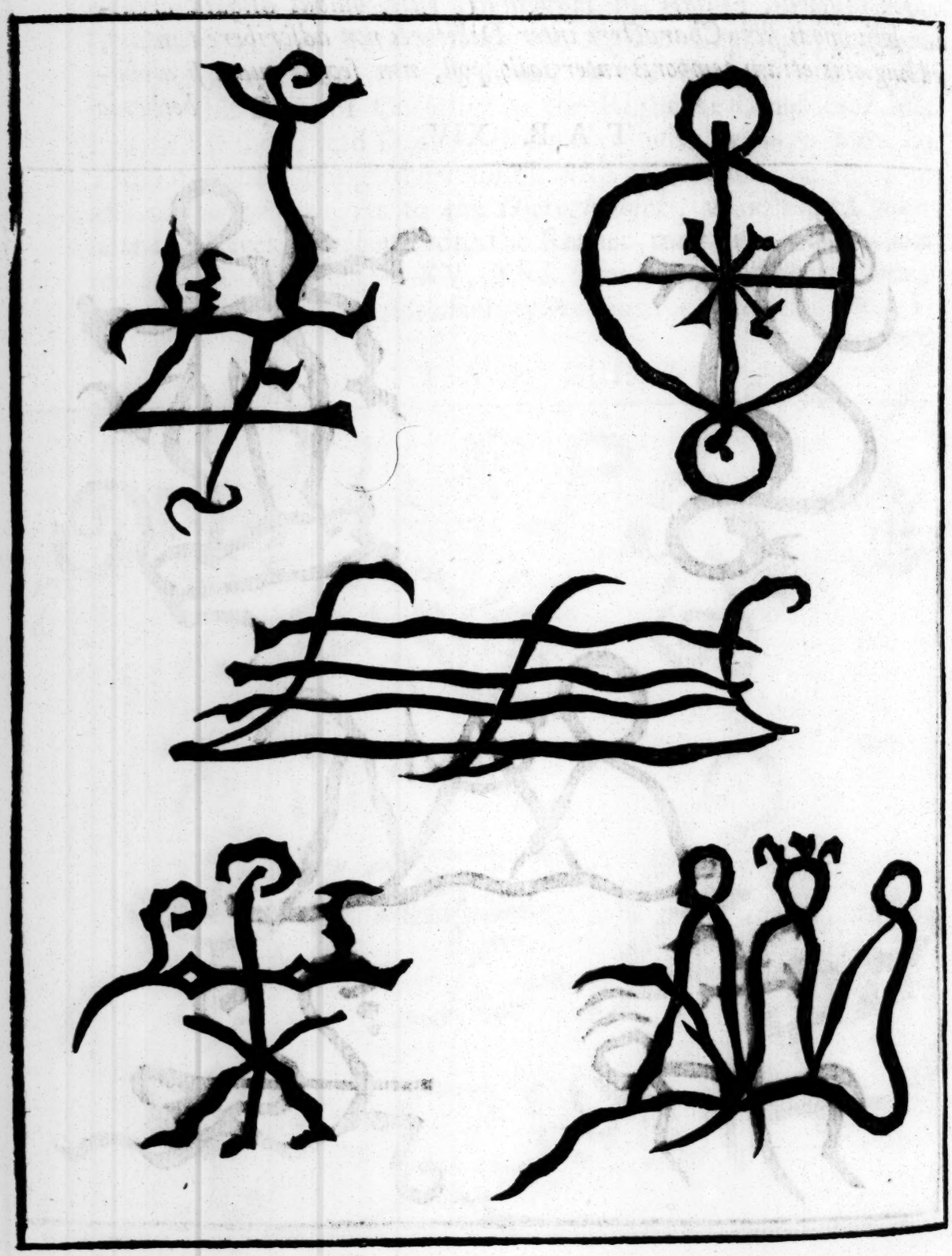


gures, I refer the Reader to *Matth. Bel. de Vet. lit. Hunn. Scyth. p.* 15. where the Author has theſe Words: *Miratus ego ſæpe fui caupones idiotas, (nempe in Hungaria) iſtis, quibus aliquid credidere hujuſmodi fićto Charactere inter Debitores non adſcribere tantum, ſed longioris etiam temporis intervallo poſt, non ſecus, quam ſi alphabethario*

TAB. XIV.

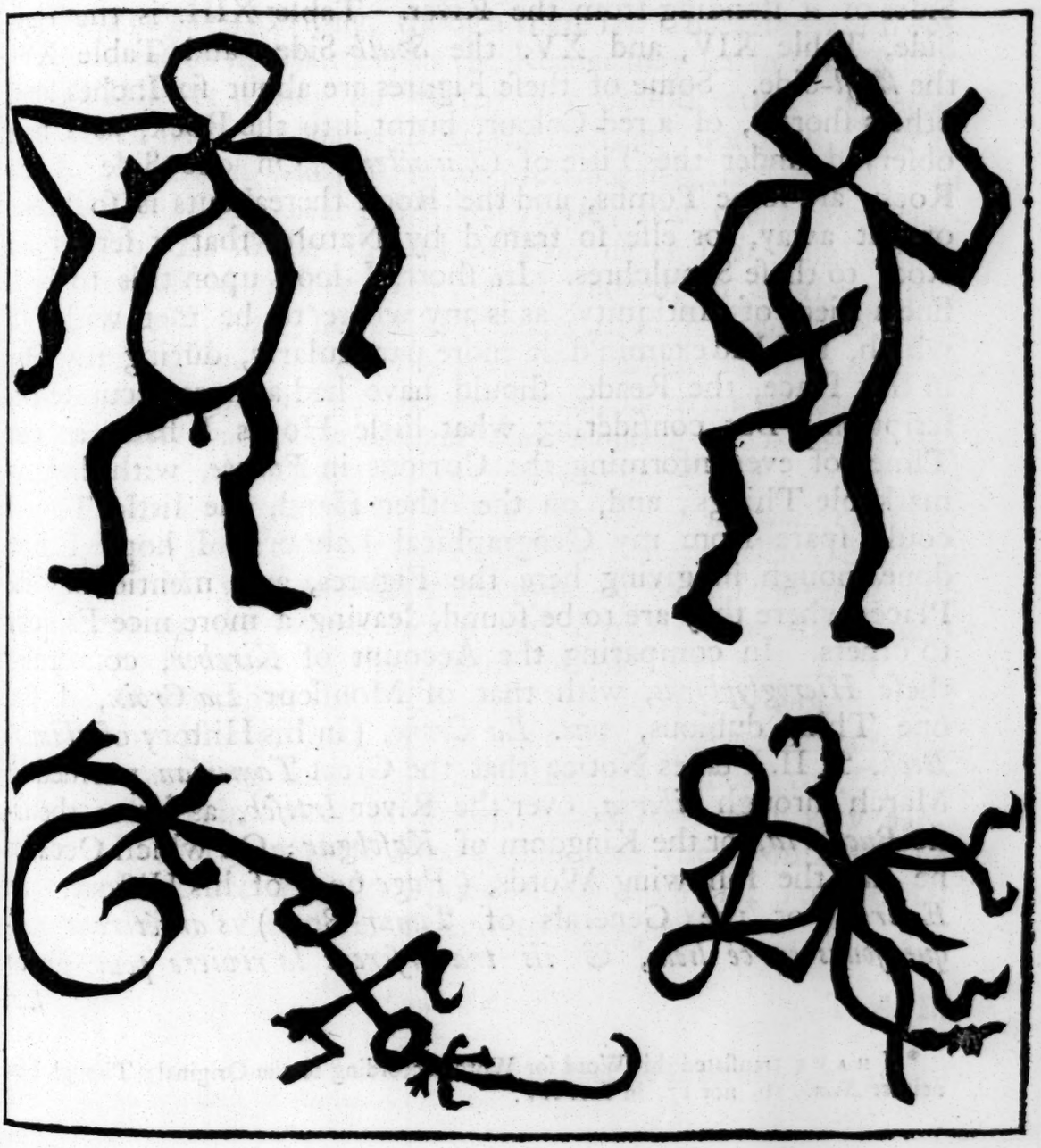


TAB. XV.



bethario Scribendi genere adnotati fuiſſent, promere, debitamque ſummam & rationes indicare potuiſſe; ita, ſi debitor miles eſt, rudi quadam linea frameam aut pugionem pingebant, ſi faber, malleum aut ſecurim; Si auriga flagrum, atque ſic porro. Kircher's *China Illuſtrata* (*Part.* VI. *Cap.* II, III, and VI. *Page* 128, 129, and 229, 235.) deſerves likewiſe to be conſulted upon this Head, where the Reader will meet with ſome Figures, not unlike ſome

TAB. XVI.



ſome of mine; eſpecially if they compare *Fig.* X. *Page* 129, of *Kircher*, with mine in *Table* XV. *Numb.* 17. And *Fig.* F. *Page* 222, of *Kircher*, with my Number 16. in Table XV. * *Kircher* ſays that thoſe are the moſt ancient *Chineſe* Characters, if ſo, it very much confirms what Monſieur *Petit de la Croix* tells us (in his *Genghizcan*, *p.* 83.) *viz.* that the *Chineſe*, in ancient Times, ſent Colonies into *Tartary* and *Scythia*, which in Proceſs of Time became natural *Scythians*. The Rock from whence theſe Characters are taken, is about ſix and thirty Foot high, three Sides of it ſtanding from the River. Table XIII. is the *Eaſt*-Side, Table XIV, and XV. the *South*-Side, and Table XVI. the *Weſt*-Side. Some of theſe Figures are about ſix Inches long, others ſhorter, of a red Colour, burnt into the Rock, as I have obſerved under the Title of *Characters*. On one Side of this Rock, are ſome Tombs, and the Rock thereabouts is ſo broke, or cut away, or elſe ſo fram'd by Nature, that it ſerves as a Roof to theſe Sepulchres. In ſhort, I look upon this to be as fine a Piece of Antiquity, as is any where to be met with; Of which, if I had examin'd it more particularly, during my Stay in that Place, the Reader ſhould have had a more accurate Deſcription. But conſidering what little Hopes I had, at that Time, of ever informing the Curious in *Europe*, with theſe remarkable Things; and, on the other Hand, the little Time I could ſpare from my Geographical Labours, I hope I have done enough in giving here the Figures, and mentioning the Places where they are to be found, leaving a more nice Enquiry to others. In comparing the Account of *Kircher*, concerning theſe *Hieroglyphicks*, with that of Monſieur *La Croix*, I find one Thing dubious, *viz.* *La Croix*, (in his Hiſtory of *Timur-Beck*, *T.* II.) takes Notice that the Great *Tamerlan* purſued his March through *Siberia*, over the River *Irtiſch*, as far as the little *Bucharia*, or the Kingdom of *Kaſchgar*; On which Occaſion he has the following Words, (*Page* 69.) of his Hiſtory. *Les Emirs* (or the Generals of *Timur-Beck*) *s'arrêterent quelques jours en ce lieu, & ils traverſerent la riviere pour graver leurs*

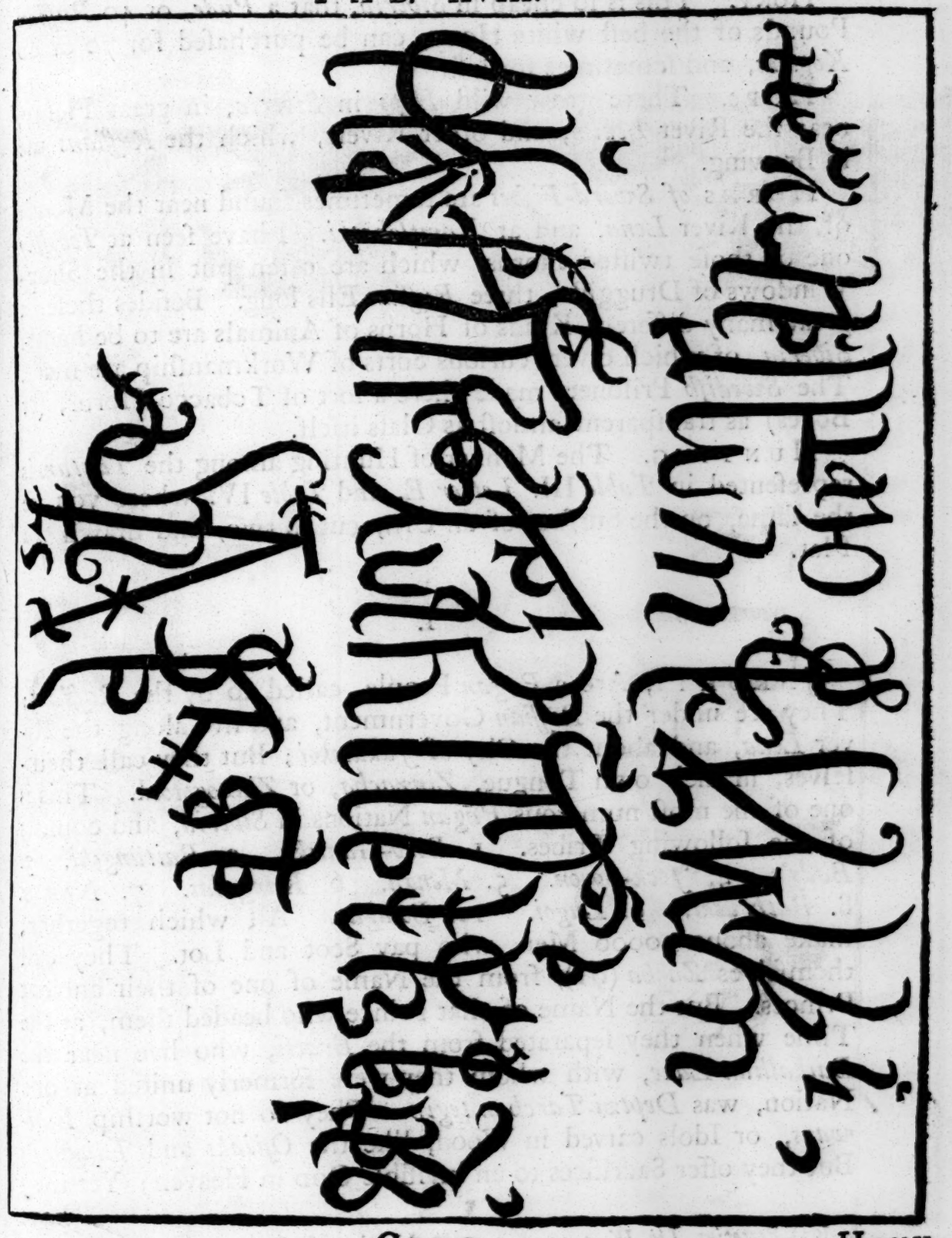
* I HAVE tranſlated this Word for Word, according to the Original; Though I find neither *Numb.* 16, nor 17, in *Tab.* XV.

leurs armes & leurs chiffres, rougis au feu, (90) *ſur les pins de ce bois, ce qu'ils ne firent, qu' à fin que l'on vit, dans le temps â venir, des marques de la venüe de l'Armée de Timur ſur les arbres des forets de ſes Ennemis, & des Aſſurances de leurs conquêtes au dela du fleuve d'Irtiſch.* But ſince there are found red Inſcriptions in ſeveral other Places in *Siberia, e. g.* Near the River *Pyſchma*, which likewiſe falls into the River *Tura*, between the Cities of *Tumen* and *Toboll*; Whence the *Ruſſians*, when they came into that Country, gave it the Name of *Pyſchma*, which ſignifies, in the *Ruſſian* Tongue, Writing, though theſe red Characters are formed after a different Manner, as the Reader may ſee in *Tab.* XVII, and XVIII. yet it may be worthy our Conſideration; whether theſe latter were not, as well as the former, done by ſome of *Tamerlan*'s Army, and it ſeems as probable that the Characters of *Table* VIII. *Fig.* B. near the River *Jeniſei*, had the ſame Original. If ſo, *La Croix*, inſtead of *Pins de ce Bois*, might have ſaid better; *Rochers de ce fleuve*; And, indeed, in another Place of the ſame Hiſtory, he ſpeaks plainer, though in another Manner. (*viz. Tom.* II. *Page* 81.) *Timur y demeura tout le jour, & il ordonna aux ſoldats d'y porter des pierres, & en un moment il y fit élever un obeliſque de la hauteur d'un minaret, & les Sculpteurs habiles y graverent la datte de l'an & du jour que Timur y paſſoit, â la tête de ſon Armée, â fin que cette piece ſervit d'un monument durable â la Poſterite.* I was told by the *Ruſſians* in *Siberia*, that there was ſtill a Pyramid, with an Inſcription upon it, to be ſeen on Mount *Itick*, between the Rivers *Iſchim* and *Irtiſch*; But they could give me no Account of the Nature of the Figures. If Time, and the Opportunity of a Convoy, had ſerved, it would have been worth while to have viſited that Place; But without that Security, travelling through this Wilderneſs, where the *Coſaci-Orda* are always in Search of Booty, would have been very dangerous. In ſhort, in theſe Places, and near the Mouth of the River *Tobol*, eſpecially, are found many ſuch like Antiquities and Curioſities, which well deſerve to be copied.

(90) Which agrees with what has been ſaid above, about the Bones in *Iceland*, and the red Glaſs in the Windows of Ancient Churches.

TAB. XVII.

TAB. XVIII.



Hony. This is ſo cheap in *Siberia*, that a *Pude*, or 40 *Ruſſian* Pounds of the beſt white Hony, can be purchaſed for 70 or 80 *Kopeiks*, and ſometimes for leſs.

Hops. There grow wild *Hops* in *Siberia*, in great Plenty, near the River *Iſchim*, and other Rivers, which the *Ruſſians* uſe in Brewing.

Horns *of Sword-Fiſhes* are ſometimes found near the Mouth of the River *Lena*, and at *Kamtſchatki*. I have ſeen at *Tobolſk*, one of thoſe twiſted Horns, which are often put in the Shop-Windows of Druggiſts, three *Ruſſian* Ells long. Beſides theſe, a great many different Kinds of Horns of Animals are to be had in *Siberia*, of which divers curious Sorts of Workmanſhip are made. The *Swediſh* Priſoners made there a ſort of Tobacco-Horns, (or Boxes) as tranſparent almoſt as Glaſs itſelf.

Hunting. The Manner of Hunting among the *Tartars* is repreſented in *Table* III. *Letter E.* and *Table* IV. where you ſee the ſame, on the Surface of an Urn, cut in two, and drawn as a Flat.

I.

Jakuhti, Are a *Pagan* People, called ſo by the *Ruſſians*; They are under the *Ruſſian* Government, and live along the River *Lena*, and about the City of *Jakutskoi*; But they call themſelves, in their own Tongue, *Zinzacha*, or *Zinzogotock*. This is one of the moſt numerous *Pagan* Nations in *Siberia*, and conſiſts of the following Tribes. 1. *Boro-Ganiska*. 2. *Baitungski*. 3. *Bady's*. 4. *Jock-Soyon*. 5. *Menga*. 6. *Kangalas*. 7. *Namin*. 8. *Bathruski*. 9. *Lugoi*. 10. *Bolugur*. All which together, make about 30000 Men, who pay Scot and Lot. They call themſelves *Zacha* (91), from the Name of one of their ancient Princes. But the Name of that Prince who headed them, at the Time when they ſeparated from the *Bratti*, who live near the *Baikallian Lake*, with whom they were formerly united as one Nation, was *Deptzi Tarchan tegin*. They do not worſhip *Bullwans*, or Idols carved in Wood, like the *Oſtiaks* and *Tunguſii*; But they offer Sacrifices to an inviſible God in Heaven; Yet they have

(91) *Procopius, Lib. IV. c.* 24. §. 4. makes Mention of a People call'd *Zachi* or *Zechi*.



Place this Cut at Page 380.

have a Type or Image of that Deity ſtuffed out, with a monſtrous Head, Eyes of Coral, and the Body like a Bag; This Image they hang upon a Tree, and round it the Furs of Sables and other Animals. Each Tribe has one of theſe Images. Their Prieſts, whom they call *Biuhn*, make uſe of Drums, like the *Laplanders*; They worſhip the INVISIBLE GOD, under three different Denominations, *Artoyon*, *Schugotoygon*, and *Tangara*, which three Names are called by them *Sumans* (i. e. *Sacred.*) What *Isbrand Ides* (in his Travels, *p.* 132.) relates, concerning theſe People, is all true; Excepting the Cuſtom of burying alive, or killing the oldeſt Servants, or Favourites of a Prince, at his Funeral, which is aboliſh'd (92); But they ſtill own, that formerly, before the *Ruſſians* were amongſt them, they were uſed to do ſo. They have, beſides, many ſuperſtitious Cuſtoms, in common with other Nations, which they celebrate about certain Trees, that they look upon to be ſacred: When they meet with a fine Tree, they preſently hang all Manner of Nick-Nacks about it, as Iron, Braſs, Copper, *&c.* (93). Their Prieſts, or *Biuhns*, when they perform their ſuperſtitious Rites, put on a Garment trim'd with Bits of Iron, Rattles and Bells (94). As ſoon as the Fields begin to be green, each Generation gathers together, at a Place where there is a fine Tree, and a pleaſant Spot of Ground. There they ſacrifice Horſes and Oxen (as a New Year's Offering, their New Year beginning in *April*,) the Heads of which they ſtick up round the Trees, and on the Heads of the former they leave the Skin. They then take a certain Liquor, which they call *Cumiſes*, ſit down in a Circle, and after having lifted up the Jugg, with both Hands, they drink to one another: Then they dip a Bruſh in the *Cumiſes* and ſprinkle ſome in the Air, and ſome into the Fire, which they light up; on-

(92) Conſult *Marcus Paulus*, with Reſpect to the Ceremonies obſerved at the Funerals of the *Tartarian* Kings; Where he ſays, that every Creature, which met the Corpſe by the Way, was obliged to attend the deceaſed King to his Grave, and accompany him, for his Service and Retinue, into the other World. This the Author of *L'Hiſtoire Geneal. des Tartars*, (p. 343) in his Notes, abſolutely denies, and ſeems to give good Reaſons for his Diſſention. The *Tartarian* Author *Abulgaſi-Chan* does not pretend to give a circumſtantial Deſcription of the Interrment of *Zingis-Chan*, his Deſign being rather to acquaint the Publick with the Genealogy, than with a large Hiſtorical Account of the *Tartars*.

(93) See my Introduction, Sect. V. §. VII.

(94) The *Samojeds* do the ſame. (Vid. *Verændertes Ruſſland*, *p.* 405.)

on that Occaſion (95). On this Feſtival, they get wretchedly drunk, and gorge themſelves to that degree with Meat, that, it is ſaid, four Perſons will commonly devour a whole Horſe. Nay, ſome will ſtrip themſelves ſtark naked, that nothing may confine or hinder them from extending their Paunches; This they continue ſo long, till ſome breath their laſt on the Spot. Theſe People are very naſty; They ſeldom, or hardly ever, waſh themſelves; They will eat the Fleſh of Oxen, Cows, and Horſes, but no Pork, be they never ſo hungry: But then they never mind whether the Cattle be ſick or ſound; For they indifferently kill and eat it. If the Meat has had but one boiling up, it is done enough for them; they never ſkim the Pot, but look upon the Skum to be the fatteſt and beſt Part of all, and therefore diſtribute it about, as a great Dainty. The Veſſels in which they ſtamp their dried Fiſh, Roots, and Berries, are made of dried Oxen and Cow's Dung. Their Cattle ſtand in the ſame Room, or Hut, where they themſelves dwell; The Floor of their Huts is terraſſed even and ſmooth. They eat Bread, when they can get it, but it is no uſual Part of their Diet, becauſe they neither Plough, Sow, nor Plant. They eat but little Salt, yet ſometimes they take Salt in Exchange for other Commodities. They are fond of ſmoaking *Chineſe Schaar*, or Tobacco, for which they truck with the *Ruſſians*. In *February* and *March* is their Harveſt, when the Sap riſes in the Trees; For then they go into the Woods, cut down young Pine-Trees, take off the inner Bark, or Baſt, which they carry home and dry for their Winter's Proviſion. They then beat it to a fine Powder, boil it in Milk, and eat it together with dried Fiſh, alſo beat to Powder. They ſhift their Habitations, in the ſame Manner, as the *Tobolſkian Tartars* do. Their Winter-Houſes or Huts, are ſquare, made of thin Planks and Beams; The Roof is covered with Earth, and a Hole is left, in the Middle, for the Smoak to go out. Their Summer-Dwellings are round, and in the Shape of a Sugar-Loaf; The Out-ſide Shell of theſe Hutts is made of the Bark of Birch-Trees, curiouſly joined together, and embroider'd with

(95) The ancient *Cimbri* were wont, when they ſacrific'd to their Deities, and worſhipp'd them, to keep a perpetual Fire. (*See the Religion of the* Cimbrian *Pagans by* Trogus Arnkiel.

with Horſe-Hair died of many Colours. A Hole is alſo left at the Top, for the Smoak to paſs through. They make their Chimnies or Fire-Places, in the Middle of their Huts, where they alſo fix a Pot-Hook to hang their Pots on, which they make themſelves, as they alſo do their Kettles, which have only an Iron Bottom, the Sides being made of the Bark of Birch, which they have a Way of Joyning to that Iron Bottom ſo tight and cloſe, that it will not only hold Water, but that the Flame of the Fire cannot burn it. They bury their Dead divers Ways: The moſt Eminent among them pitch upon a fine Tree (96), and declare that they will be buried there; And when the Corps is buried, they put ſome of the beſt Moveables of the deceaſed, along with him, into his Grave. Some only put the Corps upon a Board, which they fix upon four Poſts, in the Wood, cover the dead Body with an Oxes or Horſes Hide, and ſo leave it. Some again put the Body in the Ground. But the greater Part of them, when they dy, are left in their Huts, whence the Relations take the moſt valuable Things, make the Huts up cloſe, and then leave them (97). Thoſe who dy in the City of *Jakuhtſkoi*, are left lying in the Streets, where they are frequently devoured by Dogs. Each Tribe of theſe People looks upon ſome particular Creature as Sacred, *e. g.* a Swan, Gooſe, Raven, *&c.* and ſuch is not eaten by that Tribe, though the others may eat it. As to their Tongue, the Reader may ſee in my *Polyglott Table*, what Affinity there is between this and the Dialect of the *Crimm-Tartars:* He will alſo obſerve there ſome Conformity with the Tongues of the *Bratti*, the *Kirgaſi*, and the *Sajantzian Tartars*; Though the laſt talk pretty commonly the *Mungalian* and *Kalmuckian* Tongues, to which Countries they are near Neighbours. The *Jakuhti*, like other *Pagans*, allow of *Polygamy*. They buy and ſell their Wives, as it is cuſtomary among the *Tartars* and *Oſtiacks*, and all their Neighbours: Where the Bridegroom is obliged to purchaſe his Bride of her Parents. Thus I have given a ſhort Deſcription of this Nation, which I could have ſpun out to as great a Length, as the Author of *Das Veränderte Ruſsland* has done his Account of the *Oſtiacks*,

(*Page*

(96) See *Hiſtoire Genealog. des Tartars*, p. 343.
(97) *Schæfferus*, in his *Lapponia* affirms the ſame of the *Laplanders*.

(*Page* 173.) But my Deſign being rather to furniſh the Reader with a Multiplicity of Matter, than a Profuſeneſs of Words, I chuſe to proceed to the City of,

JAKUHTSKOI. This is the Capital of the Province of the ſame Name, near the River *Lena*, diſtant above a Hundred *German* Miles from the *Mare Glaciale*. There reſides a Governour-General, who commands alſo all the Country, called *Kamtſchatki*. The Soil about this City, notwithſtanding it lies pretty far *North*, and towards the *Mare Glaciale*, produces Corn, whereas other Places, which ly *Weſtward* from this, yield none. However, the Inhabitants, who are more intent upon Hunting Sables, Foxes, and other Animals, for the Sake of their Furs, neglect cultivating what they call *Starri paſchni Jalahn*, (*i. e.* the Land which their Forefathers uſed to plough.) Another Reaſon why they are remiſs in this Point is, their having an Opportunity of being ſupplied with Corn, by Means of the Rivers *Wittim* and *Kiringa*, the Banks of which produce fine Corn, and which flow into a River, that paſſes by their City, and diſcharges itſelf into the *Sea*. But though very little Corn is ſown in this Country, yet that which is, whatever Grain it be of, thrives apace; But the Straw never exceeds ſix Inches in Height; For as ſoon as the Corn peeps out of the Ground, it immediately ſhoots into Ears, and ripens in ſix Weeks Time. The Reaſon of this is, becauſe here the Sun is hardly ever below the Horizon in Summer, but affords its cheriſhing Warmth, both Night and Day, to the Ground: And what is moſt obſervable, is, that, during that whole Time, it does not rain; But the Earth, though fat and black, yet never thaws above ſix or nine Inches deep: Inſomuch that the Roots are plentifully ſupplied with Moiſture from below, whilſt the conſtant Heat of the Sun above irradiates what is out of the Ground; And this, I preſume, is the Cauſe of ſo quick a Harveſt; On the other Hand, thoſe Places which are ſituated more *Weſtward*, do not enjoy this Advantage: The high Icy Mountains of the Iſland of *Nova Zembla* lying juſt oppoſite to them. Near and about the City of *Jakuktſki*, there are bred alſo very good Horſes; they are pretty large, are uſed to be turned out all the Winter long, and will ſcrape the Snow with their Hoofs aſide, to come at the Graſs;

They

They alſo eat the Buds of Birch and Aſpen, and grow ſleik, plump, and fat, and look much better, than they do in Summer, when their Hair grows long. Not far from this City, *Weſtward*, there runs a River called *Wilgui*, near the Head of which there is a *Vulcano*. The Aſhes thrown up by this Mountain are looked upon to be the *Flores Salis Armoniaci*.

JASPER. There is in *Siberia*, in the Province of *Dauria*, near the City of *Argunſkoy*, a conſiderable Mountain, which affords *Jaſper*, partly of a deep, and partly of a pale green Colour; ſo hard, that no Steel Tool will touch it; But it may be ground and poliſhed like a Looking-Glaſs. *Emperour Peter the Firſt* had once a Deſign, to have ſome Columns made of this *Jaſper*. Prince *Gagarin*, during the Stay of the *Swediſh* Captives in *Tobolſky*, cauſed a good many round Stones to be ground of this *Jaſper*, of the Size of Waſtcoat-Buttons, which he had ſet in Gold, and afterwards ornamentally diſpoſed upon the Trappings of a Saddle-Horſe, which looked very grand and rich.

JENISEI or JENZEA. This is one of the largeſt Rivers that runs thro' *Tartary* and *Siberia*; It extends itſelf, from its Source to its Mouth, One Thouſand Six Hundred *Engliſh* Miles in Length. I could never learn the Signification of the Name of this great River, the Word being neither *Sclavonian* nor *Ruſſian*; Nor do the *Tartars*, who live on the Banks of it, near its Source, give it the Name of *Jeniſei*, but call it *Kemm*. However, the Word *Jeniſei* ſignifying, in the *Tartarian* and *Turkiſh* Tongues, *to ſwell*, or *to over-flow*, and this River overflowing the Land, every Spring, towards its Mouth, on both Sides, for ſeveral Miles, it is not unlikely that it had the Name *Jeniſei* from thence (98): For *Sai* or *Sei* ſignifies a *Rocky River*, where there are Water-falls, and having a rapid Current; And *Jenie*, denotes ſpreading, ſwelling; *e. g.* The Rivers *Jaxartes* and *Cheſeldaria*, are alſo called, near their Sources, *Dſai* or *Dſeihun*: Now the River *Jeniſei*, near its Springs, between the Town of *Abakan* and the River *Kemtſchyk*, is not only ſtony and rocky, but has above ten *Potroggs*, or Cataracts; As it has,

(98) See my Introduction, Sect. III. §. XXIX. where Mention is made of the Word *Inſia*.

likewiſe, between the Cities of *Craſnoyahr* and *Jeniſei*, not far from *Kemſkoi Oſtrock*. Whence it comes, that this River, from the Town of *Abakan*, towards its Source, into *Mungalia*, is not Navigable, which otherwiſe would much ſhorten and facilitate the Way, through *Mungalia* into *China*, and render that Trade much more eaſy, as well as profitable. This River, on Account of its ſtony Bottom, yields no Fiſh, 'till below the City of *Jeniſei*, and after it has received the Rivers *Angara* and *Tungus*, which cauſes annually a great Number of Veſſels from this City, and others, to go down ſo far as *Nova Mungaſeia*, in Order to catch, and ſalt Fiſh. At this City, the River is one *Werſt*, or One Thouſand Five Hundred Paces over; From which the Reader may judge of its vaſt Breadth downwards, near the Sea, after it has ſwallow'd up ſo many large Rivers. The Mouth of this River, where it falls into the *Mare Glaciale*, eſpecially on the left Side, near the Lake call'd *Guba Mangaſeiſka*, has not yet been diſcover'd by the *Ruſſians*, partly on Account of the exceſſive Cold, partly for Fear of the Savage *Samojeds*, who dwell thereabouts.

Jescherits, Is a Kind of Diſtemper, peculiar to the *Ruſſians*, who live in the utmoſt Parts of *Siberia*, between *Tomſkoi* and *Kuſnetſko*; The Tip of their Tongue begins to rot, without any Pain, and this Mortification runs gradually, 'till it gets into the Throat, and (they not knowing of any Remedy to put a ſtop to this Evil) it kills them in the End.

Irbyth, Is a ſmall Town in *Siberia*, near the little River *Irbyth*, between *Tobolſky* and *Werkoturia*. In this Place, a very great Fair is kept, yearly, beginning the ſecond of *January*, and continuing 'till the firſt of *February*; Whither many Hundreds of Merchants, from all Parts of *Ruſſia* reſort, as well as *Tartars*, *Bucharians*, and many more Nations.

Irtish, Is a large River, which has its Riſe, in the Country of the *Kalmucks*: It paſſes through great Part of *Siberia*, and near the City of *Tobolſky* it unites itſelf with the River *Toboll*; The *Eaſt Tartars* and *Mungals* call this River *Uardüſch* (99): It is worthy of Conſideration, whether this River be

(99) See *l'Hiſt. de Timur Beck, Tom. II. p.* 43, & 44.

be not, perhaps, the River *Oechardus*, of *Ptolemy*, which he calls *Sericæ Regionis Fluvium*, and *Marius Niger* names *Tartar?* (See *Dictionar. Car. Stephan. Page* 1460.) And I have already ſhewn, in ſeveral Places, that the People call'd *Seres*, are not to be look'd for among the *Chineſe*, but among the *Tartars* and *Scyths*.

Iron. The *Siberian Iron* is twice as good, as that which is found in *Ruſſia*; Which laſt, for the moſt Part, is extracted from a red moory Earth; And though ſome Iron Oar is found in divers Places in *Ruſſia*, yet is it not to be compar'd to that which *Siberia* affords.

Iron Works. There are many *Iron-Fabricks* in *Ruſſia*; For Inſtance, (1.) Near the City of *Tula*, where annually Twenty Thouſand Muſkets, and Ten Thouſand Pair of Piſtols are made; Beſides other Iron-work, which is deliver'd from thence to the Admiralty of *Peterſburg*, to which it belongs. (2.) There are Iron-works about the City of *Weronitz*. (3.) In *Carelia* are the *Petrowka*, *Uſtroka* and *Alexei*, *Sawods* or *Fabricks*, which laſt is diſtant from the Sea, about ſixty *Werſts*. In the firſt of theſe three Works, there is daily one Cannon caſt, and annually Twelve Thouſand Muſkets, and Six Thouſand Pair of Piſtols finiſh'd, beſides Anchors, and other Iron-works, for the Uſe of the Navy. (4.) Near the City of *Muſcow*, are the Iron-works of *Nariſkin* and *Muller*. (5.) Near the City of *Occa* are the Works of *Pawlowki*, belonging to the *Knies Czerkaſki*. Here are not only very nice Fire-Arms, but all Manner of other neat and curious Things made of Iron; This City being inhabited chiefly by Smiths, whoſe Apprentices are ſent abroad to retail all Sorts of Iron Wares; Among other Things, they make a Kind of ſmall Locks, very neatly work'd, with Keys to them; Some no bigger than a Pea, others of the Bigneſs of a Kidney-Bean: Theſe they commonly ſell for half a *Rubel* a Dozen. (6.) There are alſo Iron-works near the City of *Galitſh*, and in other Places. Beſides theſe, there are not a leſs, but rather a greater Number of Iron-works in *Siberia*, and about the City of *Konguer*; The Names of which, I cannot call to Mind; But above all, that of *Catharinenburg* is the beſt contrived, and beſt managed Fabrick; Of which I have taken Notice above.

Iron Mines. None of the *Siberian Iron Mines* were open'd, before the Beginning of this Century.

Ising-Glass, or *Carluck*, in the *Ruſſian* Tongue, *Kley-Ribey* is brought from *Ruſſia*, as well as *Hungary:* It is made of the Bladder of the Fiſh *Beluga*; The beſt Sort is that which is roll'd up in long Rolls; The other Sort is preſs'd into Cakes. Some make it alſo of the Sturgeon or *Sevringa*; But this is not near ſo good, and may eaſily be known from the other, that being ſmooth and white, this, on the contrary, yellowiſh, and full of Cracks *.

Jucht, Is a Sort of *Muſcovian* Leather, which goes by the Name of *Ruſſia* Leather, having a peculiar Smell. There is of it both red and black. The Signification of the Name is a *Pair*, becauſe there are always two Hides laid together. It is alſo cuſtomary to ſay a *Jucht* of Corn, (*i. e.* two Meaſures,) either of one, or two different Grains, as a Meaſure of Rye, and the other of Oats. The *Ruſſians* call this Leather likewiſe *Jalouiſchnaja Koſcha*, which ſignifies an *Oxes Hide.* The *Tartars* call it *Bulgarie*, probably becauſe they may firſt have had this Sort of Leather from that Country. There is no Country where theſe *Juchts* are made ſo well, as in *Ruſſia*, and the beſt of all are the *Jariſlawlian.* It has been attempted, in ſeveral Places, to imitate this Leather, and Natives of *Ruſſia* have been imploy'd, and furniſh'd with all the neceſſary Materials for this Purpoſe; But though they have ſucceeded in all other Reſpects, yet they never could come up to the Smell, which is only permanent, in the true *Ruſſian Juchts.*

Jukagiri, *Jukagri*, or *Jukairi* (of whom *Das Veränderte Ruſsland* juſt mentions a few Words, *Page* 405,) is a *Pagan* Nation, near the *Mare Glaciale*, between the Mouth of the River *Lena*, and the Promontory of *Tabin*, otherwiſe call'd *Swetois Nos.* One of the *Jakuhti* told me, that the Speech of theſe People was exactly like the Gabbling of Geeſe. *Forbeiſſeur*, in his Travels, ſays the ſame of three Savages, which ſome *Engliſh* Commanders brought away from Streight *Davis*; *viz.* That they had made ſuch a Gabbling, and utter'd nothing but inar-

* I have ſeen Iſinglaſs made in *Germany*, particularly on the *Elbe*, of the inward Skin of the only Gut a Sturgeon has, which runs from its *Proboſcis*, to its Navel.

inarticulate Sounds, except theſe two Words, *Oxa indecha.* The People who inhabited the Iſland which lies between the River *Lena* and *Swetoi Nos*, or, as the *Ruſſians* call it, *Nos Tſchalatſkoi* and *Anadirſkoi*, are call'd by the *Jukagiri*, and *Jakutbi*, by the Name of *Eidigani*, which Iſland I have not pointed out in my Map. Theſe *Jukagiri* hang their Dead on Trees, but the Skeletons, or Bones of their Parents and Relations, they afterwards carry along with them, when they go a Hunting. This agrees with what *Das Verænderte Ruſsland* (*Page* 403,) affirms of the *Samojeds*, who never inter the Bones of their Parents.

K.

KAFFTAN, Is a *Tartarian* Word, and ſignifies, among the *Ruſſians*, a *Coat*, whether ſhort or long; And *Polukafftanie* ſignifies a *Waſtcoat.*

KALL-ATSCHI, or *Kall-atzi*, Is, in *Ruſſia*, a Kind of *Wheaten Bread*, made of different Sizes. Theſe Loaves are of an Oval Form, and ſome almoſt two Foot long. This puts me in Mind of a Sort of Paſtry, which the People in *Lower Saxony*, and in the Iſland of *Rugen*, make, at a certain Time of the Year; The Inſide of which they fill with ſeveral Ingredients, then put it into Boiling Water, and let it boil till it is enough; And this they call *Tall-atzi* or *Tallatſchen*, which Name is doubtleſs a Corruption of *Kall-atzi.* The Reader may remember what has been ſaid in the *Introduction*, (*Sect.* IV. *Par.* V.) about the Name and People, call'd *Kallatzes*; *viz.* that the Word *Atz* ſignifies, in the *Tartarian* and *Turkiſh* Tongues, *Hungry*, and *Kall* or *Chall* to *remain*, or *ſtay behind*, where I have cited, from the *Hiſt. Genealog. des Tartars*, (*p.* 56.) a Paſſage to this Purpoſe: That *Ogus Chan* had order'd a certain Quantity of Proviſion to be diſtributed among a certain Number of People, left behind in his March to *India*, who had endured very great Want, and were, on that Account call'd *Kall-atzi* or *Koll-atſchi*, that is, the *forſaken Hungry*, of which Generation, it is ſaid, there are ſtill ſome in Being in *Choraſan.* Now it is likely, that this Proviſion was made up into a Sort of Loaves, for the Convenience of

giving each Man his Proportion, and thence the *Ruſſians* and *Vandals* may have retain'd the Name *Kall-atzi* or *Kall-atſchi*, which, with them, is in Uſe to this Day. This Conjecture will appear the more probable, if it be conſidered, what I have ſhewn, by many Examples, (*Sect.* IV. §. V. *of the Introduction*) that in *Germany*, *Sweden*, and other *Europæan* Countries, many ancient *Perſian* and *Turkiſh* Words are uſed. To confirm this ſtill more, I ſhall here add the following: *Kapmack*, in *Turkiſh*, ſignifies to *Rob*, to *Plunder*; In *Lower Saxony* they ſay, he is *Kap*, or *Kahl*, or *Kaput*, (i. e. *he is ſtript bare*, or *undone.*) *Ga* or *Jabacki*, in *Turkiſh*, ſignifies a *Fork*, the *Germans* call it *Gabel*. *Firib*, in *Turkiſh*, is, in *Latin*, *Fur*, a *Thief*. *Geweze*, ſignifies, in the *German*, *Gewæſch*, (i. e. *Tittle-Tattle.*) *Ætyk* a *Noble Family*; In the *Swediſh* and *Gothick*, it is call'd *Æth*. *Deſne*, in *German*, *Degen*, a *Sword*. *Feger* ſignifies *Honour*, *Dignity*; *Feger*, in *Swediſh* and *Gothick*, denotes *pretty*, *vertuous*, *graceful*; *Embar*, a *Granary*, the *Ruſſians* uſe this very Word to denote a *Pantry*; *Chalck* is *People*, and ſeems to have ſome Affinity with the *German* Word *Volck*, (*Engl. Folk*) *Feda*, a *Vow*, and *Fida*, *devout*, is not very different from the *Latin Fides*. *Oelemek*, to *Meaſure*, hence the *German* Word *Elle*, (*Engliſh Ell*,) may take its Origin. *Peik*, a *Servant*, is the ſame with the *Swediſh Peuke-Bön*, an *awkward*, *unhandy Creature*, and the *Swediſh* Word, *Bonde*, ſignifies a Boor, or Peaſant. *Cumm*, in *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian*, ſignifies a *Plain* or *Sandy Deſert*, where no Graſs grows: For Example, *Ara-Cum*, and *Cara-cum*, whence probably the *Cumans* or *Cubanes*, who formerly lived in large open Fields, received their Names. There ſeems even ſome Affinity to be between this *Word*, and the *Latin Word*, *Campus*; For if we conſult *Beckman*, (*de Origin. Lat. ling. Hannov.* 1619, *p.* 249.) we find that by the Word *Campus* is underſtood a Sandy Place, where they uſed to fight, or wreſtle. To this very Day, when the *Kalmucks* fight or wreſtle half-naked, to divert their *Chan*, they firſt of all throw two, three, or more Handfuls of Sand into the Air. *Karmack*, ſignifies in *Turkiſh*, to dig up, which does not differ very much from *Kazematts*, a Term we uſe in Fortification. *Oghlan* ſignifies the ſame as the *German* Word *Jungling*, *i. e.* a *Youngſter* or *Youth*.

Youth. Ghæwi, Ghawi, in *Latin, Vagus, Vagabundus. Heden*, is, in the *German* Language, *Gehege, Hagen*, and *Hecke*; (*i. e.* a *Hedge.*) *Dsem* or *Dsen*, a *Persian* Word, signifies a *Multitude*, or *Concourse of People*; And in the old *Teutonick*, *Send*, signifies a Synod, whence the Learned *Gundling* derives the Compound-Word *Semper-frey*, from the Word *Sendbaar. Böluck*, in *Russian*, *Polco*, a *Regiment* or *Troop*; *Rubeck* (*in his Atlantica T.* I. *p.* 119,) says, That *Burr* signifies, in the Ancient *Gothick*, *Heaven*, or the *Kingdom of the Gods*, and the *Kalmucks* call *God of Heaven, Burr-Chan. Plin.* (*Lib.* VI. *cap.* 26.) says *Schænos*, is a Kind of Measure, of sixty *Stadia*, (*confer. etiam Guil. Burton, Lipsi. de Orig. Ling. Pers. p.* 31.) Among the *Permecks* and *Lapplanders*, *Schæmkas* and *Schænas* is a Mile, which they reckon equal to three Times the Distance from the Eye, to the Extremity of the visible *Horizon.* See *Schæffer*'s *Lapponia.* The *Persian* Word, *Wadi*, is the letting of Water overflow the Meadows and Fields, (*which Waters are but shallow.*) This seems to have some Affinity with the *German* Word *Waden*, or *Dutch Waaden*, and the *English* to *Wade*, or *Wade through.* The *Turkish* Word, *Marke*, denotes a *Place where People Assemble*, and more particularly *where Soldiers are encamp'd*, and *Markas* signifies the *Center*; Whence, not improbably, the *German* Word *Marckt*, and the *English*, *Market.* There was formerly an entire Tribe among the *Kalmucks* and *Mungals*, call'd *Markæts*, of whom there are still some Remains. (See *Hist. Geneal. des Tartars*, *p.* 30.) *Brutt* is a separate Nation of *Tartars* among the *Usbecks*, and *Sigisbertus* (*teste Mart. Zeil. cap.* I. *p.* 13.) makes mention of a People which were call'd *Brutü. Pülüg*, a *Persian* Word, has the same Signification with the *German*, *Pflug.* (in *English*, *Plough.*) The *Turkish* Word *Ssîra* is the same with the *Latin Series.* In short, it would be no difficult Matter to produce many Hundreds of *Persian* and *Turkish* Words, which agree very nearly with the *Europæan*, both in Sound and Sense.

KAMATZINTIAN *Tartars.* They live near the Source of the River *Mana*, which discharges itself into the River *Jenisei*, between the City of *Crasnoyar*, and the Town of *Abakan.* They are not numerous, and, at most, amount to but about

Three or Four Hundred Men. Their Tongue the Reader may ſee a Specimen of, in my *Tabula Polyglotta.*

KAMENKA, is a Village ſituated near the River of the ſame Name, in *Siberia*; Where are two Furnaces to melt Iron-Oar, and two Hammer-Mills. There are alſo two Hammer-Mills at *New Kamenka*, two *Werſts* higher up this River.

KAMINA MASLA, or *Stone-Butter.* This does not ſweat out from the Mountains, as the *Ruſſians* ſell it, and the Author of the *Verændertes Ruſsland* relates, (*p.* 181.) But is a Kind of *Vitrioly*-Water, which forces its Way through the Mountains of Earth and Clay, as well as thoſe which contain a red Iron-Sand, or Oar. The *Ruſſians* put this watry Earth into Tubs, for about twenty-four Hours, and pour ſome Water upon it, which they pour off the next Day, into Earthen Pots: Theſe they cover, and luting them well, put them for twenty-four Hours, into an Oven, where this Matter congeals, and grows thick; Then they take it out in Lumps, and when it is grown cold, dry it. If, at any Time, this *Vitrioly*-Water dries up, and ceaſes to force its Way through any Mountain, where it has been before, the Earth grows black, and often turns to Slate. The *Ruſſians* make Uſe of this *Kamina Maſla*, to dy Leather black, but it will not do for Linnen, being too corroſive.

KAMTSCHATKA, or, as the *Chineſe* call it, *Jecco*, and the *Germans Jeſſo* or *Jedſo*, is, as *Martinus Martini*, likewiſe, confirms, (in his *Atlas*, *p.* 21.) a *Peninſula*, one Part of which joins to the Continent of *Siberia.* It is not above thirty or forty Years, ſince it was diſcovered by the *Ruſſians*, on the Side of *Siberia*, and the *Dutch* diſcover'd it by Sea, in the Year 1643. There are many Reaſons to believe that this Country formerly was contiguous to *North-America*; And that, even to this Day, there remains a Kind of Communication, by Means of a Chain of Iſlands. Of this Opinion, likewiſe, is *Hadrian Relandus*, in his Diſſertation *De Ling. American.* I ſhall give a more full Account of this Country below.

KANIKLU. It would have been a difficult Matter for me to have gueſs'd what *Marcus Paulus* means, when he ſays, (*Lib.* II. *cap.* 41.) *In the Weſt Part of the Country of Thibeth, there is a Province call'd Kaniklu*, had not the *Tartars* given me a Key to it.

it. For ſince *Marcus Paulus* takes Notice, in another Place, that, in this Diſtrict, there were many *Chriſtians*, and learned Inhabitants; And yet the *Tartars*, who travel that Way, know not of any Province bearing that Name, the Caſe probably ſtands thus: The *Tartars* call the Learned *Bucharians*, in the *Perſian* Tongue, *Kani-Chælm*, and the Word *lu* or *li* ſignifies, with the *Tartars*, *People*, (as appears by what *Olearius* ſays concerning *Ark-lu*, in his Appendix to the *Tartarian* Wars;) It is, therefore, not unlikely, that, in thoſe Days, the Name of *Kaniklu* was given to that Province, on Account of the People, who then inhabited it, as if they had ſaid, *the Country of the Learned.* Many more of the like Paſſages of *Marcus Paulus* might be clear'd up, if Time and Room would allow of it.

KANKLINES, or the *Tribe of Kanklis*, mentioned in *L' Hiſt. Geneal. des Tartars*, *Page* 83. and who are call'd *Plauſtrarii* and *Hamaxobii*, by *Andreas Mill. Greiffenh.* (*in Comment. Alph. p.* 64.) Theſe are the *Nogaian Tartars*, who carry their Houſes on Carts, and Waggons, from one Place to another. Their Prince they call to this Day *Chanak*, or *Kaneck mirſa*, from which laſt Word is derived the Name *Kanklis.* See *L' Hiſt. Geneal. des Tartars*, *p.* 41.

KANSKIAN TARTARS, are ſo call'd, by the *Ruſſians*, from the River *Kann*, which diſcharges itſelf into the River *Jeniſei*, between the Cities of *Craſnoyahr* and *Jeniſeiſkoe.* They live along that River, but their Number is ſmall, and does not exceed Four or Five Hundred Men. They call themſelves *Khotowzi*; But are call'd *Aſa*, by the *Tunguſii.*

KAPP. This is a peculiar Kind of a Woody Excreſence, on Birch Trees, found in *Ruſſia*, near *Wiatka* and *Tomſkoi*, which the Country People alſo call *Repytzna.* Of this all Manner of Turnery-Ware is made: It is a Sort of ſpeckled Wood, of a fine Grain, and has white Veins. The Veſſels made of this Wood are ſo very thin, that they are tranſparent, will bend, and are generally covered with a yellowiſh Verniſh. This Wood being very dear, the Turners take great Care not to waſt any Part of it; They have a Way of turning one Veſſel within another, and the ſmalleſt Chips are uſed for inlay'd Works. It grows ſometimes bigger than a Man's Head, in the Shape of a

Bowl, but irregular. I have been told, that this Excreſence is cauſed by a Worm, which gets between the Body and the Bark of the Birch, and having made a Hole, in the Body of the Tree, the extravaſated Sap, produces this Excreſence, in the Inſide of which the Worm takes its Habitation.

KARAKITAYCI. They are the ſame as the *Caulachiti*, in *Budæus*'s Dictionary, and the *Caulachi*, in ancient Maps, and are thoſe *Chalcha Mungals*, which live without the Wall. *Karakitayci* is an improper Name given them, ſignifying as much as the Ruſtick or poor *Kitayans*, becauſe they were formerly Maſters of *Kitay*.

KEMTSCHYK, A River, which falls into the River *Jeniſei*, near its Source, where formerly ſtood an ancient City, the Ruins of which are yet to be ſeen. I am of Opinion that this muſt have been the Place which *Marcus Paulus* (*cap.* V. *p.* 4.) mentions, and corruptly calls *Klemminiſium*, whither the *Tartar-Chan*, *Kublai*, ſent ſome of his People, forty Day's Journey, to meet the *Venetian* Embaſſadors.

KILANI, Are a People living in the *Eaſtern Tartary*, about the Mouth of the River *Amour*. They are called, by the *Jakuhtian Tartars*, *Kilett*, and, by the *Ruſſians*, *Kilaki*. I am told, that theſe People (1.) go ſtark naked; (2.) that they make not only moſt excellent Arms, particularly damaſk'd, and other Iron-Work, but the beſt Bows of any Nation in the *Eaſt*. It is to be believed that theſe are of the Race of the *Avari*, whom, in the thirteenth Century, the *Tartar Mangu-Chan*, then King of *Perſia*, took from between the *Caſpian* and *Black-Sea*, and ſent to *Kitay*, or *China*, to the *Great Chan*, to make Arms and Engines for his Uſe, at which they were very dextrous. (See *Herbelot*'s *Diction. Orient.*) What confirms me ſtill more, in this Opinion, is, that, as I am credibly informed, even at this Time, the beſt Arms are made in the *Perſian* Province of *Kilan*, on the *Caſpian* Sea. I have heard ſome of the *Tartars* ſay, that theſe People have a Method of taming Bears, and uſing them in the Room of Horſes. It is alſo ſaid that they wear Rings in their Noſes, and I have obſerved the ſame of many of the Inhabitants of the *Weſtern-Tartary*.

KIMRA,

KIMRA, Is a little Town, in the *Koſchinian* Diſtrict, on the River *Wolga*. It is very pleaſantly ſituated on a high Hill, from whence there is a moſt beautiful Proſpect. This Place belongs to *Baſilius Soltikow*, who has built a ſtately Palace there. It has one large old Church, built of Free-Stone, beſides three ſmall Churches. This Town is fam'd for the beſt and moſt ingenious Taylors, Shoemakers, and other Handicrafts, in the whole *Empire* of *Ruſſia*.

KITAIKA, Is a Sort of Callico, of diverſe Colours, brought from *China*, through *Bucharia*, into *Ruſſia*, in large Quantities, and is uſed both for Mens and Womens Apparel. The *Chineſe Kitaika* is the beſt, of which there are two Sorts, (1.) *Odintzovaia*, which is, of their Meaſure, about three quarters and a half broad, and about twenty Ells long; This is the fineſt of the two, and each Piece is roll'd up by itſelf. (2.) *Tiumovaia*, which is ſomewhat coarſer, but more durable, three fourths broad, and only ten Yards long; Of this ten Pieces are roll'd up together, which they call *Tium*. There are alſo Cotton Stuffs, or Callicoes, brought from *Bucharia* and *Mungalia*, call'd *Selimſkaia*. Theſe are the coarſeſt Sort, and the Pieces are both ſhorter and narrower. Of theſe they, likewiſe, ty up ten Pieces into a *Tium*, or Bundle; But they fold each Piece firſt ſingly. They are moſt of gay Colours, as Red, Green, Yellow, *&c.* The Name of *Selimſkaia* is taken from the City of *Selim*, otherwiſe called *Siningfu* or *Dobbaſelin*, where theſe Stuffs are moſtly worn.

KONSEOSERTSKIE WODY. This Name is given, by the *Ruſſians*, to certain *Chalybeate* Waters or Springs, which are about 165 Werſts from *Olonetz*, and about fifty from the *Petrowian Sawods*, or Iron-works. *Emperour Peter* the Firſt uſed, every Year, to viſit theſe Wells. The Waters are very ſalubrious, and not only beneficial to *Hypocondriacal* Perſons, but efficacious in ſeveral other Diſeaſes; For which Reaſon they are much frequented, both in Winter and Summer. There is a very large Houſe, the Hall of which is ſixty-ſix *Ruſſian* Ells long, and eighteen Broad, round which there are thirty Rooms, all built, and kept in Repair, at the Charge of the Emperour; And thoſe who come to drink the Waters, pay nothing for their

Lodgings. One Thing is very obſervable in theſe Waters; (*viz.*) That they have no Virtue at all in Spring and Autumn, but are of equal Efficacy in Summer and Winter. Of theſe Wells, the Reader will find a more particular Account in the *Verændertes Ruſsland, Page* 239.

KOPEIKA. A RUSSIAN Coin, which formerly were of fine Silver, and as big again as they are at preſent, forty-eight *Kopeiks*, being equal to fifty *Stivers*, *Dutch* Mony. But at preſent they are leſs in Size, and not ſo fine. There are alſo *Kopeiks* of Copper, which are large, and of equal Value with the Silver ones. Fifty *Dutch Stivers* are equal to ninety-ſix modern *Kopeiks*. The Name *Kopeika* is derived from the Word *Kopæ*, which ſignifies a Pike, ſuch as the *Chevalier*, in the *Ruſſian* Arms, holds in his Hand. The firſt of this Mony was coin'd in the fifteenth Century, after the Pike was put into the Arms of *Muſcow*, in the Room of the Cimmeter. In the Year 1724, *Emperour Peter* the Firſt, order'd that no more Silver *Kopeiks* ſhould be coin'd, becauſe it was diſcovered, that, to the great Loſs of the *Empire*, the Number of good *Kopeiks* decreaſed annually, and vaſt Quantities of Counterfeit ones appeared in the Room of them.

KORÆIKI, Are a *Pagan* Nation, living on the *Weſt* and *North*-Side of the Bay of *Kamtſchatki* or *Lamai*. They are Beardleſs, like the *Lapplanders*, *Samojeds*, and *Oſtiacks*; For, in the firſt Place, they have naturally very little Hair about the Mouth, and what little they have they pluck out, as do alſo the *Jakuhti*, *Tunguſii* and *Kalmucks*. They are naturally a good harmleſs People, and have no Idols of Stone, Wood, or any other Materials, as the *Oſtiacks* have. They uſe no Manner of Ceremony in their Devotion; But when they go out a Hunting, they pray to the SUPREME BEING to bleſs them with Succeſs. However, they have their *Schaamans* or Magicians, and are a very filthy People. They do not build their Huts on the Ground, but upon four Poſts, like ſome *Armenians* (100); And get up, by Means of a Ladder to the Top, where they enter through a Hole. For their neceſſary Occaſions, they make Uſe of

(100) Compare with this what has been ſaid of the *Jukagiri*, and of *Kamtſchatka*.

of a Tub, which they have with them in the Hut, and, when full, they carry it out, and make Uſe of the ſame Tub to bring in Water, for other Occaſions: A whole Family will ly all naked together under one large Coverlet. The *Ruſſians* who trade with them, carry thither a Kind of Muſhrooms, called, in the *Ruſſian* Tongue, *Muchumor*, which they exchange for Squirils, Fox, Hermin, Sable, and other Furs: Thoſe who are rich among them, lay up large Proviſions of theſe Muſhrooms, for the Winter. When they make a Feaſt, they pour Water upon ſome of theſe Muſhrooms, and boil them. They then drink the Liquor, which intoxicates them; The poorer Sort, who cannot afford to lay in a Store of theſe Muſhrooms, poſt themſelves, on theſe Occaſions, round the Huts of the Rich, and watch the Opportunity of the Gueſts coming down to make Water; And then hold a Wooden Bowl to receive the Urin, which they drink off greedily, as having ſtill ſome Virtue of the Muſhroom in it, and by this Way they alſo get Drunk. In Spring and Summer they catch a large Quantity of Fiſh, and digging Holes in the Ground, which they line with the Bark of Birch, they fill them with it, and cover the Holes over with Earth. As ſoon as they think the Fiſh is rotten and tender, they take out ſome of it, pour Water upon it, and boil it with red-hot Pebbles (as the *Finnlandians* do their Beer) and feed upon it, as the greateſt Delicacy in the World. This Meſs ſtinks ſo abominably, that the *Ruſſians* who deal with them, and who are none of the moſt ſqueamiſh, are themſelves not able to endure it. Of this Liquor they likewiſe drink ſo immoderately, that they will be quite intoxicated, or drunk with it.

KORSAKI, Are a Kind of little grey *Foxes*, in the *Kalmuckian* Deſerts, near the *Caſpian-Sea*, which have their Holes in ſmall ſandy Hills; Some call them Stone-Foxes.

KOTLINO OSTROW. The *Ruſſians* call the Iſland of *Retuſarius* by this Name, which ſignifies as much as *Kettle-Iſland*, it repreſenting that Shape. On this Iſland is built the great Fortreſs, call'd *Cronſtad*; There is a leſſer Fort placed before the Entrance into the Harbour, call'd *Cron-Schlot*.

KOTON or CHOTON. The *Eaſtern Tartars* give this Name to all the Trades-Men, Citizens and *Bucharians*, who dwell in their Towns: Whence the ſeveral Names of Towns, in *Eaſt Tartary*, as *Kara-Koton* (*i. e.* Black) *Koto-Koton* (Green,) *Naun-Koton*; *i. e.* that *Koton* which is ſituated near the River *Naun*. As theſe People deal very conſiderably in Cotton-Stuffs (or *Callicoes*) it is not altogether improbable, but the Name *Catun*, which the *Germans* give to this Kind of Commodity, may proceed from thence: Though I do not pretend to inſiſt upon it, it being only my Conjecture.

KRUSCHKA, Is a Meaſure, with which the *Ruſſians* meaſure Liquids; eight of them are equal to one *Wedro*.

KUBA or KUBATZIN, Is the Name of a People not far from *Derbent*, who live in the Mountains, and are taken to be *Jews*; They are ſaid to obſerve the *Moſaick* Law, but they cannot give any Account how, or when, they came to inhabit thoſe Regions. A Specimen of their Tongue, the Reader may ſee in my *Tab. Polyglotta*, *Column* VI. They alſo ſpeak *Hebrew*; But whether theſe People gave themſelves the Name they bear, or whether they received it from others, I am not inform'd. All I can ſay is: That a certain *Jew*, in *Poland*, related to me the following ſingular Story, which others in *Poland*, have confirmed, though with ſome Reluctancy; *viz.* They hold, that there falls, once every Year, at a certain Time, one ſingle Drop of Blood, in the whole World, which generally falls in the Houſe of a *Jew*. They, therefore, cover all their Eatables, particularly Butter, very carefully about that Time; For they have the very Day, Hour and Minute mark'd in their Almanacks. They believe, that if a *Jew* ſhould eat any Thing upon which this Drop of Blood had fallen, he would burſt; But that it would not be ſo fatal to a *Chriſtian*. The Fall of this Drop of Blood is call'd by them, *Kuva* or *Kuwa*: It may, therefore, be a Queſtion, whether the Name of theſe People have not their Name from thence As to a Notion current among ſome, that the *Jews* annually make Uſe of the Blood of *Chriſtians* in their Ceremonies, it is a meer Fable, and a falſe Imputation.

KUR-

KURMATSCH, Is a Name the *Tartars* give to peel'd Barley, after it has been roasted in an Iron Pan; Which they eat dry as it is, without Beating or Boiling it. They often regale Travellers and Strangers with some of it.

L.

LAISCHEU or LAISCHEWO, Is a small Town in the Government of *Casan*, situated on the River *Kama*, about thirty *Wersts* distant from the Conjunction of this River, with the *Wolga*. This Place is remarkable in that, the Salt-*Ladias*, or Barges, which come from *Permia*, touch here every Year, in Order to hire Men to carry them up the *Wolga*, to *Nischney Novogrod*, and for that Purpose, there repair annually thither, above Twenty Thousand Peasants.

LAPAIKA or ALAPAIKA, Is a small Village belonging to the Mine-Adventurers in the Government of *Siberia*, situated on a little Brook of that Name, which runs into the River *Nytza*, and this into the River *Tura*. Here is an Iron-Fabrick, a melting Furnace, and two Hammer-Mills.

LAPIS-LAZULI. At *Kongur*, they find a Sort of ordinary *Lapis-Lazuli*; But in the Province of *Dauria*, near *Argun*, I am told, there is some that is fine, though I have not seen it.

LARIX or LARCH TREE. This the *Russians* call *Lestwinitza*, which seems to have some Affinity with the Word *Leetschinen*, a Name the People who live in the Vallies of *Piemont* give this Tree: But the *Tartars* call it *Thyht*. It grows in great Plenty, in *Siberia*, especially near the City of *Tomskoi*, and farther upwards. This Tree, which, in other Parts, is an Evergreen, casts its Leaves and Prickles, in Winter, in *Siberia*; But then it buds again sooner than any other Trees. The *Agaricus*, which is a *Fungus*, or Spungy Excrescence, growing on the Body of this Tree, is not black, but white, and is carried in large Quantities from thence to *Russia*. The Wood is reddish, and very hard; It gives a very great Heat when it is burnt, for which Reason it is much used, in *Tomskoi*, by the Brewers, and the Potters, to heat their Kilns; And whilst it

is

is burning, it bounces every now and then, as if Piſtols were fir'd off. This Wood may eaſily be petrify'd by Art, the Manner of which is to lay it, about half a Year, in a moiſt Dunghill, and, if afterwards, it is put in Water, it will become a Stone.

LETTERS. In *Ruſſia*, according to an Ancient Cuſtom, Letters ſent to a Perſon of high Rank, are not cloſed with Sealing-Wax, but with Bees-Wax; And a certain Governour of the City of *Craſnoyar*, call'd *Tzerepſow*, was fined fifty *Rubles*, for ſending a Letter to Governour *Knies Gagarin*, ſeal'd with Sealing-Wax.

LILIASPHODELUS LUTEUS, or the Yellow Field-Lilly, by the *Tartars* call'd *Ulun*, grows very common near *Tomſkoi*, and in the *Barabintzian Tartary*.

LINNEN. In ſome Places of *Ruſſia* and *Siberia*, they make a very good and fine Sort of Linnen-Cloth, which, however, is but three Fourths of a *Ruſſian* Ell Wide. *Emperour Peter* the Firſt iſſued Orders, in the Year 1718, That all Looms, throughout the whole *Empire*, ſhould be made according to the Models of the *German* Looms: And that as well theſe, as the Linnen Cloth, ſhould be made broader. They make likewiſe, in *Ruſſia*, a great deal of a Kind of open Canvas or Cloth Checqued with ſmall ſquare Holes, which is very good to cover Safes, and Pavillions to admit the Air, and keep off Flies, in Summer.

LOCUSTS. What is ſaid concerning theſe Inſects; *viz.* That, in hot Countries, they are ſeen in great Shoals, is very true: For when we march'd, after the Battle of *Pultowa*, through the *Bes-Arabian* Deſerts, in our Way to *Bender*, we ſaw, one Morning, before Sun-riſing, a very large Bed of *Locuſts*, which had ſettled there the Night before, and lay on the Ground, one over the other, above three Inches thick, they not being able to riſe, 'till the Sun had dried their Wings. Our Horſes going over them, cauſed a great quaſhing Noiſe, as if they went through a Swampy Place; Above a Quarter of a (*German*) Mile was covered with this Vermin; And though the Graſs was pretty rank, yet, where they lay, it was all conſumed, and nothing but the bare Ground to be ſeen.

LODIA,

LODIA, Is a Sort of Boat, in which the *Ruſſians* bring, every Year, the Salt from *Permia* to *Niſchney Gorod*; It is a flat Bottom-Veſſel, generally about One Hundred and Five *Ruſſian* Ells, in Length, and twenty-eight in Breadth. It draws about three Ells and a half of Water. In one of theſe Veſſels, they bring down between One Hundred and Thirty, and One Hundred and Forty Thouſand *Pudes* of Salt, and it requires between Four and Five Hundred Men to work it. As ſoon as they arrive at *Niſchney-Gorod*, the Salt is put into Sacks, and Matts, and thence is carried, in ſmall Veſſels, to all the Ports of *Ruſſia*. Theſe *Lodias* are broken up at *Niſchney-Gorod*, and the Timber is uſed, partly for Building, and partly for Firing; For they can neither be carry'd back, againſt the Stream, nor farther down into the Country, with it.

LYSKOWO, Is a ſmall Town, near the *Wolga*, belonging to the Prince of *Melite*, where they make a very good and fine Sort of Linnen-Cloth, which is much in Requeſt for Exportation.

M.

MADDER, in the *German* Tongue called *Grapp*, grows plentifully in *Ruſſia*, and is as good as that, which is cultivated in Gardens in *Germany:* It is uſed by Dyers, to dy ſuch a Red as is uſed for Soldiers Cloaths; There grows alſo in *Siberia*, on the Banks of the Rivers, in ſeveral Parts, eſpecially about the City of *Narim*, an Herb or Root called *Maronna-trava*, which likewiſe gives a red Colour, but will not bear with Allum. Beſides this, near the City of *Craſnoyahr*; and in other Places, a Root is found, which gives a reddiſh Tincture. The *Tartars* call it *Bada Tuſſu*, and the common People tincture their Tea-water red with it, or uſe it frequently alone, in the Room of Tea; But it is ſomewhat aſtringent. Near the City of *Tobolſky* grows an Herb, which the *Tartars* call *Kna*, with which their Women colour their Nails red; It is believ'd to be the ſame with the Baſtard *Henna*, found in *Perſia*.

MAGNET or LOADSTONE. There are large Mountains of Loadſtones in *Siberia*, in the Diſtrict of *Ugoria*; But as there is a great deal of Iron mixt with it, its Magnetick Virtue is none of the ſtrongeſt. However good Iron is got out of it.

MAKARIEWSKOI MONASTIR, or Convent, is ſituated on the *Wolga*, ſixty *Werſts* diſtant from *Niſchney-Gorod*. A great Fair is annually kept there, which draws Thouſands of Merchants thither from all Parts of *Ruſſia*, *Bucharia*, *Perſia* and *Tartary*. The *Kalmucks* come, likewiſe, to this Fair, and bring great Numbers of Horſes with them. It begins the 30th of *June*, and ends the laſt Day of *July*.

MAMATOWA-KOST; Which the *Germans* call *Mamot*'s Bones or Teeth, are no where found in greater Plenty, in *Siberia*, than near the Mouths of the Rivers *Oby*, *Jeniſei* and *Lena*, but they are alſo on the Banks of the other Rivers. They do not properly come out of theſe Rivers; But after they have ſwoln very high, as they do at certain Times of the Year, and at their Return into their proper Channels, have waſhed away a good deal of the lower Part of the Clay and ſandy Banks, then, and then only, theſe Bones or Teeth fall down, with the Earth of the hallow Banks. They are of different Sizes, I have ſeen ſome above four *Ruſſian* Ells long, and at the thickeſt Part, nine Inches Diameter. They are like Elephants Teeth, only ſomewhat more crooked. They ſerve to make any Thing that can be made of Ivory, as Snuff-Boxes, Combs, and a Thouſand other Things; Nor can they be diſtinguiſhed from Ivory, except by being ſometimes a little more yellowiſh, which only happens when they have lain a pretty while expoſed to the Air. Sometimes theſe Bones are of a brown Colour like Coconut-ſhells, Sometimes of a blackiſh Blew, which proceeds from the ſame Cauſe. If the latter are ſawed into thin Leaves, and poliſhed, one may obſerve upon them all Sorts of Figures of Landſkips, Trees, Men and Beaſts, which likewiſe proceeds from the Decay of theſe Teeth, cauſed by the Air; Becauſe it is obſerved, that the more they are decayed, the greater Variety of Figures is found upon them; And thoſe thin Leaves, which are made of that thin Part that is not quite mouldred away, ſerve to inlay and cover ſmall Boxes, and little Cabinets with, as is done with Amber. A great many

of

of theſe Teeth, which are white, are carried for Sale to *China*. Authors are of various Opinions concerning theſe Bones or Teeth; (See *p.* 77, and 179, of the *Verændertes Ruſsland*). I have taken a good deal of Pains, during my Travels, to come at ſome Certainty, with Reſpect to this Mineral, if I may call it ſo: But after all, I have not been able to obtain ſuch an Account, as is capable of obviating all Objections. As to the Name, it doubtleſs has its Origin from the *Hebrew* and *Arabick*; this Word denoting *Behemot*, of which *Job* ſpeaks (in the xlth Chapter,) and which the *Arabs* pronounce *Mehemot:* But our Commentators are not agreed, what Kind of Animal is to be underſtood by *Behemot*; and *Luther*, with many others, take the Word only to mean, in general, a monſtrous large Beaſt: And it ſeems the *Arabians* were not at a greater Certainty. However, this is certain, that they brought this Word into Great *Tartary*; For the *Oſtiacks* near the River *Oby*, call the *Mammuth Khoſar*, and the *Tartars* call it *Khir*; And though the *Arabian* Name of an *Elephant* is *Fyhl*, yet, if very large, they add the Adjective *Mehemodi* to it; And theſe *Arabs* coming into *Tartary*, and finding there the Relicks of ſome monſtrous great Beaſts, not certain of what Kind they might be, they called theſe Teeth *Mehemot*, which afterwards became a Proper Name, among the *Tartars*; and, by the *Ruſſians*, is corruptly pronounced *Mammoth*. But ſuppoſe the *Arabians* did mean an *Elephant*, by the Word *Mehemot*; The Deſcription which *Job* gives of the Animal, which he calls *Behemoth*, is widely different from the Nature of that Beaſt. This has made ſome think, that *Job* meant the *Hippopotamus*, and others, that he meant the *Whale*. Be this as it will, the *Ruſſian Mammoth*, certainly came from the Word *Behemot*; In which Opinion I am confirmed by the Teſtimony of an ancient *Ruſſian* Prieſt, *Gregory*, by Name, Father-Confeſſor to Princeſs *Sophia*, who was many Years an Exile in *Siberia*, from whom I was told, that formerly the Name for theſe Bones, in *Siberia*, was not *Mammoth*, but *Memoth*, and that the *Ruſſian* Dialect had made that Alteration. The next Queſtion (ſince there are ſo many Tokens of prodigious large Animals to be found in *Siberia*) is, of what Kind theſe Animals muſt have been? But this is not ſo readily anſwered. As to the Opinion,

that they were amphibious Creatures, which is currently believed by the *Siberian* Populace, I have always looked upon it to be a Fable; Nor have I ever met with two Accounts of that Matter, which were of a Piece. The Author of *Das Veränderte Ruſsland*, (*Page* 179,) ſays; That theſe Animals were nine *Ruſſian* Ells long; But an ancient Painter, one *Remeſſow*, a Native of *Ruſſia*, who liv'd at *Tobolſky*, inform'd me, in the Preſence of Dr. *Meſſerſchmidt*, and many others, that he, and thirty more of his Companions, had ſeen, between the Cities of *Tara* and *Tomſkoi*, near the Lake call'd *Tzana Oſero*, an entire *Skeleton* of one of theſe Creatures, which was thirty-ſix *Ruſſian* Ells long, lying on one Side; And the Diſtance between the Ribs of one Side, and the other, was ſo great, that he, ſtanding upright, on the Concavity of one Rib, could not quite reach the inner Surface of the oppoſite Rib, with a pretty long Battle-Axe, which he had in his Hand. To which may be added, that, not only, almoſt all over *Siberia*, there are found Jaw-Teeth or Grinders of twenty or twenty-four Pounds Weight each, and Bones of a vaſt Bigneſs; But Dr. *Meſſerſchmidt* himſelf has ſeen the Bones of a whole Skeleton, of a monſtrous Size, lying in a Heap, in a Ditch between *Tomſkoi* and *Kaſnetſko*, on the Banks of the River *Tomber*. Beſides, every one of the *Swediſh* Priſoners muſt remember, that a Head of one of theſe Creatures is to be ſeen in the City of *Tumeen*, two Ells and a half long, which the *Ruſſians* reckon to be one of the ſmalleſt Size. Conſidering what has been ſaid, it is not to be believed that theſe Bones are Minerals, and a *Luſus naturæ* (101); And if we look upon the mighty Size, both of a whole Skeleton, and the Teeth, and at the ſame Time, take Notice of their Crookedneſs, it is as impoſſible that they ſhould be the Remains of Elephants. I have, indeed, formerly thought them to be the Relicks of Elephants ever ſince the *Flood* (102); But there is no Manner of Pro-

(101) What Dr. *Eberhard David Haubers*, in his Additions and Amendments of Maps, p. 112. relates of petrify'd Bones, Jaws, and the *Uni Cornu foſſile*, is already known; But theſe in *Siberia* are not petrify'd, but found in their natural State; as were thoſe that have alſo been found at *Conſtad*, in the Principality of *Wirtemberg*: Which may furniſh farther Matter for Speculation.

(102) One *Oloff Erickſon Willman*, who travell'd to *Japan*, in the Year 1648, affirms, in a ſmall Treatiſe publiſh'd at *Wyſingsö*, in *Sweden*, that the Ambaſſadours of *Siam* preſented

Proportion between them and the Skeleton of this huge Animal; I am therefore conſtrain'd to believe, that theſe Teeth and Bones are of Sea-Animals, ſuch as the *Danes* formerly us'd to bring from *Greenland*, and *Iceland*, and ſell for thoſe of Unicorns. This might be illuſtrated, by comparing thoſe with theſe, eſpecially that Horn or Tooth which is to be ſeen in the *Muſæum* of the King of *Denmark*: But this I leave to others, who have Time to examine the Accounts of *Northern Voyages*. My Conjectures, in the mean Time, are as follows: (1.) That though Nature often frames Figures, under the Earth, that imitate Animals, yet I cannot be ſatisfy'd that theſe *Siberian*-Bones are a meer *Luſus Naturæ*, but rather Relicks of the Flood. *Rubeck* (in his *Atlas*, *Tom.* I. *p.* 34.) ſays alſo ſomething to this Purpoſe. Another Example to confirm the Probability of this Conjecture, is the whole Hull of a Ship, with the Keel to it, that was found about thirty Years ago, in the *Barabintzian Tartary*, far enough from the Ocean. Beſides this, there was found in the Year 1714, upon ſinking a Well, on the Top of the Hill, near *Tobolſky*, ſixty-four Fathoms deep in the Earth, an Oaken Beam, quite black, not round, but ſhaped. (2.) It happens every Year that the Sea ſwells ſo high on the *Eaſt*-Side of *Tartary*, in the Bay of *Lama*, near the Habitations of the *Koræiki* and *Lamuti*, that Whales, and other great Sea-Animals, are carried up into ſeveral Rivers, and when the Water falls again, are left on the Shoar. (3.) Nor is it improbable, ſince the above-mention'd *Guba Taſſowſkoi* ebbs and flows, that, in the Spring of the Year, when the River *Obi*, *Jeniſei*, and others, ſwell in ſo extraordinary a Manner, there ſhould ſuch Teeth or Horns, of *Greenland* Sea-Animals be carried up, and thrown on the Banks of thoſe Rivers, an Example of which has already been ſhewn, in the Horn of a Sword-Fiſh. (4.) Or it may be conjectured, that the *Mare Glaciale* went farther into the Land before the Flood, and, at the Fall of the Waters, left theſe Creatures in the Mud behind. For, (5.) It is obſervable, that theſe *Mammoth*'s

ſented the *Dutch* Company, in the Year 1649, with 14 Elephants, two of which were as high as little Houſes. But this I look upon as an Hyperbolical Expreſſion; Thus it is common to ſay, I have ſeen ſuch a Thing a Thouſand Times, when it would be difficult to prove a Hundred.

moth's Teeth are moſtly found near the *Mare Glaciale*, in Rivers which diſcharge themſelves into the Sea. Should any one elſe, hereafter, account better for theſe Appearances, I ſhall willingly retract my Opinion. For my Part, I cannot help, in the mean Time, thinking, that, before the Flood, Water made up far the greateſt Part of the Terreſtrial Globe.

MARTAGUM, in the *German* Tongue call'd *Goldwurtzel*, (or Golden-root.) Theſe grow plentifully about *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, as well as in *Siberia*. The *Tartars* boil them in Milk or Water, and not only eat them daily in Seaſon, but lay up a Proviſion of them for the Winter, to which End they firſt boil them, and then preſs them into Cakes, which they dry.

MEAD. A Liquor made of Hony, in *Ruſſia*; It is prepar'd there, with and without boiling. The firſt Sort is reckon'd a ſtrong exhilarating Liquor, the latter ſerves chiefly to quench Thirſt, and is thought more eſpecially good for the Female-Sex. They give it a Flavour with Coriander, Cloves, and other Aromaticks. The Name comes from *Medh*, or *Miödh*, old *Ruſſian* Words, which ſignify Hony, of which this Liquor is made (103). *Hubner*, in his Dictionary, calls it *Monaſterii Quas*, which Word is not current in *Ruſſia*, and *Quas* alone ſignifies a Liquor brew'd of Rye-Flower and Malt, without Hops, and is drunk in the Room of ſmall Beer.

MEDALS. In a Book publiſh'd in the *German* Tongue, entitled, *Das eroeffnete Ritter Platz*, (*im andern Theil des geoeffneten Antiquitäten Zimmers*,) p. 76. I met with a ſmall Medal, ſaid to have been found in *Great Tartary*, on which there were Characters, that was preſented to the Publick, as a great Rarity, by Monſieur *Bandelot*, and I have inſerted a Draught of it here, *Tab.* XXI. *Letter* A. in Order to give an Opportunity to the Curious to compare it with ſome Characters to be found in this Work, *viz. Tab.* V. *Let.* A. *Tab.* XI. *Let.* B. *Tab.* XII. *Let.* A. By which it will appear, that there is a great Affinity in the Characters expreſs'd on the Medal, and thoſe in the above-mention'd Tables: Which I hope will juſtify, that the Characters I have given an Account of are genuine. As to the

(103) *Hubner's Curieuſes Reales, Natur,-Kunſt, und Handlungs Lexicon, p.* 1209, and in the ſecond Edition, *p.* 1081.

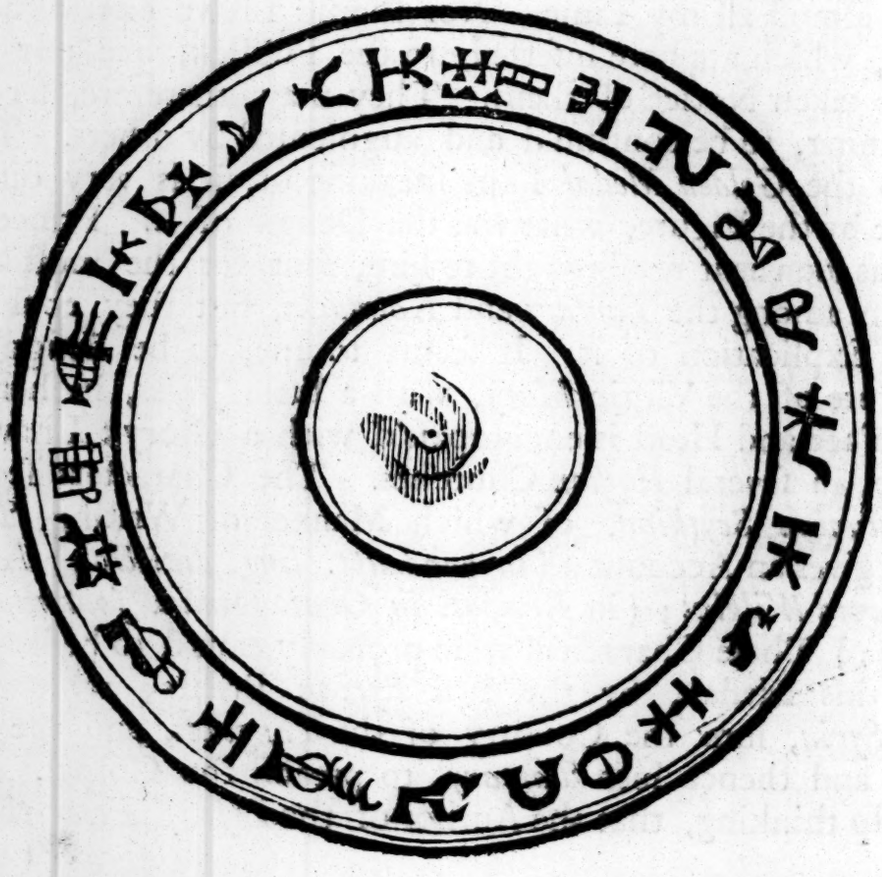
the Medals that were found in the *Siberian Tartary*, in the Time of the *Swediſh* Captivity, they are the following: (1.) The Reader will ſee, in *Tab.* XX. *Letter* A. the exact Size and Shape of a Medal of Gold. This was dug out of a Tomb, not far from the River *Irtiſch*, between the Salt Lake *Jamiſchewa*, and the City of *Omm* or *Omm-Oſtrock*, and preſented to Prince *Gagarin*, Governour of *Siberia*. This Medal was ſmooth on the Reverſe, and had no Characters upon it. I had a Draught of another *Medal*, of this Kind, but, by ſome Accident, loſt it. However, I communicated the Copy of both to a Friend, who, perhaps, may hereafter oblige the Publick with them. During my *Siberian* Captivity, it was the leaſt of my Thoughts, that I ſhould ever reſolve to publiſh any Thing of this Nature, or elſe I might have had an Opportunity of collecting ten Times more than I did, barely for my own Curioſity, as theſe few were; My ſole Deſign being to frame Maps, and give a Geographical Account of thoſe Countries, which indeed was a Taſk ſufficient to take up almoſt all my Time. Nor ſhould I have offer'd the few Things, which are here inſerted, to the Publick, had any body hitherto taken Notice of them. They may, therefore, ſerve for a Beginning, to be continu'd and augmented by others. To return to the *Golden Medal* I am ſpeaking of, it is very difficult to judge by the Figure, what was the Deſign of it. Prince *Gagarin*, as ſoon as it was brought to him, ſent for the moſt knowing Men among the *Tartars* and *Kalmucks*, but they could give him no Explication of it. It ſeems to me, to be deſign'd for the Figure of the Virgin *Mary*, with a little *Jeſus*, in her Lap, whoſe Face and Head is encompaſs'd with a Glory: I have ſeen the like, in ſeveral *Ruſſian* Churches. The Characters ſeem to be *Boutunian Scythian*, of which Manner of Writing, *Thomas Hydius* gives an Account; (*in quadrupt. ling. dialecto*;) As does alſo *David Wilkins*; (in *Præfat. in Orat. Domin. Joannis Chamberlayn*;) Theſe Characters were probably caus'd to be impreſs'd upon this Medal, by the firſt *Syrian* Prieſts, which came from *Syria*, into the Country of the *Tangubts*, and the *Leſſer India*, and thence into *Tartary*, to preach the Goſpel. I cannot help thinking, that the Author of the *Life of Peter the Firſt*, (printed

TAB. XX.

A.



B.



(printed at *Leipzick*, in 1725,) has a View to this *Medal*, when he mentions one, *p.* 702, that was found near the *Caſpian* Sea, together with ſome Manuſcripts. But I have already hinted above, that this is a Miſtake, and he ſhould have ſaid that the latter were brought from the Neighbourhood of the River *Irtiſch:* And there is much the ſame Miſtake, concerning the Image which this Author ſpeaks of; For theſe Drawings have been communicated to ſeveral Friends at *Peterſburg*, ever ſince 1719. But of this I ſhall ſay more below. 2. *Tab.* XX. *Let.* B. repreſents a Plate of Bell-Metal, and is of the ſame Figure and Magnitude with the Original; I had alſo two of this Sort; But parted with them both to my above-mention'd Friend. This Plate was found, in a Grave, between the Rivers *Irbyht* and *Toboll*, and, like the former, had only Characters on one Side, the other being blank, and finely poliſh'd; There is, in the Middle of this Plate a Knob with a Hole through it, in the Nature of a Loop, of which ſomething has already been hinted, under the Title of *Characters*, and by *Tab.* IX. *viz.* that the *Tartars* call them *Tzahar-Inæ*. Many Hundreds of theſe Plates are found up and down in Graves. 3. It may not be improper, under this Title, to take ſome farther Notice of the Figure repreſented, *Tab.* V. *Let.* C. and its Reverſe C. This is made of a Subſtance like *Terra Sigillata*, of the Shape and Size as here given, a Piece being broke off on one Side. I find here, on the Reverſe C. ſome Characters, which reſemble thoſe upn Monſieur *Boudelot*'s Medal; And ſince the Figure in C. ſomewhat reſembles the Idol *Puſſa*, which *Kircher* deſcribes, (*P.* II. *Lib.* III. *p.* 141.) and agrees pretty well with the Account which *Andr. Mull- Greiffenh.* gives (in *Hiſt. Sinenſ. Abd. Beidav. p.* 40.) of the *Xaca* or *Xecmuni* of the *Bramines*, which the *Kalmucks* call *Xaca* or *Xacamuni* (105), and is looked upon in *Tanguhtia*,

(105) I ſhall add below, in a proper Place, an Account of the Idolatry of the *Kalmucks*, who, among other Idols, worſhip, in a particular Manner, one, which they call *Xacamuni*. They ſay that 4000 Years ago, he was only a Soveraign Prince, in *India*; But on Account of his unparallel'd Sanctity, God had taken him up to Heaven alive; But the Place whither he was tranſlated, none of them pretend to know. This *Xacamuni* left behind him many Sons, all which were look'd upon as Saints, by the *Kalmucks*; Theſe Sons continu'd in a State of Celibacy, whence their *Lamæ* and Prieſts are forbid to marry. Among theſe Sons of *Xacamuni*, there was one named *Arenſur*, who was the firſt that brought their Religion from *India*, into *Tanguhtia*, of whom their High-Prieſt *Dalai-Lama* receiv'd it.

as a Deify'd Perſon, whom they adore and worſhip to this Day; In my Judgment, this little Image, which was here and there painted blue and gilt, came originally from *Tanguhtia*, through *India*, to the *Kalmucks* and *Mungals*; Notwithſtanding it was found in an old Chappel, among many ancient Manuſcripts, near the River *Kemtſchyk*, which falls into the River *Jeniſei*, near its Head; And the Characters are *Tanguhtian*, which the Curious may compare with the Characters inſerted in the *Acta Literaria*, by Counſellour *Mencke*; But its having three Heads, may have been borrow'd from the *Ægyptians*, from whom the *Tanguhts* probably firſt had their Religion. Much might be ſaid, on this Head; But I ſhall leave the farther Enquiry to others. I refer the Reader to what I have ſaid in my Introduction, (*Sect.* V. §. XIII.) concerning an Idol with three Heads, and the God *Trigla* or *Triglaff*. *Laſtly*, It will not be amiſs to take Notice, under this Title, of the Figure which the Reader will ſee, *Tab.* V. *Let.* D. This was only a piece of a Plate, as far as it is ſhaded, likewiſe of poliſh'd Metal, as has been ſaid of *Let.* B. in *Tab.* XX. That which is moſt remarkable in this Plate is, that it is caſt, and with a *Flower de Luce* upon it, which ſeems to be a *Chineſe* Character; And, about the Edges, the ſmaller and thinner *Scythian* Characters are cut with a Graver. This may perhaps have been a Piece of Plunder, which the Warriour, who poſſeſs'd it, had order'd to be put into his Grave. It is Pity, as I have obſerved above, that the *Ruſſians* broke this Plate to Pieces, when they found it in a Tomb, near the City of *Abakan*.

MERLUSCHKA-OUTSCHINKA, or the *Aſtracan* Lambſkins. Several Authors, thro' Miſinformation, take this to be the famous *Boranetz* or *Borametz*, which is ſaid to be a Plant, or Shrub, growing near *Aſtracan*; This Notion of a vegetable Sheep, (for *Borametz* ſignifies a Sheep in the *Ruſſian* Tongue,) gave us all the Curioſity, during our Captivity, to enquire ſtrictly after it; But we could get no Account of any ſuch thing. They muſt, therefore, mean theſe Skins: There are different Sorts of them brought into *Ruſſia*, as, *Bucharſkie*, *Karaganſkie*, and *Kalmacskie*. On the firſt and beſt Sort, which comes from *Bucharia*, the Hair or Wool lies flat, and, as it were, in Waves, almoſt as it grows on ſome Dog-

Skins; These are the Skins of Slinks, or unborn Lambkins, which are taken out of the Ewe, when she is kill'd, and one of these sells for four to six *Rubels*. The second Sort comes from *Persia*, and the Wool lies in very small Curls upon the Skin, framing as it were so many Pearls; They are likewise Slinks, or else are taken as soon as they come from the Ewe; The younger they are the stronger is the Curl, and the closer it lies to the Skin. Of these, some are white, some gray, and some black, and are sold for about two *Rubels* a-piece, but the white are the cheapest. The third Sort is flamed or waved like the first, but the Wool is a great deal longer, and therefore they are the cheapest; They come from the Country of the *Kalmucks*, and are commonly sold for 30 or 40 *Kopeiks*.

Mines. In the *Russian Empire*, there are, 1. in *Siberia*, in the Province of *Dauria*, near the City of *Argun*, and the River *Serebrinka*, a considerable *Silver-Mine*; With which also a great Quantity of Lead is intermix'd; But it is not look'd upon to be worth smelting, for Want of Hands and Carriages. For the same Reason, a *Copper-Mine*, and an *Iron-Mine*, which have been discovered near the little River of *Aga*, Westward from the *Silver-Mine*, is not yet broke up. There is a complete *Mine-Office* establish'd, near the *Argunian Mine*, the Chief Managers of which are *Greeks*, *Saxons*, *Swedes*, and *Russians* (106). Secondly, *Rus-*

(106) Much might be said of this *Silver-Mine*, it having been known in early Times, before ever the *Russians* set Foot there. See the Travels of *Isbrand Ides*, (*p.* 63.) where he says: About 8 Miles from *Argunskoi*, the Silver Rivulet, or, as it is call'd, in the *Russian* Tongue, *Zerebrenka*, falls into the River *Argun*. This little Brook is call'd, by the *Mungals*, *Mungagol*, because *Munga*, in that Tongue, signifies *Silver*, and *Gold* a *Brook*. Two Miles upwards, near this River, are the Silver Mines, whence, in former Ages, the *Niuchæans* and *Mungals* fetch'd great Quantities of Silver. This is the same Place mention'd in *L'Histoire Geneal. des Tartars à Leyde*, 1726. (*p.* 108, 109.) which once was called *Alackzin*, in the Neighbourhood of which many Silver Mines were to be found. If the Reader consults my Map, he will there find not only a Rivulet call'd *Alackzin*, which runs into the River *Argun*, but near it the Mountains of the same Name. But that large and ancient City, which this *Tartarian* Author calls *Alackzin*, is the now ruin'd City of *Taiminzin*; For *Taiming* signifies the same Thing, in the *Tartarian* Tongue, as *Alack* does in the *Mungalian*, *viz.* spotted or pied, on Account of the great Number of spotted, mottled, or pied wild Asses and Horses produced in that Place. See the Description which *Isbrand Ides* gives of the ancient City of *Taiminzin*, (*p.* 75.) formerly the Residence of *Chan Utay*: And I am apt to believe, this is the very Country, of which *Marcus Paulus* (*Lib. I. Cap.* 62. and 66.) gives the following Account. "In this Country "(says he) lives a People, call'd *Argun*, who exceed all others in Cunning, Judgment, "and Industry." (On this Head compare also *Isbrand Ides*, who mentions the Ruins of Towns,

ſia affords a great deal of Copper; For Inſtance, on the River *Wiatka*, near a little Town call'd *Malmiſch*, as alſo near *Alaboga*, on the River *Kama*, where there are two Places, at about two or three Miles Diſtance, where *Copper-Ore* is found, and the ſmelting Works us'd to be at a Place call'd *Saraſell.* Theſe Mines ly ſtill, unleſs taken up again ſince my Departure. *Copper-Ore* is alſo found on the River *Cruſſowoja*, and in the Province of *Ugoria*, among the *Urallian* Mountains; Eſpecially near the new City of *Catharinenburg*, by the River *Iſet*. Beſides theſe, in the Government of *Caſan*, and near *Olonez*, between *Ladoga* and *Onega*, *Copper Mines* have alſo been diſcover'd. 3. As to *Iron-Mines*, *Ruſſia* abounds in them, of which the beſt are in *Ugoria*, and in *Siberia*, and of theſe the beſt and tougheſt is that of *Jeniſei*, of which many wrought Goods are ſent to *Holland* and *England.*

MINE-OFFICE. The *General Mine-Office* of *Siberia* is at *Catharinenburg*, (of which more below.) It conſiſts of four Chief Officers or Managers, *viz.* 1. A Surveyor-General of the *Mines.* 2. A Maſter-General of the *Miners.* 3. A Controller-General of the *Tithings.* And, 4. A Maſter-General of the *Caſting-Houſes.* This *General Mine-Office* has under its Juriſdiction all *Siberia*, *Ugoria*, *Permia*, and *Wiatka*; On which are dependant five Inferiour Mine-Offices, *viz.* the *Ugorian*, *Solikamskian*, *Kungurian*, *Tomskian*, and *Daurian.* All the five Maſters are *Germans*, as are ſeveral other Officers belonging to the *Mines.*

MOCHSCHIANI, Are a *Pagan* People, living in *Ruſſia*, between the Towns of *Lommow*, *Tanbow*, and *Peaſche.* They do not differ in their Manners and Cuſtoms from the *Czuwaſchy.*

MORDUINI, Are *Pagans*, in *Ruſſia*, who live under the Government of *Niſchneygorod.* The ridiculous Dreſs of their Women

Towns, Fortreſſes, Mill-ſtones, and Iron-wheels of Carriages, which he found up and down, near the Road.) *Marcus Paulus* goes on and ſays, "that here were the Dominions "of *Gog* and *Magog*, whom the Natives call *Lug* and *Mungug.*" (To theſe Monſieur *La Croix*, in his *Genghizcan*, *p.* 6. gives this very ſame Situation, according to the Accounts of the Ancients, and places them *North-Eaſt* of *China.*) He proceeds: "In the Moun-"tains of this Country are large Silver Mines." In ſhort, whatever this Author relates concerning the Wild Beaſts, the feather'd Kind, Pheaſants, *&c.* as alſo of Green *Jaſper*, *Lapis Lazuli*, and a certain Stuff made of Camels Hair, is found in this Place. And *Kircher* ſeems to have an Eye to this Place, Part II. cap. 6. p. 92. in theſe Words: *Id ſane aperte dicit Ortelius, qui regnum Argon in ultimo Septentrionis angulo conſtitutum; Chriſtianorum dicit â St. Thoma ad fidem Chriſti converſum: Subintellige â ſucceſſoribus ſuis.* But *Marcus Paulus* writes, that many *Chriſtians* liv'd in this Country.

men has been, without Doubt, describ'd by others. They make the Doors of their Houses (like the *Czuwaschi*) towards the *South*, that they may offer their Prayers to the *Sun*; Their Fire-places, are in the Left-side-Corner towards the *North*, but the Fire-places of the *Czuwaschi* are immediately at the Entrance of their Houses, in the Right-hand Corner, towards the *South*, which is a Mark of Distinction they may be known by; For they live, in several Parts, promiscuously one among the other. They sacrifice an Ox to their God *Jumishipas*, which is the same as *Jumala*, at which Sacrifice, they offer up their Prayers, for all the Necessaries of Life. They do not hang the Hides of Horses on Trees, as the *Scheremissi* do, nor do they eat any Horse-Flesh; But they eat Pork, a Thing wherein they differ from all the other *Pagans*, in the *Russian Empire*. They inter their Dead, and take but one Wife; But if she proves barren, they may part from her and take another.

Mountain, or Mountains. There are two *Vulcano*'s in *Siberia*; One on the River *Chatarga*, not far from the Icy Sea and the River *Jenisei*; The other in *Kamtschatki*: Besides these, there is a Cavern near the *Baikallian* Lake, from whence there used formerly to proceed Fire and Smoak; Of which *Isbrand Ides* takes also Notice. This Cavern seems to be the same, of which the Fathers Missionaries, *Vincent. Belaucens.* (*Libr. XXXII. Cap.* 24.) and *Joannis Curpinus* make mention; *viz.* That, travelling thro' *Tartary*, they came to a Lake full of Islands, which they pass'd by, leaving it on the Left-hand, and near which (according to their Account) a great deal of Smoak and Wind issued from a subterraneous Cavity. And from thence they travell'd into *Mungalia*, to the *Chan* of *Tartary*. Such a Cavern is, likewise, between the Cities of *Tomskoi* and *Kusnetski*, near the *Abinzian Tartars*, which sometimes emits Smoak and Flames, from out of one of the Mountains. The Reader may see, as well in my Map, which I have annex'd to this Work, as in others, what high and mighty Chains of Mountains separate, not only the *Russian Empire* from its Neighbours, but within itself the several Parts of it from each other. Towards the *South* and *Persia* it is border'd by the Mountains of *Caucasus*; And within itself, it is divided by the *Riphæan* Mountains, and by those which, thro' Mistake are call'd

the

the *Imaus*. Mount *Taurus*, ſo famous in the Writings of Ancient Authors, tho' it does not touch here, ſeparates the *Usbeckian* and *Kalmuckian Tartary* from *India*. On this Occaſion, and under the Title of Mountains, I ſhall take ſome Notice of the Corruption of the Names of theſe I have juſt mention'd; And here I ſhall leave the Readers to judge, whether I have gone too far, as well in this, as many other Inſtances, where thro' the Courſe of this Work, I have endeavour'd to reconcile the Derivations of the Names of ſome Mountains, Rivers, Nations and Countries, which many Ancient Occidental Authors have given them, with thoſe they at preſent bear in the *Eaſt*. Eſpecially as I have neither done it without a Precedent (107), nor without aſſigning my Reaſons for it. And beſides, my View has been to facilitate the Enquiries of Travellers, who with this little Help, will be leſs puzzled to get Information of Things, when they come to diſcourſe with the Inhabitants. For ſhould any one, who is deſirous of being inform'd concerning theſe Mountains, make Uſe of ſuch Names as he meets with in Ancient Authors, neither a *Tartar*, *Kalmuck*, *Oſtiak*, *Perſian*, *Indian*, nor any other modern Inhabitant, would know what he meant. Since, therefore, every one knows that the Names given to thoſe Mountains, by the Ancients, are eſtabliſh'd as proper Names; I ſhall firſt make it appear, that they are no more than common Appellatives, as: A *Mountain*, A *White Mountain*, A *Ridge of Mountains*, *&c.* And, in the next Place, I ſhall ſhew, how they have been corrupted, in the Pronounciation. I have already ſaid ſomething of the *Riphæan* Mountains (*Sect. VI.* §. *XVI.* of the Introduction, *in the Note:*) To which I have now farther to add, that I very well know the Name of them is deriv'd from the *Greek*, by other Authors; But it has been a common Thing, with many Authors, to derive Ancient *Oriental* and *Scythian* Denominations from the *Greek*, if they have but found ſome Similitude of Sound, in this Language (108). Whereas, if

(107) Compare *Matth. Belii de vet. litter. Hunno-Scyth. exercit. Sect. II.* §. *IV.* & *Sect. V.* §. *I.*

(108) It cannot be deny'd, but many Denominations, both *Greek* and *Roman*, have been convey'd to the *Eaſtern* Countries, particularly the Terms of Arts, Cuſtoms, Sciences, Inſtruments, *&c.* But I ſpeak here of the firſt and moſt ſimple Ages of the ancient *Scyths*, in which, if we compare them with the preſent Cuſtoms of the Nations in the *North-Eaſt*

Part

if we conſider the Antiquity of Languages, the *Scythian* Language is as ancient, or more ancient than the *Greek*, as is evident, not only from the Diſpute in *Juſtin* of the *Ægyptians* and *Scyths*, But more ſo, and worthy our Attention, by what is alledg'd in the firſt *Volume*, (*Page* 48. *Not.* 6.) *of the Bibliotheca Suecica.* Since, therefore, theſe, and other the like Names, are only Appellatives, it is no Wonder, if the ſame Names, or at leaſt of the like Pronunciation, are given to the like Things in other Places; For Example, *Rubeck* (in his *Atlantica*) places likewiſe *Riphæan* Mountains between *Sweden* and *Norway*; The like Example the Reader has ſeen in my Introduction, (*Sect.* III. §. XI. in the Note, of the Name *Moeotis*, *Moeothidis*; And, in another Place, I have proved, that *Balticus*, or *Gualthicus*, is the ſame with *Gualinſki*, a Name which the *Ruſſians* give to the *Caſpian Sea*, to diſtinguiſh it from other ſmaller Seas; For, in the *Sclavonian* Language, *Guala* ſignifies *mighty*, *powerful*, *excellent*, *great* (109); Nay, the Word *Gandui*, a Name given to the *Sinus Bothnicus*, (See *Schæffer. Lappon.*) and *Gandewyk*, by which Name ſome underſtand the *White Sea*, is all one with *Gandi-miſch* or *Gandimies*, a Name which the *Oſtiacks*, near the River *Oby*, give to the Diſtrict which they inhabit; (See *Verændertes Ruſsland*, *p.* 187. §. 25.) their Tongue not being very different from that of the *Wogulitzi* and *Finnlandians*, as the ſame Author, (§. 26.) obſerves, and my *Polyglott Table* ſhews. As to the

Part of *Aſia*, we ſhall find a very great Similitude, as to the Names of natural Things, the plain and ſimple Manner of living of both, and their Ways and Cuſtoms. Whence doubtleſs, it is moſt reaſonable to ſuppoſe, that thoſe Names and Manners were firſt tranſported from the *Eaſt* (where primitive Simplicity firſt had its Reign) to the *Weſt*. And ſince there are now more manifeſt and abundant Relicks thereof found in the *North-Eaſt* Part of *Aſia*, than in *Europe*, becauſe the Inhabitants, on Account of their Remoteneſs from us, and for many other Reaſons, are not ſo much alter'd as we, in *Europe*, are; We may reaſonably conclude, that ſuch Names of natural Things were rather brought by the *Scyths* into the *Northern* Parts of *Europe*, than by the *Greeks*. But then, our Misfortune is, that we cannot form any Idea of Men, in their primitive State of Simplicity, but are ever comparing them with later Times, when Men were grown more knowing, and had made Improvement in Navigation, *&c.* Whereas were we to be among Men, who live in that original State of Nature, and who are unacquainted with ſo many modern Inventions (as we muſt ſuppoſe they were, in ancient Times, in the *North* Parts of *Europe*) we ſhould then form a quite different Judgment, in many Things, from what we are apt to do at preſent.

(109) The *Palus Mæotis* is alſo call'd, by the *Tartars*, *Baltſchimkin*. See *l'Hiſt. de Timur-Beck* (*Tom. II. p.* 365.) item, *Beckmann* (in *Not. Orb. Terr. & civ.*) on the Name *Balticum*.

the *Riphæan* Mountains, I have this farther to take Notice of concerning them, *viz.* that no *Bear*, *Wolf*, *Fox*, *Hare*, nor any other four-footed Animal is to be found there; Becauſe there grows no Shrubs there that bear Berries, the Food of the ſmaller Game, which the Beaſts of Prey, go in Purſuit of; And this is the Reaſon, why *Pliny* calls theſe Mountains: *Montes à rerum natura damnati.* Now as it has been cuſtomary with the Ancients, to give only General Names to ſo many Things; Becauſe in the Beginning, many large Countries were not yet ſo fill'd with Towns nor People, neither was the Nature and Property of them then known, from which afterwards proper Names were given theſe Things; It is not at all ſtrange, to think, that ſuch, and the like, ancient General Names have been preſerved even in *Europe.* For Inſtance, what is meant by the *Rieſen Gebürge* (or *Giant-Mountains*) but very *High Ones?* (See my Introduction, *Sect.* VI. §. XVI. in the Note;) Or what is meant by the *Alps* but Snowy *Montes Albi?* Such Mountains are called by the *Ruſſians*, *Bielaji*, or *White Mountains.* It is the ſame with the Name *Imaus*, which is called by the *Tartars*, *Imuſtag*, and alſo *Imuſſahr*, for *Mus* or *Maus* ſignifies with them *Ice*, to which they prefix, in the Pronunciation, the Vowel *I*, but *Tag* denotes *Mountains*; Thus the whole Word ſignifies *Icy*, or *Snowy Mountains*, whence the corrupt Word *Imaus* takes its Origin. Thus, likewiſe, the Denomination of *Caucuſus*, call'd by others *Caf*, *Caph* or *Caco*; *Cuho* and *Coho* ſignifies, in the *Perſian*, no more than *Mountains* in general; a Manner of ſpeaking alſo in Uſe among the *Germans*, who often call a mountainous Tract of Land, barely *the Mountains*, to diſtinguiſh it from the flat Land, or Plains, without any other Proper Name. How the Name *Caucaſus* is derived from the Word *Coho*, and how it became afterwards a Proper Name, may be ſeen in *Hadrian Reland*, *Diſſert.* VIII. *de Vet. Ling. Perſ. p.* 155. But as the *Arabians* call theſe Mountains, at the ſame Time *Caph* or *Caco*, it ſeems as if they either meant only one particular Part of them, or that they deſign'd it for a Proper Name for the whole, and the Name *Caucaſus* is thence deriv'd as a Proper Name. I have, in my Introduction, (*Sect.* I. §. XLIII.) touch'd upon an Hiſtorical Paſſage, which happen'd in theſe Mountains, of which a farther

Account

Account is to be found in the Hiſtory of *Genghizcan*, *p.* 8. publiſh'd by Monſieur *Petit de la Croix*. *It. in Hiſt. Sin Abd. Beid. p.* 71, 72. publiſh'd by *Adr. Müll. Greiffenhagen*; Which is confirm'd by *Herbelot*, in his *Dict. Orient. p.* 489. and our *Hiſt. Geneal. des Tartars*, *p.* 74, 75. with which the Reader may compare the Notes to §. X, and XI. of the Appendix to my Introduction. That Fragment of Hiſtory informs us, that the Original Founders of a *Tartarian*, *Mungalian*, *Scythian* Nation, call'd *Kajan* and *Dokos*, got, by a particular *Fate*, among the *Cuhiſtanian* and *Caucaſian* Mountains, which before were uninhabited, and after their Sojourning there, for about Four Hundred and Fifty Years, being become ſo very numerous, that they were forced to look out for a larger Tract of Land, they were at a Loſs how to find out a Way to paſs the Mountains; When a Smith, pointing out to them a Place, which was very rich of Iron-Oar, adviſed them to make great Fires there, by which Means the Oar melted, and opened them a broad Paſſage out of theſe Mountains *; In Commemoration of which famous March, the *Mungals* celebrate an annual Feaſt and Ceremony, *viz.* They heat a Piece of Iron red-hot, on which the *Chan* ſtrikes one Blow with a Hammer, and all the Perſons of Rank do the ſame after him. What I have already declar'd, in the afore-mention'd Paſſages of my Introduction, as my Opinion of the Fable of *Prometheus*'s being faſtned to Mount *Caucaſus*, and his Deliverance from thence by *Vulcan*, as very applicable to this Hiſtorical Account, becomes ſtill more probable, if we take Notice, that ſome Authors call theſe Mountains *Cauka-gora*, and, at the ſame Time, affirm, that this Word ſignifies, in the *Sclavonian* Tongue, an *Iron-Mine*. (See *Anonym. of the*

* The Author of the *Hiſtoire Genealogique des Tartars*, *&c.* in the Place above cited, gives the following Account of this miraculous Paſſage: "The Paſſage (ſays he) by which "their Anceſtors came thither, being, in Courſe of Time, ſtopt up and loſt, a certain "Smith, who imagin'd that he obſerv'd one Part of the Mountain not to be very thick, "and that, at the ſame Place, it conſiſted wholly of Iron-Oar, propoſed an Experiment "of melting that Oar, by Means of certain Bellows made for that Purpoſe. This Propo-"ſal being unanimouſly approved of, every Man ſet to Work, to bring Wood and Coals "to the Place directed, and having rais'd a Pile at the Foot of the Mountain, conſiſting "alternatively of a Layer of Wood, and a Layer of Coals, they ſet Fire to it, and apply-"ing at once 70 Pair of Leathern Bellows, the Oar began to melt at that Place, and "made an Opening ſufficient for a loaded Camel to paſs, thro' which Paſſage they got on "the other ſide, of the Mountain, with great Joy.

Mighty and Vaſt Empire of Muſcow, *p.* 260. printed in the *German* Tongue, at *Nurenburg*, 1687.) And though this Explication is agreable to the above-mention'd Hiſtory of the *Mungal Scythian Iron-Mine*; Yet the Thing will appear yet much plainer, if we make an Enquiry into the Original Meaning of the Word *Kauka*, which, in the *Sclavonian*, ſignifies, *forged*, or a *Forging* (110); And as the Verb, *to forge*, is chiefly applicable to Iron, it may, not without Grounds, be ſuppoſed, that the Word *Kauka* has given Birth to the Name, *Caw*, *Caph*, or *Caucaſus*; Eſpecially ſince the Hiſtory has an evident Conformity with the Similitude, as well as the Explication of the Word. Should, however, any one be of a contrary Opinion, let him bring as many probable and remarkable Circumſtances as I have done, and I will, to oblige him, readily drop my Conjecture. Finally, as to the Name *Taurus*, I have already obſerv'd, in the Introduction, that *Tau* and *Tavi*, in the ancient, and *Tag*, in the modern *Tartarian* Tongue, ſignifies a *Mountain*, whence proceed the Names *Taviſtaner*, *Tagiſtaner*, i. e. *Mountain-Tartars*; So likewiſe, in the ancient *Scythian* Tongue, *Taunaſis* is a *King* or *Prince* of a *Mountainous Country*. To this *Tau* or *Tavi*, Writers have added *os* and *us*, as a Termination only, which *Relandus*, when he ſpeaks of Mount *Caucaſus*, likewiſe obſerves. The *Siberian Tartars* add this Word to the Proper Names of their Mountains; *e.g.* *Abul-chan-tau*, *Cara-tau*, *Arr-tau*, *Car-tau*, *Arbataſch-tau*, &c. But ſome *Tartars* pronounce it *Dag*, *Dak*, *Dau* or *Davi*; And here we may obſerve what *Strabo* ſays, (*Lib.* VII.) *viz.* That the *Daci*, in former Times, were alſo called *Davi*. After what I have ſaid, I leave the Reader to judge, how probable it is, that the afore-mentioned Names had their Origin, in the *North-Eaſt* Part of *Aſia*, and were afterwards corrupted by *European* Writers. And ſince, as I have obſerved before, many Men of Learning have trod this Path before me, and gone in Search of the Truth of this Matter, I have here only endeavoured to corroborate their Opinions, by my ſmall

(110) Hence the above-cited *Hiſt. de Genghizcan*, *p.* 8. ſhews the Miſtake of ſome Authors, in affirming the Great *Genghizcan* to have been the Son of a Smith; Becauſe he was only allied to the Generation of theſe *Mungals*, who by the Art of Forging made their Way out of the Mountains.

ſmall Experience; And therefore hope, that other Learned Gentlemen will not diſapprove my Labour. Many Hundred of the like Inſtances might be brought of the Etymology of Names, in other Things beſides Mountains. *e. g.* The Ancients gave the River *Dnieſter* the Surname of *Axiaces*; Now, this is again a *Tartarian Scythian* Word; For *Axi* or *Axſui*, ſignifies *White-Water*; and, of the like Names, we find a great many in *Tartary*, as: *Axiketh*, *Axſui*, *Ackbalick*, *Acktura* and *Ackſin*. (*See my Map.*) In the Year 1709, obſerving the white loamy Water of the River *Dnieſter*, near the Town of *Bender*, it put me then upon Speculation; But I now find Reaſon to conclude, that as the Modern *Tartars* give to all chalky Rivers the Name of *Axſui* or *Ackſui*, ſo the Ancients, for the ſame Cauſe, gave the above Surname to the River *Dnieſter*. In this Manner the Nature, and Properties of Things, as well as the Cuſtoms and Manners of People have furniſhed Motives and Occaſions for giving different Names to them. Let us conſider only this one Thing, for Inſtance: Since our firſt Anceſtors *, before Cities were built, who lived in Tents and Huts, which they removed from Place to Place, at Pleaſure, and led a Sort of a vagrant Life, when any of them found a Spot they lik'd, and fix'd there, whether they were not named from the Circumſtance of their Reſting, and Taking a fixed Station, the *Fix*'d or the *Settled*. Thus, for Example, in the *Teutonic*, *Stætiſch*, ſignifies *fixed*, *ſettled*; May not then the *German* Name *Stadt*, (a *City*) be derived from thence. This Conjecture is ſtrengthen'd, as well by the Cuſtoms, as the Language of the *Eaſtern* Nations. Thus, alſo, the *Weſtern* and *Uſbeckian Tartars* call to *ſtand ſtill*, or to *remain fixed*, in their Tongue, *Chall* or *Kall*, and *Kalla*, with them, ſignifies a *City*; Among the *Siberian* and more *Northern Tartars*, the Word *Tur* (111) bears the ſame Signification as *Kall*, and a *City* or *Place of Reſidence* is, by them, called *Tura* or *Turuja*. Nay, ſince, in the *Perſian* and *Turkiſh* Tongues, a *City* iscalled *Wilajett*, which Word the *Eaſtern Tartars* pronounce *Ulajet*;

* Our Author here probably means the *Teutones*, or firſt Anceſtors of the *Germans*, in the common Acceptation of the Word.

(111) The Word *Turr* is uſed by the Peaſants, in *Lower Saxony*, to this Day, to ſtop their Horſes; tho' ſome ſay *Purr*.

Why may not there be an Affinity between this and the *Latin*, *Villa*, the *French Village*, and the *German*, *ein Weiler*, from *Weilen*, *Verweilen?* Since the Names *Kalla*, *Tura*, and *Stadt*, have ariſen from one and the ſame Cauſe. (See, on this Head, *Rubeck*'s *Atlantica*, *Tom.* I. *p.* 26, and 27. *de derivat. Nomin. Propr. & Subſtant.*) Moreover, as we find that theſe Nations call a *City* alſo *Schar* or *Cair*, thoſe Names are taken from *Seher* and *Seherü*, ſignifying a *Trader* or *Citizen*, and as the *Greeks* ſeldom pronounce the *h*, having no ſuch Letter in their Alphabet, it is not difficult to conceive, how the Ancients came by the Name *Seres*. Now I am upon this Subject, I could, with Pleaſure, proceed farther, and ſhew, that *Turr*, *Tura*, *Turuja*, are the ſame with the Name *Troja* or *Turuja*, the firſt City built by the *Franks*, as *Mezeray* teſtifies, and *Caſpar Abel*, (in his *German* and *Saxon Antiquities*, *p.* 501, and 505.) confirms; And that the Name of *Thuringians*, a People noted for being contented to remain in their own Country, without roving, proceeds from the ſame Source; (*See the laſt Author I quoted*, p. 425.) I could, likewiſe, make it appear, that the Obſervation which *Loeſcherus* (*in Lit. Celt. p.* 28.) makes of the Word *Durr* is juſt, *viz.* that the Ancient *Britons* and *Gauls* uſed to denote a *City* by that Name, as, at this Time, the *Turtars* call it *Turr*, and *Tura*; And the *Chaldean* Word *Durr*, which ſignifies *Habitation* or *Manſion*, does not differ much from it. Not to mention the *Turones* of *Ptolemy:* But when I conſider, that many may already think, I dwell too long upon this Matter, I chuſe to ſay no more about it; And ſhall therefore, only, by Way of Concluſion, take Notice, that if the Reader ſhould find, in Ancient Maps, and Deſcriptions of Places, the following Names: *Belgian*, *Seyebi*, *Annibi*, *Auxzacü*, *Ottorocorhas* and *Giphar*; He may aſſure himſelf that the laſt, which ſignifies in the *Tartarian* Tongue, *Muſk*, means nothing but thoſe *Mouatains* where the *Muſk-Deer* reſort; That *Belgian* denotes a *Chain of Mountains*; For ſo *Bill* or *Bell* ſignifies in the Tongue of the *Arinzian Tartars*; That *Seyebi* are the *Seyantzian* Mountains, along the River *Jeniſei*, where the *Seyani* or *Soyotts* dwell, That *Annibi* are the *Annuian* Mountains, near the River *Abakan*; *Auxzacü*, the Mountains near the Towns of *Axukutſchai*; And *Ottorocorhas*, Moun-

Mountains near the City of *Othura*. The Promontory *Tamos* ſignifies the *Back of a Camel*, becauſe *Tame*, with the *Tartars* and *Kalmucks*, is a *Camel*; Mountains of this Figure are named, by the *Ruſſians*, *Werbludſchi Spira*; And ſuch a one there is between *Irkutſki* and the River *Jeniſei*.

MUSCUA-REKA. Upon this River ſeveral Hundreds of Veſſels laden with *Perſian* Commodities, are brought from *Caſan*, *Aſtracan* and *Siberia*. By the River *Occa*, and from *Niſchneygorod* Corn, Meal and Salt are brought into this River, and carried to the City of *Muſcow*: And this River ſerves for a Conveyance of Wood, for Building and Floats, from all Provinces, but chiefly from *Ruza* and *Moſchaiſko*.

MUSCOW, The Capital of *Ruſſia*, and Reſidence, (or, as it is call'd, in the *Ruſſian* Tongue *Stollitza*) of the *Czar*, has not been forgotten by any of the Writers, who have given an Account of *Ruſſia*: But this, being a very large Place, and, therefore, demanding a nice Enquiry, in Order to give an accurate Deſcription thereof, it has ſo happen'd, that Authors, who have attempted this Taſk, have either omitted many Particulars, or elſe they have not been exact in their Accounts. The Deſcription *Hubner* (112) gives of this City, ſtands in great Need of being corrected; For he has not divided the ſeveral Parts of this large Place, in a proper Manner, and others, who have follow'd him, have eſpouſed the ſame Error, which would be propagated, *ad infinitum*, ſhould this Miſtake not be rectify'd, for the Benefit of the Publick. In order to this, I ſhall here briefly add ſome Particulars to the Account, the *Verændertes Ruſsland* (*p.* 132. §. 309.) has already given. This Great City is ſituated almoſt in the Center of the *Ruſſian Empire*, near the River *Muſcua*, in a pleaſant Plain; It contains four Circles, divided from each other by Walls and Ditches. The innermoſt of theſe is called *Cremlo*, or *Cremmelin*, where is the *Czar*'s Pallace, ſurrounded with high Walls and Towers, and a very deep Moat, lin'd with Brickwork, which is ſupplied with Water on three Sides, by two different Rivers, *viz.* to the *South*, by the River *Muſcua*; and to the *Weſt* and *North*, by the River *Neglina*. This Pallace

(112) *Hubner's Staats und Zeitung's Lexicon.*

Pallace is built after the ancient Manner; There are in it One Thouſand Six Hundred Eighty Seven Apartments, incluſive of Cellars and Store-Places; Beſides ſix Churches, and a Noble Garden, adorned with Groves of Trees, and fine Fountains, raiſed on the Top of a high arched Building; This is ſaid to have coſt immenſe Sums, on Account of the many Water-Machines, which force up the Water, from the River *Muſcua*, to the Top of a very high Tower, in the Neighbourhood of this Building. The Roof of the Pallace is moſtly covered with Iron Plates, and the Churches are covered with Copper-gilt, which has been partly ruin'd by a great Fire; But may be repair'd without a very great Charge. Before the Pallace, ſtands an ancient and pretty large Cathedral, in which there is a vaſt Treaſure, in Gold, Silver, Jewels, and Coſtly Veſſels. In the Middle of this Church, there hangs a large Silver-Sconce, having forty-eight Branches, and weighing Two Thouſand Eight Hundred Pound-Weight. There is alſo a *New Teſtament*, richly adorned with Gold and precious Stones. Three Archbiſhops ly bury'd in this Cathedral, in Coffins of Silver, *viz. Peter*, *Philip*, and *Jonas*. Here is alſo to be ſeen a Coat, brought from *Perſia*, ſaid to be the Garment of CHRIST, which is kept in a Golden Box. The Decorations of the Images and Pictures of Saints, are vaſtly rich of Gold, Jewels, and other coſtly Trinkets. Whatever elſe is remarkable in this Church, as well as that of St. *Michael*, the Reader will find, in *p.* 138, *Seqq.* of *The Verændertes Ruſsland*. Here I cannot, however, forbear taking Notice of the large Steeple or Tower cauſed to be erected cloſe to this Cathedral, by *Czar Boris Gudenow*, which is Two Hundred Sixty-two Foot high, built entirely of Stone. There are in this Tower Eighty-ſix Bells, of different Sizes: The largeſt of which, call'd *Zaar* or *Czar*, weighs Thirty-two Thouſand Weight; The next to this is called the Feſtival or Holy-days Bell, and weighs Twenty-two Thouſand Weight; The third the *Sunday*'s Bell, weighs One Thouſand Six Hundred Weight; The fourth the every Day's Bell, One Thouſand Two Hundred Weight. The largeſt of theſe Bells, which, in the Year 1702, was damaged by Fire, and ſunk conſiderably, was to have been new caſt, and Eight Thouſand Pounds of Metal to be added to its Weight, for which

Purpoſe a Maſter-Founder was ſent for from *Danzig* in 1725. But whether that Deſign is executed or not, I have not ſince enquired. I muſt not forget to mention the great Arſenal, which is built according to the Rules of Modern Architecture, and is a very ſtately Fabrick. The ſecond Circle is called *Kitaigorod*, becauſe here, beſides other Commodities, are ſold the Merchandizes that come from *China* (113); And this Part is chiefly deſigned for Trade. The Shops and Booths are not here in a Square or Round Market Place, or here and there interſperſed among the Houſes, as in *Germany* and other Countries; But each Species of Traders, according to the different Goods they deal in, have their particular Place or Street allotted them: The principal Streets of Shopkeepers are the following: (1.) *Owoſchnoi*, *Grocers Shops.* (2.) *Suroſkoi*, (i. e. *raw*, *unbleached*,) and here are ſold all Sorts of woven *Silk*, and *Cotton Piece-Goods.* (3.) *Sukonoi*, *Cloth Shops*, here are ſold Woollen Cloths and Mohair-Stuffs, Chaloons, and Camlets, *&c.* (4.) *Serebrenoi*, *Plate Shops*, Here they ſell Gold, Silver, Jewels, *&c.* and in this Street are One Hundred and Eighty of theſe Shops. (5.) *Cholſtzewoi*, or *Linnen Shops.* (6.) *Kolokotnoi*, *Bell-Metal Shops*, where all Kind of wrought and unwrought Metal, as Copper, Braſs, Bell-Metal, Tin, *&c.* is ſold. (7.) *Szeleſnoi*, Ironmonger-Shops. (8.) *Szedelnoi*, where are ſold all Sorts of *Harnaſſes*, *Bridles*, *Saddles* and *Horſe-Furniture*, as alſo Carriages. (9.) *Schapoſchnoi*, *Hats* and *Caps.* (10.) *Sapoſchnoi*, *Boots*, *Shoes* and *Slippers.* (11.) *Wetoſchnoi*, all Sorts of new and old *Cloths*, and *Fur-Linings*, for Winter wearing. (12.) *Krujewnoi*; Where *Gold* and *Silver Wire-drawers* Ware, as alſo *Gold* and *Silver* open and cloſe *Lace*, *Buttons*, *&c.* are ſold. (13.) *Sawiaſchnoi*, where the like Goods made of *Silk* are to be had. (14.) *Kraſcheninoi*, Shops which

(113) *Andr. Müll. Greiffenh.* (in his *Hebd. obſervat. p.* 59.) is of opinion, that this Circle has the Name from its Situation, it being the Middlemoſt; Becauſe *Kitai*, in the *Ruſſian*, ſignifies the ſame as *Medium*, in *Latin.* He ſupports this Opinion by taking the Word *Kitai* to be only a Tranſlation of the *Chineſe* Name *Chung*, which they give to their Country, ſignifying *the Empire in the Middle of the World*, which they ſuppoſe their *Empire* to be; But ſince, as I have ſaid above, the *Chineſe* and *Kitaian* Commodities are unloaded, and ſold, in this Part of the City of *Muſcow*, and the *Ruſſians* themſelves ſay, it had its Name from thence, I cannot think his Conjecture to be juſt; Eſpecially becauſe this Middle Part is alſo called, by the *Ruſſians*, *Czeloigorod.*

which ſell *Colour'd Linnen.* (15.) *Schpaſnoi*, *Sword-Cutlers.* (16.) *Samapatnoi*, where all Manner of *Fire-Arms* are ſold. (17.) *Noſchnoi*, *Cutlery-Ware.* (18.) *Schorniaſchnoi*, all Sorts of *Fur-Garments* and *Caps.* (19.) *Panſkoi*, or *Poliſh*, where are to be had divers Forreign Goods, as *Linnen*, *Silk Stockings*, *Gloves*, *Ribbons*, &c. (20.) *Armenſki*, *Armenian Commodities.* (21.) *Mylnoi*, *Soap* and *Aſhes.* (22.) *Viniceſkoi*, *Glaſs* and *China* Shops. (23.) *Scheſtianoi*, *Tinn-Ware.* (24.) *Sczepnoi*, *Turnery-Ware.* (25.) *Horſchetſchnoi*, *Potters-Ware.* (26.) *Korobeinoi*, *Joyners*, *Cabinet-Makers*, *Box* and *Trunk-Makers* Goods. (27.) *Ikonoi*, where *Pictures* and *Sculptures* are ſold (114). (28.) *Sweſchnoi*, *Wax*, *Tallow*, and *Candles.* (29.) *Syromiatnoi*, Shops where all Sorts of *White Strops*, *Thongs*, and other Things of *Leather* are to be had, not colour'd nor waxed. (30.) *Koſchenoi*, all Sorts of Goods made of *Shamoy* and *Waſh-Leather.* (31.) *Plotnoi*, *Whips*, *Sticks* and *Canes.* (32.) *Lapatnoi*, a Street where all Sorts of Things made of *Baſt* are ſold, as *Mats*, *Ropes*, *Shoes*, *&c.* (33.) *Okoniſchnoi*, where *Windows*, *Iſinglaſs*, and *Lanthorns* are to be had. (34.) *Sczepetinnoi*, *Founders.* (35.) *Maſkatilnoi*, the Street of *Druggiſts.* (36.) *Zamoſchnoi*, the Street of *Lock Smiths.* (37.) *Manatenoi*, the Street where ſuch Goods are ſold, as are made in *Convents.* (38.) *Rybnoi*, where *Salt* and *Smoak-dry'd Fiſh* is ſold. (39.) *Kalatſchnoi*, *Bakers.* (40.) *Piroſznoi*, *Paſtry Cooks* and *Cooks Shops.* (41.) *Chmelnoi*, a Street where *Malt*, *Hony* and *Hops* are vended. (42.) *Maſlenoi*, a Street where all Sorts of *Preſſed Oils* are ſold. (43.) Where *Garden-Seeds* and *Pickles* are to be had. (44.) *Schelkovoi*, where *raw* and *thrown Silk* is ſold. (45.) *Czuloſchnoi*, *Worſted Stockings* and *Glove-Shops.* (46.) *Guoſdowoi*, where nothing but *Nails* and *Wire* are ſold. (47.) *Winie pogreba*, a Street where all the *Wine* and *Ice-Vaults* are, and of theſe there are fifty-two on one Side, and forty-two on the other Side of the Street. Beſides all theſe, there is, in this Diviſion, a very large Ware-Houſe, called, in the *Ruſſian* Tongue, *Goſtinoi-Dwor*, or the *Houſe for Strangers*, where *Foreign* Commodities are ſold by Whole-ſale, as has been ſaid above. Another

(114) *Das Veränderte Ruſſland*, *p.* 133. makes this Remark, That the Images of the *Gods* and *Saints* are ſold, (or, as the *Ruſſians* term it, barter'd for Mony,) in a particular Diſtrict: And no-body dares to haggle in buying ſuch a *Saint* or *God*, but muſt immediately pay down the Mony demanded, or elſe relinquiſh the Bargain.

ther Ware-Houſe is called *Mitnoi*, where Oatmeal, Peaſe, Seeds of Poppy, and Hung Meat is ſold. In this Part of the Town, are alſo three Convents, ſeventeen Churches, an Academy, a Printing-Houſe, a Library, the Mint, and the Grand Diſpenſatory, which laſt is a very magnificent Building, and the Officinal Furniture is very rich, for the Pots are all of *China*, and the Glaſſes Chryſtal. This Circle is ſecur'd by a Brick Wall of a conſiderable Height, fortify'd with ſeveral round and ſquare Towers, and is called *Craſna-Stena*. One Side of this Part of *Muſcow* joins to the Caſtle of *Kremle*, (or *Cremmelin*,) another is ſurrounded by the River *Muſcua*, the third by the River *Neglina*, and the fourth is cloſed by the Wall, which is drawn from the *Neglina*, over a High Mount, and reaches to the *Muſcua*. Two Gates are inwards, leading to the Palace, and five Gates outwards, leading into the third Circle. There are no wooden Houſes or Buildings in theſe two innermoſt Diviſions. The third Diviſion, or Circle of this great City is called *Zare* or *Beloi-gorod*, the latter ſignifying the Town with a white Stone-Wall, becauſe ſuch a one encompaſſes it. This Wall takes in both the former, is ſemicircular, and extends to the River *Muſcua*; But the *Neglina* runs through the Middle of this Town. This Diſtrict is inhabited by many Perſons of Quality, as *Knieſes*, *Bojars*; and ſome of the Inferior Nobility, beſides Merchants, Trade and Handicraftſmen; Eſpecially Bakers and Brewers, which are here in Abundance, alſo Shops where Corn and Flour are ſold, and Publick Houſes, called *Kabacks*, where they ſell Beer, Mead and Brandy. Here alſo are the Cattle- and the Wood- or Houſe-Market, where Wooden Houſes are ſold ready-made in Joints, which may be taken to Pieces, and can, without much Trouble, be ſet together again. In this third Diviſion, are the *Czar*'s Stables, and the Gun-and Bell-Foundaries; Likewiſe a new Church built by Prince *Menſchikow*, which, in the Year 1722, was almoſt deſtroy'd by Fire. A great many Places in this Circle ly waſt, for want of rebuilding thoſe Houſes that were conſumed by the great Fire, in the Year 1712, The Cauſe of which Neglect, was the Order of the *Czar*, that the Houſes to be rebuilt ſhould be Stone-Houſes; And, at the ſame Time, the *Bojars*, and other Noble-men, were commanded to build Stone-Houſes at *Peterſ-*

burg; the Wall of this Town is not quite ſo high as the two innermoſt, but has a great Number of ſquare Towers, and ten Gates leading to *Kitai-gorod* and *Kremle*. The fourth Circle is called *Zemlenoi-gorod*, or the Town ſurrounded with Ramparts of Earth. This not only encompaſſes the three before deſcribed Circles, but takes in a great Piece of the Rivers *Muſcua* and *Jauſa*. The Rampart of this outermoſt Diviſion, which, for the moſt Part, is fall'n down, is in Extent eighteen *Werſts* and a half; It had formerly, beſides two Stone-Gates, thirty-four woodden ones, which are all run to Ruin, but the two Stone-Gates, on the Top of one of which there is an Obſervatory, and a Mathematical School. There are ſeveral large Suburbs, as the *German Slabodda*, and that of the *Strelitzes*, without the Rampart, reaching above two *Werſts* farther; Beyond which there are a great many conſiderable Convents, whereof eight are walled in, and adorn'd with high Steeples. Seven of theſe are Friaries, *viz.* (1.) *Donſkoi*. (2.) *Andrejewſkoi*. (3.) *Danielowſkoi*. (4.) *Simonow* (115). (5.) *Novoi*. (6.) *Andronnikow*. And (7.) *Novinſkoi*. The eighth is a Nunnery called *Novo-Devitzei*, the Place of the Confinement of the Princeſs *Sophia* (116). The *German Slabodda*, or Suburb, is very well deſcribed in the above cited Dictionary of *Hubner*. Beſides theſe, there are round about this vaſt City, within a few Werſts Diſtance, ſeveral large Palaces, (the three firſt of which are ſituated near the River *Jauſa*.) (1.) *Preobraſenſkoi*, where *Emperour Peter the Firſt* conſtantly reſided, when he was near *Muſcow*, from which, likewiſe, the firſt Regiment of Guards had its Name. (2.) *Semanowſkoi*, where Prince *Menſchikow*, at firſt, uſed to reſide; This has given Name to the ſecond Regiment of Guards. (3.) *Pokrowskoi*, exactly oppoſite to *Semanowskoi*, on the other Side of the River, where the *Czar*'s two Siſters, the Princeſſes *Mary* and *Nathalia* uſed to reſide. (4.) *Iſmaelow*, ſeven *Werſts* from *Kremle*, which was kept in very good Repair during the Time of *Czar Alexei*; Here are fine Gardens, and round this Palace, are above ſixty Fiſh-Ponds; The *Czarina* Dowager *Paraskovia*, with Her Daughters, made this Her Abode. (5.) *Koloniskoe*, ſeven Werſts from

(115) See *Verændertes Ruſſland*, *p.* 143.
(116) See *Verændertes Ruſſland*, *p.* 142.

from *Muſcow*, near the River *Muſcua*, a magnificent Palace, with large Gardens, a Place where *Czar Alexei* uſed chiefly to reſide. This was repair'd, by Order of *Czar Peter*, in the Year 1724. (6.) *Worochievachowa*, ſituated on a high Hill, near the River *Muſcua*, four *Werſts* from the City, was built by *Czar Theodor*, the laſt of that Name. Near this Reſidence are, likewiſe, excluſive of theſe *Imperial Palaces*, many other Palaces and Seats of Princes and Noblemen, of which the moſt Magnificent are thoſe which Prince *Menſcikow* built, and that of *Nariſchkin* and the *Czerkaskian*. In ſhort, it may, with Truth be affirmed, that few Reſidences of Kings or Princes, in *Europe*, are ſituated on ſo fine, pleaſant, fruitful, and healthful a Plain as the City of *Muſcow*.

N.

NABAT. By this Word are underſtood in *Ruſſia*, two different Things: (1.) It is the Name of a Bell hanging in one of the higheſt Steeples, which is rung Morning and Evening, as a Signal for the opening and ſhutting the Gates, as alſo to give the Alarm where a Fire breaks out, in any Part of the City. (2.) The great Drum, of two Ells Diameter, is ſo called in the Army; This has hitherto been uſed, when the *Czars* went into the Field in Perſon, and ſerved to give a Signal, for the Army to break up, or encamp. This Drum differs not much from the *Omlambe*, barring the ſuperſtitious Notions the *Negritii* had concerning it.

NAPHTHA. In the Province of *Schirvan*, near *Schamakei*, and the Town of *Baku*, in *Perſia*, are two Springs of very good *White Naphtha*, and many others which yield the black Sort of this *Bitumen*; All the Ground about this Town is full of this Mineral Oil. If you dig but the leaſt Depth into the Earth, and bring any Fire near the Hole, you will ſee immediately a Flame, which will continue burning 'till it is choaked up again with Earth; For Water will not extinguiſh it. About *Suſa*, in *Perſia*, the beſt Sort of this *Bitumen* is found. Probably, the Name *Naphtha* may proceed from the Word *Nephtar* or *Nechphar*, a Name given, by the Companions of *Nehemia*, to the

Place where the Prieſts had hid the *Holy Fire*, before the *Babylonian* Captivity: For they came from *Perſia*. (*See ſecond Maccab. Chap.* i. *ver.* 36.)

NASAD, Is a Name they give, at *Aſtracan*, to thoſe large flat-bottom'd Veſſels in which they bring Goods to *Niſchneigorod*; they carry back in them, by Way of Return, Corn, Brandy, Wood, and other *Ruſſian* Commodities. Theſe Veſſels are very ſtrongly built, and carry one Maſt and a large Sail; But as they can only go before the Wind, they generally have Three or Four Hundred Men on Board, who, in Caſe of contrary Wind, are obliged to tow them.

NEMDA, Is a ſmall Brook to the *South* of the City of *Klinow*, which runs into the *Piſchma*, and this into the River *Wiatka*, near a Village call'd *Kukarka*. This little Brook *Nemda* is deem'd *Holy* by the *Wotiaks*, a Sect of *Pagans*, who offer up their Sacrifices, and perform their Superſtitious Worſhip there.

NIRET, Is a ſmall Town, on the River *Kolwa*, in *Great Permia*, noted for an Image of St. *Nicholas*, which, according to the Belief of the *Ruſſians*, works great Miracles; And, on that Account, many Pilgrimages are, every Year, made thither, from *Muſcow* and other Places.

NOETEBURG, Called, by the *Finnlandians*, *Peyhenſari*, goes now by the Name of *Schlüſſelburg*.

NORKS, Are a kind of little Animals in *Ruſſia*, which burrough under Ground; They are much of the Colour of an *Otter*, but a great deal leſs, and about the Size of a *Martin*. One of theſe Skins is ſold, in *Ruſſia*, from twelve to fifteen *Kopeiks*, and a *Zimmer*, which contains ſixty or eighty Skins, from ten to twelve *Rubels*. This kind of Furr is very good for Linings, and very much uſed.

NOVA-USOLIE. A Town in *Permia*, near the River *Kama*, twenty *Werſts* from *Solikamskoi*: It is the Property of Baron *Stroganow*, where he moſtly reſides; He has cauſed a very fine Houſe to be built in this Place for himſelf, and one Church of Bricks, and two of Wood. In this Town are the moſt famous, and the largeſt Salt-Works in all *Ruſſia*, conſiſting of ſeventy-nine large Pans, whence annually three Millions of *Puds* of Salt are

deliver'd out, the Cuſtom whereof, to the Government, amounts to Three Hundred Thouſand *Rubels*. Not including the Duty of the Saltworks of *Wytzygotſkaija*, likewiſe deliver'd by the ſaid *Stroganow*, and excluſive of all other Salt-Works poſſeſs'd by other Proprietors.

NOVOGORODOK SEWERSKOI, Is a well fortify'd Town, near the River *Deſna*, in the Principality of *Severia*, or, according to the late Diviſion of the *Empire*, under the Government of *Kiow*.

O.

OBELISK, Is a Kind of Monumental Pillar, of four Sides, the Baſis of which is Square, growing ſmaller from the Bottom upwards, and ending at laſt in a Point like a Pyramid. The *French* call it alſo *Aiguille*. The Reader may here ſee what the Author of the *Hiſt. Genealog. des Tartars*, publiſhed at *Leyden*, 1726, ſays, *p.* 143, (117) viz. *Qu'en l'Année* 1721, *un certain Medecin, envoyé par le feu Empereur de la Ruſſie, pour examiner les diverſes Plantes & Racines que la Siberie peut produire, étant arrivé, en compagnie de quelques Officiers, Priſonniers Suedois, du côté de la riviere de Tzulim â l'Oueſt de la Ville de Craſnoyahr, il y trouva dreſſé, au beau milieu de la grande Steppe, qui regne de ce côté, une eſpece d'Aiguille, taillée d'une Pierre blanche ayant environ ſeize pieds de Hauteur*, &c. and *il y avoit une Inſcription ſur l'un des côtes de la grande Aiguille, que le Tems avoit deja effacé en pluſieurs Endroits*, &c. Of this Monumental Stone, the Reader has the Figure, *Tab.* V. *Letter* A. and ſince this Author is not very particular, in his Account concerning it, not having had ſufficient Knowledge thereof, I ſhall here be a little more Circumſtantial in my Deſcription of it. After my Arrival, and ſome Stay, at *Tomſkoi*, in Company with Dr. *Meſſerſchmidt*, in the Year 1721, the Doctor, in the Month of *July*, purſued his Way towards *Kuſnetſko*, and went by Water up the River *Tomber*; While I, for ſome particular Reaſons, choſe to remain behind, and, beſides, had an Inclination to take a Tour towards the Left, in Order to make ſome Obſervations. The Doctor being gone beyond

(117) Which, as I have mention'd in my *Prodrome*, has been tranſlated under my Care, into the *German* Language, from the *Tartarian* Manuſcript of *Abulgaſi Bagadur Chan*.

yond *Kuſnetſko*, almoſt as high as the Head of the ſaid River (118), he left the Veſſel, took Horſe, and travell'd, to the Left, 'till he came to the River *Uibeht*, which diſcharges itſelf into the River *Abakan*. Here he obſerved a ſmall *Steppe*, or Deſert, called *Suburgan*, between the Mountains, where he ſaw many Sepulchral Hills, and at about a Day's Journey farther, near a Rivulet, called *Bée*, he met with one of theſe Hills, on which this *Obeliſk* was placed, the Draught of which was taken by a *Swediſh* Boy whom he had with him. In the Year 1722, the Peace being concluded, I was obliged to return home, together with this *Swediſh Boy*, and taking my Leave of the ſaid Doctor, he gave me divers Things to deliver, at *Peterſburg*, to the Principal Phyſician of the *Emperour*, and ſome to Dr. *Blumentroſt*, one of the Phyſicians in ordinary. The little Box, which I delivered to the latter, was open'd in my Preſence, where, among other Things, there was the Draught of this Stone, of which I have here given a Copy. I cannot give the ex-

(118) The *Tartars*, not only hereabouts, but farther up into the Country, call the Source or Spring of a River *Baſch-Inda*, and the *Ruſſians*, *Werſch* or *Werſch-ina*. Now *Baſch* ſignifying *Head*, by which they underſtand the *Source*, and *Inda* as much as *End*; It puts me in Mind of the Appellation which *Pliny* gives to the Head of the *Palus Meothis*, viz. *Ternir-Inda*, i. e. the *End of the Sea*, or *Maris Finis*. (Vid. *Diction. Car. Steph. p.* 1264.) But then *Terner*, or *Temir*, ſignifying in the *Turkiſh* and *Tartarian* Languages, *Iron*, and this Word being often uſed, by them, figuratively, ſpeaking of a Place, to denote its being *ſtrong*, *well fortify'd*, *impregnable*, and of a Perſon's being *robuſt* and *powerful*; For Inſtance, the Paſs near *Derbent* is called *Temir-Kapi*, i. e. *Iron Gates*. And between the Lake *Juan*, or *Iwan*, where the *Donn* or *Tanais* ariſes, and the *Palus Meotis*, ſo long ago as the Time of *Herodotus*, a Mote and Rampart was drawn, as he takes Notice, I think in his VI. Book, it may very well be that the ancient *Scyths*, the then Inhabitants of that Neighbourhood, called it *Temir-Inda*, that is, *the Place where the Fortification ended*. It is hardly credible, how many ancient Names and Words which are here and there found in ancient Writers, and in the ancient *European* Tongues, are ſtill to be met with in *Siberia* and *Tartary*. And I will preſume to ſay, that if a Perſon well skill'd in the ancient and modern Tongues, ſhould happen to come into theſe Countries, and examine the Dialect and Signification of Words, he would clearly ſee, that the obſcure Terms in the ſeveral *European* Tongues, are to be met with in ſome one Tongue or other of theſe People. For Example, the *Latin* Word *Limoſus* is ſtill in Uſe among the *Oſtiaks*, near the River *Oby*; For they call a great Lake and Moraſs, out of which a River ariſes, *Limen*: Which Word *Isbrand Ides*, in his Travels, mentions, ſpeaking of a great Lake, when he was on the River *Oby*, near the Town of *Surguht*; And this very Lake I had likewiſe deſcrib'd to me by the *Oſtiacks*, on Account of its great Extent. But *Herodotus* uſes this very Word, when he ſpeaks of the Source of the River *Tanais*, which proceeds out of a moraſſy Lake; And who knows, but the River *Sirgis*, mention'd by the ſame Author, on the ſame Occaſion, may mean the ſame as the Name of the Town of *Surguht*, near the River *Oby?* the Signification of which I had not at that Time an Opportunity to learn.

exact Height, Breadth and Thickness of this Stone, having lost my Manual, but to the best of my Remembrance, it was about a Foot thick, two Foot broad, and sixteen Foot high; And the Stone was *Grey*. Should I happen to mistake in the Dimensions, it will not be of any great Consequence, since the Figure and Characters are justly and accurately delineated, which latter may serve the Curious to compare with others, for Instance, the *Runian* Characters. This, however, is certain, that they are not all *Runian*, but are intermix'd with a Sort of ancient *Parthian* Letters. Compare, upon this Head, the Account given above, from *l'Histoire de Timur-Beck*, of Monsieur *La Croix*, under the Titles of *Characters*, *Medals*, and *Hieroglyphical* Figures, *&c.* It is great Pity that Time, Wind, and Weather, had then erased most of these Characters, and that Dr. *Messerschmidt* had not Time and Opportunity enough to make a longer Stay in those Places, where he might have taken Draughts of several Things, worthy of Notice; But the indifferent Preparation and Provision for such an important Tour, and Enquiry, made by the then Physical College, who left this Gentleman almost without Assistants (whereas it would have employ'd ten Persons, to have made proper Observations on all the remarkable Things they met with,) has doubtless been a Hindrance to a nicer Search, not only into these, but many other Things. I have already made some Mention above, of the Figure and Stone in *Tab.* XII. which was found not far from a little Town called *Ostrock-Abakan*, on the River *Jenisei*; This may be compar'd with *Tab.* II. where the whole Situation of the Place is to be seen, and the particular Spot where that Stone is placed. It is a *Russian* Ell broad at the *Basis*, three Quarters a-cross the Shoulders, and two Ells and three Quarters in Height, standing with the Face to the *East*. To me it seems that this Stone was design'd for a *Priapus*; The Back Part of it was, at first, full of Rows of Characters, which are now almost obliterated by Length of Time, and the Inclemencies of Weather; In this very Place were found the Graves indicated by *Letter* L. in *Tab.* II. And the Corner Stones of them, of which the Reader has the Draught in *Tab.* XI. All these Things may properly be compared with what has been said under the Titles of Antiquities, Tombs, Characters, Medals, *&c.*

OAKS.

Oaks. There grow none in *Siberia*, nor on the *Eaſt*-ſide of the *Wolga*; But on the *Weſt*-ſide, and in the Kingdom of *Caſan*, on the contrary, they are found in great Plenty. This ſerves, in ſome meaſure, to corroborate, what ſome Natural Philoſophers obſerve, *viz.* That there is a Contrariety in Nature between the Oak and all oily Subſtances. For in *Siberia*, and on the *Eaſt*-ſide of the River *Wolga*, abundance of Cedars grow; and the Kernels which are very oily, are every where ſcatter'd about by Beaſts and Birds: Whereas, on the *Weſt*-ſide of this River, and about *Caſan*, there is no ſuch Thing. Hence alſo it ſeems not improbable, what is ſaid concerning the Walnut-Tree, *viz.* that if it be planted in a Spot where an Oak has ſtood before, it will wither away.

Oby. The Head of this famous River, in *Siberia* and *Tartary*, is rocky; But from the Mouth of the *Tomber* downwards, its Banks are low, flat, and of a curious white Sand, without hardly a Peble among it. The *Tartars* call this River, from its Conjunction with the River *Irtiſch* to the Sea, by the Name of *U-mar*; Which is, perhaps, the ſame Word, that *Pliny* gives to the *Euphrates*, when it grows broad and large, *viz. Omira.* (See *Dict. Car. Steph. p.* 911.) The River *Oby* is alſo call'd, by ſome ancient Authors, *Carambycin*, *Caramby*, or *Carambucis.* (See *Plin. Lib. VI. cap.* 13. & 17.) All which are erroneous Pronunciations of the Word *By.* For the Word *Cara* only properly ſignifies black, but, improperly, raging, cruel, and terrible. Since, therefore, the Senſe of the Word *By*, which the *Turks* pronounce *Bay*, is *Prince* or *Lord*, not only the Ancients gave that Name to this River, to diſtinguiſh it from other leſſer Rivers, in this Country; But its Head, conſiſting in two principal Springs, the one is ſtill call'd *By*, the other *Chatun*, or *Katun* (i. e. *Prince* and *Princeſs.*) But its being at this Time call'd *Oby*, proceeds from the *Ruſſians*, who becoming Maſters of *Siberia*, chang'd the Name *U-By* into *Oby.* For the *Aſiatick* Nations, as I have often ſaid above, generally prefix a Vowel before a proper Name, *e. g.* The *Oſtiaks* call the River *Oby*, *U-mar*; the *Jakuhti*, the *Lena U-Ruſs.* The *Vandals* were formerly call'd in *Europe*, *U-Wandaloi*, and the *Venetians*, *U-Veneti:* And juſt ſo it is with the Word *U-By.* However, the *Ruſſians* did not alter the Name of this River without ſome Reaſon, and merely becauſe there is but a ſmall Difference in the Sounds

Sounds of *U-by* and *Oby*; but becauſe the *By* and *Katun* unite into one Stream, near the Village call'd *By-katun*, and the Word *Ob* ſignifying, in the *Sclavonian* and *Ruſſian*, *Both*, or a *Conjunction of two*, they have given this River, on that Account, the Name of *Oby*, from the Place of that Conjunction. Thoſe little tranſparent Pebbles of which the Author of *l'Hiſtoire Geneal. des Tartars (p. 115.)* makes Mention, are only found in this River, from the Mouth of the *Tomber* upwards, as alſo in the River *Tomber* and *Kemtzyck*, which diſcharges itſelf into the River *Czulim*. To give a Complete Deſcription of this River would require many Sheets; But Time will not allow it at preſent; Tho' it may perhaps be done, at another Opportunity. In the mean Time, the Author of *l'Hiſtoire Geneal. des Tartars*, in his Notes to *(p. 114. ſeq.)* has, in ſome meaſure, perform'd this Taſk.

OCTUS, or *Uktus*, Is a Village in *Siberia*, where there are Iron Works, at the Source of the River *Iſett:* Here are two Forging-Mills, with four Hammers, eight Hearths, one Pinching-Hammer, as alſo ſix Furnaces for ſmelting Copper. The Ore is brought thither from two *Mines*, one call'd the *Old Mine*, 20 *Werſts*, and the other the *New Mine*, 40 *Werſts* diſtant from this Place; But they are neither of them very rich.

ONEGA, Is the Name of a Lake, 180 *Werſts* in Length, and 80 in Breadth.

OSERO, ſignifies, among the *Ruſſians*, an *Inland Lake*, and ſometimes a *Wyck*, which the *Tartars* call *Nurr*, the *Kalmucks*, *Kull*, *Koll*, and alſo *Goll*; Words often met with in the Maps of *Ruſſia* and *Tartary*.

OSTIAKS, A People call'd by the *Tartars*, *Yſch-ſteck*, an Account of whom we find at large in the *Verændertes Ruſſland*. I once, by Chance, when I was among them, near the River *Oby*, ſaw one of their Temples, and the Manner of their Worſhip, which they then perform'd according to their *Pagan* Rites. This Temple was built of Wood, in an oblong Figure, like a great Barn, cover'd at the Top with the Bark of Birch. At the end of the Wall, ſupporting the Gable, there was a Kind of Altar ſomewhat elevated, made of Timber, on which were plac'd two Idols, the Figures of a Man, and a Woman, dreſs'd in all Sorts of Rags, and round about theſe were other ſmall Figures, as Deer, Hares,

Renne-Deer, Foxes, *&c.* all which were roughly carv'd in Wood, and likewiſe cloath'd with Rags. I could not obſerve any great Devotion in them, nor any great Reverence paid by them to their Idols; But only this, that they walk'd about, and perpetually made a Noiſe, with their Mouths, like Mice and Rats. It is ſaid, that formerly they were wont to drown a Virgin, once a Year, in the River *Oby*, as a Sacrifice to the God of that River; As the *Egyptians* uſed to do to that of the *Nile*. (See *Voyage du Sieur Paul Lucas, Tom.* 1. *p.* 316.)

Otters. In thoſe Parts of *Ruſſia* where they harbour, they are caught chiefly in Winter, with Baits and Snares, with a Hook to them. They couple in *February*, the She goes nine Months, and caſts 3 or 4 young ones.

Owls. There are a Sort of Owls in *Siberia*, not far from *Craſnoyahr*, which are as white as Snow, and as large as Hen-Turkeys; The *Ruſſians* call them *Lün*, and *Ulün*; The *Tartars*, *Ackia* and *Ackyk*; and the *Kalmucks* name them *Zagan Schub*, and alſo *Zagan Gorochun*. The latter hold them ſacred, and ſuffer no-body to ſhoot them. I never aſk'd them the Reaſon of it; But I find, in *Hübner's Political Hiſtory of Tartary*, in an Extract of the Life and Actions of *Cingis-Chan*, Founder of the Monarchy of the *Mungal* and *Kalmuck Tartars*, the following Account: It happen'd that he, and his ſmall Army, were ſurpriz'd, and put to Flight, by his Enemies; And ſeeking to conceal himſelf in a ſmall Coppice, where he might very eaſily have been diſcover'd by the Enemy, an *Owl*, which is a very ſhy Bird, ſettled upon one of the Buſhes, which made his Purſuers deſiſt from looking for him there, not thinking any Man could be hid where this Bird would ſtay: This gave *Cingis-Chan* an Opportunity of making his Eſcape by the Favour of the Night. And ſeeing the Preſervation of his Life was entirely owing to the *Owl*, this Bird was, from that Time, look'd upon ſo ſacred, that every one of them wore a Plume of *Owl*'s Feathers on his Head. Now ſince in theſe Parts, there are white *Owls* which are rever'd by the People, that hiſtorical Paſſage ſeems to carry along with it the Face of Truth. For this is certain, that the *Kalmucks*, when they celebrate any great Feſtival, always wear colour'd *Owl*'s Feathers in their Caps,

and the *Wogulitzi* have, among other Idols, a wooden *Owl*, to which they faſten the Legs of a natural One.

P.

PARTRIDGES Are only met with in the *Southern* Parts of *Siberia*; *viz.* about *Craſnoyahr* and *Abakan*, near the River *Jeniſei*.

PAWLOWSKI PEREVOZ, Is a ſmall City, forty *Werſts* from *Niſchneygorod*, near the River *Oka*, belonging to *Knies Czercaſki*. All the Inhabitants of this Place are Lock- and Gun-Smiths, and are noted, all over *Ruſſia*, for their neat Work.

PERESLAW SALESKOI, A City, One Hundred and Twenty *Werſts* diſtant from the City of *Muſcow*, ſituated near a great Lake, on which *Emperour Peter the Firſt* had, in the Beginning of his Inclination for Shipping, two ſmall Frigats, for his Diverſion. They are ſtill kept there, ſecur'd from the Inclemency of the Weather, for a perpetual Remembrance.

PEREWES, the *Ruſſian* Name of a large Decoy-Net, which they ſet up in *Autumn*, to catch wild Geeſe and Ducks; See above, under the Title *Ducks*.

PESETZ or PESZI. The Name of thoſe Foxes, which are found in *Siberia*, along the *Mare Glaciale*, and in the Provinces of *Petziora*, *Berelow*, *Jakuhtſkoi*, and eſpecially about *Mangazei*; Of theſe there are two Sorts; One is quite White, the other of a blackiſh Brown, and they are near as long, but thicker than the common Foxes; They have ſhorter Legs, and longer Hair, but very ſoft and cloſe. The Skin is thin and light, therefore very fit for wearing; And it is almoſt the warmeſt of all Furs. The black ones are moſtly ſent to *Turky*, *Tartary*, *Perſia*, and *China*; Becauſe they ſell five or ſix Times as dear as the white, which laſt are uſed in *Ruſſia*, to lay upon Beds, or make Coverlets of. In *Germany*, theſe Skins are called blue Foxes, and white Foxes. *Lapland* produces ſome of theſe; But they are neither in ſuch Plenty, nor ſo good.

PETINA, In the *Ruſſian* Tongue, ſignifies a fifth Part. This Word is uſed as a proper Name, in two Caſes: (I.) When formerly the Republick, now the Province of *Great Novogrod*, was divided into five Parts, then was each called a *Petina*, *e.g.* (1.) *Vodskaja Petina*, under which was comprized *Ingria*. (2.) *Oboneskaja Petina*, to which belong'd *Ladoga* and *Olonetz*. (3.) *Bezſchetskaja Petina*, in which is *Bezſchetskoi Werch*. (4.) *Derewskaja Petina*, containing *Welikie-lukie*, as alſo old and new *Ruſa*. (5.) *Schalonskaja Petina*, in which are ſituated the Cities of *Porchow* and *Opoka*. (II.) *Petina* is called, in the Provinces of *Pleskow* and *Novogrod*, an extraordinary Revenue, where the Lord orProprietor, inſtead of Mony, takes the fifth Part of the Produce in Kind; For Inſtance, a Stranger occupies my Land, he pays me the fifth Part of the Crop after the Seed Grain is deducted; But if he fiſhes in my Royalty, or holds a Meadow of mine, he is to give me a fifth of what he makes, without deducting the Charges. Some Gentlemen in *Ruſſia* take the fifth of all young Cattle inſtead of Mony. But the Government receives no *Petina*.

PIAZENSA, Is a ſmall Town in *Siberia*, in the *Worchoturian* Diſtrict, where there is a Steel-Fabrick, and a Forge.

PIRTNA WOLOCK, Is a Place in *Carelia*, Three Hundred *Werſts North* of *Olonetz*, where they ſmelt, every Year, a vaſt Quantity of Copper: Not far from hence, at a Place call'd *Powentza*, are two ſmelting Furnaces, and four Hammer-Mills. Within this Diſtrict, are alſo the *Uſtroka-Petrowskian*, and *Alexeian* Mines, the laſt of which is ſixty *Werſts* from the Sea.

PLAIN, A *Plain* is called, in the *Ruſſian* Tongue, *Steppe*, and *Pole*; By the *Turks*, *Dſchüle*; By the *Tartars*, *Cumm*; By the *Mungals*, *Tala*; And by the *Perſians*, *Deſcht*.

POX, (*Small*) was formerly unknown to the *Pagan Koræiki*, *Lamuti* and *Kamtſchadali*, about the Bay of *Lama*. But ſince the *Ruſſians* have got Poſſeſſion of thoſe Countries, theſe *Pagans* have received the Infection from them, and great Numbers dy of this Diſtemper.

POLUSHKA, Is the ſmalleſt *Ruſſian* Copper Coin, four being equal to one *Kopeik*; This was formerly a Silver-Coin, bearing on one Side the Name of the *Czar*, and, on the Reverſe, a Pidgeon. But they are now coined of Copper only.

PORRUM, or *Leek*. There are both Garden and wild Leeks; The latter is very common, and grow plentifully, in many Parts of *Siberia*; And the *Ruſſians* call it *Scheremſcha*. Every Maſter of a Family, among the *Oſtiacks*, near the River *Oby*, fetches, during the Summer Seaſon, every Morning, a good Boats Load of Leeks, which are generally conſumed by Night.

POSTILLA, Is a kind of Sweatmeat made, in *Ruſſia*, of divers Sorts of Fruit, as *Apples*, *Pears*, *Strawberries*, *Rasberries*, *&c.* The other Ingredients are Sugar or Honey, Eggs, and a very little Flour. They make it in Leaves, as thin almoſt as Paper, and rolling them up, bring them, as they do other Sweatmeats, to Table; ſome make Uſe of them for Tarts, *&c.* They will keep three Years, and longer, and yet remain good.

POWDER. Ammunition-*Powder* coſts the Government of *Ruſſia* but ſixty Kopeiks *per Pud*, of forty Pounds.

PROPHETS. The *Mahometans* have, in all, One Hundred Twenty-four Thouſand Prophets, Three Hundred and Thirteen of which are called *Murſells*, or the *Principal*; Among theſe are five, whom they eſteem the Chief of all, *viz.* (1.) *Iſhai*, or *Chriſt*. (2.) *Anu*, or *Enoch*. (3.) *Ibrahim*, or *Abraham*. (4.) *Moiſe*, or *Moſes*; And, (5.) Their *Mahomet*, to whom, however, they give the firſt Place.

PROTOCK. A Word which often occurs in the Maps of *Ruſſia*; It denotes a narrow Paſſage from one great Stream to another, where two Branches have framed an Iſland.

PUD. A *Ruſſian* Weight, of forty *Ruſſian*, or about thirty-ſix *Engliſh* Pounds. Ten *Puds* make one *Bercowetz*, which Word *Hübner*, in his Dictionary, ſpells wrong, with a *P*.

PUMICE STONE. There is a Kind of black *Pumice Stone*, in *Siberia*, between the Cities of *Craſnoyahr* and *Abakan*.

Q.

QUARNI-PATSCH; A Name the *Oſtiacks*, who live near the River *Oby*, give to Bear's Gall. If one meets any of them upon this River, and only calls out the Word *Quarni-patſch*, they preſently come, with their little Boats, and bring a good Quantity, and at a very cheap Rate; Generally a Gall, well dry'd, may be had for as much *Chineſe* Tobacco, as amounts, in Value, to two *Kopeiks*.

R.

REMES. Is a ſmall Bird to be met with both in *Ruſſia* and *Siberia*; It is ſomewhat thinner, but has longer Feathers, than a *Canary Bird*. On the Back it is of a light Grey, and on the Belly of a greeniſh *Yellow*. This Bird builds its Neſt by the River-Side, and moſt commonly on a Twig of Willow, which hangs over the Water. Theſe Neſts are very artfully and neatly made, in Shape not unlike the Bag of a Bagpipe, when full blown. It is about ſix Inches long, and about three Inches in Diameter. It is made of very ſoft Materials, and if torn, or pick'd aſunder, looks like white flock Silk. One would almoſt imagine, by the Appearance of theſe Neſts, that this Bird gathers the Silky Fur of the Catkins of Willows, in the Spring, for that Purpoſe. At the narrow End of this Neſt, which is open, and looks like the Neck of a Bird-Bottle, the Bird enters, lays its Eggs in the lower Part of the Belly of the Neſt, and there hatches its young Ones, being all the while ſhelter'd from Rain, and the Inclemency of Weather. This Neſt never falls off, let the Wind blow ever ſo hard, but is only rock'd to and fro. The *Ruſſian* Merchants in *Siberia* are very ready to buy theſe Neſts, they being put to ſeveral Uſes; In the firſt Place, they make Socks of them, they being ſoft and warm; In the ſecond Place, they are chopped ſmall, and given to Horſes, mix'd among their Provender, as a Remedy for ſome Diſorders attending them. Nay, ſome pretend to cure ſeveral Diſtempers of the Human Species with

with them; But whether it anſwers, in the Effect, I am not acquainted. Some of theſe, are ſeen here and there, in *Germany*, in Cabinets of Rarities. *Valentine*, in the ſecond Book of his *Theatre*, takes Notice of this Bird, though not by the Name of *Remes*.

ROADS, or WAYS, *by Land or Water*, from *Ruſſia* to *Siberia*. The moſt uſual Roads from *Muſcow* to *Siberia*, the Reader will not only find mark'd in my Map, but has alſo an Account of them in other Authors, as: *Isbrand Ides*; *Das Veränderte Ruſſland*, (*p.* 72.) *&c.* There is another Way by *Caſan*, to the City of *Ufa*, and thence through the Country of the *Tartarian Baſchkirrs*, into *Siberia*; But this is not always ſafe, unleſs a large Company goes together. In the Summer, Goods may be carried, by Water, from *Wologda*, by the City call'd *Uſtjuga*, into the River *Witziogda*, and up that River to its Source, from whence flow two Brooks, called *Kæltma*, by the Means of which Veſſels, paſſing by *Solikamskoi*, are carried into the River *Kama*, and thence farther into the River *Tſchinſowa*, quite to *Siberia*. I have not met with any Writer, that gives an Account of the Ways, by Water, from *Solikamskoi*, *Northward*, into *Siberia*; For which Reaſon, I ſhall here give ſome Account of them. From *Solikamskoi* you go by Water to the River *Kama*, up this River to the Mouth of the *Kolwa*, up which you proceed, 'till you come to its Conjunction with the River *Witzſchiora*; You travel up this Two Hundred *Engliſh* Miles, then leave it on the left Hand, and go into the River *Wolſian*, and follow that, 'till you arrive near the Mountains, to a ſmall Space of Land, about ſixteen *Engliſh* Miles in Breadth, called *Kolskoi-Wolock:* This you croſs, by Land, 'till you come to the little River *Koll*, where you take Water again, and proceed to the River *Waſa*, thence into the *Loſwa*, through this into the River *Taffda*, paſſing the City of *Pelim*, and ſo on to *Tobolsky*. But if you have a Mind to deviate, and go more *Northward* into *Siberia*, to *Bereſowa*, you muſt, from the *Waſa*, enter the River *Coſwa*, and when you are come to its Source, you will find, between this, and the Source of the River *Uſſa*, a Tract of Land, call'd *Schem-Wollock*, about eight *Engliſh* Miles broad; Here you paſs again by Land, and, then, by Water again, on the River

River *Uſſa*, into the Brook *Jeletz*, at the End of which there is another *Wolock*, or Space of Land to get over; After which, the River *Jabazkia* carries you to *Bereſowa*. But to go from *Archangel* to *Solikamskoi*, you go from the River *Dwina*, into the *Wimm* and *Nimm*, then croſs a *Wolock*, called *Bukonin*, about ſeven *Werſts* over, thence on the Rivulet *Malock*, into the *Kolwa*, and ſo to *Tzordin* and *Solikamskoi*. If, again, you are deſirous to travel from *Archangel*, *Eaſtward*, along the Sea-Side to the Mouth of the River *Pytziora*, you may afterwards go up this River in ſmall Craft, which will bring you into the *Northern* Parts of *Siberia*. For the River *Pytziora* leads into the *Uſſa*, near the Head of this there fall two Brooks into it, called *Jeletz* and *Tzernaja*, which latter leads, between the Mountains, into the River *Sobb*, which falls into the great River *Oby*; Whereas the former brings you, as I have ſaid already, to *Bereſowa*. It was my firſt Intention to take Notice, under this Title, of all the principal Roads, and Ways, through and out of *Siberia*, to the bordering Countries. But this requiring a pretty deal of Room, I have choſen to defer it to another Opportunity. Now I am ſpeaking of the Roads and Ways leading into *Siberia*, I cannot, however, forbear mentioning, what an odd Sort of a Guide I met with in *Siberia*, in the Year 1722, when, after the Peace was concluded, I was returning from *Craſnoyahr* to *Tobolsky*. I have already mention'd, in another Place, that my Guide run away. Going along the River *Czutim*, and, in my Way, paſſing by a ſmall *Ruſſian* Fort, call'd *Utramski-Oſtrock*, guarded by *Ruſſian Coſacks*, I complain'd of my Miſchance, and told them that I was at a Loſs how to continue my Journey; I own'd that I had five *Tartars* with me, to row the Float; But doubted whether they might not, perhaps, leave me too, and oblige me to ſtay by the Way; One of the *Coſſacks* anſwer'd, I had no Occaſion to be uneaſy, having already five Men with me; They would find Ways and Means to get themſelves relieved by others. However, It was his Opinion, that I would do well to ſend one of theſe five Men, in a little Boat or Canoe, before, to the next *Jurts* or *Hutts*, where they were to be relieved, with a Piece of Cord, about as thick as ones Finger, on which three Knots muſt be ty'd, and to bid him acquaint thoſe of the next Stage, that a Gen-

Gentleman was coming, who had an Order for taking freſh Men at every Stage. This I did, and proceeded with my remaining four Men. As ſoon as we reached the Stage, we ſaw four Men ſtanding ready on the River Side, I aſk'd whether my Cord was deliver'd to them, and gone to the next Place, they anſwered yes. In ſhort, this Cord carried me ſafely through to my Journey's End. This brings to my Remembrance, what I have read ſince, in the *Northern* Voyages, to *Nova Zembla*; And though I cannot be poſitive as to the Page; Yet, I am ſure, the Subſtance of the Story is to this Effect: A Maſter of a Veſſel anchoring on the Coaſt of *Boronday*, which is between *Pytziora* and *Nova Zembla*, aſked the People of the Country, who are *Samojeds*, about the Situation and Circumſtances of the Coaſt; they told him, that he had yet ſeveral dangerous Points to double, before he could reach the Streight of *Weygatz*. But that, if he was deſirous of a quick Paſſage, they could furniſh him with a Cord, on which there were ty'd three Knots; That if when he came to the firſt Point, he untied one, he would have a fair Wind; And if, at the next Point, he untied a ſecond, he would obtain a briſk Gale; But they would not adviſe him to untie the third, For that would raiſe a Storm, and might endanger his Ship. The Maſter purchas'd this Cord of the *Samojeds*, and follow'd their Direction, as to the two firſt Knots, by which Means he quickly doubled the two Points; But his Curioſity leading him to try the third Knot, it occaſion'd ſo violent a Storm, that had he not been pretty near a Harbour, it would have coſt him dear. By this it appears, (though my Knots had no ſuch Property) that the *Tartars* have the Cuſtom of uſing Cords, with three Knots, as well as the *Samojeds*. I confeſs, I did not aſk the *Coſſacks* what was their Reaſon for ſending a knotted Cord, in that Manner, being, at that Time, glad to make Uſe of any Means, that would carry me forward.

RUBEL, Is a *Ruſſian* Silver-Coin, about the Size of a Crown-Piece, in Value ten *Griffwens*, or One Hundred *Kopeiks*; Two Rubels are of equal Value with a *Ducat*. They go generally in *Holland* for fifty-five to ſixty *Stivers*, according as the Exchange runs. Formerly they had no other Coin in *Ruſſia* but *Denga*'s (of the Value of half a *Kopeik*,) and their way of Reckoning

was to have a Tally, and at the Sum of every Hundred *Denga's*, they cut a Notch upon the Tally, which Notch they called *Rubel:* And, therefore, when they afterward coin'd Silver-Coin, of juſt one Hundred *Kopeiks* in Value, they call'd it a *Rubel*, or Notch.

S.

SABLES. Several Authors have, here and there, given Deſcriptions of this Species of precious Animals, I ſhall therefore only add thus much: *Viz.* (1.) That it is the Nature of theſe Creatures, at a certain Time of the Winter, to ſleep for a while; But firſt they hide themſelves ſo ſecurely, that it is a very hard Matter to find any of them. And if, at any Time, they are diſcovered, they ly wrapped up, as it were, like a Ball, and you may roll and throw them about, without waking them. (2.) That they live upon Mice, Ceder-Kernels, Red Berries, Fiſh, *&c.* (3.) That thoſe Years, when Cedar-Kernels, and Red Berries are moſt Plenty, theſe Animals are the moſt difficult to be found, and their Fur is the worſe; Becauſe feeding plentifully, they reſt moſt; On the contrary, if there be a Scarcity of Cedar-Kernels and Berries, they are eaſier caught; For they then run more about, and Exerciſe makes the Fur much more beautiful. (4.) That the moſt beautiful *Sable-Skins* have generally the worſt *Tails*, and the worſt *Skins*, on the contrary, the fineſt *Tails*. (5.) That there are *Sables* as white as Snow, but they are met with very rarely. (6.) Upon the Iſlands, in the *North-Eaſtern Sea*, beyond *Kamtſchatki*, the *Sables* are very indifferent, but then they have *Tails* a Quarter of a *Ruſſian* Ell long, ſtreaked Red and Black. Near *Craſnoyahr*, *Abakan*, *Kuſnetſko*, and ſome other Places, you may buy a Hundred of the beſt *Sable-Tails* for about ſix or eight *Rubels*; Whereas they are worth from twenty-five to thirty *Rubels* at *Tobolſky*; and will ſell for a Hundred *Rubels* at *Muſcow*. The *Skins* bear the ſame Proportion of Price. A Timber of *Sables* conſiſts of forty Skins, or twenty Couples.

SALT. There are four Sorts of *Salt* in *Ruſſia:* (1.) *Rock-Salt*, which is found in a *Salt-Mine* or Hill, called *Iletskaja*, ſitu-

ſituated *Eaſt* of the Town of *Uſa*, among the *Uralzian* Mountains. Little of this is carried either to *Muſcow*, or other Places, it being moſtly uſed by the *Baſchkirrian*, *Nagaian*, and *Wolgarian Tartars*. (2.) *Sea-Salt*; This is dried by the Sun, found about the Coaſt of the *Black Sea*, and is uſed in the *Ukraine*. On the *White Sea*, this *Salt* is made by Boiling, and uſed in the neighbouring Provinces. (3.) *Butzun*, or *Lake-Salt*, is gathered near *Aſtracan*, and in *Siberia*; This kind of *Salt* is obſerved to cover the Surface of ſome Lakes, in the Summer-time, juſt as Ice does, in other Places, in Winter; Sometimes one fourth, and even half a *Ruſſian* Ell thick; inſomuch that it will bear the Weight of a Man, and they are often obliged to break it with Iron Crows. But as ſoon as Rainy Weather comes, or Dew falls, it melts away. All the Caviar, as well as all Fiſh, which is carried farther inward into *Ruſſia*, are cur'd with the *Aſtracanian Lake-Salt*, and the Remainder ſerves not only all that Government, but *Caſan* alſo. Indeed ſome of it, is carried into *Ruſſia*; However, not being very pure, but ſandy and gritty, it is not much valued. There are in *Siberia* many of theſe *Salt-Lakes*, but particularly the great Lake *Jamiſchevo*, near the River *Irtiſch*, yields a vaſt Quantity of exceeding white *Salt*, ſufficient to ſerve all *Siberia*. (4.) *Spring-Salt* is what is made in ſeveral Provinces, *viz.* in *Permia*, the *Ukraine*, near the City of *Backmuth*. In the Government of *Great Novogrod*, near *Staraja Ruſſa*, near *Galitz*, *Kaſtroma*, and *Sol-Wyzigodtskaja*. But the *Permian*, of all theſe, is the beſt; Which both for its Goodneſs and Plenty, is moſt in Uſe, all over *Ruſſia*. Theſe *Salt-Springs* ly very deep, and the People are obliged to ſink a Pit, Two Hundred and Sixty Foot deep, before they come at them, which is not to be done without much Toil, and great Skill, as well as Charges. What is peculiarly remarkable in theſe *Salt-Springs* is, that they are not only found in marſhy and moraſty Places, but even in the midſt of the River *Kama*, as good and as ſtrong as on dry Land, and the freſh Water is of no Prejudice to them (119).

(119) I have read ſomewhere in *Tavernier*'s Voyages, that the Shoar of the *Indian Ocean*, *Eaſtwards* of the *Golphus Perſicus*, is very flat, and that the People frequently go, above a Thouſand Paces, into the ſalt Ocean, to fetch freſh Water, which is full as ſtrange.

SALT PETER. Of this there are annually Thirty Thouſand *Puds* deliver'd into the *Emperour's* Storehouſes, from *Aſtracan*. Not far from the River *Iſett* in *Siberia*, there is, likewiſe, a Lake, where, in the Summer, a Third Part of *Salt Peter* is mix'd with the Salt produced around its Shoar. But for Want of Wood, in that Place, it will not anſwer the Coſt, to ſeparate the *Salt Peter* from the Salt, and to boil it.

SAWOLINSKI, Is a ſmall Town, within the Verge of the Mine-Government of *Siberia*. Here is an Iron-Fabrick, with four Hammer-Mills.

SAZCHEN or SASCHEN, Is a *Ruſſian* Fathom, containing three *Arſchin*, or forty-eight *Werſchock*.

SCHEREMISSI or CZEREMISSI. Something has been ſaid already, under the *Letter* C. concerning this *Pagan* Nation. I ſhall only add this, as to their Religion: They believe their *God*, *Jumala*, to be eternal and almighty; For which Reaſon they will not ſuffer him to be worſhipped under any *Image*, or the Likeneſs of any Thing. Whenever they offer up their Addreſſes to him on any Occaſions, they ſacrifice to him, in the following Manner: They make a Fire, and into it they throw Bread and Meat, pronouncing aloud theſe Words, *Jumala Sargala*, *Jumala Sargala*; that is, *Lord have Mercy upon us.* They look upon *Friday* to be ſomewhat more holy than the reſt of the Days, have no Buildings ſet apart for the Exerciſe of their Devotion, but perform their Worſhip under Green Trees.

SCHIPP, Is a Fiſh caught in the River, *Jayck*, which diſcharges itſelf into the *Caſpian Sea*. This Fiſh is much like a *Sturgeon*; But never grows quite to the Size of that Fiſh, though it is pretty large, and its Snout is ſomewhat longer, and more pointed. The Body of this Fiſh is of a yellowiſh grey, and the Fleſh of it is yellow, and very good Eating. This is eſteem'd the moſt delicate Fiſh in all *Ruſſia*, is caught only in the above-mention'd River, or very rarely about *Aſtracan*, in the River *Wolga*.

SCURVY. This is a general Diſtemper, in the *Northern* Provinces of *Ruſſia*, eſpecially in *Siberia*, and towards the *Mare Glaciale*; For a Confirmation of which, read the *Northern*

Voyages, and you will find how ſeverely *Hemſkirk*'s People were affected with the *Scurvy*, going to *Zembla*. At *Bereſow*, not far from the River *Oby*, you will meet with few *Ruſſians*, whoſe Noſes, or ſome other Members, do not bear the Marks of this raging Diſtemper. It is reaſonable to ſuppoſe that the *Scurvy* has been the chief Diſeaſe in theſe Parts, even in ancient Times; Becauſe the Word *Scorb*, which is the *Latin* Word *Scorbutus*, only ſignifies a Diſeaſe in general; Whereas the *Ruſſians* call the *Scurvy*, at this Time, *Tſinga*.

SEVRJUGA; The Name of a certain Fiſh in *Ruſſia*, of the Sturgeon Kind, and as large, the Snout of which is about a Foot long; The Fleſh of it is white, and the Roe black; But not half ſo good as that of the Sturgeon.

SHEEP. The Wool of the *Ruſſian* and *Siberian Sheep* is gerally very harſh, and therefore moſtly uſed for the Stuff call'd *Wadmar* *. There is a Kind of Wild Sheep in *Siberia*, about *Craſnoyahr*, near the River *Jeniſei*, which have very large Horns, they are called *Argali* or *Argara*; of theſe Mention has been made above. The Figure of one of this Sort of Sheep, cut in Stone, was found lying in the City of *Craſnoyahr*, being an Idol which the neighbouring *Pagans* formerly uſed to Worſhip. A Draught of which, ſee *Tab.* XXI. *Let.* B.

SHAIDACKI, Is a ſmall Race of People, living between the *Caſpian* and *Black Sea*, who are *Allies* to the *Czerkaſſians*, and *Comucki*, and whoſe chief Town is *Utſchmu*. They are a vile Race of Men, although ſome obſcure Traces of the *Chriſtian* Religion are found among them. Theſe, as well as their Confederates, will liſt themſelves into the military Service of three Powers, *viz.* The *Perſians*, *Ruſſians* and *Turks*, and they receive a certain annual Stipend of all three.

SLIUDO. So the *Ruſſians* call *Iſing-glaſs*; but the *Tartars* call it *Schiſchæ*. The beſt of it is very white, tranſparent, and in large Leaves. There are ſome of a *Ruſſian* Ell Square. It is uſed

* I know no ſuch Word, in the *German* Tongue, as *Wadmar*, nor have been able to find it, in any Dictionary; And am, therefore, at a Loſs to gueſs the Signification of it. The Prepoſition *zu*, which precedes it, ſignifies *at*, as well as *for*. It might, therefore, be tranſlated *at Wadmar*, and then that Word would denote the Proper Name of a Place. But as the above Interpretation of it, ſeems to be the moſt natural; ſhould I be miſtaken, this Note may ſerve as my Juſtification.

uſed for Windows and Lanthorns, and is convenient for lower Rooms; Becauſe no Body can ſee from without, what is doing within. It is likewiſe very fit for Ship-Lanthorns, becauſe it does not break by the Firing of Guns, as other Glaſs does.

SNAKES, Are deem'd ſacred among the *Kalmucks*; They never kill any, but make them ſo familiar, that they will creep into Bed to them; nor has it ever been heard, that, among the *Kalmucks*, Men or Beaſts have been hurt by them. The Reaſon why they have ſuch a Value for *Snakes*, is, Becauſe they believe, that the *God of the Water* ſometimes takes upon him the Shape of a *Snake*, and comes on the Shoar; And they fear, that if they ſhould hurt or kill any of theſe Creatures, that Deity would be offended, if not kill'd.

SNETOCK, Is a Kind of Fiſh caught in the *Belo-Oſero*, and near *Pleſkow*, in *Ruſſia*. It is flat, ſmall, and not above two Inches and a half long, but very fat and delicious; The Roe is red, and the Fleſh white: Thoſe caught near *Pleſkow* are the beſt. They are caught in *Autumn*, with large Nets, and they are dried, both ſalted and unſalted, in Ovens, made for that Purpoſe, and carried to all Parts of *Ruſſia*. They eat very well both raw and boil'd.

SOLOTNICK, Is a ſmall *Ruſſian* Weight, of which ninety-ſix go to a *Ruſſian* Pound. This Weight is again divided into eight Parts, in weighing Gold and Silver.

SQUIRRELS, Theſe Creatures are very common in *Ruſſia*, but more eſpecially in *Siberia*; The fineſt Sort are reckon'd thoſe in the *Siberian* Provinces of *Jakutskoi* and *Bereſowa*; They are of a blackiſh Grey in Winter, have longer Hair, and are much larger than in any other Province. Next to theſe are the *Theleutian* Squirrels; They have white Bellies, and are chiefly caught near the Head of the River *Oby*, and the City of *Kuſnetskoi*: Theſe are alſo larger than the common Sort, and the Skins are ſold on the Spot for four or five *Kopeiks*; Whereas the ordinary Sort goes for one, or one and a half *Kopeik*. About the Rivers *Jeniſei* and *Tomber*, are found a Kind of whitiſh-grey flying *Squirrels*; They are ſhorter than the common Ones in the Body, have hairy Wings, ſhaped like the Wings of Bats, by the Help of which they can fly from Tree to Tree, to the

Diſtance of about Three Hundred Paces. In Summer-Time, the *Squirrels*, in *Siberia*, as well as in other Countries, are reddiſh, but in Winter grey. I need hardly repeat here, what other Authors have related, of the Contrivance of theſe little Animals for croſſing Rivers; How they get on a flat thin Piece of Wood, and make their Tails ſerve them for Sails. The *Ruſſians* call theſe Creatures *Bielki*, and the *Tartars Aas*.

STORKS; I cannot ſay, that I have ſeen any ſuch *Storks* in *Siberia*, as are met with in other Countries; But I have obſerved there a Kind of black ones, in great Numbers, with red Legs and Beaks, the Feathers of which gave a Luſtre like Peacock's Feathers. Theſe are called, by the *Ruſſians*, *Agyſt* and *Cara-Tſchilan*; There are, beſides, White ones; But they have no black upon their Wings, and are ſmaller than the *European*. They frequent great Foreſts, and about the Banks of the River *Oby*; They have yellowiſh Legs and Beaks, the ſame as the *Siberian* Swans, which likewiſe have yellow Beaks.

STRUG, or STRUSE, Is a flat-bottom Veſſel uſed on all the Rivers of *Ruſſia* and *Siberia*; the largeſt will carry about One Thouſand Five Hundred *Puds*.

STURGEON; The *Ruſſian Sturgeons* are ſome of them ſeven Foot long: The Fleſh is white, intermix'd with yellow Fat. They make of the Sturgeon, *Caviar*, *Carluck*, and *Weriga*, all which, if you except the Fleſh of this Fiſh, fall very ſhort in Goodneſs of what is prepar'd of the *Beluga*. The Fleſh, which the *Ruſſians* take out of the Back of the Sturgeon, ſalt, and dry in the Sun, they call *Provenſnyé Spinki*, and it eats very nice even raw.

SUCHARI, Among the *Ruſſians*, is that Sort of Bread, which they dry, cut into ſmall Cubical Pieces, of the Size of Dice, and eat like Biſket. In the Kingdom of *Sweden*, they make a Sort of thin round Cakes, about half a Quarter of an Ell over, which they alſo dry: Theſe are made both of Rye and Wheat, and are call'd by the *Swediſh* Peaſants, *Knæke-Bræd*. For my Part, I never obſerv'd any ſuch Bread, in any Country I have been in, except in the *Siberian Tartary* and *Sweden*.

SUGAR, In the *South* Part of *Kamtſchatki*, or the Peninſula *Jedſo*, there grows a Plant about a *Ruſſian* Ell high, and of the Thickneſs of ones Finger, called by the Inhabitants *Ahahatka*. Which when cleaned, peel'd and dried in the Sun, grows as white as Snow; This may be pounded ſmall and taſtes like powder'd Sugar.

SVINSKOI MONASTIR. A Monaſtery in the *Ruſſian* Province of *Brianſk*, ſituated near the River *Deſna*. Here is a great Annual Fair, whither a great many *Poliſh*, *Turkiſh*, *Sileſian* and *Pruſſian* Merchants, and others reſort. It begins the 15th of *Auguſt* N. S. and holds 4 Weeks.

SULPHUR, or *Brimſtone*. In the Kingdom of *Caſan*, there is a Sort of pure ſolid Brimſtone, cut out of the Rocks of *Talk*, or tranſparent Plaiſter; In which it is wrapp'd up; It is as fine and clear as Amber, and ſome Lumps of it are ſo large, that they will weigh upwards of 50 Pounds Weight. This fine *Sulphur* is moſtly put to Phyſical Uſes; But the leſs and more impure Pieces, are melted down, refined, and uſed in the Compoſition of Gunpowder (120).

SURME, or SURMA, Is a kind of Paint, uſed, by the *Ruſſian* Ladies, to colour their Hair, which is made thus: They take the Kernel of a Wallnut or ſmall Nut, ſtick it to a Fork and burn it, holding a Silver or Pewter Plate over it, to receive the Smoak. This they repeat ſo often as is neceſſary, till they have enough of the Black, then they mix it with a little Sugar, and keep it in a Box for Uſe. However it is better without the Sugar.

T.

TABU, Signifies, in the *Mungalian* Tongue, *five*, and *Taby*, *fifty*; Whence (if we conſider that there are a vaſt Number of ſmall Iſlands in the *Mare Glaciale*, near *Swetoi Nos*, or the Point of *Kamtſchatki*,) it is not improbable, that the Promontory of *Tabyn*, in ancient Maps, has taken its Name.

TABUN, Is a *Tartarian* Word, ſignifying a Herd, or Multitude, of Horſes droven together. There come uſually, every Year,

(120) See *Verændertes Ruſſland*, *p.* 421.

Year, 2 or 3 *Tabuns* from different Places of *Tartary*, and the Country of the *Kalmucks*, to the City of *Muſcow*, which are ſold in the open Fields, in a very ſhort Time. Sometimes one of theſe *Tabuns* conſiſts of 30 or 40000 Horſes, the Manes of which are cropt, in Order to be known, in Caſe they ſhould ſtray, or be ſtolen. As ſoon as a Horſe is ſold, it is mark'd with the *Imperial* Mark on the Thigh.

TAGILL, Is a ſmall Town, ſituated near a Brook of the ſame Name, which empties itſelf into the River *Tura*, in *Siberia*. This Place has two ſmelting Furnaces, and twelve Hammer-Works.

TEA, Should be call'd, according to the Original, *Czee* or *Czai*; and the Signification of this *Chineſe* Word is, *Leaves*. It has different Names, from the different Places where it grows, as alſo from its Colour. That which is the moſt common in *Europe*, the *Chineſe* call *Czee-tugan* or *Lau-an*; That which is of a greeniſh blue, *Kok-Czay*. The yellowiſh *Tea* is called *Czee-muni*, or *Sari-Czay*. The blackiſh *Czee-bu*; The *Tartars* call it *Bu-Czay*. There are, in *China*, above 15 different Sorts of *Tea*. The beſt of all are the *Green*, *Tea-boû* and *Muni*, which are of equal Price; The preſs'd *Tea-boû* is ſomewhat dearer, becauſe it is mix'd with Things that give it a fine Flavour. There is, beſides, another Sort, which is call'd *Stone-Tea*, and by the *Tartars*, *Cairi-Czee*; This conſiſts not in Leaves, but in ſolid Pieces, like *Terra-Catechu*, dark brown without, and yellowiſh within, and gives a reddiſh Tincture; It diſſolves in Water, like Sugar, and gives no Sediment; It has a grateful Smell, and is pretty aſtringent. It is the Opinion of many, that this *Tea* is prepar'd of the Juice of the *Tea-Leaves*.

TOLOKNO, Is a particuliar Sort of Flour or Meal, which they make, in *Ruſſia*, of Oats; It is a common Food for Soldiers and labouring People, and they eat it only mix'd up, with Water and Salt, to what Conſiſtence they think fit, without boiling. They likewiſe put it into Broth, and it is very ſtrengthning and filling, as alſo very good for the Bloody-Flux.

TRIBULUS AQUATICUS, or *Water-Nuts*; This Shrub grows in many Places in *Siberia*; The *Ruſſians* call the Fruit *Aralnick* and *Rogulki*, and the *Tartars*, *Artſchingæ*, or *Garaſchnick*.

Troitzkoi-Monastir. This Convent is look'd upon to be the largeſt and richeſt in the whole *Empire* of *Ruſſia*; There being 20000 Peaſants under its Juriſdiction. There were formerly 700 Friars in it; But the Number of them is pretty much leſſen'd, ſince the new Eccleſiaſtical Regulation, and the Surplus of the Revenues is appropriated for the Maintenance of Schools and the Support of diſabled Soldiers. It is diſtant from *Muſcow* ſixty *Werſts*, and about 56 from *Pereſlaw-Saleſki*.

Tungusi. This is the moſt numerous and moſt ſtragling *Pagan* Nation (with Reſpect to their Dwellings) that is in *Siberia*, and are ſuppos'd to amount to 70 or 80000 Men. The Author of *l' Hiſt. Geneal. des Tartars* (printed at *Leyden*, 1726.) has given a pretty good Account of them, (*p.* 345. *& ſeq.*) Theſe People are, in general, diſtinguiſh'd by three Names, *viz. Konni Tunguſi*, *Oleni Tunguſi*, and *Sabatſchi Tunguſi*, that is, thoſe who make Uſe of Horſes for Riding and Draught, thoſe who uſe Renn-Deer for that Purpoſe, and thoſe who uſe Dogs. In the ſame Manner as the *Finnlandians* have been diſtinguiſh'd formerly, by ſome Writers, into *Skrete*, and *Rede*; *i. e.* into ſkaiting *Finnlandians*, and ſuch as uſed Sledges. The *Ruſſians* in *Siberia* give beſides, to the latter Sort of theſe *Tunguſi*, divers other Names; as, *Podkumena*, *Tumaki*, and *Wonki Tunguſi*, *&c.* Becauſe the latter have very diſagreable Smells, occaſion'd by the Fiſh, and other uncommon Things they feed upon; and the former live in and about the Mountains: In other Things they are no Way different from the *Sabatſchi Tunguſi*. The *Jakuhti* call them *Udſchiæn*, from the Word *Ud*, ſignifying a *Dog:* Whence alſo a Capital River, which diſcharges itſelf into the Bay of *Lama*, on Account of theſe People, who keep Dogs, that have Hair one Fourth of an Ell long, is named *Ud-Reka*, *i. e.* the *River* of *Dogs*. Moreover, theſe *Sabatſchi Tunguſi* living partly at the Point of the Bay of *Penſchin* or *Lama*, and partly near the Rivers *Aldan*, *Tungur* and *Ud*, the *Ruſſians* have given that Point the Name of *Sabatſchi Nos*; (See the Voyages of *Iſbrand Ides.*) The *Sabatſchi Tunguſi* are ſubdivided among themſelves, into divers Tribes, *viz.* 1. *Lamunka.* 2. *Kæltaku*, which is the largeſt and ſtrongeſt (121); 3. *La-*

(121) See my Introduction, Sect. IV. §. V.

3. *Lakigir.* 4. *Brangatkal.* 5. *Nynengath.* 6. *Bugagi.* 7. *Maimogur.* 8. *Boldati.* 9. *Sologon.* 10. *Mamour.* 11. *Ilagin.* 12. *Kotnachan*; and, 13. *Jukagri*, or *Jukairi.* In my Map, all theſe are compriz'd under the Name of *Sabatſchi Tunguſi*; There being too little Room to inſert all theſe particular Names. As to the other two Sorts, *viz.* The *Konni* and *Oleni Tunguſi*, they are ſufficiently deſcribed in the Travels of *Iſbrand Ides*, and in thoſe of *Adam Brandt*, where it is obſervable, that both theſe Writers are of Opinion, the *Konni-Tunguſi*, as well as the *Targuzini*, came originally from *Dauria*, and that the *Oleni Tunguſi*, who live near the River *Angara*, are all one People with the *Konni*, tho' their Tongues are different, and this the Reader will find confirm'd, in my *Polyglot-Table*, where I have inſerted ſome Words, and the Names of the Numbers, with theſe three chief Diviſions of the *Tunguſi*; And the Account of the above Authors, with my Table, taken together, will pretty well clear up what I have ſaid concerning this Nation, in my Introduction, *Sect. III.* §. XXXII. *&c.* as alſo *Sect. IV.* §. V. *viz.* That their Anceſtors were thoſe Primitive *Tartars*, who are called in ancient *European* Authors, by the Name of *Abii.* For what *l'Hiſtoire Geneal. des Tartars* mentions (*p.* 104.) that the chief Tribes of the *Tartars* had ſettled in the Country call'd *Biurnauer*, has an Eye to theſe very People, and means *Dauria*; Becauſe the *Tartarian* Text is not copied right, there being a D put inſtead of a B. By which it is plain, that the *Tunguſian* Nation is meant in the *Genealogical Hiſtory*; (See more under the Title *Dauria.*) I have already, in my Introduction, *Sect. III.* §. XXXII. taken Notice of the Signification of the Name *Tunguſi*, and its Origin; And what confirms it farther to be only an Appellative, (as I have there obſerv'd,) is, that other Neighbouring Nations do not call them by the ſame Name. For the *Manſuri*, or *Mantiſcheu-Chineſe Tartars*, name them *Kamnoyahn*; and the *Tunguſi* call themſelves *Kalljak-Tzin*, that is, Generations who have taken their fix'd Abode in certain Places. *L'Hiſtoire Geneal. des Tartars* ſays the ſame of the *Primitive Tartars*, c. IX. p. 103. *viz.* That they had ſettled in ſeveral Places, and there fixed their Habitations; and eſpecially, that the firſt Party of them took their Abode in the Country called *Biurnauer*

(122), (as has been ſaid above;) And the ſecond Party near the River *Ikar-Mouran* (which is the ſame as *Jeniſei.)* Hence it plainly appears how theſe People came to loſe the Name of *Tartars*, and were called *Su-Mungals*, or *Water-* or *Lake-Mungals*. (Compare my Introduction, *Sect. III.* §. XXXII. *&c.*)

TURA, or THURA. This Name the *Tartars* formerly gave to the City of *Tobolſky*, and the whole Country, which is properly called *Siberia*; and the ſame is uſed among them to this Day. Probably the Inhabitants of theſe Parts are the *Thuri* of *Pliny*, that were Neighbours to the *Atthacori*, which laſt are placed by *Geographers* in *Siberia*. (See *Lib. VI. c.* 17.)

U.

UCZUG, or UCZUGI. By this Name are call'd the three great Fiſheries, on the River *Wolga*, in the Kingdom of *Aſtracan*. One of theſe belongs to the *Crown*, the ſecond to the *Patriarch*, the third to the Convent of *Troitzſkoi*. At theſe Fiſheries there are a Kind of large Hedges carried out, into the River, on both ſides, which facilitate the catching of the *Beluga*; For when this large Fiſh gets into the narrow Paſſage, left in the Middle between the Hedges, he is not able, on Account of his great Bulk, to turn back, but is ſtopt; And there the Fiſhermen dart him with their Harping-Irons, and ſo drag him a-ſhoar. Theſe *Uczugs* are reckon'd to be worth between 4 and 5000 *Rubels* a Year each. And here the moſt and beſt *Cavear* is made.

VEDRO, Is a liquid Meaſure, the ſame with what the *Germans* call *Eymer*; It contains 136 Cubick *Werſchock*, and holds eight *Kruſchks*, or *Galenock*; Which make near 20 Gallons *Engliſh*.

VERSCHOCK, or *Werſchock*, Is a 16th Part of a *Ruſſian* Ell, or *Arſchine*. A Thouſand *Verſchock* are equal to 1755 *Engliſh* Inches.

VERSTA, or *Werſt*, Is a *Ruſſian* Meaſure of Land, or a Kind of Miles, of 500 *Saſches*, or *Ruſſian* Fathoms; 104⅙ *Werſts* are equal to a Degree of 60 *Engliſh* Miles.

(122) I have already obſerv'd, under the Title of *Daria*, that it is the ſame with *Dauria*, and that *Nauer* ſignifies a Country full of Rivers, and ſuch is *Dauria*. In the Room of which, the *Tartarian* Text is *Biur-Nauer*, which muſt be an Error of the Tranſcriber; Becauſe, of above a Hundred *Tartars*, which I conſulted about this Word, not one knew any Thing of it.

VESIGA,

VESIGA, Is a kind of ſinewy Subſtance, which contains the Spinal Marrow of the *Beluga*, and *Sturgeon*, which the *Ruſſians* cure after this manner: They cut open the large Griſtle of the Back, from Head to Tail, and thence take out the Pith, which is white, reſembling a long Worm; and after they have ript open the thick Skin that contains it, they clear out the Marrow, and dry this Skin (which looks much like a long leathern Strop) in the Sun, then roll it up, and afterward ſell theſe Rolls by the Hundred, and by the Thouſand. In a dry Place they will keep good 3 or 4 Years. They boil them and eat them with Horſe-Raddiſh, but ſoak them firſt a Night in luke-warm Water; they alſo make Pies of them, which do not eat a-miſs.

ULUS, Is a *Kalmuckian* Word, and ſignifies the ſame as the *Tartarian* Word *Horda*, or *Orda*; This Word is often met with in the Maps of *Tartary*. I muſt here take Notice, that the Words *Puſtoi* and *Reca*, which are frequent in *Homan*'s Map, towards the *Eaſt*-ſide of the *Caſpian-Sea*, are mere Appellatives, the firſt ſignifying a Deſart Place, the other a River, in the *Ruſſian* Tongue.

URR-URRMAN, or AOURMAN, ſignifies, with the *Tartars*, a thick black Foreſt, conſiſting chiefly of Pine-Trees, which generally grow in a marſhy, boggy Soil.

URRMANKAT, Is the Name given by the ſame People, to ſuch as inhabit thoſe Foreſts, and have built Cottages or Huts in thoſe Places. The *Ruſſians* call the Pine-Trees *Gelewoi*, and yet a Foreſt of Pines they name *Czorni-Læſs*, that is, *Black-Foreſt*. As to the Etymology of the Word *Urr*, or *Urrman*, I find, that *Oerdo* in the *Hungarian* Language, ſignifies alſo a *Forreſt*. *Rubeck*, in his *Atlantica*, (*Tom. III. p.* 742.) ſays, *Or*, *Ur*, and *Urd*, ſignify, in the *Gothick*, the ſame as *loca ſalubria & rupibus obſita*, in *Latin*; and the *Chineſe* and *Eaſt-Indians* call one, who lives in a Forreſt or Wood, *Orancha*, and *Urancha*; I cannot think but all theſe Words, as well as the *German* Word *Aur*, *Ur*, or *Wood*, or *wild Ox*, are derived from the ſame Original. To this ſeems alſo to relate, what *Cæſar* mentions, (*Lib. VI. Belli Gallici.*) *viz.* That the *Hircinian*, or *Black Forreſt*, was anciently call'd by the *Tectoſagi*, *Orcin* or *Urcin*, which is all one with the *Urrman* of the *Tartars*

Tartars (123). The mountainous and woody Province of *Hyrcania*, near the *Caſpian* Sea, has likewiſe its Name from the dark thick Woods (124), which are call'd, in *l'Hiſtoire de Timur-Beck (Tom. II. p. 216.)* by the Name of *Aourman*, or *Urrman*.

W.

WATER, or MUSK RATS. Theſe are call'd, in the *Ruſſian* Tongue, *Vichocholl*; The Banks of the River *Wolga*, near *Caſan*, ſwarm with them, and they are commonly ſold there for two *Kopeiks* a-piece, and ſometimes, for one. People put them, when dry'd, among their Cloths, as a Preſervative againſt the Moths.

WERSTE, See *Verſta*.

WINDOWS, Throughout all *Siberia*, are only made of Iſing-glaſs, call'd, in *Latin*, *Lapis Specularis*, of which there are two Sorts; *viz.* The White and Brown; And they are both found, in *Ruſſia* and *Siberia*, in great Plenty.

WHIRL-POOL, in *Latin*, *Vortex*. There is ſuch a one on the *Eaſt*-Side of the *Caſpian Sea*, (*See my Introduction, Sect.* II. §. XI.) I am inform'd, there is the like in the River *Danube*, near the little Town of *Crems*, that is ſaid to ſwallow up an incredible Quantity of Water, which riſes again not far from *Caniſcha* in the *Lower Hungaria*.

WOLVES, Are commonly grey; But, in *Siberia*, they are moſtly white, eſpecially about the Belly, and are larger than ordinary; the Fur is very ſoft and warm. In ſome Places, coal-black ones are likewiſe found.

HERE I chuſe to conclude my *Hiſtoria Miſcellanea Ruſſo-Siberica*; In which I have given the Reader a curſory Account of what *Minerals*, *Vegetables* and *Animals* this *Empire* produces, from *Weſt* to *Eaſt*; I could have added ſeveral Things; But ſince this Work is already ſwell'd to a greater Bulk than I firſt intended, I ſhall reſerve the Reſt for the ſecond Part, of which I have made ſome Mention in the *Preface*, where I ſhall likewiſe treat of the Roads, which lead through *Ruſſia*, *Siberia* and *Tartary*, to the Neighbouring Regions.

(123) See *Dict. Car. Steph. p.* 1931.
(124) *Idem, p.* 1082.

A P-

APPENDIX.

BY Way of *Appendix*, I ſhall here add a Relation of a Journey by Land, from *Siberia*, to the *Peninſula Jedſo*, or the Country of *Kamtſchatki*, given in the *Pricaſe* of *Muſcow*, by a *Ruſſian Petideſetnick*, or Commander of fifty *Coſſacks*, *Wolodimir Atlaſſow*, by Name, Son of a *Jakubtian Coſſack*, in the Year 1701, after his Return into *Ruſſia*. He ſaid, that having provided, at *Jakubtſkoi*, Carriages and Horſes for himſelf, and thirteen *Coſſacks*, who were with him, he ferried over the River *Lena*, the laſt Day of *Auguſt*, and after three Days Journey, reckon'd at thirty *Werſts* a Day, over Plains and Meadows, he reach'd to the River *Aldan*, which he looked upon to be twice as large as the River *Muſcua*. From thence he went eleven Days-Journy on Horſeback, over Marſhy and Boggy Land, along the right Side of the River *Tokulan*, (which is leſs than the *Muſcua*,) 'till he came to its Source. When he came to this Place, he found, that it had already begun to freeze; He croſs'd the River, and one Day's Journy over Mountains brought him to the Head of the River *Jana*, which is broader than the *Muſcua*; Two Weeks Journy, along this River, carried him to *Werchoſanſki Simovia*, where he took freſh Horſes, and continued his Way two Days longer, along the River; He then croſſed the *Jana*, and went on towards, and along, the River *Dowdock* or *Taſchtack*, thence along the River *Gelandina*, which laſt diſcharges itſelf into the *Indigir*, near *Judigirſkoi Oſtrock*. At this *Oſtrock*, *Atlaſſow* reſted for ſome Days, having been ſix Weeks upon the Road, from *Jakutſkoi*, thither. Here he hired *Renn Deers*, by the Help of which he travell'd downwards, 'till he came to the

Place where the River *Ujandin* falls into the *Indigir*, called *Ujandinſki Simovia*, which took him up ſix Days. He proceeded a little Way farther, down the *Indigir*, then turn'd from the River, and purſued his Inland-Road for eight Days, to *Alaſeiska Simovia*; From thence he went on, for eight Days more, 'till he came to *Simovia Germongi*, near the River *Kolym:* He travell'd along this River, downwards, for ten Days, at the End of which he came to *Niſka Kolimſkoi.* This is an *Oſtrock*, or Fortreſs, ſituated almoſt at the Mouth of the River *Kolym. Atlaſſow* continued his Journey, upwards, along the Side of the River *Anaja*, then, leaving that River, he went a good Way, over Mountains, to the River *Jablona*, along the Side of which he paſs'd downwards, and gain'd the River *Anadir*, along the Side of which he kept, 'till he reach'd *Anadirſkoi-Oſtrock.* The whole Paſſage from the Mouth of the River *Kolym* to this *Oſtrock*, took him up four Weeks, which, however, is ſometimes done in three. Here *Atlaſſow*, and his Companions, hir'd Horſes and *Renn-Deer* of the *Jaſaſchni Inaſemzi*, or Foreign Tributaries. Before he proceeded any farther in the Relation of his Travels, *Atlaſſow* took Notice, that there was a double Promontory between the Rivers *Kolym* and *Anadir*, call'd by ſome *Nos Tſchalatskoi* and *Anadirskoi* (125). He affirms it to be impoſſible to double this Promontory, with any Veſſel; (he means *Ruſſian* Veſſels;) Becauſe, in the Summer, the *Weſt* Side of this *Cape* is choak'd with large Floats of Ice, and, in the Winter, it is quite frozen up; Whereas on the *Eaſt*-Side, or at the *Nos Anadirskoi*, the Sea is quite clear of the Ice. He goes on and relates, that though he did not go to the Extremity of this *Cape*, in Perſon, yet he had good Information from the *Czucktſchi*, a People living about the Mouth of the River *Anadir*, that there was a large Iſland, oppoſite to the *Anadirskian* Part of the Promontory, from whence a ſtrange People came in the Winter, over the Ice,

(125) In the Old Maps, this Promontory is called *Tabin*; But I know not whence this Name proceeds. I have given the Reader my Conjectures about it above, and it ſeems that *Nos Tſchalatskoi* is meant by that Name; As to the *Nos Anadirskoi*, without Doubt it muſt be the *Caput Patientiæ*, which the *Dutch* place near the Iſland of *Jedſo*. And this is confirm'd by *Atlaſſow*'s Account, who ſays that there is no Ice there in the Summer. Whence it was eaſy for the *Dutch* to come at it on the *Eaſt* ſide, but when they endeavour'd to double it, and were balk'd by the Ice, they called it *Caput Patientiæ*.

Ice, to theſe *Czucktſchi*, who had a particular Language, and brought them a coarſe Sort of *Sables*, and Sable-Tails, a Quarter of a *Ruſſian* Ell long, ſtreak'd black and red. *Atlaſſow*, after this, continued the Relation of his Journy, to *Kamtſchatki*. He had now, with him, an additional Number of ſixty *Sluſhiwi*, or Soldiers, all Volunteers, which he took at the *Oſtrock-Anadirskoi*. They lived, on the Road, on *Renn-Deer*, which they got of the Inhabitants, and on Fiſh, that they caught by the Way, with Nets they carried with them, from *Anadirskoi*. He related, that the River *Kamtſhatka* produced a particular Sort of Fiſh, not unlike *Salmon*, but larger, which are red in the Summer, and call'd, by the Inhabitants, *Awetſchina*. Beſides this, they caught in thoſe Parts, at leaſt ſeven other Kinds of Fiſh, not known in *Ruſſia*, which came out of the Sea, into the Rivers, but ſeldom return'd back again: For the ſudden ebbing of the Water was the Cauſe of their being left behind: Whence, likewiſe, it came that, in the Country of *Kamtſchatki*, abundance of *Beavers*, *Otters*, *Sables*, and other Animals were found. The Winters in this Country were much the ſame, with Regard to the Cold, as at *Muſcow*, or not quite ſo cold, nor did there fall ſo much Snow. He added, that himſelf and Company were oblig'd to ride, in Summer with wooden Saddles, on the *Renn-Deer*, and in Winter in *Narts*, or Sledges, drawn by the ſame Animals. With reſpect to *Jakuhtski*, the Days were much longer in Winter, and almoſt as long again, at *Kamtſchatki*, as there; And farther *South*, in the Country of the *Kurili*, it was much warmer, there being hardly any Snow there in Winter. Here *Atlaſſow* made the following Obſervations: (1.) That the Sun made hardly any Shadow at Noon, in Summer, but was almoſt directly over their Heads. (2.) That, in Winter, the Rivers and marſhy Places not freezing up, vaſt Numbers of all Sorts of Wild-Fowl, as Wild Swans, Geeſe, Ducks, *&c.* were ſeen there, which in Summer, on Account of the exceſſive Heat, retir'd into more *Northern* Regions. And becauſe of the frequent Rains and Thunder, *Atlaſſow*, as well as his Fellow-Travellers, judged the Country of the *Kurili* muſt be ſituated very far towards the *South*. He took Notice, that, in the *Southern* Parts of *Kamtſchatki*, as well as the Country of the *Kurili*, there

was a variety of Shrub-Fruits; And, among others, a Sort of green Berries, little leſs than Hens Eggs, of the Taſte and Flavour, and bearing Seeds, like Raſberries; But the Stem on which they grow, was not above one fourth of a *Ruſſian* Ell high. Many other Sorts of Berries, as ſweet as *Raiſins*, but not ſo large, were likewiſe found there. They did not meet with any Tree-Fruit, but found a very ſingular Plant, of about the Height of a *Ruſſian* Ell, and as thick as a Man's Finger, call'd, by the Inhabitants, *Ahahatka*; This they peel'd, ſpread it broad, and afterwards roll'd it up, and expoſed it to the Sun to dry; And when dried, it look'd as white as Sugar, and had exactly the Taſte of Sugar beaten to Powder. He ſaid the *Cedars* of that Country were very ſmall, not exceeding, in Height, the larger *Juniper*-Shrubs, but did however, bear Plenty of Kernels. The *Pine*, *Birch*, and *Larch*-Trees were here, of the ſame Size, as in other Countries, and very common, eſpecially in *Kamtſchatki*: But about the Coaſt of the *Pentſchinian* Bay, there only grew *Aſpen* and *Birch* Trees. The *North* Side of this Bay was inhabited by the *Koræiki*, the Males of which People had no Beards, but only a few looſe Hairs ſcatter'd about their Chins, hardly to be ſeen; In other Reſpects they were like the *Ruſſians*, of a middling Stature; And their Tongue was different from that of the Natives of *Kamtſchatki*. They had no particular religious Ceremonies, except that there were, among them, ſuch *Schamans* as the *Oſtiacks* have, and the *Samojedes* call *Kedeſchnick*, who beat on Drums, make a hideous Cry, and pretend to foretel Things to come. The Cloths and Boots, which theſe *Koreiki* wear, were made of the Skins of *Renn-Deer*, and the Soles of the latter, of the Skins of Seals, which they eat, as well as other Fiſh and Animals which their Country affords. Their Huts were made partly of Reeds, and partly of the Hides of *Renn-Deer*, dreſs'd for that Purpoſe. The *Lutorzi*, who live *Eaſtward* of the former, and towards the Coaſts of the Main-Ocean, were, as to Shape, Cuſtoms and Language, the very ſame with the *Koræiki*, except that they made their Habitations under Ground. But the *Kamtſchadali*, who live *South* of both theſe, and farther up into the Country, on the Banks of the Rivers, not only diffe'r'd in Language, but were of a ſmaller Stature, had large Beards,

Beards, middling Faces, and were much like the *Siræni*, who dwell in *Ruſſia* and *Permia*; Their Cloths were made of *Sable*, *Fox*, and *Renn-Deer*-Skins, with the Fur turn'd outwards, and border'd and trim'd with Slips of *Dog*-Skins. In the Winter, their Dwelling Places were Under-Ground, and, in Summer, their Huts were built of Boards, ſupported by Pales, three Fathom high, above the Earth, which they cover'd with Branches and Roots, of Pine-trees. They made uſe of Ladders to get up to them; And of theſe Huts or *Jurts*, there were Three or Four Hundred built cloſe together. They lived chiefly on Fleſh and Fiſh, which laſt they eat moſtly either raw, or froſt-dry'd; In Winter, they dug Holes in the Ground, and fill'd them with raw Fiſh, covering them with the Bark of Birch, and over that with Earth; Whenever they wanted to eat ſome of this Food, which was not, 'till it was thoroughly putrify'd, they took a Quantity of it out of the Hole, and putting it into a wooden Trough, with Water in it, flung red hot Pebles into it, continually ſtirring it about, 'till they made it boil; Which cauſed ſuch an inſufferable Stench, that even a *Ruſſian* could hardly endure it. They made both Earthen and Wooden Veſſels for their own Uſe, had painted and varniſh'd Ware brought to them, from the oppoſite Iſlands; But they could give no Account, what Government thoſe Iſlands belong'd to. Theſe *Kamtſchadali* ſeem'd likewiſe to have no peculiar Form of Religious Worſhip, but had amongſt them a Sort of *Schamans* or Magicians, wearing long Hair, who ſpent their Days in the largeſt and thickeſt Forreſts. The *Koræiki*, who were Priſoners with the *Ruſſians*, ſerv'd as Interpreters, between them and the People of *Kamtſchatki*. *Atlaſſow* related farther, that the *Kurili*, who liv'd ſtill more to the *South*, were more ſwarthy, and had but little Beard. Their Habit was like that of the *Kamtſchadali*, but they were poorer; Their Sables were not ſo fine, becauſe the Climate was warmer; which Diſadvantage, however, was made up, by a vaſt Plenty of red Foxes, and large black Beavers. Whether the Country beyond the *Kurili* was inhabited, or not, or how far it extended, he declar'd he was ignorant of. He added, that at about a Weeks Journey from the Mouth of the River *Kamtſchatki*, upwards, there was a large, high Mountain, ſomewhat longiſh,

not unlike a Stack of Corn; And, at ſome Diſtance, there was another reſembling an Hay-Mow, but very high; Both which emitted Smoak in the Day-Time, and Flames in the Night; And that the People of the Country told him, half Way up the Mountain, there was heard ſuch a hideous Roaring Noiſe, that no body could bear to hear it long, and that thoſe who had ventur'd to go up higher, never return'd; Nor could they conceive what came of them. Out of this Mountain flow'd a Stream of Water, of a greeniſh Colour, but ſo exceeding clear, that a *Kopeik* thrown into it might be ſeen three Fathoms under Water. Theſe *Kamtſchadali* (he continued) had no Magiſtracy among them, but the Poor were ſubject to the Rich, and yet the ſeveral Generations were at War with each other. They went naked in the Summer. Theſe People were, ſometimes, very brave and courageous; But, at other Times, as timorous and faint-hearted; And that they formerly were tributary to no-body. The Men were permitted to marry ſeveral Wives, even to 3 or 4. They kept no Cattle, nor other Beaſt, but Dogs, which commonly were very large, and had Hair one Fourth of a *Ruſſian* Ell long. Their Manner of catching Sables was with wooden Traps, near the Rivers abounding with Fiſh; and ſometimes they ſhot them off of Trees, with Bows and Arrows. They did, indeed, wage War among themſelves; But were vaſtly afraid of Fire-Arms; Whence they call'd the *Ruſſians*, *Milhimans*, i. e. *Fire-Men*, becauſe of their knowing how to handle thoſe Arms. They had once ventur'd to engage with the *Ruſſians*; But theſe no ſooner fir'd at them, than they turn'd Tail and ran away. He ſaid, the *Kamtſchadali* went to War with Snow-ſkates, which they call *Leſches*, and the *Koræiki* on *Narts*, or Sledges, one driving the *Renn-Deer*, and the other Shooting. In Summer-Time, they went to Battle on Foot, ſome cloathed, others naked. They traded with the *Ruſſians* for Knives, and ſmall blue Glaſs-Beads, *&c.* in Exchange for which, they gave them Sable-Fox-Beaver-and Otter-Skins. He ſaid farther, that Ice floated, in Winter, in the *Lutorian* Sea, but that it was never quite frozen up. Whether the Froſt had any Effect upon the Sea towards *Kamtſchatki* he could not tell, at leaſt he had not obſerv'd any Ice there in Summer. He had ſent a *Coſſack*, on the River *Kamtſchatka*, down as

far as the Sea, to get Information, whether that Part of the Country had any Inhabitants; Who told him, at his Return, that the Sea-Coaſt was inhabited by the ſame Sort of People as the *Kamtſchadali*. He gave an Account of 160 *Oſtrocks*, or Forts, built along the Banks of the River *Jelowka*, down to the Sea. The Huts in theſe *Oſtrocks* were made of Hides, and that, in one of the main Huts, there was Room for 150 or 200 Men. On the Outſide of theſe great Huts, every Man had a Hut to himſelf, built upon Pales. That before the Arrival of the *Ruſſians* there had not been ſo many *Oſtrocks* in that Country, the People, for their better Defenſe, having augmented the Number ſince. Their Weapons conſiſted of Slings, with which they threw large Pebbles out of their *Oſtrocks*; They had, likewiſe, long pointed Poles, and Clubs; But the *Ruſſian* Way of attacking them was this: They approach'd with wooden Targets, ſet the *Oſtrocks* on fire, and planting themſelves at the Gate, they kill'd one by one as they came out to eſcape the Fire. They had alſo ſome Forts of Earth; but whenever they appear'd on the Ramparts, and the *Ruſſians* fired upon them, they retired, and had not the Courage to appear in Sight again. He related, farther, that, on the other ſide of *Kamtſchatki*, there was no Ice; But that, between the Rivers of *Penſchin* and *Kygyla* ſome Ice was, now and then, thrown on the Shoar. He ſaid, that to go on Foot, over the Mountains, from *Kygyla* to the Mouth of the River *Kamtſchatka*, a Perſon muſt be a very good Traveller, who could do it in 3 or 4 Days; And to go in a Boat, on the River *Kamtſchatka*, down to the Sea, would take up 4 Days. This Country abounded in Bears and Wolves. Over-againſt the firſt River, in the Country of the *Kurili*, there were ſome Iſlands viſible (126), on which there were Towns fortify'd with Walls, according to the Account of the People of thoſe Parts; But the *Kurili* could not tell what People thoſe Inhabitants were: However, they ſaid, that ſome of theſe Iſlanders came over, and brought them *China*-Ware, ſtriped and colour'd Silks, *(Dap,)* Cotton-Stuffs, *(Kitaika,)* and Garments, *(Aſam,)* of thin Silk, *(Lenza.)* The *Kurili* ſaid, that theſe People gave them thoſe Veſſels and Garments *gratis*; But they

(126) Theſe are the *Northern* Iſlands of *Japan*.

they could not tell the Name of the Veſſels, in which theſe Foreigners croſs'dthe Water. They farther inform'd *Atlaſſow*, that upwards, beyond the Beaver-Rivers of the Country of *Kamtſchatki*, there arrived, every Year, large Veſſels, called *Buſſi*, which fetch'd away from thoſe People Blubber of Seals, and Train-Oil; But they could not tell what Commodities theſe Veſſels brought in Lieu of thoſe Things. The Sea yielded large *Whales (Kyhti)* and *Seals*, (*Nerpa Kalani*,) both which came pretty near the Shoar at High-water; But being left behind, by the Ebb, the *Whales* were kill'd by the Inhabitants; and the Seals, or *Kalani*, having but very ſmall Feet, and Abundance of Wood lying along the Shoar, could by no Means get away. *Wolodimir* ſaid, it was not known how far the River *Amour* was diſtant from thence. He added, that the *Penſchini* made Boats of Seal-Skins (ribb'd with Timber) 6 Fathoms in Length, and 3 in Breadth, which they call'd *Baidari*; That they went out to catch Seals in them, and that one would carry 30 or 40 Men; but he did not know how far they could venture into the Sea with them. The *Kamtſchadali* had alſo ſuch Boats, but not ſo large. He had not obſerved any ſuch Veſſels among the *Kurili*, it being Winter when he was in that Country. It was his Opinion, that the *Kurili*, as well as the Inhabitants of *Kamtſchatki*, could gather two Crops in a Year, it not only being a warm Climate, but alſo a very rich Soil. There was no Cattle in thoſe Parts; nor could he ſay whether any Silver, Copper, or other Mines, might be there. He related, that a Priſoner, who came over Sea in the *Buſſi*, had a peculiar Language; he wore ſmall Whiſkers, and had black Hair, and by his Viſage did not look unlike a *Greek*. He ſaid farther, that this Stranger wept as ſoon as he ſaw an Image among the *Ruſſians*, by which he gave them to underſtand, that they had the like in his Country. *Wolodimir* had this Man two Years with him, in which Time he had learn'd ſomething of the *Ruſſian* Tongue; And having been two Years, before *Wolodimir*'s Arrival, among the *Koræiki*, he ſpoke at firſt in that Tongue, by an Interpreter; He ſaid he was an *Indian*, and that in their Country there was a great deal of Gold, and whole Houſes of *China*: Their Kings liv'd in Silver and gilt Palaces. *Wolodimir* had, likewiſe, taken a Piece of Silver-Coin from the *Koræiki*, about one Sixth of an Ounce in

Weight, which this Stranger affirm'd to be his Country-Coin. He ſaid, that they uſed no Sables, nor other Furs, for Linings, in *India*; But that their Cloaths were made of all Sorts of Stuffs, quilted with Cotton. *Atlaſſow* ſaid, that this Stranger travell'd with him, 6 Days Journy, from *Anadirſkoi* to *Liſki*, where he fell ſick, and his Legs ſwell'd, for which Reaſon, he was brought back to *Anadirſkoi Simovia*. He gave him the Character of a Man of good Senſe and Breeding (127). *Atlaſſow* had alſo taken with him a Native of *Kamtſchatki*, in Order to bring him to *Muſcow*, to confirm the Truth of what he had related, but this Man dy'd upon the Road, at *Kaygorod*.

(127) This Man was a Native of *Japan*, who afterwards, in the Time when the *Swedes* were in *Siberia*, was carry'd to *Muſcow*; whether he got thither in Safety, I cannot ſay. However, I ſaw him at *Tobolsky*, when he paſt thro'. He did not ſpeak much of the *Ruſſian* Tongue; Yet when I ask'd him, by an Interpreter, whether, at *Japan*, they call'd the Country of *Kamtſchatki*, by the Name of *Jedſo?* he anſwer'd in the Affirmative. I do not in the leaſt doubt, but the *Dutch* would have viſited the *Peninſula Jedſo*, or *Kamtſchatki*, from *Japan*, *China* and *Batavia*, 60 or more Years ago, had they known the Circumſtances of that Country. And it is certain, that neither the *Dutch* Ambaſſadour at *Japan*, *Caron*, nor thoſe Ships which firſt diſcover'd the *Eaſt* Part of this Peninſula, (as we ſee by the old Maps of *Aſia*) were able to give any Account of it; This ſhort Deſcription, however, ſhows, that it might have been worth while, to have made Voyages thither, to have got acquainted with the Inhabitants, and to have traded with them; Eſpecially ſince Sables and large Beaver-Skins, which, in *Kamtſchatki*, are to be had, in great Plenty, yield 60 Rix-dollars a-piece in *China*; Beſides other Advantages, which this Traveller could not diſcover, in ſo ſhort a Time. And as to that Plant, which has the Taſte of powder'd Sugar, it might be worth trying, whether it would turn to Account. Concerning the *Vulcano* he ſpeaks of, and that the People, who went up a pretty Way, never return'd, it may be remark'd, that it is much of the ſame Nature with the *Veſuvio* in *Italy*, where *Pliny* loſt his Life, in the ſame Manner. The Cauſe of this is, that both this and the other *Vulcano*, when they burn in the fierceſt Manner, vomit out Brimſtone and melted Metal, which like ſo many Brooks running down, cut deep Holes and Gutters in the Earth, which afterwards are filled up by the Aſhes thrown out by the *Vulcano*, and blown into them by the Winds; And on the Surface whereof a Cruſt of Earth is form'd, grown over with ſhort Graſs. Whoſoever, therefore, ventures up theſe *Vulcano*'s, without knowing how to diſcover theſe Places, ſinks into them. Upon this Occaſion, I muſt not omit to confirm what the *Verændertes Ruſſland*, (*p.* 406.) relates, from the Information of a *Ruſſian* Merchant, *Michael Oſtatioff*, concerning a certain People living on the *North-Eaſt* Point of *Kamtſchatki*, called by this Author *Soegtſie*; But by the *Ruſſians*, *Tſchucktſchi*, or *Schucktſchi*, *viz.* That they rip open their Cheeks, and ſtick into them the Bones of the Fiſh called *Narpal*, in Order to preſerve the Scars, which they look upon as an Ornament. This very Account I had, alſo, myſelf, from a *Ruſſian*, who came from *Kamtſchatki*, in 1716, and who added, that they made uſe of the Teeth of Fiſh to adorn themſelves; Whatever elſe he ſays of theſe People is true, excepting that they only worſhip the Devil, juſt as the *Samojeds*, *Laplanders*, *Tunguſi*, *Oſtiacks*, and others do, with their enchanting Drums.

FINIS.



GENTIUM BOREO-ORIENTALIUM VU

HARMONIALI

OR,

A SPECIMEN of ſome of the Numbers, and other Words of the Nations deſcended from the *Tartar*-and *Hunno-Scyth*
the Reader may ſee how they were formerly united, either among themſelves, or with other *Weſtern* Nat

Numbers and Words belonging to the I. CLASS.

These People, taken all together, belong to the *Upper Hungarian*- and *Finnland*-Nations, who have all one Dialect; I have therefore given the two first, that the Reader may compare with them, the Six following, which are the Dialects of Nations inhabiting the *Ruſſian Empire*, partly in *Europe*, and partly in *Aſia*; Whoſe Anceſtors were in Ancient Times, the *Hunns*, or *Unns*.

	Hungarian Tzecklers, living in *Dacia*, between *Tranſylvania* and the River *Theis*.	*Finlanders*, to whom belong the *Livonians* in *Courland* and *Livonia*.	*Wogluwitzi*, who call themſelves *Mantſchi*, and live in the Province of *Ugoria* in *Siberia*.	*Morduini*, who call themſelves *Mordua*, and live in the Government of *Nyſſnigorod*.	*Szeremiſſi*, call themſelves *More*, and live in the Government of *Caſan*.	*Permecki*, who call themſelves *Comi* or *Sudacki*, and live in *Great Permia*.	*Wotiaks*, who call themſelves *Ari*, and live in the Principality of *Wiatka*.	*Oſtiaks*, who call themſelves *Chonti*, and live on the River *Irtiſch*, in *Siberia*.
One	Ecki, *or* Egi	Yx	Aku	Wæte	Ichtet	Ottik	Attik	Ith
Two	Ketto	Kax	Kitta	Kaffta	Kechtet	Kek	Kyk	Kætt
Three	Harom	Kollm	Korum	Kollma	Komett	Kuim	Kyn	Kollem
Four	Nelli, *or* Negi	Nellye	Nilla	Nille	Nelett	Niall	Nell	Nille
Five	Cet, *or* Oett	Wys	Et *or* Ætt	Wytæs	Wyſett	Witt	Witt	Wett
Six	Kaht, *or* Haht	Kuhs	Katt	Kuta	Kudett	Kuatt	Katt	Kott
Seven	Heth	Zeitzeme	Zaht	Zſiſim	Ziemett	Zſiſim	Zſeſem	Labett
Eight	Nioltz	Kadhexen	Niollola	Kaukſim	Kandax	Kakiems	Sſemet	Nilla
Nine	Kilentz	Ydhexen	Antolo	Weixim	Dentze	Ockmas	Alnmans	Killien
Ten	Tiz	Kymmene	Loo *or* Lou	Kaime	Loo	Das	Daſs	Yang
Hundred	Szaz	Sſata	Schat			Scho		
God	Iſten	Jumala	Thor	Jumis hipas	Jumala	Jahn	Mador	Thorum
Father	Atya	Aja		*Man*,			*Mans*,	
Mother	Anya	Aiti	Anomati	*Animal*, Kanſke. *Heaven*, Strenel. *Star*, Kieſi:	Oetziu	Jay.	*Head*, *Hair*, *Eye*, Sin.	Iſkærr
Family, or *Race*	Sogoek	Suku		*Loman*, *Head*, *Woſe*, Soak. *Ea*, Prea. *Hair*, Prettzier. *Arm*, Pilla. *Horſe*, Katti. *Houſe*, Gordala.	Annæ	Karr	Girr.	üth
City	Keritit	Caupungi					Till	
Fire	Tuz	Tuli	Datt		Yulni	Ma	Woe	Kisinga
Water	Wiz	Weſi	ûtia				Ma	
Earth or *Land*	Mazo	Ma		*Window*, Wellman. *Hare*, *Wind*, Niman. *Bread*, *Roma*. *Woman*, *Girl*, Aiu. *Cow*, Sorr.		Kizillas	Teel	
Wind	Szell	Tuli				Schin	Soor	Pu
Star	Czillag					Kill	Kill	Kuarn
Rain	Saude	Sade				Toſch	Tous	
Eye	Szem	Silmæ				Ky		
Tongue	Nyelo	Kyeli				Lapa		
Beard	Crakall					Penn.		
Head	Keez	Kæfi				Kich. *Dog*,		
Foot	Lap	Jalka	Woi	*Meat*,		*Fire*, By.	Wow	
Nutter	Wau	Woi		*Jacket*.				
Tree	Pa	Pu						
Bear	Medwe	Karhu						
Crow	Zarka	Harraka						
Horſe	Hames-lo	Hewoiſet						
Head	Foe	Pæe						
Neck	Nyakj	Niſka						
Hair	Hay	Hiux						
Mouth	Szai	Sui						
Heart	Sziwu	Sydan						
Fiſh	Hall	Kalat						
Martern	Neſt	Nætæ						
Louſe	Tai	Tai						
Night	Ey	Ye						
Day	Nap	Paiwa						
Stone	Koe	Kiwi						
Bow	Jy	Joutzi						
Arrow	Nyil	Nuoli						
Cock	Kakas	Kuko						
Hole	Luk	Luola						
Belly	Haz	Waxa						
Moraſs	Foo	Suo						
Egg	Many	Muna						
Blood	Weer	Weri						
Market	Torweniheli	Tori						
Sentinel	Warta	Wartiat						
Fine, (*Adj.*)	Ekes	Caunis						
Red	Vœrœs	Ruſkia						
Ice	Jeg	Jæe						
Winter	Teel	Tolwi						
Evening	Eſtue	Etho						
Life	Ælet	Elæme						
Horn	Szaruw	Sarwi						

ADVERTISEMENT.

HERE I refer to what I have mentioned in the Introduction, Sect. III. §. VI. and Sect. IV. §. I. and following, of this *Polyglott* Table, and of the Nations that belong to each of theſe Claſſes; And if, with this, the Reader will look over the Map, he may eaſily find where all the above-mentioned Nations dwell, and how far the Language of each Nation extends; But it is to be obſerved, that thoſe Nations in *North-Aſia*, that live from the *Mare Glaciale* to the 58th Degree of Latitude, and thoſe that extend *Weſtward*, to *Ruſſia*, and *Eaſtward* to the Gulf of *Jedſo* or *Kamtſchatki*, neither had formerly, nor have, at this Time, any Letters. On the other Hand, from the aforeſaid Degree *Southwards*, to *Turky*, *Perſia*, and *India*, there are, beſides the *Sclavonian* Letters, only three Sorts of Characters known, *viz.* 1. The *Turkiſh* or *Crim-Tartarian*. 2. The *Kalmuck* or *Mungalian*, which is almoſt the ſame Character as the *Manſuri*, or the *Chineſe Tartars* have: And, 3. The *Tangutian*. However, there is no Doubt, but in this latter Tract of Land there has formerly been other Sorts of Characters; For we find here and there Stones and Epitaphs erected, on which the Characters are not unlike the *Runick*; Some of which I have added to this Work: And in ſeveral Places of *Tartary* and *Siberia*, in the Tombs there are found, Plates of Metal, on which are very peculiar Characters, which ſhew the Manner of Writing formerly in Uſe.

Numbers and Words belonging to the II. CLASS.

The *Turks*, *Crim Usbeck-Baſchkirr-Kirgis*-and *Turkoman-Tartars*, have almoſt the ſame Dialect with theſe three Nations.

	Siberian-Mahometan Tartars, who live near the Cities of *Tobolſki*, *Tumen* and *Tara*.	*Jakuti*, who live on the River *Lena*, in *Siberia*, not far from the *Mare Glaciale*, and are *Heathens*.	*Czuwaſchi*, who live in the Government of *Caſan*, and are *Heathens*.
One	Birr	Byrr	Perr
Two	Icke	Icki	Ycki
Three	Uetſch	Utſch	Uitſi
Four	Dort	Tuerd	Twata
Five	Beſch	Bies	Belich
Six	Alte	Alta	Olta
Seven	Jaddi	Tziette	Sithy
Eight	Sekis	Agis	Ssylem
Nine	Dokos	Togus	Bokur
Ten	Onn	Unn	Wonn
Eleven	Onn-birr	Unn-birr	
Twelve	Onn-icke	Icki-birr	
Twenty	Girmæ	Tzurbæ	
Thirty	Otus	Otut	
Forty	Kirck	Turdſun	
Fifty	Elle	Bieſſun	
Sixty	Altmiſch	Alta-un	
Seventy	Jadmiſch	Tziette-un	
Eighty	Sexſem	Agit-un	
Ninety	Jockſan	Togus-un	
Hundred	Gius	Suſs	
Thouſand	Ming	Ming	
God	Chudai	Tangara	
Heaven	Kuuk	Kuuk	
King	Padſchay	Irachta	
Father	Atai	Aga	
Mother	Inæ	Ynegætæ	
Brother	Inim	Anim	
Siſter	Apai	Balta	
Wife	Chatun	Kathun	
Fire	Ott	Oth	
Water	Sſu	U	
Earth	Dgirr	Sirr	
Mountain	Taus-Tag	Bulguniach	
Sun	Kiun *or* Ay (aſch	Kunn	
Moon		Uich	
Horſe	Ath	Att	
Dog	Ett	Ued	
Head	Baſch	Baſchput	
Sea	Nurr	Baikal	
Stream	Gilga	Urusſ	
Wind		Toll	
Noſe	Buruhn	Muhrun	
Hair	Tſiatſch	Aſs	
Day	Kiunn	Kiün	
Night	Tuen	Tün	
Rock	Kaya	Taſs-Kaya	
Iron	Temir	Timir	
Silver	Kumiſs	Kumiſch	
Gold	Altyn	Altan	
Wolf	Buru	Bæræ	
Arrow	Ock	Ock	
Bow		Zaa	
Red	Cheſell	Kiüll	
Green	Jæſchill	Kiok	
Black	Cara	Cara	
Huts		Balagan	
Girl	Kiſs	Kiſs	
Man (Homo.)	Kfy	Irckſi	
Foot	Ajak		

	Bench, Sack. *Window*, Karuhoe. *Bread*, Sukru. *Hand*, Alla. *Beard*, Sokula. *Breaſt*, Kukru. *Arm*, Koll. *Heart*, Giira. *Foot*, Ohra. *Eye*, Koeis. *Mouth*, Suas.
One	
Two	
Three	
Four	
Five	
Six	
Seven	
Eight	
Nine	
Ten	
Eleven	
Twelve	
Twenty	
Thirty	
Forty	
Fifty	
Sixty	
Seventy	
Eighty	
Ninety	
Hundred	
Thouſand	
God	
Heaven	
King	
Father	
Mother	
Brother	
Siſter	
Wife	
Fire	
Water	
Earth	
Mountain	
Sun	Kuell
Moon	
Horſe	
Dog	
Head	
Sea	
Stream	
Wind	
Noſe	
Man (Homo)	
Hand	
Beard	
Eye	
Tongue	
Mouth	
Hair	
Elk	
Houſe	
Day	
Rock	
Iron	
Gold	
Silver	
Arrow	
Bow	
Foot	

Houſe, Ziurd. Boſs — Sumſa, Ssys, Kann, Kaſpolat — Ohra

Numbers and Words belonging to the III. CLASS.

These Six Nations, who live ſome Hundreds of Miles from each other, ſeem to have one Dialect, and may probably belong to the *Samojedian* Claſs. Thoſe who live farther towards the *South*, own that they came thither from the *North*; But had taken other Names.

	Samojedes, who live between *Archangel* and *Pitziora*, and are all *Heathens*.	*Oſtiaks*, who live in *Siberia*, on the River *Oby*, near the City of *Narim*.	*Oſtiaks*, who live on the River *Czulim*, near the City of *Tomſkoi*.	*Samojedi-Tawgi*, who live on the *Mare Glaciale*, between the Rivers *Jeniſei* and *Lena*.	*Samojedi-Manzela*, who live near the City *Torochanſki*, on the River *Jeniſei*, and from thence to the *Mare Glaciale*.	*Kanſkoi*, who call themſelves *Kbotowa*, and live on the River *Kann*, in *Siberia*.
One	Ob	Oker	Ockr	Gree	Noye	Op
Two	Side	Schidæ	Tzidai	Sitti	Side	Tzida
Three	Niar	Nakor	Nagur	Nagor	Nehe	Naghor
Four	Thiet	Thett	Thita	Kietta	Tetta	Thæta
Five	Samlei	Nomblach	Sſombulang	Samfolenka	Saborika	Sſoumbulang
Six	Maat	Mocktin	Mucktu	Motto	Motto	Muca
Seven	Siw	Hælſch	Sſælgie	Seiba	Sea	Seigbe
Eight	Siniet	Stagwet	Sſidyniet	Sitteretta	Sidetta	Schidætæ
Nine	Nienſei	Okreſiawet	Ockr-Yenjet	Nayma-tomma	Eſſa	Togus
Ten	Ju	Pawoget	Kiœht	By	By	Büd
Eleven		Okregolget	Ockr-Uajet	By-gree	By-nege	Büd-Up
Twelve		Schidagolget	Tzyd-Uajet	By-Sitti	By-Sidi	Büd-tzida
Twenty		Schita Naro	Thiſarm	Sitti-by	Sidi-Bi	Tuſerm
Thirty			Nag-thiſarm	Nagor-by	Nagor-By	Nogh-tuſerm
Forty			Thi-thiſarm	Tietta-by	Tetta-By	Nogh-opp-tuſerm
Fifty			Sſombi-thiſarm	Samfolenka-by	Saborika-by	Soum-thuſerm
Sixty			Muck-thiſarm	Motto-by	Motto-by	Mouck-thuſerm
Seventy			Sſællgie-thiſarm	Seiba-by	Sea-by	Seig-tuſerm
Eighty			Sſidyni-thiſarm	Sitteretta-by	Sidetta-by	
Ninety			Ockr-Uajet-thi	Naimæ-tomby	Eſſa-by	Togus-thiſerm
Hundred			Thœn (ſarm	Girr	Yu	Thun
Thouſand			Kiœth Thœn	By-Girr	By-Yu	Bydt-Tun
God		Nopp	Num	Koichæ	Kacha	Num
Heaven	Numi-Lembart	Tſielt	Titel-num	Noæ	Naè	
King						Abam
Father	Niſal					Imam
Mother						Aya
Siſter						Yhæ
Wife		Nell Kopp	Nehum		To	Nah
Fire		Schapko	Thüü			Thuy
Water		Yth	Yth			Cu
Earth						Diſcha
Mountain	Jaë		Tang			Bia
Sun	Siel	Siel	Kiælde		Kaya	Kaya
Moon		Ire	Irræd		Iri	Kyſchtin
Horſe		Schindy	Kiunde		Juda	Nunda
Dog		Zanack	Kanang			
Head		Oll	Olul			Stiba
Sea						
Stream		Koy	Khœ			
Wind		Marck	Mærck			
Noſe		Paſchy	Paſchy			
Man (Homo)		Kopp	Khium			
Hand						
Beard		Undt				
Eye		Say	Sſeul	Seirne	Sea	
Tongue			Sſyul	Sigega	Seorra	
Mouth		Aak	A-ul	Nang	Æhla	
Hair		Oltar	Opta	Niapta	Itta	Hya
Elk		Aldgie	Piænge	Baffi	Hæder	
Houſe			Hiæta			
Day		Sialumba			Jerri	
Rock			Pültang			
Iron						
Gold						
Silver						
Arrow						
Bow						
Foot			Püul			

Samojedes, Narro. *Summer*, Tunga. *Autumn*, Kou. Nienkareli. Junta. *Star*, Fottagi. Niunka. Sytto.

Oſtiaks, Kiwa. *Winter*, Bruecke. *Star*, Fonſcen. Tarra. *Coat*, Faggi. *Summer*, Tock. *Autumn*, Nar.

Numbers and Words belonging to the IV. & V. CLASSES.

One	Nege
Two	Choyor
Three	Gurba
Four	Dörbi
Five	Tabu
Six	Surga
Seven	Dolo
Eight	Naima
Nine	Geſſu
Ten	Arba
Eleven	Arben-b
Twelve	Arben-G
Twenty	Chory
Thirty	Gutzy
Forty	Detzy
Fifty	Taby
Sixty	Dzera
Seventy	Dala
Eighty	Naya
Ninety	Yre
Hundred	Soo
Thouſand	Minga
God	Burchan
Heaven	Tengri
King	Chan
Father	Oetzega
Mother	Oeke
Brother	Acha
Siſter	Ogecie
Wife	Emæ
Fire	Gall
Water	Uſſu
Earth	Gadſer
Mountain	Ohla
Sun	Nara
Moon	Sara
Horſe	Mori
Dog	Nood
Head	Thologoi
Sea	Nurr
Stream	Goll
Wind	Salky
Noſe	Kamar
Man (Homo)	Kuhn
Hand	Allaga
Beard	Sakoll
Eye	Nudu
Tongue	Kele
Mouth	Ama
Hair	Uſſu
Elk	Kandaga
Houſe	Dſigirr
Day	Oedur
Rock	Tſcholo
Iron	Temer
Gold	Alta
Silver	Mungu
Arrow	Sſumu
Bow	Numu
Foot	Chul

These t
der one
in Part
and we
rates, I
Kalmucki
are of t
ſame Rel
with the
gals, and
almoſt o
Dialect.

IUM VULGO TARTARORUM

LINGUARUM,

Hunno-Scythians, inhabiting the *North-Eaſtern* Part of *Europe* and *Aſia*; from which, among other hiſtorical Circumſtances r *Weſtern* Nations. Their ſeveral Habitations are diſtinguiſh'd in the New Map, which accompanies this Work.

These three Nations are, indeed, not under one Government; But as they are, in Part, to this Day, of one Religion, and were in Part, formerly, Confederates, I have choſe to put them together.

Numbers and Words belonging to the IV. & V. CLASSES.	*Kalmucks*, who are of the ſame Religion with the *Mungals*, and have almoſt one Dialect.	*Mantſchou*, or *Chineſe-Tartars*, who were formerly Vaſſals of the *Mungals*.	*Tangubti*, who belong to the *Dalai-Lama*, and have one Religion with the *Kalmucks* and *Mungals*.
One	Nege	Yga	Dſchyk
Two	Choyor	Lianga	Ny or Na
Three	Gurba	Sſanga	Sſuum
Four	Dörbö	Sſiggæ	Dſcyſz
Five	Tabu	Ugæ	Duga
Six	Surga	Lugæ	Uruch
Seven	Dolo	Szygæ	Dhun
Eight	Naima	Baya	Dſguat
Nine	Geſſu	Dſhugæ	Dſgu-tomba
Ten	Arba	Schy	Dſgyn
Eleven	Arben-Nege	Schy-Ygæ	Dſgu-Dſchyk
Twelve	Arben-Choyor	Schy-Lianga	Dſgu-Ny
Twenty	Chory	Ul-Schy	Nyr-Dſchyk
Thirty	Gutzy	Sang-Schy	Nyr-Dſgu-tomba
Forty	Detzy	Sig-Schy	Dſchyack-Dſgu
Fifty	Taby	Ug-Schy	Dnga-Dſgu
Sixty	Dzera	Lug-Schy	Uruck-Dſgu
Seventy	Dala	Tzy-Schi	Dhiun-Dſgu
Eighty	Naya	Bay-Schi	Dſgüat-Dſgu
Ninety	Yre	Dſhi-Schi	Dſgü-tomba-Dſgu
Hundred	Soo	Ibai	Dſgu-Dſgu
Thouſand	Minga	Iwuan	Yreen
God	Burchan	Foya	Namm
Heaven	Tengri	Solnretekin	—
King	Chan		Pha or Abba
Father	Oetzega		Mha or Amma
Mother	Oeke		Pungu
Brother	Acha		Poima
Siſter	Ogecie		Dſgymæ
Wife	Emæ		May
Fire	Gall		Tzu or Loo
Water	Uſſu		Tza
Earth	Gadſer		La or Rhe
Mountain	Ohla		Nara or Nima
Sun	Nara		Dawa
Moon	Sara		Tha
Horſe	Mori	Junta	Ky
Dog	Nood	Kuh	Mngo
Head	Thologoi	Nedo	—
Sea	Nurr	—	Tzu
Stream	Goll	—	Long
Wind	Salky	—	—
Noſe	Kamar	Piſſa	My
Man (Homo)	Kuhn	Oydzah	—
Hand	Allaga	—	—
Beard	Sakoll	—	Myhi
Eye	Nudu	Nendiè	Thgi
Tongue	Kele	—	Cha
Mouth	Ama	—	—
Hair	Uſſu	Pygo	—
Elk	Kandagai	—	Tungwa
Houſe	Dſgirr	Fanſa	—
Day	Oedur	—	—
Rock	Tſcholo	—	Tſcha or Tawar-
Iron	Temer	—	Sirr or Kinſa
Gold	Alta	—	Mui or Inſa
Silver	Mungu	—	—
Arrow	Sſumu	—	—
Bow	Numu	—	Kangwa
Foot	Chul	—	—

Loppa, back. *Ax*, Farſa. *Boots*, Sueſſa. — *Pomſ*. *Priſt*, Pom- *Knife*, Poſſa. *Shirt*, Bokcunſa. — *Sable*, Ziahus. *Ear*, Ulak. *Cap*, Moſa. *Bread*, Pobiha.

These Seven Nations differ indeed very much in their Language; But are all under the *Ruſſian* Dominion, in the Government of *Siberia*. The *Tunguſians*, however, tho' they are of three Sorts, have ſome Affinity, in their Dialect; I have, therefore, put them together; But the other four have very little Similitude in their Language.

Numbers and Words belonging to the VI. CLASS.	*Kamacintzi*, who call themſelves *Kiſchtim*, and live on the River *Mana*, in *Siberia*.	*Arintzi*, who call themſelves *Ara*, or *Arr*, and live near the City of *Craſnojar*, on the River *Jeneſei*.	*Tonguſi-konni*, who live in *Dauria*, near the City of *Nerſchinſkoi*.	*Tonguſi-Oleni*, who live on the Rivers *Augara*- and *Tingus*, in *Siberia*.	*Tonguſi-Sabatſchi*, alias *Lamuti*, who live on the Gulf of *Kamtſchatki*.	*Koræiki*, or, *Weſt*- and *Northern* Inhabitants of *Kamtſchatki*.	*Kurili*, or, *Eaſt*- and *Southern* Inhabitants of *Kamtſchatki*.
One	Chuodichæ	Kuila	Amka	Umun	Omokon	Innen	Xineppu
Two	Ynæ	Kinæ	Czivo	Dziun	Nadan	Niach	Tzuppu
Three	Tonga	Thunga	Jelan	Ilen	Dagalkun	Nioch	Leppu
Four	Schagæ	Scheya	Tuin	Digin	Ullan	Nyzacha	Xineppu
Five	Hkagæ	Chala	Guincza	Tunya	Degen	Milchin	Axiquineppu
Six	Hkeluſa	Yga	Niumu	Nucun	Gedin	Innen-Milchin	Suab
Seven	Hkelina	Una	Nadan	Nadun	Dgiur	Niach-Milchin	Arvab
Eight	Cheltonga	Kina-Minſchau	Czachun	Giggin	Diaar	Nioch-Milchin	Tzubexi
Nine	Hwelina	Kuiſa-Minſchau	Unjun	Ziapkun	Dgiur-Diar	Chonatſchihi	Xinebeſam
Ten	Haga	Hioga	Czuen	Ziun	üllan-Diar	Minegilki	Vanake
Eleven	Haga-chuodſchæ	Hkog-Kuiſa	Czuenamka			Innen-Paolla	
Twelve	Haga-Inæ	Hkog-Ina	Czuen Cziwo			Niach-Paolla	
Twenty	Yn-Tung	Kin-Tung	Oren			Niach-Minegilki	Fotzu
Thirty	Tonga-Tu (ſchæ	Tong-Tung	Ceuzin			Nioch-Minegilki	Tzu-Fotzu
Forty	Tonga-tu-chuod-	Scheig-Tung	Tanhi			Nyzach-Minegilki	Refotzu
Fifty	Hkog-Tugu	Kuwull	Zuzei			nati.	Ynefotzu
Sixty	Hkelusa-Tu	Ui-Tung	Niumhu				
Seventy	Hkelina-Tu	Un-Tung (tung	Nadanzu				Faſciappu
Eighty	Cheltong-Tu	Kina-Minſchaw-	Czachunzu			Dyd	Faibo
Ninety	Hwelin-Tugu	Kuiſa-Minſchau-	Kunjuntzu				
Hundred	Duſs	Yuzz (tung	Tengun				
Thouſand	Hag-Duſs	Kog-Yuſs	Ming				
God	Eſch	Eiſch					
Maſter	Urach	Eiſch-Parang	Apgai				
Miſtreſs	Patſchai	Bir-Key					
Servant		Ypæ	Tegu				
Girl		Amæ					
Boy		Amagell	Hega				
Man (Homo)		Bamagell					
Head		Ilpæ					
Eye	Uhl	Koth	Nai				
Neck	Pang	Kuhl					
Noſe	Kgy	Pieng					
Tongue	Egæ	Chagaly	Morin			Gama	
Beard	Tzui	Eiga					
Eyebrows		Iſchui				Kuh	
Right-Hand		Kuſs	Nyalma				
Left-Hand		Thitu				Anka	
Belly		Ollkæ				Tzewe	
Stomach		Barka-kull					
Navel		Szating				Pyſza	
Horſe		Pay				Meich	
Dog	Jæpei						
Houſe							
Water							
Fire							
Sun							
Breaſt							
Right Foot							
Left Foot							
Mouth							
Arm							
Day							
Night							
Cold							
Warm							
Earth							

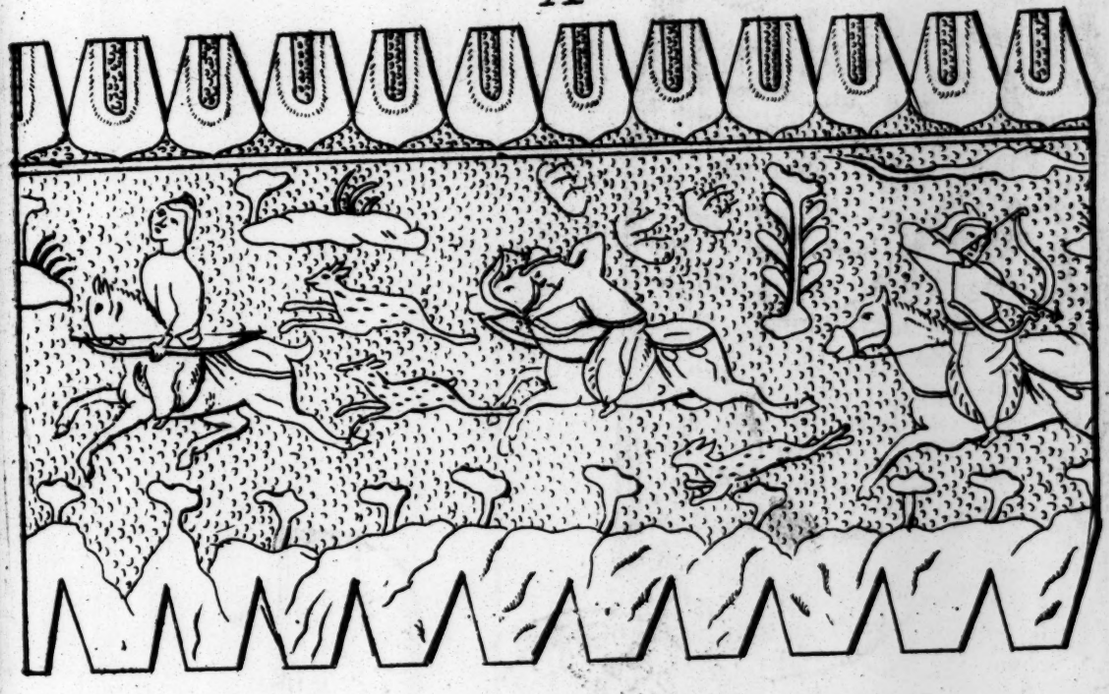
Kamacintzi: *Child*, Olpolat. *Hut*, Kuſs. *Bear*, Ki- ba. *Foot*, Lunæ. — *Arintzi*: *Cow*, Unne. *Ermin*, Oloki. — *Tonguſi-konni*: *Winter*, Yrunicha. *Summer*, Mukula. *Boy*, Bucha. — *Tonguſi-Oleni*: *Ear*, Gilaku. *Squirrel*, Boga. Gdadu. Aminmun. Daradu. Delliziu. Morin. Kalziakan. Dilli. Bya. Gnala. Igmæ. — *Tonguſi-Sabatſchi*: *Coat*, Konga. *Cap*, Dſele- ki. Amar- Aſchatka. Toyaga. Muiga. Gadar. Diularan. Tziugga. Murun. Kinakin. Tollokin. Laptiti. Ongockto. Onkokoll. Niuruchta. Ineran. Thieng. Khon. Okæſchi. Tepp. — *Koræiki*: *Light*, Gelchihaht. *Girl*, Divetkab. *Ruſſian*, Milhiman. *Knife*, Wata. Odnoſoſch. Pela. Mahul. Schyt. — *Kurili*: *Man*, (Homo) Caſſamay. *Woman*, Menokoxi. *Child*, Occai. *Head*, Xaba. *Hair*, Xabanuma. *Beard*, Requi. *Bow*, Cu. *Arrow*, Ay. *Sword*, Junuxi. *Parent*, Aba.

These five Nations live between the *Black*- and *Caſpian*-Seas, and differ quite in their Language; Tho' they all of them ſpeak, at the ſame Time, the *Crim-Tartarian* Language.

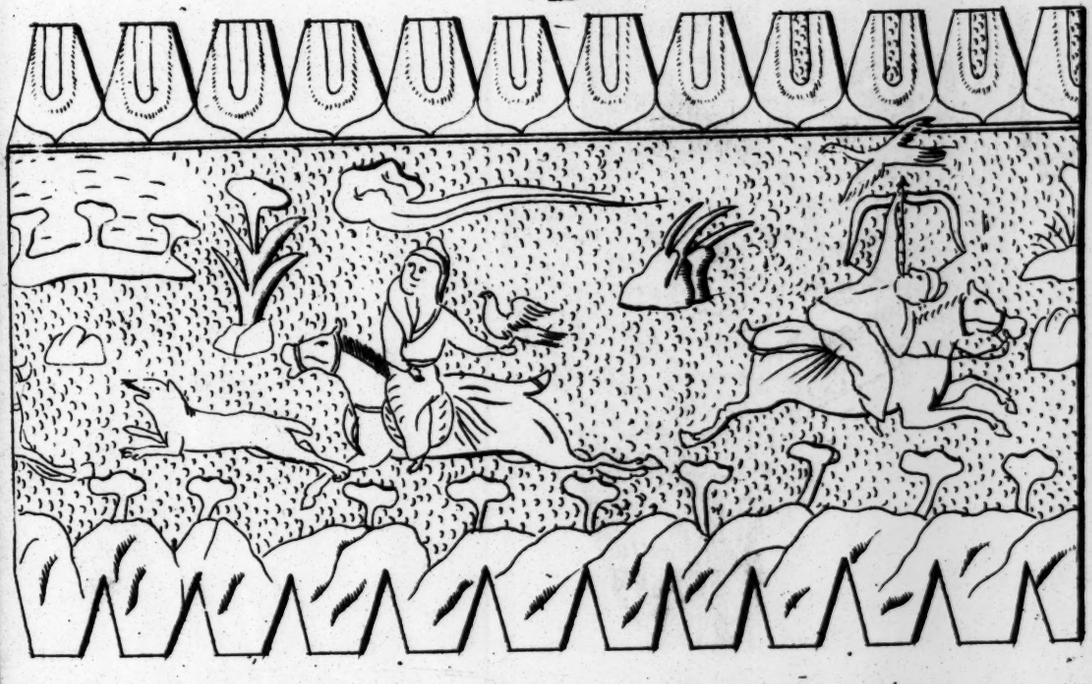
Numbers and Words belonging to the VI. CLASS.	*Avari*, or *Akari*, who live on Mount *Caucaſus*	*Comucki*, alias *Kaitak*, who live in *Dageſtan*.	*Kubatſchin*, who live near *Derbent*, and are thought to be of *Jewiſh* Extraction.	*Tzerkæſi*, alias *Gurſchi-Cirkæſſi*.	*Curali*, who live on Mount *Caucaſus*.
One	Szu	Sadat	Sah	Ci	Kyſſer
Two	Giggu	Giwa	Kou	Toku	
Three	Hanku	Slambaco	Kejerbeck	Szu	Adam
Four	Onku	Moynick	Auff	Giu	Killa
Five	Tziloku	Kewa	Yku	Tuku	
Six	Ankalga	Kakwa	Akeleika	Schu	
Seven	Giuhtku	Arutwa	Kereeika	Bly	*Hand*, Kill.
Eight	Mockbeggu	Meywa	Weſneika	Schy	*Belly*, Sarat.
Nine	Utſgu	Urtzwa	Orſumdieika	Bogu	*Fox*, Ibi.
Ten	Entzelgu	Eſwa	Wafdina-Ackaleika	Ptze	*Cow*, Siarra.
Twenty	Kobbeggu	Kobba	Nialdina Weika		*Wolf*, Willi.
Thirty	Lowergu	Sowiwa	Behaſeldena Weikaka		
Forty	Kokawu	Mukſeiwa	Urſumifiluiki		
Fifty	Kikaldanſke	Kobſewa	Loweſel ibuika		
Sixty	Secikagu	Sakſewa	Efin-finibuika		
Seventy	Kawalkaldanſku	Allaalba	—	Turgu	Kyſſer
Eighty	Onkuku	Muſelba	Talgan		
Ninety	Onkordanſku	Urtzelwa	Konut	Foes	Adam
Hundred	Noſku	Diſſaba	Owatfioha		Killa
Thouſand	Aſkergu	Aferba	Wutzi		
God	Bytzill	—	Gahe		
Maſter	Buderhan	Putzlais *or* Putzs	—	Szûh	
Miſtreſs	Goudſchou	Schiær	Olwa	Schio	
Servant	Kifmei Char	Sucktzia	Kou	Nô	
Girl	—	Duſs	Mirr	Peck	*Hand*, Kill.
Boy	—	Ares	Muſull	Tzug	*Belly*, Sarat.
Man (Homo)	Genaht	—	—	—	*Fox*, Ibi.
Head	Biber	Bæg	Kutwa	Sarall	*Cow*, Siarra.
Eye	Buſtul	Geru	Lahinik		*Wolf*, Willi.
Neck	Schukur	Derbas	Litzelnik		
Noſe	Buſchi	Mi	—		
Tongue	—	Mærr	Bulda		
Beard	—	Lakui	Sugulda		
Eyebrows	Kumur	Ikenſu	Axia	Tziö	*Sheep*, Langat.
Right-Hand	Mukabekir	Koga	Koy		*Finger*, Tapalar.
Left-Hand	Tziarad	Kiæko	Kall		*Cow*, Siarra.
Belly	—	—	Tzün		*Wolf*, Willi.
Stomach	—	Luka	Tzah		
Navel	—	Sſas	Sufi	Schialla	
Horſe	Tziu	—	Mukoi		
Dog	Schy	Pathat	Lahibtay		
Houſe	Ruck	Schin	Liſiltay		
Water	Kinſi	Siggau	Moli	Koko	Damna
Fire	Saan	—	—	Karr	
Sun	Gede	Akini	Bigula		
Breaſt	—	—	Gutzilli		
Right Foot	—	Terkuſege	Dibblei		
Left Foot	—	Kurſſaſgi	Butzi		
Mouth	—	—	Muſa		
Arm	—				
Day	—				
Night	—				
Cold	—				
Warm	—				
Earth	—				

Place this Table at the End of the Book.

A



B

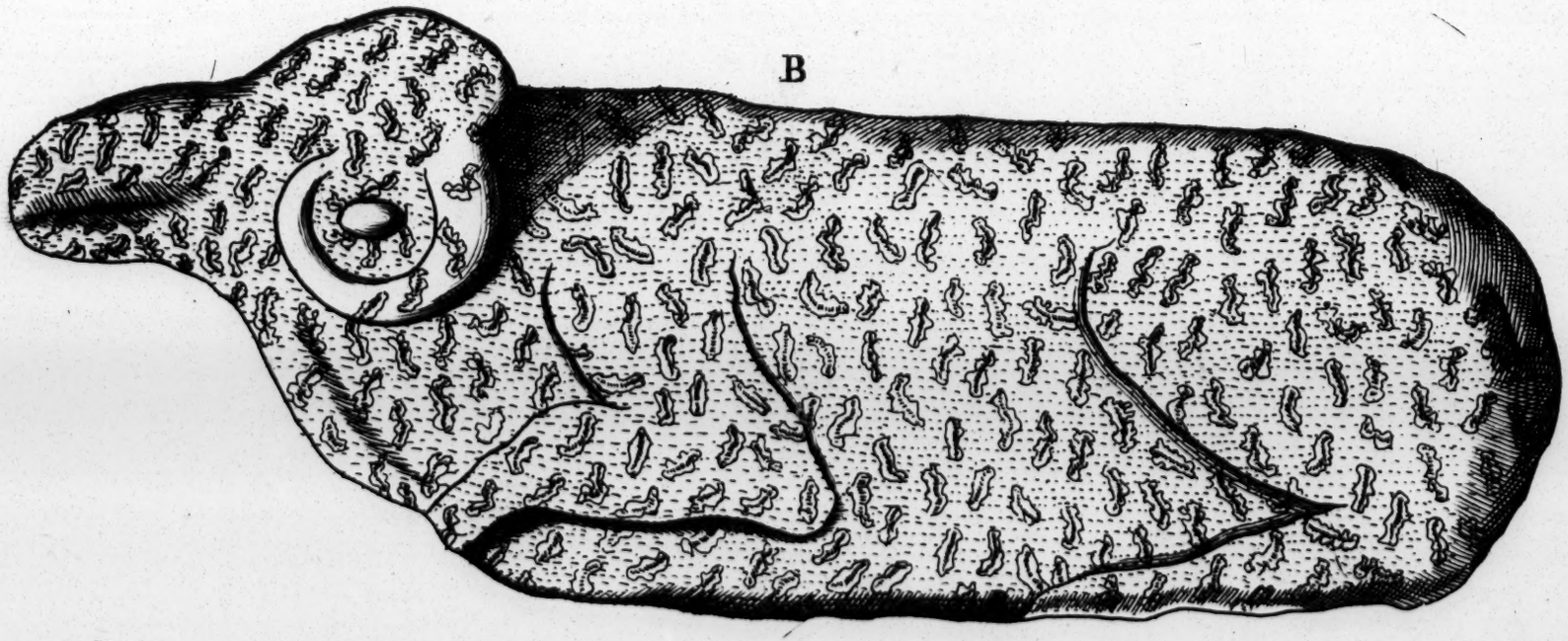




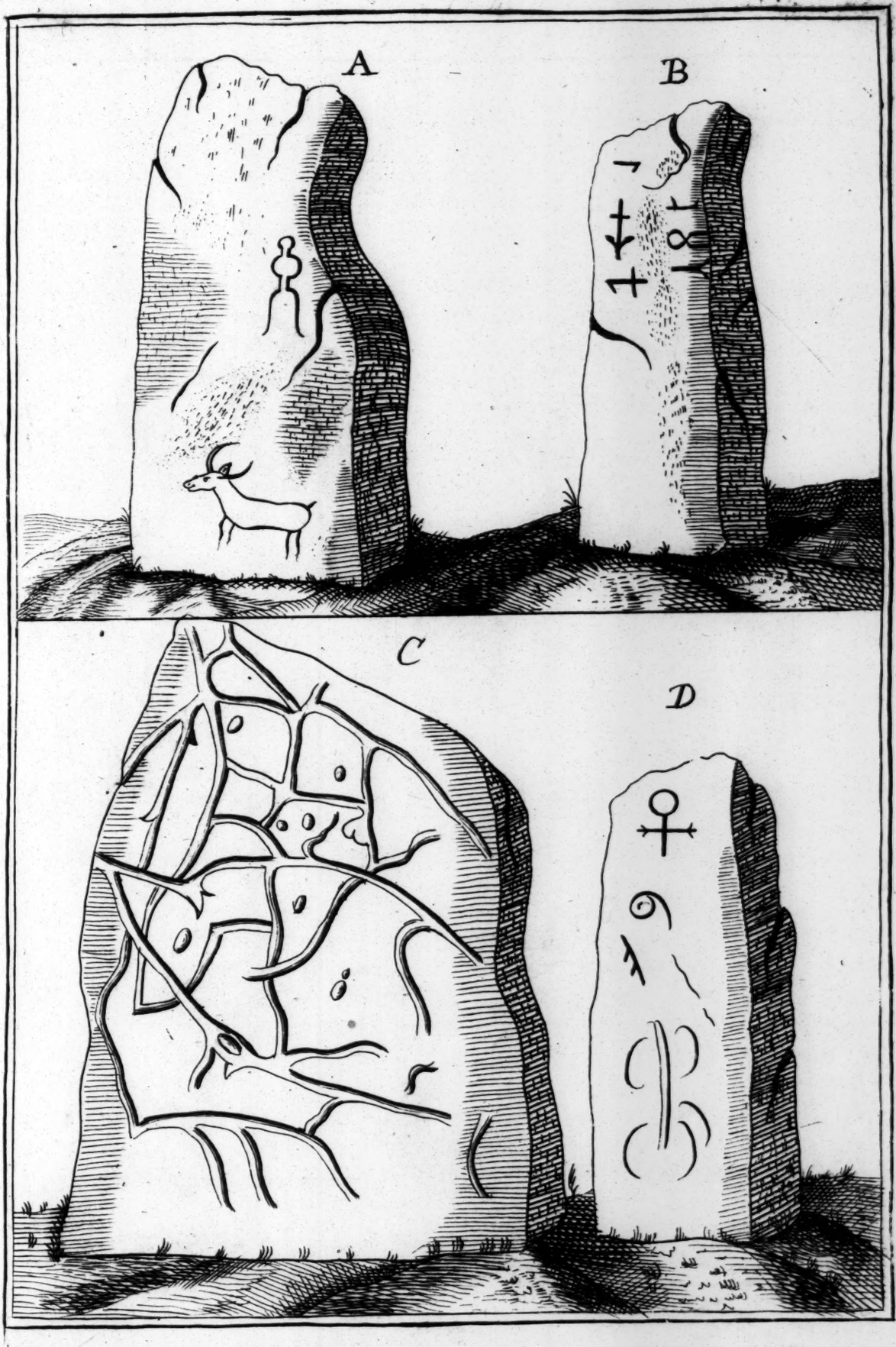
A



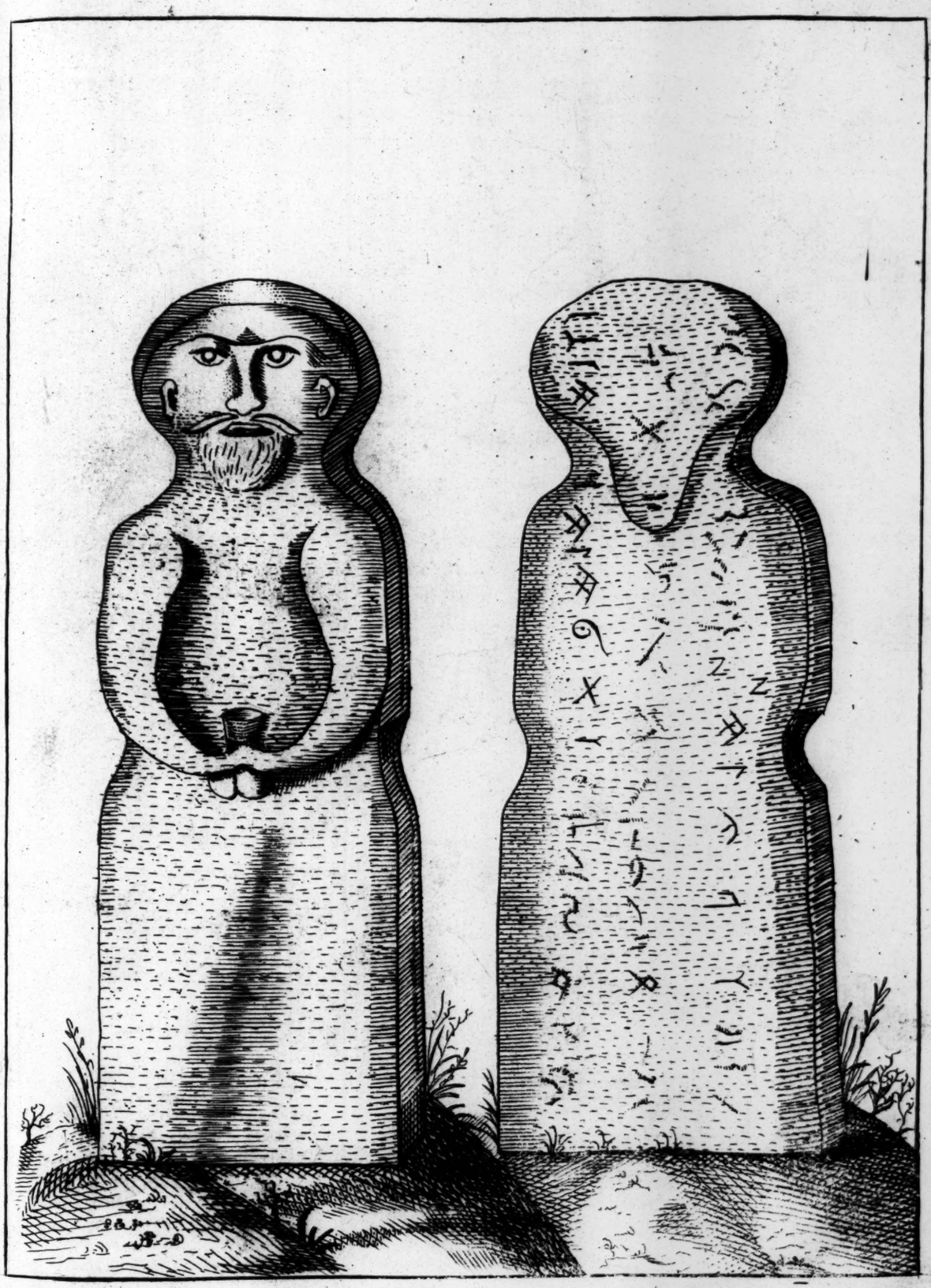
B



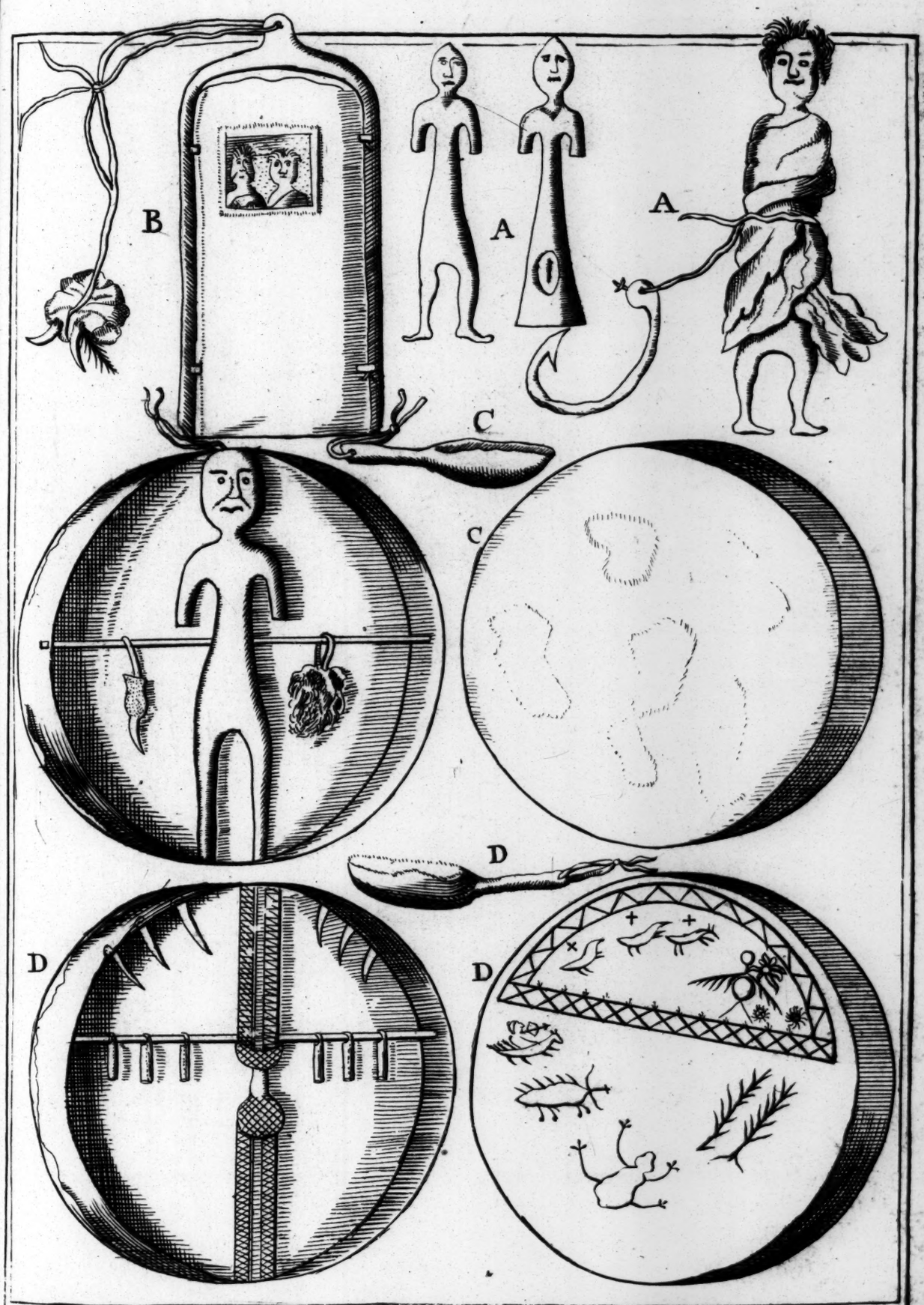



A
B
C
D








B
A
A
C
C
D
D
D

Tabula. I.

A

B

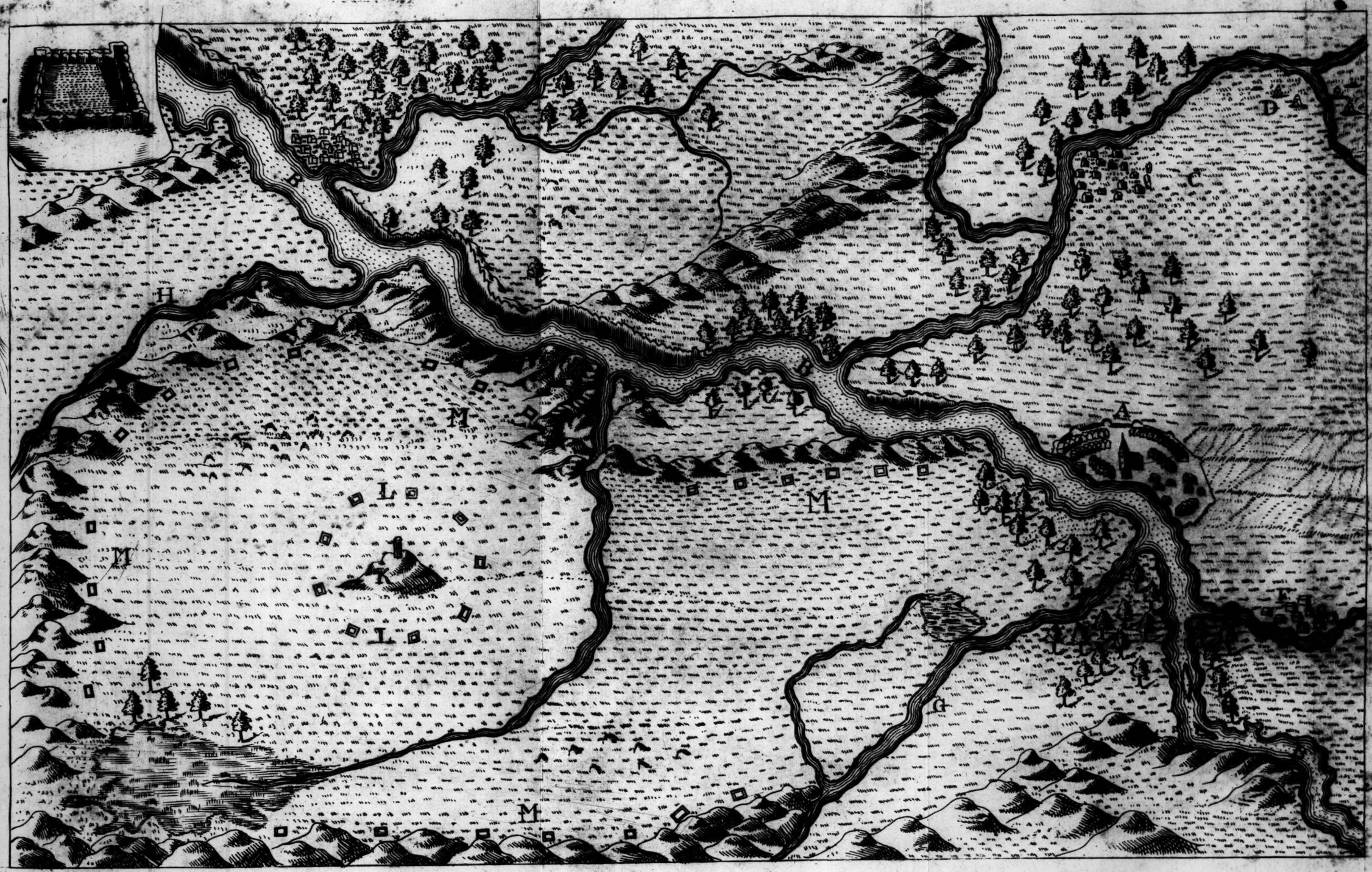

C
B
A
D
D
E










A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
K
L
M

